

**A MULTI-PERSPECTIVE REPORT ON THE STATUS OF THE  
KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE TO COMMERCIAL SEXUAL  
EXPLOITATION OF CHILDREN WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CHILD  
PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM: A SOCIAL WORK  
PERSPECTIVE**

**by**

**KAREN JEANNE SPURRIER**

**Submitted in accordance with the requirements**

**for the degree of**

**Doctor of Philosophy (DPhil)**

**in the subject**

**Social Work**

**at the**

**UNIVERSITY OF SOUTH AFRICA**

**SUPERVISOR: Professor AH Alpaslan**

**May 2015**

Student Number: 05586240

I declare that: ***A multi-perspective report on the status of the knowledge on and response to commercial sexual exploitation of children with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism: a social work perspective*** is my own work and that all the sources that I have used or quoted have been indicated and acknowledged by means of complete references.

I further declare that I have not previously submitted this work, or part of it, for examination at UNISA for another qualification or at any other higher education institution.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to be 'S. M. M.', written in a cursive style.

25 May 2015

---

SIGNATURE

(Mrs)

---

DATE

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

*With any journey of significance, preparation is paramount. So too for an individual embarking on a degree, but however well prepared one can be, one can never be ready for all eventualities. Even less prepared are those individuals those who undertake the journey with us as spectators, cheerleaders, pillion riders and sponsors as they experience vicariously our highs and lows, frustrations and joys. It is the commitment of these people that we appreciate when we realise a dream that cannot be fulfilled without them.*

To all my family, friends and good neighbours, who have played such a significant role and supported me in so many ways; financially; with accommodation; with companionship on my fact finding trips, or simply with an interested inquiry about progress, I am very grateful to you all. Of this wonderful group of people I have space only to name a few individually.

My greatest thank you is to my wonderful husband Bob, who encouraged me, cooked and cleaned and babysat, while I was otherwise engaged. Thank you for believing in me and encouraging me through this process.

To my darling son, Daniel whom I love to infinity and beyond (to quote Buzz Lightyear) for sharing mommy with the computer and the books, enduring the nights I was away from home and for the little voice that said; "I want you to finish writing your book now mommy so we can play!"

To my parents who have always encouraged me, believed in me and supported me – thank you.

To Professor Alpaslan, a critical and hard task master, but a master at his task of keeping this student on track. You kept me in line, focused and drove me to produce better work than I thought I could and achieve a better quality product than I thought I was capable of. This project would have been impossible without your guidance and I am grateful for every minute and every hour you put into assisting me.

To Dr Huma Louw, who did the independent coding, thank you for a thorough job.

To Prof Joan Fairhurst, thank you for editing the manuscript and your valuable comments.

To the participants who took part in this study and gave me parts of their life stories, time and energy, I am very grateful.

Last but not least, I am grateful to my Lord for the opportunity I have been given to do this study and my prayer is that significant positive change will result from the report.

## **ABSTRACT**

Increasing tourism numbers in third world countries affect their economies and certain aspects of their society positively; however, there are concomitant negative effects that expose the dark side of the tourism industry. One of these is the escalating commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC), particularly child prostitution (CP) in the context of tourism, a phenomenon known as child sex tourism (CST). Although tourism plays an important role in creating the perfect storm of poverty-stricken children colliding with wealthy tourists, it is not solely responsible for this phenomenon.

Internationally and nationally, the lacuna of knowledge on CST in particular hampers an informed response by way of resource allocation and coordinated service delivery to both victims and perpetrators. Utilising a qualitative research approach, and the collective case study and phenomenological research designs complemented by an explorative, descriptive and contextual strategy of inquiry, the researcher explored the status of the knowledge of and response to the CSEC through the lens of closely associated role players, who were purposively selected for inclusion in the study. These were adult survivors who were as children engaged in sex work and victims of child sex tourism, social workers and non-social workers involved in rendering child welfare and protection services, members of the Family Violence Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) Unit of the South African Police Service (SAPS) and representatives of the hospitality and tourism industry. Data was collected via individual in-depth semi-structured interviews, telephone interviews, and email-communication, and thematically analysed.

The researcher found that a range of microsystem level factors, such as poverty and family dysfunction, pushed children to the street, and as a means to survive engage in sex work, enabling tourists (i.e. local - out of towners) and foreigners, mainly men from varied sexual orientation) to commercially sexually exploit both boys and girls, from as young as nine years of age, and of different race groups, which leave them with physical and psychological scars.

The following main findings surfaced: The social workers, in comparison to the non-social workers, who have a primary responsibility to provide child welfare and protection services were ill-informed in terms of identifying CST as phenomenon, untrained and/or slow to respond appropriately with interventions directed to the victims and perpetrators of CSEC.

The service provider groups, as microsystems interfacing on a mesosystem, were fraught with perceptions that the social workers and the SAPS were being inadequate. Furthermore a lack of cooperation, collaboration and communication between the service provider groups to respond to CSEC existed. The hospitality and tourism industry service representatives were also ill-informed about the phenomena of CP and CST with a response that at best can be labelled as fluctuating between an indirect response to that of turning a blind-eye. From the findings, recommendations for social work practice, education and training and recommendations specific for the other closely associated role players in responding to the CSEC were forwarded.

**Key terms:**

Commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC); child sex tourism (CST); child prostitution; South African perspective on CSEC; social work perspective on CSEC; SAPS perspective on CSEC; adult survivors of CSEC, Adult survivors of child sex tourism, NGO perspective on CSEC child sex tourism Cape Town; child sex tourism Garden Route, child sex tourism Western Cape.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Declaration	ii
Acknowledgements	iii
Abstract	v
Table of Contents	vii
List of Acronyms	xxiv

### CHAPTER 1

#### GENERAL INTRODUCTION AND ORIENTATION TO THE STUDY

1.1	INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND, PROBLEM FORMULATION AND MOTIVATION FOR THE STUDY	1
1.1.1	The emergence of the phenomenon of CSEC	2
1.1.2	The emergence of the phenomenon of child sex tourism and its link with child prostitution (children engaging in sex work) globally	4
1.1.3	The emergence of the phenomenon of child sex tourism and its link with child prostitution (children engaging in sex work) in South Africa	11
1.1.4	A global response to combat CSEC	17
1.1.4.1	The international legislative approach and response to combat CSEC	17
1.1.4.2	The South African legislative approach and response to combat CSEC	20
1.1.5	Global response of the hospitality and tourism industry to combat CSEC	23
1.1.5.1	Response of the international hospitality and tourism industry to combat CSEC	23
1.1.5.2	The response of the South African hospitality and tourism industry to CSEC	25
1.1.6	The global response of the social, child-welfare and other child protection services to combat CSEC	28
1.1.6.1	The response of the international community of social, child-welfare and other child protection services (including social work) to combat CSEC	28
1.1.6.2	The response of the South African community of social, child-welfare and other child protection services (including social work) to combat CSEC	32
1.2	PROBLEM FORMULATION AND RATIONALE FOR THE STUDY	34

1.3	THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK	38
1.4	RESEARCH QUESTIONS	43
1.4.1	The research goals	44
1.4.2	The research objectives	44
1.5	RESEARCH METHODOLOGY	45
1.5.1	The research approach	45
1.5.2	The research design	46
1.6	RESEARCH METHODS	48
1.6.1	Population, sampling and sampling methods	48
1.6.2	Preparation for and method of data collection	51
1.6.3	Data analysis	56
1.6.4	Method of data verification	57
1.6.5	Ethical considerations	59
1.7	CLARIFICATION AND DEFINITION OF KEY CONCEPTS	62
1.7.1	Child	62
1.7.2	Child sexual abuse	63
1.7.3	Child exploitation	63
1.7.4	Commercial sexual exploitation of a child/children (CSEC)	64
1.7.5	Child sex tourism (CST)	64
1.7.6	Child prostitution	65
1.7.7	Child pornography	65
1.7.8	Child sex trafficking	65
1.7.9	Child rights	65
1.7.10	Child protection	66
1.7.11	A sexual exploiter of children	66
1.7.12	An exploiter in the context of tourism	67
1.7.13	Social worker	67
1.7.14	Travel and tourism	67
1.7.15	A multi-perspective report	68
1.8	OUTLINE OF THE RESEARCH REPORT	68
1.9	CHAPTER SUMMARY	69

**CHAPTER 2**  
**THE QUALITATIVE RESEARCH METHODOLOGY: AN APPLIED DESCRIPTION**

2.1	INTRODUCTION	71
2.2	MOTIVATION FOR THE WAY OF DESCRIBING HOW THE QUALITATIVE RESEARCH APPROACH WAS UTILISED IN THIS RESEARCH ENDEAVOUR	71
2.3	THE QUALITATIVE RESEARCH APPROACH	74
2.4	RESEARCH DESIGN	82
2.5	RESEARCH METHODS	86
2.6	POPULATION, SAMPLE AND SAMPLING TECHNIQUE	86
2.6.1	The aspect of sample size in qualitative research	98
2.6.2	Preparation of the participants for the process of data collection	99
2.7	METHODS OF DATA COLLECTION AND THEIR APPLICATION IN THIS STUDY	103
2.7.1	Qualitative face-to-face interviews	103
2.7.1.1	Advantages and disadvantages of face-to-face interviews	103
2.7.2	Telephonic interviews	105
2.7.2.1	Advantages of telephonic interviews	105
2.7.2.2	Disadvantages of telephonic interviews	106
2.7.3	Data collection through e-communication (e-mail)	107
2.7.3.1	The advantages of e-mail data collection	107
2.7.3.2	The disadvantages of e-mail data collection	107
2.7.3.3	Interviewing skills and techniques used to facilitate the face-to-face and telephone interviews	113
2.7.3.4	Piloting the data collection tools	114
2.8	DIGITAL AUDIO RECORDINGS AND TRANSCRIPTIONS	115

2.9	DATA ANALYSIS	117
2.9.1	Independent coding and independent coder arrangements	119
2.10	DATA VERIFICATION	121
2.11	ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS	127
2.11.1	Obtaining informed consent	127
2.11.2	Confidentiality and management of information	130
2.11.3	Debriefing	131
2.12	CHAPTER SUMMARY	132

### **CHAPTER 3**

#### **RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS AND RECOLLECTIONS OF ADULT SURVIVORS IN RELATION TO THEIR COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION AS CHILDREN**

3.1	INTRODUCTION	134
3.2	DEMOGRAPHIC DATA ON THE ADULT SURVIVOR SAMPLE GROUP	135
3.3	PRESENTATION OF THE SUB-THEMES AND CATEGORIES RELATED TO THE THEME: THE ACCOUNTS AND RECOLLECTIONS OF ADULT SURVIVORS IN RELATION TO THEIR COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION AS CHILDREN	138
3.4	SUB THEME: 1.1: THE ADULT SURVIVORS WERE, AS CHILDREN, EXPOSED TO DIFFERENT FORMS OF SEXUAL EXPLOITATION (INCLUDING CSEC WITH SPECIFIC REFERENCE TO CP AND CST)	147
3.4.1	The adult survivors were exposed to sexual abuse as children	147
3.4.2	The adult survivors were exposed to pornography as children	149
3.4.3	The adult survivors were exposed to prostitution as children	151
3.4.4	The adult survivors were exposed to child sex tourism as children	153
3.5	SUB-THEME 1.2: ADULT SURVIVORS' ACCOUNTS REGARDING THE	156

	BIOGRAPHICAL AND PSYCHOSOCIAL PROFILE OF THE VICTIMS OF CSEC	
3.5.1	The social background of children falling prey to CSEC	156
3.5.2	Substance use/abuse as cause or enabler for CSEC	158
3.5.3	The ages of children who fall prey to becoming victims of CSEC	161
3.5.4	Race of victims of CSEC	163
3.5.5	Gender of victims of CSEC	163
3.5.6	The naïve nature of the victims of CSEC	164
3.5.7	The adult survivor participants' feelings and emotional reactions as a result of their exposure as children to CSEC	165
3.6	SUB-THEME 1.3: ADULT SURVIVORS' PROFILING OF THE PERPETRATORS OF CSEC IN TERMS OF BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION, CLIENT REQUIREMENTS, AND THEIR MODUS OPERANDI FOR OBTAINING CHILDREN TO SEXUALLY EXPLOIT	168
3.6.1	A biographical profile on the perpetrators	168
3.6.2	The adult survivors' accounts of the perpetrating clients' requirements, requests and modus operandi in relation to CSEC	173
3.7	SUB-THEME 1.4: THE ADULT SURVIVORS' ACCOUNTS ON HOW THEY WERE REMUNERATED BY THE CHILD SEX PERPETRATORS FOR SERVICES RENDERED	187
3.8	SUB-THEME 1.5: ADULT SURVIVORS' PERCEPTIONS OF THE FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO CSEC	189
3.8.1	Poverty (in the context of a lack of food and being hungry) as contributing factor to CSEC	189
3.8.2	The adult survivors' chemical substances abuse and addiction as a contributing factor to CSEC	190
3.8.3	Engaging in sex is an easy way of making money for survival as a contributing factor to CSEC	192
3.8.4	The immaturity and naiveté inherent to being a child as contributing factor to CSEC	192
3.9	SUB-THEME 1.6: ADULT SURVIVORS' SUGGESTIONS ON HOW TO ADDRESS CSEC	193

3.10	SUB-THEME 1.7: THE RECOLLECTIONS OF ADULT SURVIVORS OF CSEC ON THE NATURE OF SERVICES RENDERED TO THEM BY SERVICE PROVIDERS	195
------	---	-----

3.11	CHAPTER SUMMARY	198
------	-----------------	-----

#### **CHAPTER 4**

### **RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS OF THE SERVICE PROVIDERS ON THEIR KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE AND SUGGESTIONS TO THE PHENOMENON OF CSEC – PART 1**

4.1	INTRODUCTION	200
4.2	THE DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILES OF THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUP	201
4.3	THEME 1: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' LEVELS OF COMPREHENSION OF THE MEANING OF THE CONCEPT 'CHILD SEX TOURISM' AND THEIR KNOWLEDGE ON THE LEGISLATION APPLICABLE TO CSEC (WITH SPECIFIC REFERENCE TO CHILD SEX TOURISM)	205
4.3.1	Sub-theme 1: Social workers' level of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied	207
4.3.1.1	Some social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	208
4.3.1.2	Some social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	209
4.3.1.3	One participant had no understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	211
4.3.2	Sub-theme 2: Social workers' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST	211
4.3.2.1	Some of the social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST	211
4.3.2.2	Some of the social work participants possessed speculative knowledge about the legislation related to CST	212
4.3.2.3	Some of the social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST	212

4.3.3	Subtheme 3: Non-social work participants' understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'	212
4.3.3.1	Some non-social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	213
4.3.3.2	Some non-social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	214
4.3.4	Sub-theme 4: Non-social worker participants' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST	214
4.3.4.1	Some of the non-social worker participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST	215
4.3.4.2	Some of the non-social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST	215
4.3.5	Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit members' understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'	216
4.3.5.1	Some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	216
4.3.5.2	Some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	217
4.3.5.3	One SAPS FCS Unit member had no understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'	218
4.3.6	SAPS FCS Unit members' knowledge of the legislation relevant to CST	218
4.4	THEME 2: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' PERCEPTIONS OF THE EXTENT OF CSEC (WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CP AND CST) AND THEIR LEVELS OF EXPOSURE TO VICTIMS AND PERPETRATORS OF THESE TYPES OF COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION	219
4.4.1	Introduction	219
4.4.2	4.4.2 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery	220
4.4.3	Sub-theme 2: The social work participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST	223
4.4.4	Sub-theme 3: The non-social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery	227
4.4.5	Sub-theme 4: The non-social work participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST	231

4.4.6	Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit members' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery	235
4.4.7	Sub-theme 6: SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST	238
4.5	THEME 3: THE SERVICE PROVIDERS GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF THE PROFILES OF THE VICTIMS OF CSEC	239
4.5.1	Introduction	239
4.5.2	Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims	242
4.5.3	Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims	246
4.5.4	Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims	251
4.6	THEME 4: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF THE PROFILE OF THE PERPETRATORS OF CSEC	252
4.6.1	Introduction	252
4.6.2	Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi	254
4.6.3	Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi	258
4.6.4	Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of their physical attributes and modus operandi	264
4.7	CHAPTER SUMMARY	264

**CHAPTER 5**  
**RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS OF THE SERVICE**  
**PROVIDERS ON THEIR KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE AND**  
**SUGGESTIONS TO THE PHENOMENON OF CSEC – PART 2**

5.1	INTRODUCTION	268
5.2	THEME 5: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' VIEWS ON THE ACCOUNTS OF THE FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO CSEC WITH SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CP AND CST	268
5.2.1	Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST	270
5.2.1.1	Poverty and unemployment as factors contributing to CP and CST	271
5.2.1.2	Poor social conditions at home as a factor contributing to CP	272
5.2.1.3	The benefits inherent in sex work as contributing factor to CP	272
5.2.1.4	The influx of foreigners to South Africa and this country being regarded as a destination at which children are easy to access as factors contributing to CST	273
5.2.1.5	Poor policing and perpetrators not being apprehended as contributing factors to CST	274
5.2.1.6	Substance abuse as contributing factor to CST	275
5.2.2	Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST	275
5.2.2.1	Poor social conditions within the home and the environment as a factor contributing to CP and CST	275
5.2.2.2	Tourism as a factor contributing to CST	277
5.2.2.3	Children's views on sex and the benefits inherent in engaging in CP and CST as a contributing factor to CP	278
5.2.2.4	Society's portrayal of sex and foreigners' perceptions of South Africa's children as contributing factors to CST	278
5.2.3	Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST	279
5.2.3.1	Poverty as a factor contributing to CP and CST	279
5.2.3.2	The parents' chemical substance addiction as a factor contributing to CP and CST	280

5.2.3.3	Peer pressure as factor contributing to CP and CST	280
5.3	THEME 6: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF FACTORS ENABLING THEM TO ADDRESS CSEC	281
5.3.1	Introduction	281
5.3.2	Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST	283
5.3.2.1	Passion for their work and the capability to engage with the child on his/her level and the fact that service rendering to children is part of their service delivery mandate	283
5.3.2.2	Support of their supervisors, family and spiritual networks	284
5.3.2.3	Working in a conducive and supportive environment	285
5.3.2.4	Links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service	285
5.3.2.5	Effective intervention programmes as an enabling factor	287
5.3.2.6	Amended and more effective legislation as enabling factors	287
5.3.2.7	Formal and informal training as enabling factor	287
5.3.3	Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST	288
5.3.4	Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST	288
5.3.4.1	Effective legislation as an enabling factor	289
5.3.4.2	Effective protocols in dealing with child sexual abuse and exploitation cases as an enabling factor	289
5.3.4.3	Well-resourced units and training and education as enabling factors	289
5.3.4.4	Links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service	290
5.4	THEME 7: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' ACCOUNTS ON FACTORS HINDERING AND CHALLENGING THEM TO ADDRESS CSEC WITH REFERENCE TO CP AND CST	291
5.4.1	Introduction	291
5.4.2	Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST	294
5.4.2.1	Hindrances inherent in the client systems (microsystem)	294
5.4.2.2	Hindrances related to the social workers' themselves (microsystem) and	297

	their working conditions	
5.4.2.3	Hindrances within the meso- and macrosystems	303
5.4.3	Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST	305
5.4.4	Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts on factors hindering and challenging a response to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST	305
5.5	THEME 8: THE SUGGESTIONS BY THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS IN RESPONSE TO PHENOMENON OF THE CSEC WITH REFERENCE TO CP AND CST	307
5.5.1	Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	308
5.5.1.1	A suggestion to improve the state of the social work profession as enabler to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC	309
5.5.1.2	Social workers should be made aware and educated about CSEC	309
5.5.1.3	Suggestions related to the treatment and treatment modalities of victims and perpetrators of CSEC as enablers to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC	310
5.5.1.4	Suggestions on the prevention of CST	312
5.5.2	Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	315
5.5.2.1	Preventative suggestion: education, raising awareness and prevention	315
5.5.2.2	Suggestions directed at social workers and social work service delivery	316
5.5.2.3	Suggestions with reference to treatment modalities for intervening with both victims and perpetrators	317
5.5.2.4	A more effective policing and court system suggested as a response	317
5.5.2.5	Suggestions directed to the hospitality and tourism industry regarding responding to CSEC	318
5.5.2.6	Prioritisation of child protection as a response to address the occurrence of CSEC	319
5.5.3	Sub-theme 3: SAPS FCS Unit members' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	310
5.6	CHAPTER SUMMARY	320

**CHAPTER 6**  
**RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS OF HOSPITALITY AND**  
**TOURISM INDUSTRY SERVICE PROVIDERS' KNOWLEDGE OF AND**  
**RESPONSE TO THE PHENOMENON OF CP AND CST**

6.1	INTRODUCTION	324
6.2	THE RESPONSE OF THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY TO THE PHENOMENON OF CHILD SEX TOURISM	325
6.3	THE RESPONSE OF THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY IN SOUTH AFRICA	328
6.4	A DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE ON THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURIST INDUSTRY SERVICE PROVIDER PARTICIPANT GROUP	329
6.5	A THEMATIC PRESENTATION OF THE ACCOUNTS OF HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY SERVICE PROVIDERS' KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE TO THE PHENOMENA OF CP AND CST	332
6.5.1	Theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST	334
6.5.1.1	Sub-theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied	334
6.5.1.2	Sub-theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' levels of knowledge on legislation pertaining to CST was limited or non-existent	340
6.5.2	Theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of and their exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business	341
6.5.2.1	Sub-theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent CP and CST in their geographical areas of business	342
6.5.2.2	Sub-theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business	345
6.5.3	Theme 3: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC	347

6.5.4	Theme 4: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts in terms of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC	348
6.5.5	Theme 5: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST	349
6.5.6	Theme 6: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' suggestions for addressing CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST	351
6.5.6.1	Sub-theme 1: Educate and increase awareness about the CSEC amongst the individuals engaged with the hospitality and tourism industry and the public in general	351
6.5.6.2	Sub-theme 2: Implementation of The Code to address the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CST	353
6.5.6.3	Sub-theme 3: Training staff on how to deal with incidences of CST	354
6.5.6.4	Sub-theme 4: A suggestion on how social workers can assist the hospitality and tourism industry in the prevention of CST	355
6.6	CHAPTER SUMMARY	355

## **CHAPTER 7**

### **SUMMARIES AND CONCLUSIONS, LIMITATIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

7.1	INTRODUCTION	358
7.2	SUMMARY OF CHAPTER 1	358
7.3	SUMMARY, CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON THE APPLIED METHODOLOGY UTILISED IN THIS STUDY AND EXPLAINED IN CHAPTER 2	363
7.4	SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION-WISE DISCUSSION OF CHAPTERS 3, 4, 5 & 6	366
7.4.1	Findings in relation to the adult survivors of CSEC	367
7.4.2	Findings in relation to the service provider participants: the social workers, the NGO non-social workers and the SAPS FCS Unit members	369
7.4.3	Findings in relation to the hospitality and tourism industry	384

7.5	GOAL ATTAINMENT	386
7.6	LIMITATIONS OF THE STUDY	387
7.6.1	Limitations related to literature and empirically founded indigenous literature on the topic	387
7.6.2	Limitations in respect of the adult survivors of CSEC	388
7.7	RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SOCIAL WORK PRACTICE, TRAINING AND EDUCATION AND AN AGENDA FOR FURTHER RESEARCH	389
7.7.1	Recommendations for social work	389
7.7.1.1	Recommendations for social work policy	389
7.4.1.2	Recommendations for training and education of social workers	390
7.4.1.3	Recommendations in terms of an agenda for further Social Work research	391
7.7.2	Recommendations in respect of the non-social workers	392
7.7.3.	Recommendations in respect of the SAPS FCS Units	392
7.7.4	Recommendations in respect of the hospitality and tourism industry	393
7.8	FINAL SUMMARY	394
	BIBLIOGRAPHY	395
	ADDENDA	431

<b>TABLE</b>	<b>LIST OF TABLES</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b>		
1.1	Questions for the interview guide for social workers	54
1.2	Questions for the interview guide for the hospitality and tourism industry	55
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>		
2.1	Aspects to be covered in detail in a research report permitting a dependability audit (Shenton, 2004:71-72; Thomas & Magilvy, 2011:153)	73
2.2	Characteristics of qualitative research	75
2.3	Locations of data collection	79
2.4	The methods or strategies for purposive recruitment according to scholars in the field	89
2.5	A description of the recruitment methods employed for the recruitment of the participants	90
2.6	Advantages and disadvantages of face-to-face interviewing	104
2.7	Methods of data collection	109
2.8	Interview guide questions for the non-social work participants	111
2.9	Interview guide questions for the SAPS FCS Unit members	112
2.10	Interview guide questions for the adult survivors of CSEC	113
2.11	Advantages and disadvantages of using audio recording equipment (according to Bloor & Wood, 2006:16-18)	116
2.12	Guba's model for ensuring trustworthiness of qualitative research and the practical application of these methods applied in this study	123
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>		
3.1	Participant demographics: adult survivors of CSEC	137
3.2	An overview of the sub-themes, categories and sub-categories (where applicable in relation to theme 1: the accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their CSEC)	139

## TABLE

### CHAPTER 4

4.1	The demographic profile of Group 1: Social Work participants	202
4.2	The demographical detail of the non-social work participants	204
4.3	The demographical details of the participants from the SAPS FCS unit	205
4.4	An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 1: The service provider groups' levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge on the legislation applicable to CSEC, with specific reference to CST	206
4.5	An exposition of the sub-themes related to theme 2: The service provider groups' perceptions of the extent of CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST, and their levels of exposure to victims and perpetrators of the specified types of commercial sexual exploitation	220
4.6	An exposition of the sub-themes related to theme 3: The service provider groups' accounts of the profile of the victims of CSEC	242
4.7	An exposition of the sub-themes related to theme 4: The service provider groups' accounts of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC	253

### CHAPTER 5

5.1	An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 5: The service providers groups' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST	269
5.2	An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 6: The service providers groups' accounts of factors enabling them to respond to CSEC	282
5.3	An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 7: The service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST	292
5.4	An exposition of the subthemes and categories related to theme 8: The suggestions from the service provider groups in response to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	308

## **TABLE**

### **CHAPTER 6**

6.1	Participants demographics: Service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry	330
6.2	Summary of method of interview and interview setting of the hospitality and tourism industry service provider participants	331
6.3	An exposition of the themes and sub-themes on the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' knowledge of and response to the phenomena of child prostitution and child sex tourism	333

### **CHAPTER 7**

7.1	Research goals and how they have been met	386
-----	---	-----

### **LIST OF ADDENDA**

Addendum A: Preamble to an information and informed consent document for social workers	431
Addendum B: Preamble to an information and informed consent document for hospitality and tourism industry	435
Addendum C: Preamble to an information and informed consent document for SAPS FCS Unit members	439
Addendum D: Preamble to an information and informed consent document for non-social work NGO participants	443
Addendum E: Preamble to an information and informed consent document for adult survivors of CSEC	447
Addendum F: Informed consent	451
Addendum G: Knysna Tourism newsletter	454
Addendum H: Permission from the Western Cape Research Directorate of the SAPS	456

## LIST OF ACRONYMS

<b>ACRONYM</b>	<b>MEANING/DEFINITION</b>
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
ACRWC	African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child
B & B	Bed and Breakfast
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
Code of Conduct	A code for travel and tourism companies, providing guidance on the protection of children from sexual exploitation
CP	Child prostitution
CPR	Child Protection Register
CPU	Child Protection Unit
CRC	Convention on the Rights of the Child
CSE	Commercial sexual exploitation
CSEC	Commercial sexual exploitation of children
CST	Child sex tourism
CT	Child trafficking
CWSA	Child Welfare South Africa
ECPAT	End Child Prostitution, Child Pornography and the Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes
ECTAA	Group of National Tour Operators' Associations within the European Union
DSD	Department of Social Development
DWCPD	Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
FCS Unit	Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Unit
FTTSA	Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa
GDP	Gross domestic product
Grooming	Preparing a child for sexual abuse and exploitation
H5N1	Influenza pandemic
HOTREC	Hotels, Restaurants, Cafés and Similar Establishments of the European Union and the European Economic Area
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HSRC	Human Sciences Research Council
ICMEC	International Centre for Missing and Exploited Children
IH & RA	International Hotel and Restaurants Association

ILC	International Law Commission
ILO	International Labour Organization
ILO/IPEC	International Labour Organization/International Programme on the South African Elimination of Child Labour
ISASA	Internet Service Association of South Africa
ISPs	Internet service providers
IUF/UITA/ IUL	International Union of Food, Agricultural, Hotel, Restaurant, Catering, Tobacco and Allied Workers' Association
NACCW	National Association of Child Care Workers
NACL	Network Against Child Labour
NCMEC	National Centre for Missing and Exploited Children
NCPSS	National Child Protection Strategy and System
NGO	Non-governmental organization
NPA	National Plan of Action
NPO	Non-Profit Organisation
OPSC	Optional Protocol for the Prevention of the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography
PALERMO PROTOCOL	Protocol to Prevent Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children, Supplementing the United Nations Convention and Transnational Organised Crime
RAPCAN	Resource Aimed at the Prevention of Child Abuse and Neglect
SADC	Southern African Development Community
SANTAC	Southern African Regional Network against Trafficking and Abuse of Children
SAPA	South African Press Association
SAPS	South African Police Service
SE	Sexual exploitation
STIs	Sexually transmitted infections
TIP	Trafficking in Persons
TVPA	Trafficking Victims Protection Act (US)
UFTAA	Universal Federation of Travel Agents Associations
UN	United Nations
UNCRC	United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child
UNICEF	United Nations Children's Fund
UNODC	United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime
UNWTO	United Nations World Tourism Organisation
YAPI	Youth Advocate Program International

YECSEC Youth Ending Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children  
WHO World Health Organisation

## CHAPTER 1

### GENERAL INTRODUCTION AND ORIENTATION TO THE STUDY

#### 1.1 INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND, PROBLEM FORMULATION AND MOTIVATION FOR THE STUDY

This chapter titled 'general introduction and orientation to the study' serves various purposes. First, it introduces the topic being investigated by explaining it, providing background information to delineate the research problem focused on during the investigation, and serves as a motivation for undertaking this research project. Second, the research questions the endeavour seeks to answer are stated and the goals and objectives that steer the process of answering the formulated questions are given. Third, the research methodology proposed for the study is detailed.

The concept 'child sexual exploitation' (*hereafter abbreviated as CSE*) is interchangeably referred to in the literature as 'commercial sexual exploitation of children' (*hereafter abbreviated as CSEC*), a term by which it is also known. Definitions of what these two terms mean are largely similar and overlap a great deal (Chase & Statham, 2005:7; Melrose, 2013:155; McCoy & Keen, 2014:168). The term 'child sexual exploitation' has evolved over time, initiating from discourse in the late 1990s regarding children who are abused through prostitution. In recent times it has been renamed 'commercial sexual exploitation' which has resulted in vagueness of understanding and meaning (Asquith & Turner, 2008:5; Melrose, 2013:156). According to Melrose (2013:155), confusion has arisen amongst child care practitioners and service providers both when identifying the phenomenon and in responding to it adequately.

This interchangeable use of the concepts CSE and CSEC requires clarification. A commonly used definition of CSEC is the one from End Child Prostitution, Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) (Ferran, Berardi & Sakulpitakphon, 2008a:3) stating that CSEC is the "sexual abuse by an adult and remuneration in cash or kind to the child or a third person or persons", who could be intermediaries such as a pimp or parent. Expanding on this definition, the Department for Education in England (2011:9), in their action plan for tackling child sexual exploitation titled 'Safeguarding Children and Young People from Sexual Exploitation', explains child sexual exploitation thus: "sexual exploitation of children and young

people under 18 involves exploitative situations, contexts and relationships where young people (or a third person or persons) receive ‘something’ (e.g. food, accommodation, drugs, alcohol, cigarettes, affection, gifts, money) as a result of them performing, and/or another or others performing on them, sexual activities”. This is akin to the current usage of the concept *commercial sexual exploitation of children* hence either term will be used in this document.

CSEC entails “a form of violence against children and is a criminal practice” (Sakulpitakphon in ECPAT, 2007:5). The relationships in which exploitation occurs are usually characterised by violence, coercion and intimidation of a child or young person who has limited choices due to their socio-economic and/or emotional vulnerability. Those exploiting the child always have power over them by virtue of their age, gender, intellect, physical strength and/or economic or other resources (Chase & Statham, 2005:7; Department for Education in England, 2011:33).

CSEC encompasses a range of phenomena including child prostitution, child pornography, child sex trafficking (Chase & Statham, 2005:7; McCoy & Keen, 2014:169) and child sex tourism (CST) (Patterson, 2007:16). The focus of the discussion now shifts to the emergence of the phenomenon of CSEC.

### **1.1.1 The emergence of the phenomenon of CSEC**

The organisation ‘End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes’ (ECPAT) in their introductory brochure (ECPAT, 2011:2) quotes the International Labour Organisation (ILO) which estimates that there are as many as 1.8 million children who are exploited in either the commercial sex industry or pornography worldwide. The United Nations (UN) estimate is higher at two million (Hall, 2011:154). Furthermore, the ILO estimates that more than one in five people trafficked globally are children (ECPAT, 2011:2). In the United States, Estes and Weiner (in Twill, Green & Traylor, 2010:187) assert that the sexual exploitation and prostitution of children “is a multi-billion dollar industry”. ECPAT (2011:2) contends that social tolerance for the sexual exploitation of children is increasing, while the growth in child pornography is another trend that they are monitoring closely. Commercial child pornography has become a multi-billion dollar criminal enterprise and there are more than one million child abuse images on the Internet with that number growing fast (ECPAT, 2011:2). Pornography, as one of the forms of CSEC, is the lewd or erotic visual depiction of those younger than eighteen years old, where the depictions are

meant to arouse the viewer sexually yet excludes any educational or family photographs in which a nude child is depicted in a non-erotic way (Taylor & Quayle, 2003:4; McCoy & Keen, 2014:168).

Internet technology offers great opportunities for children and adults to learn about the universe in which we live but it has also had a huge impact on the sexual exploitation of children, specifically through the distribution of sexually exploitive images of children (Edelson, 2001:487-488; Chase & Statham, 2005:11-12; ICMEC, 2010:i). Allen (ICMEC, 2010:i), President and CEO of the International Centre for Missing and Exploited Children (ICMEC) postulates that, due to the development, increasing accessibility and use of home-computer technology, the distribution of these images has been revolutionised as it is becomes easier and less expensive to possess and disseminate images across international borders. Not a single country appears to be exempt from this form of child sexual exploitation (ICMEC, 2010: i).

Data from the National Centre for Missing and Exploited Children (NCMEC, 2012) in the United States of America shows that 19 per cent of the identified child pornography offenders had images of children younger than three, owing to the fact that preverbal children are deemed a 'safer' option for the production of pornography. A further 39 per cent of these identified offenders had images of children younger than six; while 82 per cent had images of children younger than twelve (NCMEC, 2012). The involvement of organised crime syndicates and extremist groups in the child pornography industry is also becoming more evident (NCMEC, 2012).

Children have become a commodity in this insidious crime and since there is no empirical research on the scope of the problem, estimates are generally used (NCMEC, 2012). In the British publication, *The Guardian*, Ibbotson (2008:3) comments that Internet crime involving the sexual exploitation of children has risen by more than 400 per cent since 1998. Concurrently there has been a noted increase in downloading, possessing and trading or distributing child pornography. Chase and Statham (2005:12) note that although there is great value in these images many paedophiles trade or exchange these photos rather than sell them. Sophisticated technologies make it easier to move illegal film or images without being caught with the result that pornography appears to be a highly profitable business, with commercial child pornography being estimated as a \$20bn industry worldwide in 2006 (Ibbotson, 2008:3).

This need for child pornography appears to go hand in hand with further sexual exploitation of children that includes child sex trafficking and child sex tourism (Cullen, 2006:443; Ibbotson, 2008:3). Ibbotson (2008:3) concludes that our lack of awareness of this situation is very dangerous particularly when it comes to our knowledge of sex offending as an activity. She refers to these crimes as the “dark underbelly of society” reflecting lack of research in the field thus asserts that only through addressing the reasons why these things happen, can they be stopped (Ibbotson, 2008:3).

In view of the fact that the aspects of child prostitution and child sex tourism are central to commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC), the key theme of this study, their link is now discussed.

### **1.1.2 The emergence of the phenomenon of child sex tourism and its link with child prostitution (children engaging in sex work) globally**

Child sex tourism (*hereafter referred to as CST*) is defined by Sakulpitakphon (ECPAT, 2007:6) as “the sexual exploitation of children by a person or persons who travel from one place to another, usually from a richer country to one that is less developed, and there engage in sexual acts with children”. Since CST is by its very term linked to the tourism industry, it is necessary to begin this discussion by setting the scene within the tourism industry.

In the last 60 years, tourism has continued to expand and diversify, becoming one of the largest and fastest growing sectors in the world economy, representing 5 per cent of the world’s gross domestic product (GDP), and 30 per cent of the global exports of services at approximately US\$ 1 trillion (UNWTO Tourism Highlights, 2011:2). This is according to the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO Tourism Highlights, 2011:2), which adds that many new destinations have emerged alongside the traditional ones of Europe and North America. Furthermore, this same organisation states that, despite occasional shocks such as recessionary dips, the 2009 influenza pandemic (H5N1) and airline closures, international tourist arrivals worldwide have shown continuous growth; from 25 million in 1950 to 940 million in 2011, and in the first eight months of 2014 another 5 per cent more than the previous year (UNWTO, 2014:n/a). In the world’s emerging regions, such as China, the Russian Federation and Brazil, growth has been fast, hence the part emerging and developing economies have in international tourist arrival data has risen at a steady pace, from 31 per cent in 1990 to 47 per cent in 2010 (UNWTO Tourism Highlights, 2011:2). Positive growth is

reported in all world regions and South Africa is no exception, with over 20 million people travelling in South Africa in 2012 of whom just over 9 million were international travellers (Department of Environment and Tourism, 2013:14). As a result, tourism creates an economic boost for countries on the receiving end of the influx of tourists (UNWTO Tourism Highlights, 2011:2). Most travellers originate from the Southern African Development Community (SADC), with the highest numbers being from Zimbabwe and Lesotho (ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:70).

Unfortunately, financial increases and economic upswings are not the only result of this growth as the impact of the increased numbers of visitors with even more disposable income than before, has also had a negative effect on the social fabric of the receiving country, especially the poorer and so-called third world countries. Some side-effects of globalisation and the tourism boom have actually encouraged child trafficking, particularly from the pressure the tourism industry exerts on governments to relax border controls to encourage an influx of tourists (O'Grady, 2001:134; Keenan, 2006:514; Hall, 2011:157). Furthermore, child sex tourism and sex trafficking appear to be a world pandemic today and the demand for commercial sexual services is driving markets and generating profits for the criminal traffickers (Shared Hope International (SHI), 2007:14; Gudzer, 2009; Hall, 2011:156).

The line between tourism and sex tourism (including child sex tourism) is difficult to draw because tourist development in less economically developed countries brings tourists and locals together in an unequal way, and it is therefore possible for any tourist to take advantage of the local unequal population (ECPAT, 2007:52 Gudzer, 2009). According to ECPAT Netherlands (2014:72), tourism and child prostitution meet at two intersections. The first is the direct use of tourism services and facilities to connect with children for sexual purposes (i.e. children may be supplied by an organising offender/s via a colluding taxi driver to a predator at a hotel). The second is via an indirect use of tourism services to gain access to children i.e. a traveller may stay at a hotel or a bed and breakfast but go out in the evening to find children for sex.

CST is but a single aspect within the wider issue of CSEC (Beddoe, Hall & Ryan, 2001:17, Hall 2011:157) and is distinguished by virtue of the way it has been classified as a national or international crime (Tepelus, 2008:103; George & Panko, 2011:134).

The phenomenon of sex tourism has been recognised in academic and anthropological circles since the 1970s, but research-based studies only started to appear in the

1980s. Books on this topic were only being published in the late 1990s and early 2000s (Andrews, 2004:418; Smith, MacLeod & Robertson, 2010:153). Sex tourism has been a taboo and peripheral issue in tourism studies, until relatively recently (Smith, MacLeod & Robertson, 2010:153). CST first emerged around 1983 and is termed thus because the offenders are tourists, business travellers or expatriates in tourist destinations, and the victims are children of local origin, which makes it not only a complex issue but also results in many social and economic problems (Beddoe, 2003:197; George & Panko, 2011:134-135).

CST has developed at different rates in different countries and European paedophile-type sex offenders have been abusing children since the early '80s or even before that. Networks of sex offenders and procurers were so entrenched that child sex tourism existed for a long time before any action was actually taken (Beddoe, 2003:199; Lalor & McElvaney, 2010:159-160; Pimonsaengsuriya, 2012:30).

CST is intricately connected with child prostitution, or children engaging in sex work, the trafficking of children and the production of child pornography (O'Connell Davidson, 2005:142; Cullen, 2006:443). Child prostitution, according to the Report of the Special Rapporteur on the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography (1996), is understood to mean "the act of engaging or offering the services of a child to perform sexual acts for money or other consideration", and prostitution is not committed by the child, but by the person who buys the sexual services of that child. Klain (1999:9) asserts that this definition is possibly too limiting to be effective in criminal prosecutions, but it is significant in that many prostituted young people engage in sex for their survival, exchanging food, shelter, substances and clothing instead of money, or in combination with it. ECPAT Netherlands (2014:3) refers to the prostitution of children simply as the involvement of children in sexual activities for "remuneration or any form of consideration".

The trafficking of children falls into the definition given in the United Nations (UN) Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children, Article 3(a) (Department of Social Development, 2012:1), which states that the trafficking in persons means the "recruitment, transportation, transfer, harbouring or receipt of persons by means of the threat of use of force, or other forms of coercion, abduction, of fraud, of deception, of the abuse of power or of a position of vulnerability or giving or receiving payments or benefits to achieve the consent of a person having control over another person for the purposes of exploitation".

With reference to prostitution, Montgomery (2001:193) postulates that while adult prostitution can be viewed as morally acceptable, this does not apply to child prostitution. Children, by their very definition as minors, have not reached the age of consent and consequently do not have the right to exchange sex for money. Moreover, their lack of self-determination means they are not in an equal position to negotiate or gain the upper hand in personal relationships. Therefore, and within the context of and related to tourism, there can be no mitigation for the use of a child prostitute (Montgomery, 2001:193) as this act constitutes a “gross violation of children’s rights” (Berardi, 2010:303).

In some countries CST has emerged as part of the local sex industry in places such as brothels, bars and clubs (Beddoe, 2003:199; Cullen, 2006:160-163). In parts of Asia, such as Thailand and the Philippines, sex tourism developed during the Vietnamese and Korean wars when American and Allied troops on rest and recreation breaks created a demand for prostitution (Beddoe, 2003:199; Cullen, 2006:160-163). In the ‘70s and ‘80s when these wars ended, unscrupulous brothel owners used the existing networks to expand the prostitution and CST industries, catering for foreign (including Asian) businessmen who demanded children for sex (Beddoe, 2003:199). Traffickers took children from rural parts of these countries as well as from the streets and, through effective media communication, Thailand and the Philippines became known as “child sex tourism destinations” (Beddoe, 2003:199; Cullen, 2006:165). CST thus occurs in various settings and sex tourists may make contact with children in public places such as restaurants or bars, although the abuse itself often takes place in private homes, guest houses and even large hotels (Hall & Ryan 2001:11; Beddoe, 2003:199; Cullen, 2006:169; Abueva, 2006:177; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:72).

There are two types of organisers of child sex tourism and the trafficking of children for the sexual exploitation of children (commercially and otherwise). First, there are the “institutional organisers” (Shared Hope International, 2007:4), such as businesses, governments and other institutions that gain from commercial sex markets that use trafficked women and children. An example of this is hotels that enable prostitution and child sex tourism by allowing the prostitution of women and children on their premises or turning a blind eye to it. This state of affairs may also be ascribed to the fact that hotel management and staff are not trained to combat this social ill effectively (Shared Hope International, 2007:4; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:72). Second, there are “individual organisers” such as pimps, traffickers, taxi drivers, document forgers, pornographers, corrupt or negligent officials in governments or businesses, and others

who could benefit directly or indirectly from the commercial sex markets (Cullen, 2006:169; Shared Hope International, 2007:4). Some of these individual organisers receive a direct benefit, such as commissions that are paid to taxi drivers or government officials who ignore the sexual exploitation of children in return for promotions or cash (Shared Hope International, 2007:4). Some police officials in some countries have even been implicated in child prostitution rings and have, on occasions, operated as guards at brothels providing child sex (Cullen, 2006:185; Chetty, 2007:6).

Internet communication technology plays a significant role in promoting sex tourism. Websites dedicated to attracting tourists looking for sex tourism experiences exist in abundance on the Internet which has become the single most powerful facilitator of the commercial sex trade (Keenan, 2006:514; Shared Hope International, 2007:17; George & Panko, 2011:135). Sex tourism and the attendant attractions such as brothels, live sex shows, escort services and red light districts are being actively marketed, especially on the Internet on websites such as Sly Traveller at <http://slyguide.com> (Shared Hope International, 2007:4). Major sex tourist destinations that are highlighted on these websites and in advertisements are Bangkok, Amsterdam, Rio de Janeiro, Hong Kong, Los Angeles and Tijuana, (Smith et al., 2010:153). Commenting on the use of the Internet in the promotion of sex tourism, O'Connell Davidson (in Cole & Morgan, 2010:53) points out that travel clubs and networks as well as Internet sites, such as the TSM Website Travel and the Single Male–website ([tsmtravel.com](http://tsmtravel.com)) exist for and are run by “hard-core” male sex tourists (described as tourists whose reason for travel is to seek out plenty of cheap and diverse commercial sexual opportunities). Moore, Kosek and Panadian (2003:335) describe [tsmtravel.com](http://tsmtravel.com) as a site which enables its more than 6 000 members to locate and exploit economically vulnerable populations globally, and provides up-to-date information on destinations such as Thailand, the Philippines and Brazil including their sex tourism prices. In contrast to this, the term “organised sex tour” may be misleading because of the fact that there are no large organised tour groups or block bookings in child sex tourism destinations, but rather organisations that facilitate the travel of paedophile members who wish to travel to poorer countries specifically for sex with children (Todres, 1999:2 -3; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:128).

More recently, a new trend in CSEC has come to light, a form of “virtual child sex tourism” (The Star, 18 May 2012). In the South African newspaper, *The Star* (18 May 2012), the South African Press Association (SAPA) reports in their article titled “Real-time child sex ordered and streamed online” that paedophiles and child sex offenders

are now using Internet live streaming sites to order custom-made child sex crimes for real-time viewing. In the article Gaughan, head of the Australian Federal Police's hi-tech crime squad, was quoted as saying that sites such as Skype were being used to arrange made-to-order child abuse. Gaughan further remarked that sex offenders are now able to order crimes according to their own viewing pleasure, which means that while the person is sitting watching their Skype or other live streaming facility in their own country, the child is being sexually assaulted according to the viewer's requirements, in another country (The Star, 18 May 2012). The question arises as to who the people are who abuse children in this way and needs an answer.

It is important to understand more about the actors in the act that frames this phenomenon called 'child sex tourism'. The stereotypical picture of 'sex tourists' is that they are overweight, old men who are losing their hair and, because they are unattractive to girls in their own countries and therefore unable to get free sex, they have to travel to other countries to buy sex there. In addition, they are labelled as, being wealthy and originating from the Western European or American "industrialised nations" (Montgomery, 2001:192; Andrews, 2004:422; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:127; Hall, 2011:159). It is easy to dislike this kind of figure as he is using, and flaunting his structural, racial, political and social power over the person he is paying for sex, and every aspect of this disparity is intensified (O'Grady, 1996:10; Montgomery, 2001:192, George & Panko, 2011:137). This sentiment is echoed by Rao (2003:155) in her investigation into what she terms 'the dark side of tourism' i.e. the trafficking of Nepali girls for brothels in neighbouring India. She points out that advertisements for sex tourism indicate that a sex tourist is generally a man who is tired of women's liberation and feminism, is no longer enjoying life and needs to exercise his alternative sexual preferences without the constraints of political correctness. He could be a worker, a professional or a manager (Rao, 2003:155; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:72). Sex tourists are male and female (O'Connell Davidson, 2005:125), and although much is written about stereotyped male sex tourists, little can be found about females (sugar mommies) or homosexual or "pink dollar" sex tourists (Smith et al., 2010:153).

It appears though that there is no tight description of a child sex tourist and various studies of child sex tourism cases around the world show that no isolated profile can describe child sex offenders and that offenders include doctors, musicians, diplomats, teachers, labourers, wealthy businessmen, photographers and a range of other professionals. Therefore child sex offenders are extremely diverse in their employment and socio-economic backgrounds (Beddoe, 2003:199; Andrews, 2004:422; O'Connell

Davidson, 2005:27). In terms of the nationality of offenders, Patterson (2007:17) states that various studies have shown that at least 25 per cent of all international child sex tourists originate from the United States of America.

Child sex tourists fall into one of two categories: the first involves the abuse of children by paedophile sex offenders; and the second is the opportunistic sex offender (Beddoe, 2003:197; O'Connell Davison, 2005:126; George & Panko, 2011:135). The first category, the paedophile sex offender, is an offender who specifically seeks out children as the focus of their interest and activities (Beddoe, 2003:197; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:127). Predatory by nature, they tend to network with each other across the globe in order to find locations where they are unlikely to be caught or prosecuted. Many of these offenders, according to Beddoe (2003:197), have been identified in tourist locations working as teachers or in other occupations where they have ready access to children. Known sex offenders have also been found running guest houses and hotels, and in these positions they provide the connections for others of like mind, usually through the Internet (Patterson, 2007:18). Paedophile sex offenders do not usually establish contact with children through brothels, preferring to seduce street children or children who wander around seashore areas, with gifts or money. Children are often brought to the paedophile's hotel rooms by local people who act as the third party or an intermediary (Beddoe, 2003:198; Berardi, 2010:305); paedophiles can be attracted to boys or girls or both and, although their target age is usually around 13 or 14, they can abuse children of any age. Although this type of offender is usually the type that becomes the focus of media sensationalism, they are not amongst the majority of sex child tourists (Beddoe, 2003:198). In fact, recent research by ECPAT in Italy (O'Briain, Grillo & Barbosa, 2008:15–16) has revealed that a mere three per cent of the approximately 80 000 Italians travelling overseas for sex are paedophiles, while most are ordinary men and women, with an average age of 27, of whom approximately 90 per cent are male and 25 per cent are homosexuals.

The second category is the 'opportunistic sex offender' or 'sexual experimenter', a person who would not visit a brothel at home but, when on holiday, will visit bars and brothels at out of town tourist destinations (Montgomery, 2001:195, Beddoe, 2003:198; Song, 2003:1; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:126; George & Panko, 2011:135). They operate with confidence and without fear of discovery and tend to go after younger prostitutes perhaps because of the fear of AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome). They are of the view that the younger prostitutes have less of a chance of being infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (Beddoe, 2003:198; Andrews,

2004:426). Racist and sexist views possibly give them a feeling of entitlement where they can do what they like in a destination that may have been selected for its exotic experiences and which markets sex as part of the experience (Beddoe, 2003:198; Andrews, 2004:423; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:126). The opportunistic offenders would never actively seek out children for sex on home turf and may be shocked at the thought; but would be tempted to experiment on holiday. Some tourists seem willing to follow paedophile urges on holiday where climates or cultures may encourage different morals to emerge (Montgomery, 2001:195; Andrews, 2004:423; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:126). Beddoe (2003:98) points to the fact that it is not uncommon for women and children to be bought for the duration of a tourist's stay in countries where sex tourism is more open.

Sexual morality in the industrialised westernised countries has changed and, as a result, behaviours formerly frowned upon by society and thought of as issues to be dealt with by the state, such as homosexuality and adultery, are now viewed as private matters (Montgomery, 2001:192). With the relaxation of the tight control over such issues, control over other issues has also loosened, in particular child sexuality and prostitution (Montgomery, 2001:192; Andrews, 2004:423).

A pretty grim picture regarding the commercial sexual exploitation of children the world over has emerged in this discussion and the literature shows that CSE is destroying the life of countless children in nations across the world. Children from nations both rich and poor, many as young as seven years old, are exploited for sexual purposes by adults (Saayman & Smallberger, 1996:15). Tourism and child sex tourism as it is currently known in South Africa is the theme of the next section.

### **1.1.3 The emergence of the phenomenon of child sex tourism and its link with child prostitution (children engaging in sex work) in South Africa**

Tourism and its development was not generally a major source of foreign exchange in South Africa. As Brennan and Allen (2001:204) note, prior to the publication of the White Paper on Tourism in 1992 tourism was primarily in the hands of the private sector and pre-1992 the international demand for tourism had not met expectations. This seemed to be partially due to the low international status of the apartheid government, the media's reporting on crime and because of price protection of the flights to South Africa (Brennan & Allen, 2001:204, 205).

In 1998, as a continent, Africa attracted around 25 million tourists, around four per cent of all global international arrivals. Harrison (2001:15) notes that with the exception of South Africa, Morocco, Zimbabwe, Kenya, Botswana and Tunisia, the continent does not really appeal to the leisure traveller, but asserts that the overthrow of apartheid has resulted in South Africa becoming a major player in the continent's tourism industry. The country attracts nearly 25 per cent of all the international visitors to Africa (Brennan and Allen, 2001:205; Harrison, 2001:15; UNWTO Tourism Highlights, 2011:9). Furthermore political transformation has unlocked changes in the tourism demand internationally as from 1990 until 2004, arrivals from overseas grew by 73 per cent with a marked general increase in visitor numbers during the late 1990s. However, it still has not reached predicted levels (Brennan & Allen, 2001:205). Ten years later, the United Nations (UN) agency responsible for the promotion of responsible, sustainable and universally accessible tourism, the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO), produced the Tourism Highlights Report (2011:9) which shows that South Africa boasted tourism arrival figures of 7 012 000 for 2009 and 8 084 000 for 2010, an increase of 15.1 per cent.

Another area of tourism growth in South Africa is the so-called voluntourism that combines voluntary work with travel for leisure purposes. While it is touted by South African Tourism on their website as a way for travellers to bring about change in their worldview while travelling, it is also a conduit for predators to make contact with children (ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:70).

The Trafficking in Persons (TIP) Report (2011:22) is a comprehensive resource of governmental anti-human trafficking efforts and the principal diplomatic tool of the US government. It is used to engage foreign governments in human trafficking and states that South Africa is a "source, transit, and destination country" for men, women and children who are trafficked and forced into labour including commercial sexual exploitation. The relevance to South Africa is that this report provides an updated, global look at the nature and scope of trafficking and also points to the various actions governments take to confront and eliminate it. Worldwide, the report is used by international organisations, foreign governments, and non-governmental organisations as a tool to see where resources are most needed (TIP Report, 2011:22).

In the TIP Report (2011), the US Department of State places each country on one of three tiers based on its government's efforts to comply with the "minimum standards for the elimination of trafficking" found in Section 108 of the United States Trafficking

Victims Protection Act of 2000 (TVPA). In the 2014 TIP Report (2014:348), South Africa is cited as a Tier 2 country as from 2009. This is an upgrade from the previous Tier 2 WL (on the watch list) ranking it held from 2005 to 2009 (TIP Report, 2011:22). A Tier 2 ranking means that a country's government does not fully comply with the TVPA's minimum standards but is making an effort to be compliant. The Tier 2 WL-ranking is the same as Tier 2-ranking but the WL-notification signifies that a significant number of victims of trafficking is noted which suggests a notable increase in the trafficking in persons and a substantial failure to combat the problem (TIP Report, 2011:22).

Sakulpitakphon, Programme Associate for Combating CST and Trafficking, ECPAT International (ECPAT, 2007:6) states that it is documented that trafficking of children for sexual purposes and child sex tourism are "inextricably linked", that they are fed by a "demand for sexual activities with children" and both can utilise the tourism industry to achieve this end. ECPAT International's African network members state that the African countries most affected by child sex tourism are Benin, Cameroon, Cote d'Ivoire, Tanzania (Zanzibar), Madagascar, Mauritius, Nigeria, Senegal, Kenya, South Africa, The Gambia, Ghana and Morocco, with the last five countries being the most popular (ECPAT, 2007:6). In South Africa children are trafficked from poorer, usually rural areas to cities such as Cape Town, Johannesburg, Durban and Bloemfontein where street gangs and organised crime set children up as child prostitutes in these destinations which are popular sex tourism destinations (ECPAT, 2009; TIP, 2011:22).

In South Africa, Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA) (Fairtourisma, 2010a:1), an organisation which promotes responsible tourism in southern Africa, estimates that 30 000 children under the age of 18 are victims of CSEC. Due to underreporting and recording it is extremely difficult to ascertain even reasonable numbers (Fairtourisma, 2010b:1; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:71). The Global Monitoring Report for South Africa, produced by End Prostitution, Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT, 2013:72) in 2013, which monitors the status of action against commercial sexual exploitation of children, admits that it is unknown to what extent South African children are engaged in prostitution. However, they quote the Human Sciences Research Council (HRSC) figure of between 28 000 and 30 000, half of whom are between 10 and 14 years old, and the other half are between 15 and 18 years old. This figure may seem low when seen against the roughly 20 million children in this age bracket. With prevailing inequality, unemployment, lack of education and poverty as a backdrop, South Africa presents fertile ground for an exploding child sex

industry (Fairtourismsa, 2010a:1). In addition, both UNICEF and ECPAT indicate that approximately 180 000 children had lost one parent or had been orphaned through HIV/AIDS-related deaths by 1999, leaving a huge number of children on their own, having to look after themselves, a situation which can drive them to prostitution and make them vulnerable to exploiters (ECPAT, 2007:5; Chetty, 2007:9).

The Network Against Child Labour estimates that 400 000 children are engaged in child labour and some of these children are forced or sold into prostitution in different parts of South Africa (Chetty, 2007:9). In 2007 estimates were that approximately 15 new girls between the age of 15 and 18 years are arrested for prostitution every month in South Africa (Chetty, 2007:9). In Cape Town approximately 25 per cent of the street children are engaged in prostitution (Powell, 2007:5).

Awareness of the sexualisation and abuse of young South African children is beginning to increase. In the face of evidence of an apparent growth of the child prostitution phenomenon numerous research papers and specialists analyses have been, and are being, devoted to it (O'Grady, 1996:10; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:127; Montgomery, 2008:903). According to the Southern African Regional Network against Trafficking and Abuse of Children (SANTAC, 2010:1), the past 20 years has seen the issue of child sex tourism figuring more frequently in news reports.

In 2007, van Schalkwyk, a journalist of *The Mail & Guardian* (31 October 2007) published a comprehensive article about child sex tourism calling it the "often overlooked aspect of child abuse". In the article van Niekerk, social worker and national coordinator of Childline South Africa was quoted as specifically mentioning that street children often report sexual encounters with adults who are not South African nationals. Van Niekerk added that even though few cases of child sex tourism are reported, experts in South Africa agree that these reported cases only represent the tip of the iceberg (van Schalkwyk, 2007) implying it is a complex and unexposed issue and there is so much more to know about it.

Child sex tourists have a tendency to avoid the laws in their own countries by travelling to developing countries in search of child prostitutes. Globally sex tourists frequent these countries: South Africa, Brazil, Cambodia, Russia, Vietnam, Germany and the United States (O'Connell Davidson, 2005:127; Flowers, 2006:137; Patterson, 2007:20).

In addition, van Niekerk (quoted by van Schalkwyk, 31 October 2007) warns that domestic child sex tourism should not be discounted and describes a case where two men, too scared to abuse children in their own locality, preferred to travel to another part of South Africa to do so. Also in 2007, Bhavna (2007:2) wrote in the *Pretoria News* that children as young as eight were being sexually abused by foreign travellers in exchange for cash, clothes, food or a place to stay and expressed concern that the problem was becoming more sophisticated and growing swiftly.

Leading up to the 2010 World Cup, coverage on child sex tourism in local papers intensified, perhaps an indication that mega-events also have an effect on the growth of child sex tourism. In an article titled "Child sex tourism alarm" in the KwaZulu-Natal newspaper, *The Mercury*, the social impact of a mega-event such as the World Cup was discussed. In it Powell (2007:5) wrote that Cape Town is rapidly becoming known as a top destination for child sex tourism, and that the 2010 World Cup was expected to encourage more sex tourists to the city. The article quotes Seif, executive director of Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa as saying that there was very little debate, if any, on the social impact of the 2010 World Cup. In its report on the International Colloquium on mega-event sustainability, the South African Department of Environment and Tourism (2010:20) states that children are one of the most vulnerable sectors of society and that their rights are both protected and violated by tourism development.

Furthermore, the opportunity to exploit children does present itself in the tourism industry, and the risk to children is aggravated by poverty, inequality and HIV/AIDS (South African Department of Tourism, 2010:20). It holds forth that the tourism industry itself is not responsible for child exploitation but does acknowledge that it could potentially provide an enabling environment, due to the fact that travel involves the movement of children across national boundaries. In addition, it recognises that ECPAT has identified South Africa as an emerging child sex tourism hotspot (ECPAT, 2007:6; SA Department of Environment and Tourism, 2010:20). News reports bear witness to the situation: In 2012, the headline-grabbing arrests of child traffickers such as that reported in *The Sowetan* (SAPA, 20 February 2012); the South African Press Association (SAPA) which reported on the child sex workers who were rescued from a building in the Point Road area of Durban, KwaZulu-Natal, including the comment that eight of them were minors. The online news source, *News 24* (25 April 2012), reported that three people had been arrested when 16 young girls, eight of them minors, and some as young as 12 and under, were under the influence of drugs but were rescued.

It is unclear whether the growth is real or perceived, or due to greater visibility and better reporting, as no official figures on the problem exists. What is certain is that child sex is available and an unacceptable number of children in vulnerable circumstances are still constantly at risk of sexual exploitation by economically more powerful strangers from a different community or a different country (SANTAC, 2010:1; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:71). It has become apparent that children who are not currently at risk of exploitation due to low tourist arrivals in their areas, or the comparative inaccessibility of their home regions, may fast become vulnerable if protective mechanisms are not put in place when economic conditions and tourist flows change and expose their communities to contacts not experienced previously (SANTAC, 2010:1).

In terms of child sex trafficking ECPAT's Global Monitoring Report of 2013 (ECPAT, 2013:13; TIP, 2014:348) states that the extent of trafficking in children both within the borders and across borders is unknown due to the "lack of systematically gathered quantitative information". However, what is known is that South Africa is a source, a transit region and a destination country for children who are trafficked for the purposes of sex and labour. The ECPAT Global Monitoring Report of 2013 (ECPAT, 2013:13) further indicates that girls are also trafficked internally from poor rural areas, often due to parents being tricked by pimps with lures of education and good jobs. They are then forced into prostitution after the pimp has obtained parental consent to travel with the child to other areas. Girls are also sometimes kidnapped with the intention of being trafficked into gangs who hold them captive and force them into prostitution (ECPAT, 2013:13). In addition, the 2014 TIP Report (TIP, 2014:348) states that, although local criminal rings are involved in organising child prostitution, syndicates from Nigeria play a dominant role in the commercial sex trade in Hillbrow, South Africa, and other areas. In addition, this very TIP Report also points out that Russian and Bulgarian crime syndicates are also currently operational in the sex industry in Cape Town's sex trade, as well as Chinese nationals who co-ordinate the trafficking of Asian nationals to Cape Town (TIP, 2014:348).

In conclusion, a 2006 ECPAT Report (ECPAT, 2006:12) suggests that the public is recognising that sex tourism is taking place within South African borders, and that it may affect the minors of this country especially in Cape Town, a destination that is increasingly being seen and promoted as a sex tourism destination. However, statistical data is definitely not available at this point in time, and indeed, very little comprehensive research on this issue has been conducted as of yet.

Having explored the phenomenon of CSEC in the global and the South African contexts, it is time to turn now to look at the way the international community has chosen to respond to this phenomenon.

#### **1.1.4 A global response to combat CSEC**

In this section the researcher will provide an overview of the global response in tackling this complex network of interconnected social ills involving trafficking, prostitution and child sex tourism. These responses relate to the legislature and the social work and child-related helping services, such as child protection and anti-trafficking organisations assisting the tourism industry and government to address this phenomenon.

##### **1.1.4.1 The international legislative approach and response to combat CSEC**

Various laws have been passed, conventions ratified and codes adopted to combat child abuse, child trafficking and child sex tourism. In 1959 the United Nations member states adopted the Declaration of the Rights of the Child which states under its principle 9: "The child shall be protected against all forms of neglect, cruelty and exploitation. He shall not be the subject of traffic, in any form. The child shall not be admitted to employment before an appropriate minimum age; he shall in no case be caused or permitted to engage in any occupation or employment which would prejudice his health or education, or interfere with his physical, mental or moral development" (United Nations Cyberschoolbus:n.d; George & Panko, 2011:137).

Subsequently, in the 1990s, Article 34 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child (CRC) was adopted and opened for signature, ratification and accession by the United Nations General Assembly (Resolution 44/25 of 20 November 1989) and entered into force on 2 September 1990. Article 34 of the CRC focuses on child protection in that signatories undertake to protect children from all forms of sexual exploitation and sexual abuse. Agreement to appropriate national, bilateral and multilateral action to prevent the inducement or coercion of a child to engage in any illegal sexual activity is obligatory. Prevention and protection for children from exploitation or use in prostitution or any other illegal sexual practices, including the use of children in the production of pornographic performances and materials is mandatory (Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Human Rights:n.d; George & Panko, 2011:137-138).

This particular convention is in force in almost the entire community of nations, providing a common legal and moral framework for the development of an agenda for children and has been ratified by more countries than is the case for any other human rights treaty in history (ECPAT, 2007:6; Chetty, 2007:26).

Article 1 of The Convention on the Rights of the Child defines a child as “every human being below the age of 18 years” within a State’s jurisdiction, unless they have been afforded majority status under the law under whose jurisdiction they are resident. Consequently this convention would apply to all children within the borders or a country’s territory and would include foreign and refugee children, who are separated from their families in strange surroundings and thus vulnerable to child sex tourism (Chetty, 2007:26).

In his commentary on Article 34 of the CRC, Muntarhorn (2007:1) explains that Article 34 obliges state parties to take measures against the sexual exploitation and sexual abuse of children since these crimes have become so widespread assisted by improved and increased communications and tourism worldwide. Traditionally, abuse and exploitation would include prostitution, while more modernistic forms of abuse now include sex tourism and child pornography on the Internet (Muntarhorn, 2007:1). The main thrust of Article 34 concerns three areas: child prostitution, child pornography and child trafficking for sexual purposes. Following its adoption, a Special Rapporteur on the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography was appointed, who annually reviews the situation globally and provides a report to the UN. In addition, the Optional Protocol for the Prevention of the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography (OPSC) was adopted, which reinforces the articles of the CRC (Muntarhorn, 2007:7; UNICEF, 2009:viii; George & Panko, 2011:138).

In 1996, the first World Congress against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children was held in Stockholm, Sweden (ECPAT, 2012). During this congress 120 countries adopted The Stockholm Declaration and Agenda for Action against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children.

According to Muntarhorn (2007:8), this event has been most influential. Its stated objective is to protect children by preventing trafficking and abuse and also the recovery and reintegration of abused and trafficked children (Muntarhorn, 2007:8). Furthermore, promotion of co-ordination and co-operation between states and their partners is encouraged with regard to adopting a number of measures to step up

awareness and education campaigns and to mobilise their business sectors. Specifically, in relation to sex tourism, states were urged to adopt and implement “extra-territorial” laws (Muntarhorn, 2007:8) that criminalise the sexual acts against children, Under these laws nationals would be pursued criminally in their own countries irrespective of where they perpetrated the crime against the child (Muntarhorn, 2007:9). The level of implementation of the suggested measures and the progress that adopting states are making is monitored by the non-governmental organisation (NGO) ‘End Child Prostitution, Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purpose’ known internationally as ECPAT. The 2001 Yokohama Global Commitment, held five years after the first World Congress in 1996 in Stockholm, underlines and reinforces agreements made in Stockholm that are to protect and promote the rights of children with regard to their sexual exploitation and abuse (CSEC World Congress, 2001:1; UNICEF, 2009viii).

The Optional Protocol for the Prevention of the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography (OPSC) gave rise to the development of more international instruments:

1999 – The International Labour Organisation (ILO) Convention No 182 concerning the Immediate Action on the Elimination of the Worst Forms of Child Labour was adopted in Geneva, at the 87th International Labour Conference (ILC) session (17 June 1999) and was ratified by 179 countries including South Africa (in 2000). This convention called on governments, employers and employees to take action against child labour. It included: taking action against any person or group using a child for sexual gratification or the procurement of a child for such purposes; or offering a child for prostitution; or for the production of pornography; or for a child to be used for pornographic performances; all forms of slavery, such as the sale or trafficking of children or debt bondage of children (ILO, n.d:1; UNICEF, 2009:viii).

2000 - Protocol to Prevent Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children, Supplementing the United Nations Convention and Transnational Organised Crime – also known as the Palermo Protocol. It was adopted by resolution A/RES/55/25 of 15 November 2000 at the fifty-fifth session of the General Assembly of the United Nations, held in New York. In relation to child sex tourism, this convention and its protocol concerns the actions of child traffickers who facilitate child sex and those involved in the forced labour, slavery or servitude of children, but

neglects to cover the act of actually committing a sex act with a child (Chetty, 2007:37; UNICEF, 2009:viii).

Additionally, in May 2002, the UN General Assembly's Special Session on Children adopted a global plan of action called a 'World Fit for Children' under which states agreed to develop national plans that would focus on, amongst other areas, the following (United Nations General Assembly, 2002):

- the development of urgent international and national steps to both fight existing child sex markets and put a halt on developing new ones (for CSEC and the sale of human body parts);
- raising awareness of the fact that trafficking and CSEC is illegal and causes harm to children;
- promoting help and support of the private sector, including the tourism industry and the media, to campaign against CSEC;
- identifying the fundamental causes of CSEC and implementing strategies to address them;
- implementing recovery and integration strategies and services that would offer CSEC and sexual exploitation (SE) victims safety, protection and security;
- utilising any and all international legal instruments to bring to justice the perpetrators of all forms of SE and CSEC (i.e. in the familial or commercial context) or any other act that compromises the best interests of the child;
- engaging in local and international monitoring and information sharing exercises as well as training border officials in the intricacies of transnational child trafficking as well as the humane and dignified treatment of victims; and
- taking steps at government and private sector levels to combat the use of the Internet and other information technology commonly used in the sale of children for purposes of CSEC, as well as other forms of violence or abuse against children and adolescents.

The international legislative approach and developments to protect children has been dealt with and the focus of discussion will now turn to what South Africa is doing to combat this problem on a legislative level.

#### 1.1.4.2 The South African legislative approach and response to combat CSEC

South Africa's total population was estimated at 50 million midway through 2011; of this 18,5 million were children under 18 years old, and 10 per cent of them lived in the

Western Cape (Meintjies & Hall in Berry, Biersteker, Dawes, Lake & Smith, 2013:86), the area under study in this research project. There are significant laws protecting these children, such as the 'Convention on the Rights of the Child' and the 'African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child' but it is the Constitution which is the supreme law of South Africa (The Constitution: Act No 108 of 1996:3; George & Panko, 2011:139).

The Constitution of South Africa, as adopted on 8 May 1996 and amended on 11 October 1996 by the Constitutional Assembly, provides additional rights to children through Section 28 of the Bill of Rights which, although it does not specifically refer to child sex tourism, entrenches the right of children to be protected from abuse; and for children not to have to perform age inappropriate services; or to have their spiritual, moral or social development placed at risk (The Constitution: Act No 108 of 1996:3; Vrancken & Chetty, 2009:131; Abrahams & Matthews, 2011:4). This specific focus on children's rights makes the South African constitution unique, according to Girma, UNICEF Country Representative to South Africa (Vrancken & Chetty, 2009:131; Abrahams & Matthews, 2011:4).

A number of international conventions (mentioned in section 1.1.4.1) have been ratified with respect to child trafficking and child abuse in South Africa specifically: the Convention on the Rights of the Child (1995); the Optional Protocol on the Sale of Children; Child Prostitution and Child Pornography (OPSC) (2003); the Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children (2004); and the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the African Child (2000) (UNICEF, 2009:vii; ECPAT, 2010:11).

The Children's Act (Act No 38 of 2005) was passed by the South African Parliament to give effect to some of the rights entrenched in the Constitution as well as to the relevant international instruments to which South Africa is bound, but it does not specifically deal with child sex tourism (Vrancken & Chetty, 2009:132; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:78). According to this Act, it is an offence for any natural or juristic person, and any partnership, to traffic or allow a child to be trafficked in South Africa; and for a South African citizen or permanent resident or juristic person or partnership registered under South African law, to commit this act outside of South Africa (Vrancken & Chetty, 2009:132; ECPAT, 2014:78).

Furthermore, this Children's Act (Act No. 38 of 2005) as amended by Children's Amendment Act (Act No. 41 of 2007) changed the age of majority from 21 to 18 years and outlines that decisions regarding children should be made in the best interests of the child and also states that children have the right to take part in decisions regarding themselves (Abrahams & Matthews, 2011:35).

Specifically regarding the tourism industry, the Children's Act (Act No. 38 of 2005) also provides for any act of SE in that any person employed by a tourism organisation, or representing a tourism organisation, or with the implied or expressed consent of the director or principal of a tourism organisation, may be found guilty, and the organisation represented may have their license to trade revoked (Vrancken & Chetty, 2009:134; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:73).

This Act also makes it illegal for anyone to knowingly lease or sublease, or allow any room, house, building or establishment in South Africa to be used to hold a victim of child trafficking. The person who is the owner, lessor, manager, tenant or occupier of any premises where CSEC occurs, once they have found out that it occurred there, can be convicted for failing to report these acts to the SAPS. It is also illegal to cause to happen or to advertise, publish, print, broadcast or distribute information that may directly suggest or allude to trafficking by any means, including through the Internet or any other information technology in South Africa (Vrancken & Chetty, 2009:134).

In order to promote further protection for children, in Parliament in 2010 the South African government also tabled a Bill to combat human trafficking. This addresses the gaps in existing legislative infrastructure on human trafficking as it provides for further legislation that is more extensive, specifically the protection of, and assistance to, victims of trafficking, and the prosecution of persons engaged in trafficking. The Criminal Law Sexual Offences and Related Matters Amendment Act of 2007 (Act No 32 of 2007) contains provisions that criminalise human trafficking for sexual purposes, or any other purpose (Abrahams & Matthews, 2011:49; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:74). Other Laws that have been put in place to protect children in South Africa are: the Child Justice Act (Act No 75 of 2008); and the Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act No. 7 of 2013). Furthermore, and according to the 2011 Department of Social Development's Annual Report (DSD, 2011:64), the Child Protection Register (CPR) was introduced, as specified in the Children's Act (Act No 38 of 2005), to ascertain and track the whereabouts of convicted offenders. Additionally,

cases heard in the Children's Court, such as those that concern abuse, neglect and exploitation, are also entered in the register.

The South African Minister for Women, Children and People with Disabilities (Xingwana at the time, in Jamieson et al., 2011:7) states that collaborative efforts between all role players such as government, civil society, NGOs and the various United Nations agencies are needed to fully implement children's rights in this country. Having documented the South African legislative approach to combating the sexual exploitation of children, attention now turns to the response of the international tourism industry to this phenomenon.

### **1.1.5 Global response of the hospitality and tourism industry to combat CSEC**

Child sex tourism occurs in the context of tourism by its very definition, and this section therefore looks at the steps taken by the tourism industry to counteract CSEC.

#### **1.1.5.1 Response of the international hospitality and tourism industry to combat CSEC**

Fast growth in tourism especially, has the potential to cause a negative effect on destination countries. It is in the measurement of the social, environmental and economic impact of this fast growth that the commercial sexual exploitation of children is often noted (FTTSA, 2010b:1). Generally the tourism industry has been slow to respond to child sex tourism. It was first noted around 2000 that some tourism leaders distanced themselves from responsibility associated with CSEC or were unaware that tourism facilities were being used for such crimes (O'Grady, 2001:133; Berardi, 2010:304. The United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO), the leading international organisation in the field of tourism, presented its 'Tourism Bill of Rights and Tourism Code' in 1985 (The Code.org:n.d:1-4) that set specific directives for tourism. That evidence exists to support the notion that children are exploited in the tourism industry is contrary to its manifesto and in opposition to the directives the UNWTO's code contains.

The growth of the tourism industry and growing awareness of the phenomena of sex tourism and child sex tourism has led to various measures (explained more fully in Chapter 6, section 6.1) being taken to fight the child sex trade that appears to date back to the early 1990s (The Code.org, n.d). These include the adoption of 'The Statement on the Prevention of Organised Sex Tourism' (1995) by the General

Assembly of the United Nations World Tourism Organisation, at its eleventh session held in Cairo, Egypt on 17-22 October 1995. This supported the tenets of Article 34 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child (explained in section 1.5.1) (UNWTO, 1995:32-35); the adoption 'The Resolution on Prostitution Tourism' and Standard Agreement of the International Union of Food, Agricultural, Hotel, Restaurant, Catering, Tobacco and Allied Workers' Association (IUF/UITA/IUL); and adopted by the IUF HRC Trade Group Board, Budapest, December 6-7, 1995, and endorsed by the IUF (European community), Geneva, April 17-18, 1996 (UNWTO Global Code of Ethics, n.d.:1). These documents basically called on members to agree to refuse to conduct business with tour operators or any organisation that perpetrates crimes such as sex tourism, or as they termed it "prostitution tourism" (UNWTO Global code of Ethics, n.d.:1).

This was followed by various other remedies against child sex tourism, such as: 'The Child and Travel Agents' Charter'; the 'Declaration against the Sexual Exploitation of Children'; the 'Resolution against the Sexual Exploitation of Children'; and the 'Declaration against Child Sex Tourism' (UNICEF, 2005:8). See further discussion on these measures in Chapter 6 section 6.1.

The global tourism industry has also responded by focusing on prevention through training, raising awareness and public campaigning (UNICEF, 2012:v). The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism, known as 'The Code', was established in 1998. Since 2004 'The Code' has received funding from UNICEF, and operates as an independent, non-profit organisation with its secretariat in New York and representation in various countries (UNICEF, 2012:v).

Another response to the problem has come from the International Hotel and Restaurants Association (IH&RA), founded in Paris in 1946, which is the only business organisation representing the hospitality industry worldwide (HospitalityNet:n.d). Its members are national hotel and restaurant associations throughout the world, and international and national hotel and restaurant chains, representing around 50 brands. Officially recognised by the United Nations, the IH&RA monitors and lobbies all international agencies on behalf of hotel and restaurant industry, estimated to comprise 300 000 hotels and 8 million restaurants, employing 60 million people and contributing 950 billion USD annually to the global economy (HospitalityNet, n.d).

In 1996 the IH&RA asked all their members to consider steps that would prevent their premises from being used for child sexual exploitation, and to make it difficult for

perpetrators to use their premises for child prostitution or the production of child pornography (Hospitality net, n.d.). The project, dubbed "Grande Cause Nationale 1997" by the French Government, outlined the steps hotels could take to join the fight against the commercial sexual exploitation of children (HospitalityNet, n.d).

In addition, the UNWTO, in collaboration with International Labour Organisation (ILO), UNICEF and various other public and private sectors partnerships, including NGOs and the media, formally launched an international child protection campaign at the World Travel Market (WTM) at the 23rd meeting of the International Task Force in London, 10 November 2008, and globally on the Universal Children's Day – 20 November 2008 - using the slogan "Don't Let Child Abuse Travel" (UNWTO Annual Report, 2010:33). This campaign forms part of UNWTO's on-going work on child protection in tourism. It consists of awareness-raising campaigns that are continually disseminated amongst tourism stakeholders, and provides specific recommendations for the protection of children and adolescents in the tourism industry (UNWTO Annual Report, 2010:33).

It is thus clear that many countries have amended their legislation to tighten laws around sex tourism, the commercial exploitation of children and trafficking. The next section focuses on the measures being adopted for the protection of children against CSEC in the South African tourism context.

#### 1.1.5.2 The response of the South African hospitality and tourism industry to CSEC

Having explored the measures that the international tourism industry has taken against CSEC and in particular CST, the response from the local South African tourism industry is considered.

Programmes aimed at the eradication of child sexual abuse and trafficking were led by the government or NGOs until the establishment of The Code in this country in 2010 (see section 1.1.5.1). Another initiative was a campaign launched at a two-day conference in early October 2009 in Maputo, Mozambique led by the Southern African Regional Network against Trafficking and Abuse of Children (SANTAC) which was as part of the Southern African Development Community's (SADC) efforts to fight against the trafficking and abuse of children (ECPAT, 2006:17).

Various NGOs have engaged in a range of programmes. A significant example in the mid-2000s is that of the Child Welfare South Africa (CWSA) that held a number of

workshops across the nation that aimed to raise awareness of child trafficking. These workshops were attended by almost 700 delegates who represented the police, health services, educationists, faith-based organisations, NGOs and the taxi association, amongst others. Concurrently, training courses on the early warning signs of child sexual exploitation were presented at 74 CWSA partners nationwide under the Isolabantwana (Eye on Children) project (ECPAT, 2006:19).

The first real co-ordinated, tourism-led initiative in South Africa was launched in June 2010 by Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA), a non-governmental tourism organisation (NGO). It announced the roll out of the 'Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism', known as 'The Code' in South Africa, during May of that year. Its stated objective is to provide the tourism industry with the correct awareness, tools and support to prevent the sexual exploitation of children (FTTSA, 2010b:1). FTTSA was appointed as the Local Code Representative (LCR) for South Africa by The Code secretariat in Bangkok, Thailand that had spearheaded the initiative in a partnership between the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) and the International Labour Organisation (ILO) as funding and advisory partners (FTTSA, 2010:1). At the time of the launch, the then local South African spokesperson for UNICEF, Girma (UN News, 9 June 2010) said that effective protection of children is made possible when all sectors of society are mobilised, and that the contribution of the travel and tourism industry is critical; and furthermore that there could be no innocent bystanders in any situation where children were subject to sexual exploitation. With 30 signatories already on board, local stakeholders, such as the National Departments of Social Development and Tourism, South African Tourism, the Tourism Business Council of South Africa were also included as supporters of the FTTSA in its efforts to implement The Code as widely as possible in South Africa (FTSSA, 2010b:1). Current signatories include the following accommodation providers, tour operators, and car rental companies including: Accor, Cape Grace, City Sightseeing, Radisson, Southern Sun, Spier, Avis, Budget, Europcar and Cape Town International Convention Centre (FTTSA, 2010b:1).

Tourism businesses that chose to sign up, made a commitment to establish an ethical and corporate policy regarding CSEC; to train personnel in the country of origin and at destinations; to introduce clauses in contracts with suppliers, stating a common repudiation of sexual exploitation of children; to provide information to travellers (e.g. brochures, posters, in-flight videos, ticket slips home pages, etc.) and to local "key persons" at tourism destinations; as well as to report annually (FTSSA Press Release,

2010b:1). Also in 2010, in preparation for the Soccer World Cup, UNICEF printed posters and stickers for distribution to tourists titled: "Let's give the red card to child sex tourism" and "Give human trafficking a red card" in order to warn and educate tourists (UNICEF, 2010).

Velapi (FTTSA, 2010b:1), the national programme coordinator for the ILO in South Africa, observed that the support The Code has gained nationally in such a short time is indicative of South Africa's commitment to building both economic and social sustainability. Some companies are highly committed to fighting child sex tourism. In South Africa, hotel group Accor signed the Code of Conduct for the first time in December 2007 (Accor.com News, 18 May 2012). All Accor hotels implemented specific policies to fight child sex tourism in collaboration with local partners and offer support, advice and training. Their commitment to fight against the exploitation of children was highlighted again in 2009 by the involvement of the Police Child Protection Unit that provided training to the group's employees on the abuse and sexual exploitation of children (Accor.com News, 18 May 2012).

Although the City of Cape Town itself is not a signatory to The Code although it is mentioned in the media as a child sex trafficking target area, the city's official visitors' guide (Cape Town Tourism, 2011:38) encourages tourists to practise safe sex and to be vigilant about protecting children from exploitation and prostitution. Cape Town Tourism encourages its members to subscribe to The Code. This is the vague and only reference to child sex tourism in a local visitors' guide that this researcher was able to find.

So the local tourism industry appears to be following some of the international trends but the focus is predominantly on the implementation of The Code, as an attempt to move towards the prevention of child sex in the tourism industry in broad context. Despite this, Tepelus (2008:109) postulates that if innovation-orientated tourism policies geared to fight child sex tourism and trafficking are to be developed, more academic research needs to take place on both of these topics, adding that academic feedback to the existing actions against CST has also been lacking, and that there is still not enough awareness within the tourism industry. ECPAT (2006:31) too expresses concern in their Global Monitoring Report of 2006 about the lack of research, saying that South Africa should do comprehensive national research into trafficking, exploring the reasons why it occurs in this country and, investigating its extent in order to devise policies and strategies properly for its eradication. In addition, the organisation

recommends that research into child sex tourism should focus on its scope and magnitude recommend fitting measures to counteract it; and those companies that have adopted and implement The Code should be supported (ECPAT, 2006:31).

Against the background of this brief overview of the South African tourism approach, the third and last aspect to consider is the response of social work and other helping professions to the phenomenon of commercial sexual exploitation of children.

#### **1.1.6 The global response of social, child welfare and other child protection services to combat CSEC**

Helping services that focus on assisting child victims of CSEC, such as non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the police and social work services have responded to CSEC in various ways. This is now discussed by first looking at the international community and its response, followed by the response of the helping community in South Africa.

##### **1.1.6.1 The response of the international community of social, child welfare and other child protection services (including social work) to combat CSEC**

The international community of social, child welfare and other child protection services has made some strides forward when assisting survivors of this crime and helping with the rehabilitation of the victims. This section takes a closer look at who has been involved and how this has been done.

The impact of child sex tourism and indeed CSEC on children is intense. The children who are victims of this crime suffer both psychological and physical scars for the rest of their lives as they are exposed to immediate harm, irreversible damage and even death. They suffer severe setbacks as far as their physical, sexual and emotional development is concerned (Chetty, 2007:7; Beilacqua, in Johnson, 2011:55; Pawlak, 2012:38). This kind of victimisation and resultant physical and emotional abuse gives rise to low self-esteem, loss of dignity and lack of confidence, depression and feelings of hopelessness, amongst other ill-effects. Victims live in constant fear of being beaten by pimps who control the sex trade, and they are sometimes subjected to sadistic acts by clients (Snell, 2003:512; Chetty, 2007:7; Pawlak, 2012:38). In addition, children engaging in sex work are exposed to rape, murder, drug abuse, high-risk pregnancies, sexually transmitted diseases, including HIV, all of which, in turn, affect not only the

physical and psychological well-being of the child, but have devastating effects on society at large. The majority of victims also experience rejection by their families and communities, in addition to experiencing fear, shame and despair (Song 2003:3; Chetty, 2007:7; Pawlak, 2012:38). These opinions are confirmed by a victim who was trafficked. Hayes (2012:233), when describing her experience of being trafficked from England and sexually exploited in various countries in Europe stated that everything changed; that she became someone else, with a different perception of everything; someone she felt ashamed of being. Hayes (2012:233) describes not being able to fit in anywhere; and that she no longer knew how to be; feeling that people could read the thoughts in her mind; and know all the “disgusting” things she had done.

Evident from this personal reflection is that problems created for children through the experience of trafficking, prostitution and child sex tourism are many and varied. In response, various countries across the globe have designed programmes to assist child victims. Notably, in 2003 the United Kingdom, more specifically the British Government, produced a Green Paper titled ‘Every Child Matters’, which focused on removing boundaries between professions and improving information sharing between different disciplines, such as social workers, health care workers and police, in order to build a full picture of a child’s needs (UK Government, 2003:52). The UK Home Office (UK Department for Education, 2011:205) also produced a document specific to the trafficking in children in 2007 called ‘Safeguarding children who may have been trafficked’, which specifically addresses the actions to be taken by professionals involved in the recovery and treatment of trafficked children. These actions could, *inter alia*, include professional therapy, reintegration assistance, the housing of children in safe places and family support (UK Department for Education, 2011:205). In addition, the UK Department for Children, Schools and Families in the UK, in 2010, produced a statutory guide called ‘Working Together to Safeguard Children’ which is aimed at facilitating inter-agency collaboration to safeguard and promote the welfare of children and is updated annually (UK Department for Children, Schools and Families, 2010:1-393).

Elsewhere in Europe, programmes of specialist services for children, who have been the victims of any form of sexual abuse, may include one-to-one support, group therapy, organised peer activities, family support and therapeutic treatments, such as play or art therapy (Cody, 2010:208). Interventions will focus on assisting the victims to deal with feelings of fear, anxiety, low mood (depression) and sexually inappropriate behaviour (over-sexualisation and sexually suggestive or alluring behaviour), amongst

other issues (Cody, 2010:208). In rendering services to CSEC victims in Europe, Augustin (1988:70) notes that service delivery and therapy get complicated when children talk about their own desires as well as their activities (the activities in which they were involved while trafficked), as boundaries become blurred. Montgomery (in Augustin, 1988:70) surmises that if children are forced to accept that they are prostitutes, or exploited, or abused, it results in a denial of the skills that they used to stay alive. It also negates the little control (or self-determination) that they might have had in the circumstances they experienced. This small measure of self-determination is an important part of UNICEF's Guidelines on the Protection of Child Victims of Trafficking (2006:20), which expressly states that, wherever possible, trafficked children who are able to, should consent to being interviewed and be encouraged to express their own needs.

According to Cody (2010:209), prosecution of the perpetrators may sometimes be an important part of the recovery process for children but the legal process can be lengthy, painful and difficult. This is why trusted and consistent support is so vital. Children sometimes feel threatened or intimidated when reporting the CSEC incident. They may have trouble with the legal processes finding it difficult to express themselves verbally and to talk about their experience to others. In line with the recognition of the child's discomfort, UNICEF's (2006:20) Guidelines on the Protection of Child Victims of Trafficking state that far as possible investigators, interpreters or translators should be the same gender as the child, should be dressed in civilian clothing and should be trained in using child-sensitive interviewing methods.

Interviewing the children is a critical issue as they are often re-traumatised when they are required to make multiple statements to various agencies or individuals such as the police, medical practitioners, social workers and in the court itself (Cody, 2010:209).

The US government (TIP Report, 2011:35) also recognises that interviewing victims is crucial both for the child's recovery and the prosecution of the perpetrator. It also recommends that basic victim-centred interviewing techniques be utilised. These include allaying fears (by using a comfortable, private and non-threatening environment for the interview); showing respect and care for the victim (wearing civilian clothing with no visible weapons); demonstrating knowledge of other cases; assuring the victim of their safety from the perpetrator; and meeting the victim's personal physical needs, such as thirst, hunger and toilet breaks (TIP Report, 2011:35).

The British Government (United Kingdom Department for Children, Schools and Families, 2010:205) identified the difficulty victims generally had when having to interact with multiple professionals and, offered, as a solution, the appointment of a “lead” professional who would be a social worker, a health professional or a police investigator. The child would have contact only with this one main person throughout the interaction with the authorities. It was hoped that this arrangement would lead to a higher level of trust and comfort. The Icelandic Government Agency for Child Protection developed the concept of the Barnahus or children’s house (Cody, 2010:217) to support sexually abused children. It is a child-friendly centre where various professionals co-operate under one roof to investigate child sexual abuse cases. It has been widely hailed as good practice and is in line with other suggestions and guidelines especially UNICEF’s (2006:23) call for suitable, safe accommodation for victims immediately upon their discovery of the reality of their experience. Under this model the child is not subjected to multiple interviews by different people at numerous different locations. Instead a trained investigator will interview the child while being videotaped and observed by a judge, social worker, police, lawyers and the child’s advocate (Cody, 2010:217).

Under Article 34 of the CRC (Muntarhorn, 2007:9), a non-punitive recovery and reintegration approach is called for in respect of CSEC victims. It has to include the provision of social, medical, psychological and other support as well as measures to ensure the prevention of stigmatisation and offer encouragement and the promotion of alternative forms of livelihood. Furthermore, it is very important that the response to the identified child exploitation incident is both fast and effective. It is important to ensure that the victims get out of the situations in which they found themselves, and to deal with perpetrators of the crime (Muntarhorn, 2007:9). Those who have been victimised need to be helped quickly by people who understand the situation and who can support them in a co-ordinated way (UK Department of Education, 2011:16). A growing recognition is emerging particularly in child care social work that even where social workers are not in specialist therapeutic services, nor delivering formal therapy, the assessment process and the interventions they deliver could be therapeutic, as social work plays an important role in the recovery of sexually abused victims (Blewett, Lewis & Tunstill, 2007:10). Benefits can be derived from a one-to-one casework relationship, in which the social worker’s interpersonal skills are utilised to facilitate change, rather than working only from a narrow psycho-dynamic model of social work (Aldgate et al. in Blewett et al., 2007:10).

In summary, Goicoechea (2010:143) claims that, in order to end child sexual abuse, a social and institutional commitment is required which has a three-pronged approach: first, the training of family and child professionals; second, the co-ordination of services such as education, health and social welfare, police and the justice system; and third, creating specialised treatment services for victims and perpetrators. Although all the elements are interrelated, the first is essential for both the co-ordination and creation of specialised treatment for victims and aggressors (Goicoechea, 2010:143). Having focused on the international approach to working with exploited, abused and trafficked children, the next section turns specifically to the South African response to the international call for child protection.

#### 1.1.6.2 The response of the South African community of social, child-welfare and other child protection services (including social work) to combat CSEC

Like the steps taken by the international community, South Africa too has taken measures to assist victims of CSEC. This section looks more closely at the organisations involved in this work and their approaches.

The South African Council for Social Service Professions (SACSSP) is the statutory body regulating the registration and practice of social workers and other social service professionals in South Africa. In accord with the Children's Act (Act No. 38 of 2005) and the Constitution of South Africa (Act No. 108 of 1996) it governs and guides programmes and services aimed at the eradication of child abuse in all forms in South Africa (Department of Social Development, 2010b:10). In the foreword to the South African Child Gauge 2011, Tutu (in Jamieson et al., 2011:6) comments that children are at the heart of the South African nation and postulates that children can teach adults and professionals in the social services, courts and government departments a great about how to help children. He describes children as both the "treasures we wish to protect and the resources we need to do so". Following similar sentiments, Xingwana, Minister for Women, Children and People with Disabilities (Jamieson et al., 2011:6) comments that, under the Children's Act (Act No. 38 of 2005) Section 10, all children who are of such an age as to be able to participate in any matter concerning themselves should be given an opportunity to express themselves and be heard.

The words of Tutu and Xingwana, echo the idea expressed in UNICEF's Guidelines on the Protection of Child Victims of Trafficking (2006:20) that children are capable and usually able to participate in their own recovery (described in section 1.1.4.2), and this

entitlement should be part of the discussion on the issue since it is also protected by international and regional law (Jamieson et al., 2011:22).

As in the rest of the world, numerous local NGOs in South Africa have developed programmes, ranging in focus from advocacy to training and development programmes that deal with rape, child abuse and trafficked children amongst others. The National Strategy on Child Protection (2003) addresses all of these and other forms of CSEC (Department of Social Development, 2011:5; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:75). The list of programmes and NGOs continues to grow to such an extent that in April 2012 the organisation Resources Aimed at the Prevention of Child Abuse and Neglect (RAPCAN) hosted a round table discussion with various role players in the government, UN Agencies, NGOs, the tourism industry and private sector and produced a document 'The Guidelines for the Prevention and Response to Child Sexual Exploitation' aimed at improving reporting of CSE ([www.rapcan.org.za](http://www.rapcan.org.za); ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:75). This initiative is in line with its commitment to ensure that "the protection (nurturance) and participation (autonomy) rights of children are realised".

Child Welfare South Africa (CWSA), which is the ECPAT representative group in South Africa, is the largest network of child protection agencies in the country (ECPAT, 2006:17). CWSA has a programme that has been operational since 2003 and two of its three sub-programmes are of special interest to the researcher, namely, Isolabantwana (Eye on Children) and Commercial Exploitation of Children. Isolabantwana, designed by Cape Town Child Welfare, was initiated in response to the "increased child abuse figures reflected in the CWSA statistics". Abused children are held in safe havens for up to 48 hours to allow time for a volunteer social worker to intervene. With regard to CSEC, CWSA initiatives focus on child prostitution, child pornography and the trafficking of children. Included are linkages with international bodies working in this field, for example, ECPAT; establishing forums to create awareness of the services required for child victims of trafficking and commercial sexual exploitation; and ensuring that legislation is in place to protect children (Child Welfare South Africa, 2009).

Other national organisations are: Childline; the National Association of Child Care Workers; Molo Songololo; and UNICEF while close to 100 other organisations with a stated focus on abused children exist in Cape Town; and a further dozen in the Eden District (the Garden Route) (DSD, 2011:46-151; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:75).

According to the South Africa country progress card issued by ECPAT (2010:13), the South African government has made some progress in setting up child-friendly procedures in the legal justice process, namely, the employment of court intermediaries for children and special police units with officers specially trained in child-sensitive interview procedures, the Family Violence Child Protection and Sexual Offences Unit (FCS Unit). In addition to establishing a Human Trafficking Desk within the organised crime unit of the South African Police Service (SAPS), special FCS Units were set up in 1995 with a view to preventing and combating crimes against children and adult victims of sexual offences and violence and importantly to help the victims. South Africa has also designated sexual offence courts to reduce further victimisation (ECPAT, 2010:13). Furthermore, the ECPAT country progress card states that many child welfare social workers have been trained as intermediaries to assist children during court proceedings, and they also work closely with the social worker involved in the investigation of the case in order to reduce trauma to the child (ECPAT, 2010:13).

As part of the international community, South Africa adopted the Stockholm Declaration and Agenda for Action (discussed in Section 1.1.4.1) in 1996 and reaffirmed this commitment in 2001 in Yokohama (ECPAT, 2006:14). The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism (The Code) was implemented in South Africa just ahead of the 2010 World Cup to focus awareness on CST and obtain commitment from hospitality and tourism partners for a zero tolerance approach to CST. This is discussed in more detail in Chapter 6.

In spite of all of the measures that have been put into place to combat CSEC, the ECPAT report (2010:15) states that there are not enough state-funded support and rehabilitation services for children who have been rescued from commercial sexual exploitation (including trafficking for sexual purposes), and those that do exist are not specialised enough to be able to address the special and specific needs for required to recover and reintegrate trafficked children.

## **1.2 PROBLEM FORMULATION AND RATIONALE FOR THE STUDY**

The discussion thus far points to the growth in tourism globally but also in South Africa in the latter half of the last century. It has increased steadily and become one of the largest and fastest growing sectors in the world economy (UNWTO Tourism Highlights, 2011:2; Department of Environment and Tourism, 2013:14), offering an economic boost to countries, but this has not been without a negative social impact (O'Grady,

2001:134; Keenan, 2006:514; Hall, 2011:157). Under this blanket of economic prosperity woven by an influx of tourists to South Africa, and the fact that the country post-1994 has become part of the global village affected by the advances in Internet communication technology, CSEC, which consists of criminal practices that demean, degrade and threaten the physical and psychological integrity of children, has flourished.

In a response to prevent and combat CSEC various charters, laws, campaigns and codes of conduct (Chetty, 2007:37; UNICEF, 2009:viii) internationally and nationally have been adopted and various sectors have joined hands to address this social phenomenon.

In spite of all these actions and campaigns, and after engaging with literature on the topic of CSEC, the researcher has arrived at the conclusion that most of the literature and discussion papers specifically relating to child sex tourism in South Africa, are not based on solid research, but rather on assumptions pointing to a gap in the empirical data related to this topic. Scholars like Tepelus, (2008:111), Cody (2010:204), George and Panko (2011:141) and ECPAT Netherlands (2014:80) in particular, refer to this gap in empirical data on child sex tourism.

In illustration of this lacuna of knowledge and its consequences at an international level, Asquith and Turner's (in Cody 2010:204) opinion is that resources for sexually exploited and trafficked children are scarce. This has led Cody (2010:204) to posit that the key challenge to establishing the correct level of resources is based on the difficulty in obtaining accurate statistics on the numbers of children who fall victim to CSEC and to CST in particular. George and Panko (2011:141) also refer to this gap in knowledge stating: "The greatest challenge one encounters in addressing CST is the paucity of data: given the illegality of the trade, 'hard data' are just not available and the available figures are mostly guess-estimates".

More recently, on the local national front, in their overall report on their assessment of CSEC in five countries in Africa that included Senegal and South Africa, ECPAT Netherlands (2014:80) noted, when specifically referring to CST in South Africa, that the "lack of availability of clear and accurate data" on child sex tourism was one of the causes of the "lack of implementation of existing child protection mechanisms". This is significant as ECPAT Netherlands as an organisation, lays part of the blame for definitive action at the door of the lack of data.

Tepelus (2008:111) asserts that the gap in tourism research that addresses CSEC is significant. Particularly mentioning trafficking and child sex tourism, she argues that a “morphing of empirical innovation towards policy making is called for” and meticulous point out that the high number of victims involved calls for action from all stakeholders in the tourism industry, including academia, the private sector and policy making bodies, to research the incidence of child sex tourism and trafficking (Tepelus, 2008:111). Significantly, Tepelus (2008:110) calls for a multi-disciplinary approach, adding that there should be linkages drawn from trafficking and CST research published in law, the social sciences and criminology as well as to other research done in all aspects of the tourism industry.

Ibbotson (2008:3) also concludes that our lack of awareness in this area of CST is very dangerous particularly when it comes to our knowledge of the sex offenders themselves, referring to these crimes (CST and child pornography) as the “dark underbelly of society”. This contention reflects a lack of research and she asserts that only through addressing the reasons why these things happen, they can be stopped (Ibbotson, 2008:3).

Commenting on Asquith and Turner’s opinion that resources for sexually exploited and trafficked children are scarce, Cody (2010:204) says that the key challenge to establishing the correct level of resources is based on the difficulty in obtaining accurate statistics on the numbers of children who fall victim.

In addition, few surveys have delivered results directly related to the cause, scope or extent of sex tourism worldwide and hardly any of these have been in South Africa or the southern African region. This is evidenced by the comments contained in the 2007 ECPAT Global Monitoring Report on the Status of Action against commercial sexual exploitation of children: South Africa (ECPAT, 2007a:31), which highlights the importance of South Africa undertaking comprehensive national research into CST stating, “it is necessary to conduct research on child sex tourism in order to assess the scope and magnitude of the problem and devise appropriate preventative measures”.

Several scholars and organisations (ECPAT, 2007:11; Ibbotson, 2008:3; Cody, 2010:204; George & Panko, 2011:141; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:80) draw attention to the gap in the literature concerning the issue of CSEC and in particular CST. This shows that CST information worldwide, and in South Africa, is thin on the ground. This

researcher is interested in addressing this gap and the fact that the phenomenon of sex tourism is under-studied in South Africa, a situation seen as problematic.

### **The motivation of the researcher to embark on this research journey**

Through the local media and speaking to her social work colleagues, the researcher noticed a number of incidences of paedophilia in the town on the Garden Route in which she is resident and wanted to obtain more information on how paedophilic networks operate (i.e. how one paedophile recognises and makes contact with another). Initially her investigation was informal through the Internet, her own reading, discussion and conversation at monthly meetings attended by members of her profession, communicating with various social work contacts and the police across the country. The phenomenon of child sex tourism came to light and the researcher found the topic to be of great interest. In looking into this topic further, she also spoke to the local tourism organisation, guest house owners and B & B operators in her town. On realising the lack of research in South Africa in this field, she felt compelled to add to the body of knowledge about it.

Hence the motive behind this researcher was to address some of the research deficiencies caused by the lack of local information about the nature of the problem of child sex tourism in South Africa as found in the Western Cape. This region of South Africa was selected as the focus area as it is a popular tourist destination therefore is a potential target area for sex tourism operators. Within the Western Cape the primary tourism areas geographically are the City of Cape Town itself and the strip of coastal land stretching from Heidelberg in the south-west to Nature's Valley and across the provincial border to Storms River, in the Eastern Cape.

Since Cape Town airport is an important point of entry for tourists and an important tourist city in South Africa, Cape Town will be the starting point of the research and it will then move eastwards to tourism orientated towns along the Garden Route which stretches along the southern coast from Heidelberg to the Tsitsikamma Forest and Storms River area. Travelling eastwards along the coast on this Garden Route coastal corridor the main towns are: Heidelberg, Riversdale, Albertinia, Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Brenton-on-Sea, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay, Nature's Valley and Storms River, where the Route ends. The study will be limited to this geographical area due to financial, manpower, distance and time constraints.

In summary then the researcher wishes to address the gaps in information presented by the lack of local research on the phenomenon of child sex tourism, specific to this region.

### **1.3 THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK**

In order to investigate and compile a multi-perspective report on the status of the knowledge on and response to CSEC with a specific reference to child prostitution and child sex tourism, the researcher proposed to utilise a qualitative research approach. Any research project, whether a qualitative, a quantitative or a mixed method research approach is followed, requires a theoretical framework (Creswell, 2009:69; Neuman, 2012:27; Maxwell, 2013:48). The concept 'theory' can be explained as a set of concepts and ideas. The proposed relatedness amongst them can be regarded as "a structure that is intended to capture or model something about the world" (Maxwell, 2013:48). With reference to theory in qualitative research, Creswell (2009:62) posits that the researcher uses the theory as a lens for studying "issues of marginalised groups". When the aim of a particular research endeavour is to use the emerging findings as a call for action or change, this theory becomes an "advocacy perspective or [lens]" (Creswell, 2009:62). In an effort to further elaborate, Maxwell (2013:49) regards a useful theory as serving to illuminate what one sees. He claims that theory as a spotlight draws attention to particular events or phenomena, and indicates the interrelatedness amongst these. Simply stated, a useful theory is an unfolding story about some phenomenon, what one thinks is happening, and why; it provides new insight and a broadened understanding about the phenomenon (Neuman, 2012:26; Maxwell, 2013:49). Within the context of research, theory functions in three different ways: first, it prevents the researcher from being misled by coincidences; second, it aids in the process of making sense of patterns that the researcher has observed to inform effective action surrounding these phenomena; and finally it assists in directing research efforts (Babbie, 2010:32).

The location or placement of theory within a qualitative study is determined by how it is utilised and its direction i.e. one can either begin with theory or abstract ideas and then link that to the empirical evidence (deductive approach); or one can take an inductive approach, meaning to begin with specific empirical evidence and then generalise to more abstract ideas that are based on the evidence (Creswell, 2009:54-55, 65; Babbie, 2010:54-57; Neuman, 2012:32-33). When investigating a topic from a qualitative research perspective, flexibility in terms of the theoretical framework or lens applied is

of paramount importance. Too much rigidity in the application of a particular theoretical framework leads to forcing questions and research methods. The data is then placed in precast underlying theoretical constructs or concepts. This strategy will prevent the researcher from accounting for the events and relationships that do not fit that particular theory. On the other end of the spectrum is the state of affairs where no prior theoretical framework for the study is proposed. This short-changes the study in terms of the insights and illumination that the existing theory could provide (Maxwell, 2013:53).

Against the introductory remarks about the nature and functions of theories, theoretical frameworks and perspectives in research, in particular as related to qualitative research, the researcher decided on the ecological systems theory as the theoretical framework for this study, It is attributed to Bronfenbrenner (1999:3-6), a renowned developmental psychologist. Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory claims that individuals exist and move in various systems, starting at an individual or microsystem level and extending outward to influences at the macrosystem level. In this context, development can be conceptualised as "a process that involves interactions both within and across contexts" (Duerden & Witt, 2010:109). The ecological systems theory can also be regarded as a "study of relationships between living organisms and their environments" (Jack in Gray, Midgley and Webb, 2012:129).

Social work has been described as "the professional activity of helping individuals, groups, or communities to enhance or restore their capacity for social functioning and creating social conditions favourable to this goal" (Barker, 1995:357). In light of this Friedman and Allen (2010:17) maintain that the ecosystems perspective provides social clinicians with the theoretical framework that offers an "interactional view of any system within the context of its environment. Most social workers base their practice on this theoretical organising framework as it enables them to assess and make decisions about the nature of the services or interventions that will help their clients (Jack in Gray, Midgley and Webb, 2012:129). Various models have been created from adaptations of Bronfenbrenner's original ecological systems theory (Jack, in Gray Midgley & Webb, 2012:131).

Bronfenbrenner's ecological system theory is based on two main axes representing propositions. The first relates to the fact that human development occurs through enduring interactions between individuals, referred to as "proximal processes", which become more complex over time for example, parent-child activities or child-child

activities, child-teacher activities (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:5). The second proposition is the importance and centrality of the developing person that requires that the ecological model accommodates process, person, context and time (PPCT) and allows for proximal processes to happen at the microsystem level where people interact “face to face” (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:5; Hamilton & Luster, 2005:185). Since the characteristics of the interacting individuals play an important role, as everyone is different, the developing person “selects and shapes contexts as well as being influenced by them” over time thus having a cumulative effect (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:5; Hamilton & Luster, 2005:185). This takes into account the environment or contextual arena within which development takes place and creates a hierarchy of systems that are “nested one inside the other like Russian dolls” (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:5; Hamilton & Luster, 2005:184). These five systems are explained as separate entities (Bronfenbrenner, 1994: 39-42; Hamilton & Luster, 2005, 184-185).

The **microsystem** encompasses the immediate environment the person inhabits and comprises a pattern of “activities, social roles [played] and interpersonal relationships [involved in]” experienced by the developing person in a given setting with particular physical and material characteristics (Bronfenbrenner in Ongwuegbuzie, Collins & Frels, 2013:4). Applying this interpretation to the context of the study, the immediate setting where the child would be engaged in prostitution could, for example, be a street corner where business is pursued and negotiated. Here, the child would engage in interpersonal relationships with a fellow child, adult prostitutes, pimps and prospective clients.

The **mesosystem** describes a “system of microsystems” as links and interrelations between two or more systems and processes develop between them in the setting where the individual spends time (Ongwuegbuzie, et al., 2013:4). Questions that should be asked about the mesosystem are usually about the nature of the relationships between the systems within the mesosystem. For example: what are the relationships like between the SAPS child protection units and child welfare protection services (as microsystems) when addressing the phenomenon of CST? What within the relationships between specific the microsystems help and/or hinder the protection of children who are victims of commercial child sexual exploitation?

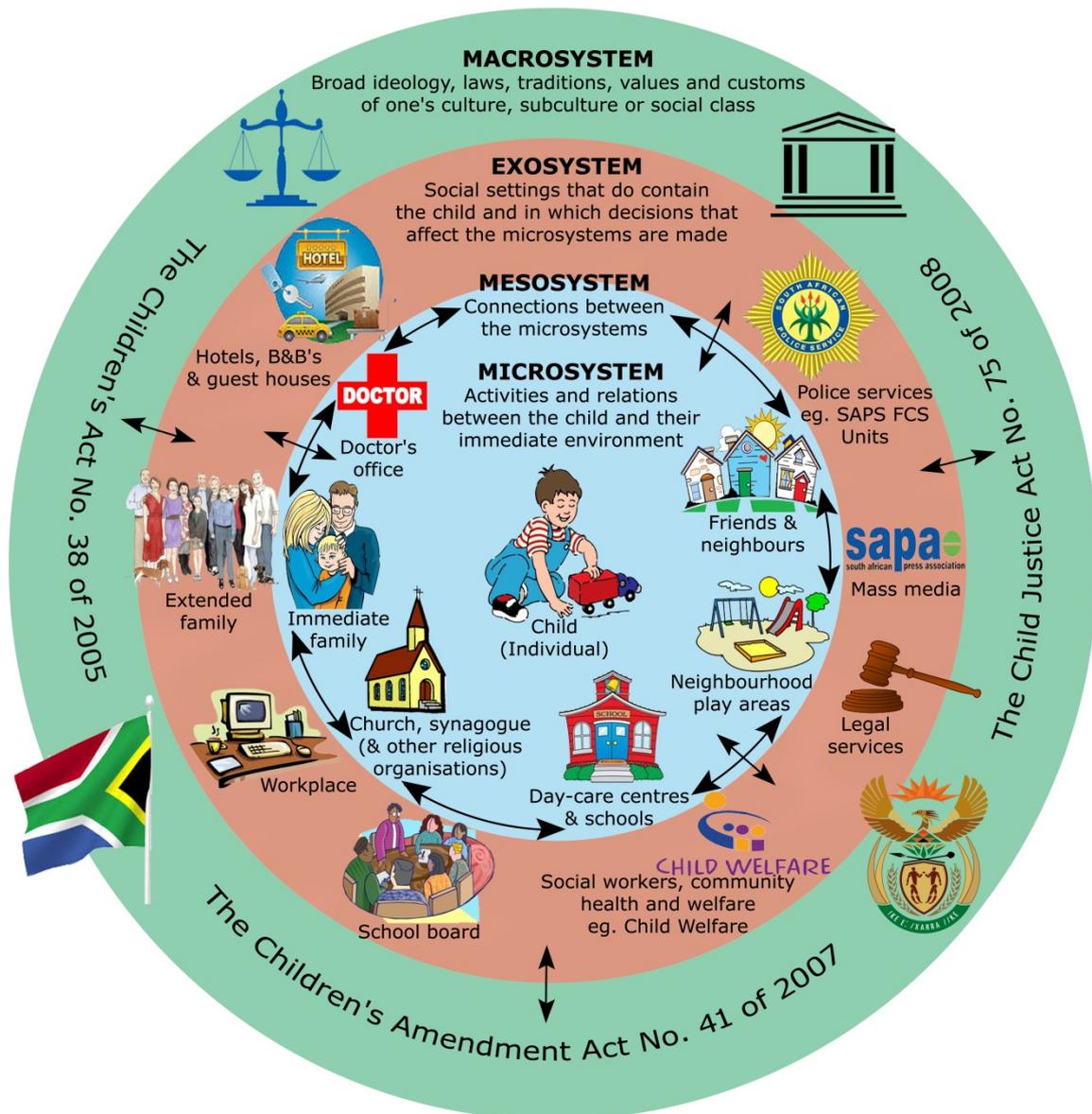
The **exosystem** refers to the place where two or more microsystems converge without the active involvement of the developing person as participant even though this is where the decisions are made or actions are taken that would affect what happens in

the microsystem setting that does contain the developing person (Bronfenbrenner in Ongwuegbuzie, 2013:4). For example, a victim of CSEC is not likely to ever be present at a meeting where SAPS FCS-Unit members and social workers from child welfare organisations, as microsystems, discuss and adopt, practice guidelines for the treatment and care regime CSEC victims. However, these guidelines will affect how these CSEC victims will be protected and treated.

The **macrosystem** comprises the larger cultural context surrounding the individual in which all microsystems are imbedded in that they influence the person indirectly (Ongwuegbuzie, 2013:4). Inherent to, and forming part of the larger cultural context, are cultural norms, social cultural events, societal belief systems and ideologies, laws and educational, organisational, preventative and therapeutic programmes. These may have a beneficial or a detrimental influence on the person. Illustrative of this is the question about the extent to which major sports events, like the Soccer World Cup, contribute to the incidence of CST.

The figure on the next page below portrays an adaptation by the researcher of the five systems introduced above customised to illustrate these systems in the South African CSEC context.

**Figure 1: The researcher's version of Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory based on an adaptation by Berk and Roberts (2009:28)**



The ecological systems perspective ensures that development is viewed in a specified context in which it is clear that individuals cannot be viewed separately from their environments or from one another. Social researchers investigating child maltreatment have used it successfully in multi-sectoral social studies (Hamilton & Luster, 2005:133).

In terms of CSEC victims, their circumstances, their environment and available service providers, Bronfenbrenner's words are significant: "The greater developmental impact of proximal processes on children growing up in disadvantaged or disorganized environments is to be expected, mainly for outcomes reflecting developmental dysfunction" (Bronfenbrenner, 2000:132).

Following the identification and explanation of the theoretical framework adopted as point of departure, and using it to serve as coat closet with different hooks on which to hang the data (Maxwell, 2013:49), the researcher now turns the attention to the research question.

#### 1.4 RESEARCH QUESTIONS

The activity of converting a research topic into a researchable question is crucial as it lays the foundation for what has to follow (O'Leary in D'Cruz & Jones, 2014:23). Blaikie (in D'Cruz & Jones, 2014:22) is in no doubt that "research questions constitute the most important element of any research design". This sentiment is echoed by Corbin and Strauss (2008:12) who posit that the research question or questions are the ones the researcher intends to answer through executing the research project (Hennink, Hutter & Bailey, 2011:33). They not only determined the research approach but also the methodology to be followed (Blaikie, 2000:967; Neuman, 2012:90-91). In essence, according to Punch (in D'Cruz & Jones, 2014:23), the research questions the researcher formulates, organise and direct the project and provide a sense of coherence. In addition, research questions aid the process of delimiting the boundaries of the study, and provide a framework for writing up the thesis (Ibid.).

Based on the identified research problem (see sub-section 1.2) pointing to lack of empirical data on the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CST and CP; and the lack of knowledge observed by the researcher in her informal discussions with social workers and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry, especially around the topic of CST, the researcher decided to embark on a research project on the following topic: *A multi-perspective report on the status of the knowledge of and response to commercial child sexual exploitation with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism from a social work perspective.*

In responding to O' Leary's (in D'Cruz and Jones, 2014:23) suggestion that the research topic must be translated in a researchable question, the researcher re-stated the topic in the form of researchable questions:

What is the status of knowledge about CST and CP from the perspectives of social workers rendering child protection services, and services providers in the hospitality and tourism industry along the Garden Route and Cape Town, Western Cape?

From the perspectives of social workers rendering child protection services along the Garden Route and Cape Town, Western Cape, what can be done to address the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CST and CP?

From the perspectives of services providers in the hospitality and tourism industry along the Garden Route and Cape Town, Western Cape, what can be done to address the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CST and CP?

In order to assist with answering these three research questions, the following formulated goals are documented.

#### **1.4.1 The research goals**

In referring to the concept 'research goal', Creswell (2013:134) uses the term "purpose statement" and he claims that the latter points to the intent of the study, and it serves as a "road map" to the study. In support of Creswell's explanation, and in addition, Maxwell (2013:23) states that the goal in a broad sense points to the researcher's motives, desires and purposes for wanting to embark on an investigation, and also discloses what is to be accomplished by doing it.

The envisaged goals for this research project are as follows:

To report on the status of the knowledge and response about CST and CP from the perspective of social workers and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry along the Garden Route and in Cape Town, Western Cape

To forward recommendation-wise solutions to address the phenomenon of CST and CP from the perspectives of social workers and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry along the Garden Route and in Cape Town, Western Cape.

In order to realise the stated goals research objectives were formulated.

#### **1.4.2 The research objectives**

Babbie (2007:114) refers to objectives as the precise description of that which is needed to be researched to achieve the research goal.

The research objectives for this study were:

- To obtain a sample of

- Social workers in the employ of NGOs, government organisations and in private practice rendering child protection services
  - Key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry
- To conduct in-depth semi-structured interviews with the participants from the respective sample groups
- To explore the status of the knowledge of and response to CST and CP from the perspectives of the sampled participants
- To analyse the data according the eight steps for qualitative data analysis as proposed by Tesch (in Creswell, 2009;186)
- To describe the status of the knowledge of and response to CST and CP from the perspectives of the sampled participants
- Do conduct a literature control to verify the data.

## **1.5 RESEARCH METHODOLOGY**

In this section of the report the aspects of the research approach and design as proposed for undertaking this investigation are presented.

### **1.5.1 The research approach**

Based on the fact that the researcher's intention was to obtain perception-based information about the knowledge the groups of sampled participants had about CST and CP and their personal response to these phenomena, the researcher decided on a qualitative research approach. This approach is suggested by Guest, Namey and Mitchell (2013:225-27) where a researcher wants to examine the knowledge, opinions and perceptions as aspects of human experience, and where the objectives of the research are to explore and describe. Qualitative research allows for the in-depth study of a broad array of topics and offers more freedom in selecting the topic of interest because other research methods would be too limiting, according to Yin (2011:6).

Quantitative research is customarily referred to as objective, researcher-wise value-neutral, detached, rational and logical in terms of reasoning, and would be appropriate if people's subjectivity were excluded from the equation. However, "when a person's experiences, interconnections with others, or social and cultural systems in which they live, breathe, work, love and play demand attention, quantitative research has some profound limitations" (Nicholls, 2009:528). Qualitative methods, on the other hand, are used effectively when there is a need to identify intangible factors, such as social

norms, socio-economic status, gender roles, ethnicity and religion, where these may not be readily evident (Mack, Woodsong, MacQueen, Guest & Namey, 2005:1–2; Babbie, 2010:296-297). The qualitative research approach is opted for research studies in which the researcher cannot establish the necessary research conditions, for example, an empirical experiment; or where a data series may not be available; or if there is a shortage or lack of sufficient variables; or if drawing a sample of sufficient size is difficult as the population for a significant survey is not available; or if the focus is on historical events (Babbie, 2010:297-298; Yin, 2011:6).

Qualitative research permits for the study of real-life events and the meanings people attach to these events. It grants the researcher an opportunity to develop insight into the experienced-based perceptions of the participants being interviewed in relation to a phenomenon they had experienced, and to understand it by covering the contextual conditions in which they live (Yin, 2011:8; Neuman, 2012:113-115). Qualitative research is exploratory and descriptive by nature (Mack et al., 2005:4; Babbie, 2010:92-93; Neuman, 2012:16-17).

As one of the proposed research objectives was directed at exploration, the researcher decided to use in-depth semi-structured interviews, customarily used in qualitative research, in which the use of open-ended questions and probing is allowed to lead to a thorough exploration (Babbie, 2010:92-93; Neuman, 2012:16-17).

In view of the nature and characteristics of qualitative research the researcher came to conclude that the qualitative research approach seemed to be well suited to the proposed investigation.

### **1.5.2 The research design**

All research studies, whether planned or unplanned, have a research design or an “implicit blueprint” (Yin, 2011:76). The research design serves as a basic guide for the researcher informing the process of obtaining information for the duration of the research by stipulating from whom the data needs to be collected, and how, as well as how the data should be analysed in order to answer the stated research questions (Neuman, 2012:50; Yin 2011:76; Babbie, 2010:117). Grinnell and Unrau (2008:330) concur, and claim that the research design provides a framework that sets the parameters and conditions of the study. As such, it provides an answer to the ‘what’ question through bringing into focus the phenomenon to be investigated; the ‘who’

question by indicating the unit of analysis; and by directing the sampling strategy. In addition, it solves the 'when', 'where' and 'how' questions in terms of the processes of data collection and analysis.

The researcher set out to explore and describe the knowledge a sample of social workers and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry had about CST and CP as major research objectives. Hence she decided to follow a collective case study research design and use it instrumentally, together with an explorative, descriptive and contextual strategy of inquiry.

The case study is regarded as a qualitative approach (Guest et al., 2013:9,14; Creswell, 2007:73) in which the researcher explores a single case or multiple cases in a specific context. In this study the case is a group of social workers (from NGO's and/or government) rendering child protection services. The specific phenomenon is the state of their knowledge of and response to CST and CP that will be explored through detailed and in-depth data collection to generate case-based themes as Creswell (2007:73) suggests. Merriam (in Snow, Wolff, Hudspeth, Etheridge, 2009:243) concurs with the fact that aim of case studies is to gain an in-depth understanding of a situation, and claims that the case study is a sort of all-encompassing category for research that is neither a survey nor an experiment and is not statistical in nature. The intention when applying the case study as strategy of inquiry is to aim at discovery.

In employing the collective case study design instrumentally, which specifically refers to gaining insight into a phenomenon (Baškarada, 2014:5), the researcher commenced with the activity of purposively procuring a sample comprising various information-rich cases. She then engaged them in a deliberate fashion in the process of data collection to comply with the aim of case study research which is to undertake intensive exploration of the chosen phenomenon to come to a holistic understanding of something that is unique to the cases (Guest et al., 2013:9,14). The context of this research was represented by the social worker rendering child protection services and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry who stated their knowledge of and response to CST and CP.

A great deal of social research, as is also in the case of the research presented here, is conducted to explore a topic and as an opportunity for the researcher to become familiar with it. This usually occurs when a researcher examines a new interest, or when the subject itself is relatively new (Babbie, 2010:67). This is typically done for three reasons: first, to satisfy the researcher's curiosity and to understand the topic

better; second, to test the feasibility of more intensive scrutiny; and third, to develop methods that may be used in subsequent studies (Babbie, 2010:67, Neuman, 2012:73).

The purpose of descriptive research is to simply describe a certain phenomenon (Glatthorn and Joyner, 2005:43) as observations the researcher records. Scientific observations need to be made carefully and deliberately and should be more accurate and precise than casual ones (Glatthorn and Joyner, 2005:43).

Both exploration and description can occur in certain contexts and it is this contextual aspect that is explanatory of the phenomenon under study (Babbie, 2010:68-69). In other words, it is about asking the participants what they experienced and in which situation or under which circumstances they experienced it (Moustakas in Creswell, 2009:130).

Furthermore, contextual designs are used in qualitative research in order to grasp the social meaning and the significance of the experience in its social context (Neuman, 2012:92). Methods to execute this research design framed for this research are now detailed.

## **1.6 RESEARCH METHODS**

Under the concept 'research method' aspects such as population and sampling, preparation for and the methods used of data collection, analysis and verification are evaluated and selected. These aspects will now become the focus of discussion.

### **1.6.1. Population, sampling and sampling methods**

A population is the larger collection of cases from which we draw our sample (Babbie, 2010:186, Neuman, 2012:146) and comprises a group of interest that relate to the topic under investigation. Mack et al. (2005:6) postulate that even if it were possible, it would not be necessary to collect data from the entire community to get valid findings, as in qualitative research, only a sample, that is, a subset, of a population needs to be selected for any given study. In qualitative research, the sample size is often determined on a theoretical or data saturation basis, which is the point in data collection at which new data no longer brings additional insights or new information about the research questions (Mack et al, 2005:6; Babbie, 2010:193). Importantly, in qualitative research, according to Babbie (2010:193), the sampling of subjects can

change with time as the structure of the subject emerges ever clearer. This necessitates that the researcher has to pursue more or other subjects who may have more information than the initial group selected.

The initial population groups from which participants were to be purposively selected were the following:

**Group 1:** All registered social workers in the employ of government and NGOs in the Western Cape and on the Garden Route who rendered child protection social work services.

**Group 2:** All service providers in the tourism industry In the Western Cape and along the Garden Route in the Western Cape who were specifically:

- Hotel staff who interacted with guests visiting five star, four star and three star hotels or inns as well as those that were unrated
- Taxi drivers who interacted with guests at various collection points such as hotels, airports or shopping centres
- Owners of guest houses in Cape Town and on the Garden Route that were either star rated or unrated
- Tour operators who worked in the Western Cape and whose inbound destinations were located in the target area.

Due to time limitations and money constraints the whole population could not be included in this study but a sample was drawn. A sample is a portion or subset of a larger group called the 'population' and is a miniature version of the population, a smaller collection of the cases drawn from the larger population group (Fink in May 2011:98; Neuman, 2012:146).

The challenge in sampling, according to Yin (2011:87), is about needing to know which units or participants to select and why and also how many to include in the study. He expands on this thought by saying that the samples in a qualitative study are likely to be chosen in a deliberate manner through employing the purposive sampling method (Hennink, et al., 2011:85). Silverman (2001:250) postulates that purposive sampling demands that we think very critically about the parameters of the population from which we are interested in selecting our sample. Purposive sampling, also known as 'judgemental sampling', is a type of non-probability sampling in which the units to be observed are chosen by the researchers based on their own judgement about which will be useful or representative of the population, or who are information-rich and in the best position to provide comprehensive information about the phenomenon under investigation (Hennink et al., 2011:85; Babbie, 2010:193). Another type of non-

probability sampling technique is snowball sampling. Snowball sampling is utilised when the members of the population group under study are hard to locate and the researcher finds as much information about individual subjects as possible, and then asks those individuals to name other individuals - the name 'snowball' therefore indicates the accumulation of subjects to study (Babbie, 2010:193-194; Neuman, 2012:148-150). It was important to select samples that are the most appropriate and would provide the most relevant and important data. To this end the two sampling techniques employed in this study were purposive or judgemental sampling and snowball sampling.

In order to obtain a sample from the Group 1 population, the researcher approached social workers involved in rendering child protection services. They were either in private practice or were employed at NGOs or in government.

To procure a sample from the second population group the researcher set out to approach taxi drivers at the Cape Town and George airports and at taxi ranks outside hotels. As far as guest house owners were concerned, the plan executed was to obtain their contact details through the various guest house and accommodation associations in Plettenberg Bay, Mossel Bay, Knysna, Hermanus and Cape Town.

Hotel staff members were to be approached through their hotel management, as their time was requested from their employers. The last category – the tour operators – were approached directly through researching companies from the telephone directory or tourist organisations and ascertaining their applicability by ensuring that they fell into the 'inbound' tour operator classification. This meant that they had to cater for groups or individuals who were coming into South Africa from elsewhere and required land or travel arrangements as they were heading for the selected study area.

Criteria for inclusion relating to the service providers in the tourist industry were that they had to be service providers who deal with domestic and foreign tourists and who were able to communicate in English or Afrikaans since the researcher is only proficient enough to conduct interviews in these two languages. The inclusion criteria for social workers was based on their registration with the South African Council for Social Services Professions (SACSSP) and their practice experience in rendering child protection services.

Following the identification of the sample group members, the researcher turned her attention to setting up the method of data collection and then prepared the recruited participants for the data collection process

### 1.6.2 Preparation for and method of data collection

In preparing for the field research, the researcher consulted Neuman (2012:294) amongst other authors, and found the steps recommended by this author most useful. These are summarised as follows:

- Firstly, prepare to enter the field by being flexible, organised, rehearsing skills, building background and defocusing attention (being open) and being self-aware.
- Secondly, choose a site and gain access by dealing with the gatekeepers and take on a social role while building rapport.
- Apply strategies such as negotiation, normalising the research, making decisions about the disclosure of the results, the focus, the sample and managing one's stress.
- Maintain the relationship in the field by adjusting and adapting, using charm and nurturing trust, appearing interested and being "an acceptable incompetent".
- Gather and record the data, absorbing and experiencing, watching and learning.
- Exit the field.

In terms of preparation for the actual interviews, the researcher took particular note of the first step which is explained more fully below (Neuman, 2012:294):

**Be flexible:** this characteristic allows the researcher to follow new directions and seize opportunities as they develop, if they are recognised and acted upon. In addition, the researcher should be aware of the fact that they will have little control over the data initially but this will change as immersion in the project deepens.

**Be organised:** the researcher needs to be sure to understand how to use the recording equipment properly, know the questions in the protocol and meticulously keep notes and keep a diary of progress.

**Rehearse skills** and build background: it is necessary to observe carefully, listen well, employ excellent short term memory and write regularly as well as practise the art of observation with attention to detail.

**Defocus attention:** by focusing too intensely the researcher will be restrictive in their observations therefore it is important to defocus in order to “loosen the boundaries of your awareness”.

**Become self-aware:** the researcher needs to be aware of their own self and understand that anxiety, self-doubt, frustration and uncertainty may occur in the field.

**Preparation of the participants:** once the individuals, after being informed about the aim and the logistics of the research telephonically, had agreed out of their own free will to become participants, the researcher meet them at their respective places of employment where she was possibly better able to understand their contexts. She, once again and in detail, explained the research in the information and provided them with a letter informing them about the research and requesting their participation (see Addendum A). When the participants had satisfied themselves that they understood the document they signed it the informed consent document (see Addendum A) to indicate that they understood what participation in the project entailed, and agreed to the research interview. The researcher then commenced with collecting the data by using the questions contained in the interview-guide (see Addendum A).

Various authors (Mack et al., 2005:38-39; Babbie, 2010: 318-321; Neuman, 2012:302-303) recommend a number of important skills that the researcher should employ during interviews. The first entails building rapport with the participant by being friendly, relaxed and adopting a pleasant, non-patronising attitude. Second, the researcher should pay careful attention to what the participant says, deflecting questions from the participant, and being very aware of both the researcher's and the participant's body language, tone of voice and use of language. Employing these particular pointers subtly would enable the researcher to be more acutely aware of the participant's perspective. The last important point was to deliberately adapt to the differing personalities of each participant. These are the skills the researcher applied during her interviews.

In qualitative data gathering, in-depth interviewing and participant observation are used quite commonly and it is these methods that this researcher employed. In-depth interviewing is described by Hennink et al. (2011:109) as a one-on-one method of data collection during which an interviewer and participant as an interviewee discuss a specific topic in-depth. These types of interviews are sometimes described as conversation with a purpose or as more active inquiry (Babbie, 2010:318). It is a process through which the story is elicited from the interviewee by the open-ended

questions posed by the interviewer and entails interaction between interviewer and interviewee (Babbie, 2010:318; Hennink et al, 2011:109; Neuman, 2012:312).

The researcher elected to use in-depth interviewing and conduct all the interviews personally which means that the researcher would not only be listening the audible accounts but also paying attention to the accompanying non-verbal communication. The latter will, be documented if not during each interview then as soon as is possible afterwards. The comments will include both empirical observations as well as the researcher's interpretations of them. These are referred to as jotted notes, direct observation notes, inference notes, analytic memos and interview notes (May, 2011:169; Babbie, 2011:317; Neuman, 2012:307-310). To this end the researcher kept a diary of all events, processes and observations noted throughout the project.

In terms of research, the term protocol implies a broader set of procedures and queries than the classic 'instrument'. Usually such an instrument is well structured with closed and open-ended questions. Highly structured instruments still only consist of a set of tightly structured questions and are utilised more in quantitative studies than qualitative studies. A qualitative study is more likely to use a protocol rather than an instrument as "a protocol should connote a broad set of behaviours [the researcher is] to undertake, rather than any tightly scripted interaction between you [the researcher] and any source of evidence, such as a field participant" (Yin, 2011:102-103).

Choices in this aspect of research design range from no protocol to a well expressed protocol. The protocol for a qualitative study has some 'predictable features' says Yin (2011:103) and should contain sufficient questions, focused on the topic being studied that will serve to guide the line or lines of enquiry – in other words, what needs to be established from which participants. These lines of enquiry will allow for the revelation of issues that could otherwise be difficult to unearth. The research questions are for the researcher to answer. In this study interview guides were used to obtain the information from the sample groups. Hennink et al. (2011:112) explain that an interview guide, as the name suggests, is just a tool that guides the interview, explaining that the interview guide is a list of questions to be used in a flexible order, as a memory aide during the interview.

When researchers devise their questions, they have a choice of asking open-ended questions or closed questions. In qualitative, exploratory research open-ended questions are usually selected (Babbie, 2011:244). Open-ended questions are those in which a participant is asked to provide his or her own answer to the question asked

(Babbie, 2011:244). There are two main reasons for asking open-ended questions: first, because it is impractical to provide all the options available to answer the question being asked; and second, the researcher does not wish to impose their ideas or words on the participant (Greener, 2011:42). In addition, Mack et al. (2005:6) point to the fact that open-ended questions have the ability to evoke responses that are meaningful and culturally applicable to the participant; are not necessarily anticipated by the researcher; and are full of rich and explanatory content.

The interview guide (see Table 1.1 below) contains the biographical and topical questions to be covered during the interview with the social workers rendering services to the child victims and offenders in the child sex industry.

**Table 1.1: Questions for the interview guide for social workers**

Biographical Questions	Topical Questions
In what type of organisation are you employed?	What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?
Are you registered with any organisational bodies and if so, what are they?	What is the extent of child sex tourism in your area?
What geographical area does your work cover?	What do you think are the factors that contribute to the child sex tourism phenomenon?
How many years have you been practising as a social worker?	What experience have you had in relation to working with victims of child sex tourism?
	What experience have you had in relation to working with perpetrators of child sex tourism?
	What enables you to render services to the victims and/or perpetrators of child sex tourism?
	What obstacles do you believe prevent you from working effectively with victims/perpetrators of CSEC with particular reference to CST and CP?
	What South African or international legislation covering child sex tourism are you aware of?
	What in your point of view can be done to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CST and CP?

The interview guide (Table 1.2) has the biographical topical questions posed to the key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry.

**Table 1.2: Questions for the interview guide for the hospitality and tourism industry**

<b>Biographical Questions</b>	<b>Topical Questions</b>
<p>What is your profession?</p> <p>What geographical area does your work cover?</p> <p>What type of clientele do you predominantly deal with – local or foreign – and if foreign from which countries are the majority of your travellers?</p>	<p>What is your understanding of the concept ‘child sex tourism’?</p> <p>What is the extent of child sex tourism in your area, in other words, do you see children trying to engage with your guests on a sexual level or do you get reports of this from guests?</p> <p>What kind of interaction or requests, if any, have you had with your guests around the availability of children for sexual purposes? Please describe as fully as possible</p> <p>What kind of children engage in sex with tourists?</p> <p>What kind of tourists do you believe have sex with children?</p> <p>What role, if any, should your sector play in the prevention of child sex tourism?</p> <p>What should the tourism sector do in South Africa to increase awareness of child sex tourism?</p> <p>Are you aware of South African or international legislation covering child sex tourism? Please specify.</p> <p>What do you believe are the contributing factors to commercial sexual exploitation of children with specific reference to child prostitution and child sex tourism?</p> <p>Are travellers/hotel guests etc. aware that sexual exploitation is illegal? If so, how are they being informed?</p> <p>What do you know about The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism known as ‘The Code’?</p>

Thus for the actual data collection process the researcher prepared protocols as an interview guide that would also to assist the probing technique to extract information from the participants regarding their knowledge of and response to child sexual abuse with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism. However, prior to implementing the main process of data collection, the researcher and the study

supervisor decided to undertake a pilot study. In qualitative research, the pilot study focuses primarily on the activity of pre-testing the topic to be investigated, and to check the open-ended questions in the interview guide to try and predict how the participants would comprehend and understand the questions to be asked (Hennink et al., 2011:120). The researcher planned to conduct one pilot interview per sample group to determine if the questions were understandable, and would elicit an appropriate response, yield rich data, as well as enabling effective probing techniques, and facilitating easy communication between the interviewer and interviewee.

### 1.6.3 Data analysis

The process of analysing the data entails a process of preparing the data for analysis and immersing oneself in the data in order to develop an in-depth understanding of the meanings imbedded in the data (Creswell, 2009:183; Babbie, 2012:394). The researcher therefore transcribed the recorded interviews after organising and preparing it. After transcription, field notes were typed up and arranged it into different categories, then reading through all data and ascertaining the tone and themes in order to code it, a process Creswell (2009:186) recommends. Tesch, in Creswell (2009:186) proposes eight steps to be followed for the purpose of analysing the collected data that were then applied:

The transcripts will all be read in order to get an overall sense of the participants' views.

- One of the interviews will then be selected for particular scrutiny, and it will be gone through carefully to ascertain what it is about, and to seek out the underlying meaning of the responses from the participant.
- Subsequently, the previous step will be repeated for all the transcriptions. On completion, a list of topics that emerged from engaging with the data will be compiled. Each of the topics will be provided with a unique identifiable abbreviation.
- With this list in hand, the researcher will return to the dataset and place abbreviations next to portions of data that correspond with a particular named topic, all the while observing carefully for the emergence of new topics.
- The identified topics will be rephrased as self-explanatory themes.
- The list of the themes, with their accompanying abbreviations, will be placed in alphabetical order to ease the process of recoding, should that become necessary.
- All the data that belongs together can then be collated to start a preliminary analysis.

- Data can be recoded if necessary. Subsequently, the process of reporting the findings in a thematic-fashion can commence.

#### 1.6.4 Method of data verification

Every research study contains various claims which may or may not be valid. A goal of the researcher is to validate as many claims as possible hence reliability and validity are important issues (Neuman, 2012:121). Validity refers to whether that which was supposed to be measured was measured, as opposed to having measured something else. Reliability refers to dependability which can be addressed by asking: if you repeat the study again and again, would the result be the same? (Babbie, 2010:326). A study that is considered valid would require that the data for the study had been properly collected; and that the data has been properly interpreted, to ensure that the conclusions are accurate reflections of the real world and representative of the world that the researcher studied (Yin, 2011:78).

Maxwell (2005:244-245) suggests the following strategies for combating threats to validity in qualitative research. These are a few of the strategies:

- Intensive long-term field involvement which will enable the researcher to produce a “complete and in-depth understanding”
- Documenting data in a rich or full way to cover the observations and interviews thoroughly
- Participant validation – in other words – receiving feedback from the people who have been studied, to minimise interpretative errors of their behaviours and views
- Search for discrepant evidence and negative cases to test varying information
- Triangulation – means collecting information from varying sources and cross-checking data received.

The researcher elected to employ Guba’s model (as explained in Krefting, 1991) according to which there are four aspects to ensure the trustworthiness of the research process and findings in qualitative research. These are: truth value, applicability, consistency and neutrality. Each of these as well as their application in the study is now discussed.

## Truth value

When participants are able to 'see themselves' and their experiences in the research report, this demonstrates truth value and trustworthiness of the findings. The researcher observed and implemented the following steps to ensure truth value:

- **Triangulation of data sources:** According to Krefting (1991:219), this entails comparing multiple perspectives. This researcher applied triangulation using data from interviewing various participants from each of the sampled population groups.
- **Interviewing techniques:** It is very important for the researcher to come to an in-depth understanding of the phenomenon under investigation from the vantage point of the participants. To realise this, the researcher used various probing techniques and open-ended questions to verify the participants' versions and to acquire the same understanding as the participants had when sharing their accounts (Babbie, 2010:417).
- **Peer examination:** Peer examination is a valuable tool for data verification (Krefting, 1991:219). To this end the researcher spoke to many colleagues on the subject of child sexual abuse, and consulted qualified researchers who understood both the process of qualitative research and the topic of this study.
- **Journal:** The researcher also decided to record her own experiences and thoughts and thus monitored her own feelings. In addition, where she wanted to ensure that her understanding of the meaning of some of the participants' conversations was clear and she therefore checked back to review the participants' conversations on that point and places where blurred meanings may have arisen. Then she ensured that the recorded data was an accurate reflection of the participants' intentions.

## Applicability

Applicability refers to the ability to apply the findings of the research to other contexts, groups or settings (Guba in Krefting, 1991:216). Since there is little research on child sex tourism in South Africa, applicability can be difficult to achieve. However, the researcher undertook to report the research methodology and research findings in a detailed fashion, in the hope that she could expose the possibilities for assessing the applicability of her research findings to other contexts and settings for researchers who wished to do so in the future.

## **Consistency**

Consistency refers to whether the findings would be consistent if the study were repeated by a competent researcher with the same participants or similar participants or a similar context (Guba in Krefting, 1991:216). Bearing this in mind, and should the need for a confirmability audit arise, the researcher made provision for such an eventuality by setting out and providing a rich and detailed description of the research methodology employed in the study. In addition, the researcher employed an independent coder to analyse the collected data independently, the results of which were consulted. This ensured that the findings presented were an accurate reflection of the participants' input.

## **Neutrality**

Bias can easily appear in research and ultimately reflect in the findings. Freedom from bias is an important consideration (Guba in Krefting, 1991:216). In order to minimise or 'neutralise' bias, an independent coder was actively involved in the data analysis and interpretation phases of the research process. In order to exclude bias the transcribed interviews, decisions made during the entire research process especially during the analysis phase, were all made available to the supervisor for auditing. The relevant documents will remain in the researcher's archives for five years, should they be required.

### **1.6.5 Ethical considerations**

For research to be considered ethical it should be in keeping with generally accepted ethical principles, which include equity, honesty and humane consideration (Glatthorn & Joyner, 2005:8). A great deal of social work research is reliant on human beings for the information required to build up a dataset, and it is therefore critical that researchers treat participants well and protect their health and well-being (Yegidis and Weinbach, 2002:26).

This means that the study should not reflect discrimination of any kind or support it in any way; this stance would include matters of class, ethnicity or gender. Moreover, it should be characterised by openness and honesty, and should not hurt participants either emotionally or physically (Glatthorn & Joyner, 2005:8).

Weber (in Silverman, 2001:270) is of the opinion that all research is contaminated by the values of the researcher, while Glatthorn and Joyner (2005:12) impress upon the researcher the need to report the results openly, honestly and objectively.

The following ethical considerations were regarded as important to observe during this research endeavour:

- **Obtaining informed consent:** Consenting to participate in a research project is dependent upon the provision of adequate information about the goal of the research; what the participants' involvement will entail; being informed about risks related to the research; and specifying the participants' rights clearly so that they will be in the position to make a calculated decision whether or not to participate (Hennink et al., 2011:67). According to Mack et al. (2005:11), when obtaining informed consent from less literate populations, the information about the research (normally contained in a preamble – see Addendum A), and the contents of the consent form should be read aloud to the participant, using appropriate language, and checking in with the participant all the while to make sure they understand the situation (Hennink et al., 2011:71). More literate participants should be given the preamble to peruse in their own time and at their own convenience, and should be granted an opportunity to discuss any matter on what was read, or to clear any confusion. Once the researcher is satisfied that the participant understands the research and their rights with regard to the research, then the researcher may ask for consent to go ahead with the interview. The researcher should ask the participant to sign the consent form after which the researcher can co-sign. The researcher could offer the participant a copy of the consent form, which should contain the researcher's contact details as well as contact details of the research officials (Mack et al 2005:11). This researcher did inform the potential participant what the purpose of the research was and would be done with the results and how the final report would be disseminated. An informed consent form was provided and signed by each interviewee (see Addendum A).

- **Confidentiality and anonymity:** With reference to explaining confidentiality, Hennink et al. (2011:71) writes: "Confidentiality refers to not disclosing information that is discussed between the researcher and the participant". According to these authors assuring complete confidentiality is not possible, as the participants' quotations are included in the research findings. However, they claim that anonymity can be ensured by removing all identifiable information from transcripts and in the research report (Hennink et al., 2011:71). Assuring the participants' anonymity, and in managing what

they share in a “sacred” and confidential manner, remain important in order to earn their trust and thus to elicit good data (Mack et al 2005: 31).

The researcher must explain the procedures that will be used to protect each participant's privacy. Mack et al. (2005:43) go so far as to say that, if the participant is concerned about confidentiality, and the researcher is unable to address these concerns, the researcher should offer to postpone the interview until these concerns have been addressed. The participant may also be referred to the study officials whose contact information should appear on the consent form should confirmation be sought to ascertain whether the procedures around anonymity and the management of the data in a confidential manner are really above reproach. In addition, according to Mack et al (2005:43) it is also important that the researcher does not mention or even allude to other participants, even if casually or during the interview. This could tip the participant off that the researcher is not being careful about protecting confidentiality and trust would then be affected. Furthermore, interviewees should be informed that their information will be treated as confidential, and that they can consent or decline to be taped while being interviewed, reinforcing that they give their information voluntarily.

From the researcher's perspective, confidentiality and anonymity will be maintained by keeping all participants' personal information confidential. Each participant will therefore remain anonymous and will not be able to be identified in the research report content, unless the researcher was authorised to reveal something said in writing. Only personal information that was necessary for the study was recorded. As far as the management of the data is concerned all information and notes on the interviews, the recordings of the interviews and the transcripts will be kept in safe storage on the researcher's premises in a locked storeroom until the researcher herself destroys it. The document containing the participants' real names and their pseudonyms will be kept separately and at no time or place together.

In the preamble inviting individuals to participate in this research project (see Addenda A - E), however, the researcher does point out that the researcher will be obliged to alert the authorities to any activity that may be detrimental to a child or person should the researcher become aware of such a situation. The participant will be alerted to this condition which is the researcher's ethical obligation according to the South African Council for Social Services Professions (SACSSP) Code of Conduct that are the guidelines to which all social workers in South Africa are expected to adhere.

- **Debriefing:** It is possible that the researcher will unearth issues, such as a participant's own sexual abuse or a participant's witnessing of sexual abuse of a child, that could be long forgotten and dealt with or open wounds that may have been closed. The researcher is aware that there could be some difficult information that a participant might have to share. In every interview it is incumbent on the researcher to offer debriefing services to the participant should such a circumstance arise. Alternatively, the researcher could put the participant in touch with someone who could help them free of charge, should they experience any such difficulty. The researcher will explore various options for affected participants and have this information at hand when conducting interviews. The list would include contact details of FAMSA, SANTAC and social workers in private practice with whom the researcher will make arrangements for payment if required.
- **Initiation of research project.** The research project did not commence without approval and prior written permission from the University of South Africa Department of Social Work Research and Ethics Committee (DR&EC). Ethical clearance was granted at a meeting of this Committee held on 23 August 2012.

## 1.7 CLARIFICATION AND DEFINITION OF KEY CONCEPTS

Under this sub-heading the key concepts central to this study are defined and a clarification of the meaning they assume in the context of this study is provided.

1.7.1 **Child:** A child is defined in the Oxford English Dictionary (1996:141) as: "(a) a young human being below the age of puberty; (b) Unborn or new-born human being", whereas Article 1 of the Convention for the Rights of the Child defines a child as: "every human being below the age of 18 years, unless under the law applicable to the child, majority is attained earlier" (Detrick, 1999:53).

A minor is defined as a person under the full legal age (Oxford English Dictionary, 1996: 566). The South African Children's Act of 2005 clarifies this further, defining a minor as any person under 18, unless married or emancipated by order of court. So a person under 18 is therefore considered a child and any person over 18 is an adult. In this report, 'child' and 'minor' are used interchangeably to indicate all persons under the age of 18.

1.7.2 **Child sexual abuse:** is defined in the South African Children's Act 38 (Act No. 38 of 2005) as meaning (a) sexually molesting or assaulting a child or allowing a child to be sexually molested or assaulted; (b) encouraging, inducing or forcing a child to be used for the sexual gratification of another person; (c) using a child in or deliberately exposing a child to sexual activities or pornography; or (d) procuring or allowing a child to be procured for commercial sexual exploitation or in any way participating or assisting in the commercial sexual exploitation of a child. Barker and Hodes (2004:42) offer the description from the document 'Working Together to Safeguard Children' which is: "Forcing or enticing a young child or person to take part in sexual activities, whether or not the child is aware of what is happening. The activities may involve physical contact, including penetrative (e.g. rape or buggery) or non-penetrative acts. They may include pornographic material or watching sexual activities, or encouraging children to behave in sexually inappropriate ways". It can be interpreted as a form of sexual violence committed against the child e.g. rape. It is not the same as 'sexual exploitation' because it can cover situations where there is no payment in cash or in kind, e.g. rape, incest and sexual assault in non-commercial situations. It covers a wide range of settings such as school, prison and family, and is an inherent component of commercial sexual exploitation such as that which occurs within brothels and for the production of pornography (Muntarhorn, 2007:2).

Both of these definitions are relevant and adopted for this study as the one from the South African Children's Act is broad and inclusive and the latter description by Muntarhorn states the fact that remuneration for the child might not be involved which would certainly be the case if a child had been trafficked.

1.7.3. **Child exploitation:** The concept of child exploitation, which is adopted for the context of this study, is taken from the Children's Act (Act 38 of 2005) which states: "exploitation in relation to a child includes:

- (a) all forms of slavery or practices similar to slavery, including debt bondage or forced marriage;
- (b) sexual exploitation;
- (c) servitude;
- (d) forced labour or services;
- (e) child labour prohibited in terms of section 141;
- (f) the removal of body parts".

#### 1.7.4 Commercial Sexual Exploitation of a child/children (CSEC)

Related to, and applicable within the context of this study is the concept of commercial sexual exploitation of the child which the Children's Act (Act 38 of 2005) describes as: "a) the procurement of a child to perform sexual activities for financial or other reward, including acts of prostitution or pornography, irrespective of whether that reward is claimed by, payable to or shared with the procurer, the child, the parent or care-giver of the child, or any other person; or

b) trafficking in a child for use in sexual activities, including prostitution or pornography".

**1.7.5 Child sex tourism (CST):** The United Nations World Tourism Organisation ([www.thecode.org](http://www.thecode.org)) defines organised sex tourism as trips which utilise the structures and networks of the tourism sector and can be organised from within the tourism sector, or from the outside of this sector and have the primary purpose of engaging in a commercial sexual relationship with residents at the destination by the tourist and, in this way, adversely affecting the health, social and cultural aspects of the victim of this activity, more especially when it is exploitative in terms of the victim's gender, age, social and economic standing.

Shared Hope International (2007:8) defines the term sex tourism. in which they include child sex tourism, as travel undertaken by the purchasers of sexual services for the purpose of obtaining sexual services from another person in exchange for money and/or goods and additionally they include trafficking in their extended definition by including the victims of trafficking as being the supply for the demand created by sex tourists (SHI, 2007:8).

A third, more simplistic, definition is offered by Chetty (2007:viii): Child sex tourism is tourism organised with the primary purpose of facilitating a commercial sexual relationship with a child. However, in the researcher's opinion both this definition and the Shared Hope International definition ignore the opportunistic aspect of child sex tourism.

The researcher therefore elects to utilise the definition for the context of this report as the one as offered by ECPAT (2012:1) in their information brochure, where child sex tourism is described as "the commercial sexual exploitation of children by men or women who travel from one place to another, usually from a richer country to one that

is less developed, and there engage in sexual acts with children, defined as anyone under 18”.

**1.7.6 Child prostitution:** One definition of child prostitution which is widely used (according to Green in Barrett, 1998:476) and adopted for this study is “the provision of sexual services in exchange for some form of payment, such as money, drink, drugs, other consumer goods or even a bed and a roof over one’s head for a night”.

**1.7.7 Child pornography:** (also increasingly referred to as child abuse images)

Article 2 of the Optional Protocol to the Convention on the Rights of the Child on the Sale of Children (in UNICEF, 2009:1) describes child pornography as “any representation, by whatever means, of a child engaged in real or simulated explicit sexual activities or any representation of the sexual parts of a child for primarily sexual purposes” (UNICEF, 2009:1). This description is adopted in the context of this report for the concept ‘child pornography’.

**1.7.8 Child sex trafficking:** The United States Department of State Trafficking in Person Report (TIP) (TIP, 2014:29) defines child sex trafficking as a situation in which a child (aged under 18 years of age) is “...is recruited, enticed, harboured, transported, provided, obtained, or maintained to perform a commercial sex act, proving force, fraud, or coercion is not necessary for the offense to be characterized as human trafficking. There are no exceptions to this rule: no cultural or socio-economic rationalizations alter the fact that children who are prostituted are trafficking victims”.

For the purposes of this research child sex trafficking will seen as dealing in or bartering about the handing over of a child for the purpose of a commercial sex act.

**1.7.9 Child rights:** Child rights are the human rights of people under the age of 18. In South Africa, children’s rights are laid out in Section 28 of the country’s constitution. The rights which a child has in terms of this Act are supplementary to the rights which a child has in terms of the Bill of Rights (RSA Government Gazette, 17 June 2006: 34). Child rights have been formulated in the Convention on the Rights of the Child. In 54 Articles the Convention spells out children’s rights to provision (for basic needs such as food and housing), protection (from abuse, degrading punishment or arrest without a proper judicial process) and participation (to express their views on all matters that affect them and have those views taken seriously). This is the definition the researcher

will adopt: children's rights are universal, inalienable and indivisible and the CRC works in conjunction with other human rights legislation.

1.7.10 **Child protection:** This is work which aims to prevent, respond to and ultimately resolve the problem of child exploitation, and is the description accepted by the researcher. The Children's Act (No 38) of 2005 (RSA Government Gazette, 19 June 2006:29) describes the way in which children should be protected according to the tenets of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. This includes protection from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation. Furthermore, under this Act children have a right to be protected from discrimination, exploitation and other "physical, emotional or moral harm or hazards" (RSA Government Gazette, 19 June 2006:30). According to this official document the best interests of the child are of paramount importance especially as pertaining to their care, protection and well-being (RSA Government Gazette, 2006:34).

1.7.11 A **sexual exploiter of children**, according to the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act 32 of 2007;

1. "a person (A) who unlawfully and intentionally engages the services of a child complainant (B), with or without the consent of B, for financial or other reward, favour or compensation to B or to a third person (C) –

(a) for purpose of engaging in a sexual act with B, irrespective of whether the sexual act is committed or not; or

(b) by committing a sexual act with B.

2. "A person (A) who unlawfully and intentionally offers the services of a child complainant (B) to a third person (C) with or without the consent of (B), for financial or other reward, favour or compensation to A, B or to another person (D) –

(a) for purposes of the commission of a sexual act with B by C;

(b) by inviting, persuading or inducing B to allow C to commit a sexual act with B;

(c) by participating in, being involved in, promoting, encouraging or facilitating the commission of a sexual act with B by C;

(d) by making available, offering or negating B for purposes of the commission of a sexual act with B by C; or

(e) by detaining B, whether under threat, force, coercion, deception, abuse of power or authority, for purposes of the commission of a sexual act with B by C, is guilty of an offence of being involved in the sexual exploitation of a child.

1.7.12 An **exploiter in the context of tourism** is, according to the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act (pg. 16), “a person (A), including a juristic person, who-

(a) makes or organises any travel arrangements for or on behalf of a third person (C), whether that person is resident within or outside the borders of the Republic, with the intention of facilitating the commission of any sexual act with the child complainant (B) with, or without the consent of B, irrespective of whether that act is committed or not; or

(b) prints or publishes, in any manner, any information that is intended to promote or facilitate conduct that would constitute a sexual act with B,

is guilty of an offence of promoting child sex tours.

1.7.13 **Social worker:** According to the Children’s Act (Act 38 of 2005), a social worker is a person “who is registered or deemed to be registered as a social worker in terms of the Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978).

A further definition comes from de Vos, Schulze and Patel (2005:17) who define a social worker as a well trained professional with a theoretical knowledge base of methods and techniques for participating in wider social action and policy making. Both of these definitions are relevant. The first definition takes into account the legality of operating as a social worker and the researcher’s first participant group is drawn from this population within the study area. The second definition focuses on the role of the social worker and this too is relevant in that the participants will be questioned on their opinion of policy and suggestions to improve policy.

1.7.14 **Travel and tourism:** The South African Tourism Channel Toolkit (Department of Tourism and Environment, 2008:7) describes tourism as the term used for the movement of people to destinations away from where they live for any reason for 24 hours or more, but for a maximum of one year. This definition is clearly based on the definition provided by the UN World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO) which defines tourists as people who “travel to and stay in places outside their usual environment for more than twenty-four (24) hours and not more than one consecutive year for leisure, business and other purposes not related to the exercise of an activity remunerated from within the place visited” (UNWTO, 2008:55).

In addition, the Department of Tourism and Environment’s Toolkit (2008:8) explains the distinction between tourism and travel as they are sometimes used interchangeably: travel refers to the journey a person undertakes where a person has a particular goal in

mind, whereas tourists are people involved in tourism. This is the definition and distinction that will be accepted and used by the researcher as the basis of any reference to tourism, travel and tourists in this document.

1.7.15 A **multi-perspective report** is one in which Bhatnagar (in Mills, Durepos and Wiebe, 2010:587) suggests is the result of “gathering and analysing evidence from multiple sources, as opposed to a single, source is recommended for enhancing the quality of case studies”. More than one data source is used to corroborate findings and this “addresses the issue of construct validity as more than one measure is used in assessing issues of interest” (Bhatnagar in Mills et al., 2010:587).

## 1.8. OUTLINE OF THE RESEARCH REPORT

This report comprises seven chapters and an overview of each of the chapters follows.

In Chapter 1 (this chapter) an introduction and general orientation to the report is provided with a specific focus on: introduction and problem formulation, problem statement, reason/rationale for the study, the theoretical framework, research questions, goal and objectives, research approach and design, ethical considerations, limitations of the research, clarification of key concepts and the content of the report.

Chapter 2 presents and elaborates on the research plan mentioned in Chapter 1 and provides a detailed discussion on how the proposed plan ‘was worked’, that is, to describe how the proposed qualitative research methodology decided upon was applied during the selection and recruitment of the participants and through the data collection, analysis and verification phases.

In Chapter 3 the research findings on the accounts and recollections of adult survivors about their childhood commercial sexual exploitation is presented.

In Chapter 4 the first part of the research findings on the accounts of the service providers that expose their knowledge of and responses to the phenomenon of the commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC) together with their suggestions with specific reference to child prostitution (CP) and child sex tourism (CST) will be presented.

In Chapter 5 the second part of the research findings on the accounts of the service providers about their knowledge of and response to and suggestions about the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CST and CP will be presented.

Chapter 6 focuses on the accounts of hospitality and tourism industry service providers about their knowledge of and response to the phenomenon of CSEC with particular focus on CST and CP.

In Chapter 7 (the final chapter of this study) the conclusions arrived at by the researcher will be presented, together with a discussion on the limitations of the study, and recommendations will be made in relation to the topic, to service provision, legislation and an agenda for future research will be forwarded.

## **1.9 CHAPTER SUMMARY**

This first chapter offers an introduction and general orientation to the research report that focuses specifically on: a general introduction and problem formulation, the problem statement, a reason/rationale for the study, the theoretical framework, research questions, the study goal and objectives, the research approach and design, ethical considerations, limitations of the research, clarification of key concepts, and a summary of its content.

An overview of the phenomenon of commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC) is outlined with particular reference to the emergence of child sex tourism (CST) and how it has developed internationally and locally. In addition, it deals with the ways in which this problem is addressed by both the international community and the South African governmental and non-governmental organisations. A discussion on the problem formulation with a motivation for the study provides justification for this research endeavour.

According to the literature, a theoretical framework is an essential part of a research study and in this case the ecological systems approach is adopted and explained. A detailed discussion of its application motivates its choice. Research questions, study goals and objectives, the relevance of a qualitative methodology, which includes a closer look at both purposive and snowball sampling methods together with a description of the specific population groups that relate to the research problem, set the research scene. Also discussed are other methodological issues with data collection

and analysis being enhanced by an elaboration of methods of data verification that examine truth value by employing triangulation, interviewing techniques, peer examination and keeping a journal, applicability, consistency and neutrality. The final section of this chapter provides definitions and clarification of the terminology used throughout the report to establish a common understanding between the researcher and the reader. An overview of the remaining six chapters concludes the chapter.

In the next chapter a description of the application of the qualitative research approach used in this research is presented.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **THE QUALITATIVE RESEARCH METHODOLOGY: AN APPLIED DESCRIPTION**

#### **2.1 INTRODUCTION**

The title of the booklet 'Plan your work & work your Plan: Essential Competencies for PhDs', authored by Helm, Mason, Stoddart and Campa III (2010) can also be applied to the context of social work research in that the pattern is similar. Starting out with planning the research project (i.e. drawing up a research proposal and seeking approval and ethical clearance), then working the plan (i.e. conducting the research). In Chapter 1 of this report the research plan is introduced. This chapter will present and elaborate on this plan in order to provide a detailed discussion on how the proposed plan 'was worked' (i.e. to describe how the proposed qualitative research methodology decided upon was applied during the selection and recruitment of the participants, data collection, analysis and verification phases).

#### **2.2 MOTIVATION FOR THE WAY OF DESCRIBING HOW THE QUALITATIVE RESEARCH APPROACH WAS UTILISED IN THIS RESEARCH ENDEAVOUR**

Whilst making reference to the fact that no strict rules apply to the structure of writing a qualitative research report, Bless, Higson-Smith and Kagee (2011:168) simultaneously assert that logic and consistency bring order to research reports, irrespective of whether they are qualitative or quantitative.

In deciding on how to approach the activity for describing, or putting on record and how the qualitative research methodology decided on was utilised in this research project, the researcher took note of the suggestions proposed by Golden-Biddle and Locke (2007:52-53) and Bless et al. (2011:168-169). These authors advise that it is fundamental to theoretically (or by way of supporting literature) underpin and inform the decisions that are made and the plans operationalised in terms of 'how' the fieldwork was conducted, with reference to the recruitment of participants, the preparation of the participants for data collection, collecting, analysing and verifying the data with supporting literature. The suggestion from Golden-Biddle and Locke (2007:52-53), (adopted by the researcher as the approach for describing how the proposed research plan panned out during the fieldwork), indisputably necessitates a situation where the researcher will have to refer the reader back to the proposed plan in Chapter 1 of the

report. In addition, she may even be required to revise, and further elaborate (by providing more detail) on some of the chosen research methodology-related aspects and concepts discussed in Chapter 1. This way of doing may be viewed, (and even critiqued), by the readers of the report as a repetition of information.

In defence of this *modus operandi* of referring back (by way of cross-referencing) to the research plan in Chapter 1 and revisiting and/or further elaborating on some of the research methodology-related aspects in this chapter, a description of how the plan was operationalised is provided. The researcher refers to Corbin and Strauss (2008:13), Creswell (2009:176) and Yin (2010:77) who state that qualitative research is by nature fluid, evolutionary and dynamic. This feature, inherent to qualitative research, links with another characteristic pointed out by the mentioned scholars as permissible. It relates to the fact that, in qualitative research studies, ‘an emergent research design’ and not a ‘tightly prescribed’ research is possible. By implication, this boils down to a scenario where the initial research plan as put down on paper, may change. It will then have to be adapted during the fieldwork phase. In practice, and in underscoring Yin (2010:77) and Maxwell’s (2013:3) sentiments, it means that the qualitative research design entails more of a ‘do-it-yourself’ rather than an ‘off-the-shelf’ process, as is the case with quantitative research. This ‘doing-it-yourself’ involves “tracking back and forth between the different components of the design, assessing their implications for one another” and revising, redesigning and/or amending the different components of the design originally planned along the way as the study progresses, should the need arise (Maxwell, 2013:3) and, where necessary, even diverting from the initial plan.

Another reason for motivating the adopted way for describing how the research methodology was utilised in this study is the fact that qualitative researchers have an obligation to make a decision trail available. Providing a decision trail requires the researcher to give a detailed and thick description of the research methodology employed in order to enable a dependability audit to be conducted in the future, should such a need arise (Shenton, 2004:71; Thomas & Magilvy, 2011:153). The concept ‘dependability’ refers to whether the findings of a particular research study would be consistent if the research were to be repeated with the same participants, with the same method and in a similar context (Shenton, 2004:71).

In order to enable future researchers to conduct a dependability audit, Thomas and Magilvy (2011:153) and Shenton (2004:71-72) provide pointers (depicted in Table 2.1) on aspects that need to be described in detail to allow for this.

**Table 2.1: Aspects to be covered in detail in a research report permitting a dependability audit (Shenton, 2004:71-72; Thomas & Magilvy, 2011:153)**

<b>Thomas and Magilvy's (2011:153) pointers on aspects to be described in detail in a research report permitting a dependability audit</b>	<b>Shenton's (2004:71-72) pointers on aspects to be described in detail in a research report permitting a dependability audit</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) A description of the purpose of the study</li> <li>b) A discussion on how and why the participants included in the study were selected for the study</li> <li>c) A detailed account on how the data was collected, the methods chosen for data collection and time spent in the field on data collection</li> <li>d) An explanation of how the data was prepared for analysis, and how the data was analysed</li> <li>e) A detailed presentation and interpretation of the research findings</li> <li>f) A description of the techniques employed to determine the credibility of the data</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The research plan or strategy in terms of what was planned and how it was executed (i.e. the research design and its implementation)</li> <li>b) The detail of data gathering, addressing the minutiae of what was done in the field (i.e. a description on how the plan was operationalised)</li> <li>c) A reflective assessment of the project, evaluating the effectiveness of the process of inquiry undertaken</li> </ul>

Another reason for motivating the approach to provide a theoretical underpinning illuminating the qualitative research approach and methods and describing how the qualitative research methodology was utilised in this study is the fact that the qualitative researcher has to allow for this by establishing the “transferability of research findings”, which too requires a detailed description of the research methodology and decisions made in this regard (Larson, 2009:32-33; Lincoln & Guba in Ungar, 2003:95). The concept ‘transferability’, refers to the ability to demonstrate whether the results of the research at hand can be transferred to other contexts (Shenton, 2004:69-70). To the question: *who has the responsibility of determining the transferability of the research findings?*, Larson (2009:32) answers by referring to Lincoln and Guba who note that “the responsibility of the original investigator ends in providing sufficient descriptive data to make such similar judgements possible” (i.e. whether the findings ‘fit’ or resonate within the context to which the findings are to be transferred). This state of

affairs boils down to a shift in the power relationship between the researcher and the audience (i.e. the readers of the report and future researchers), in that the opinion is held that the audience is now bestowed with the role of adjudicator in view of the fact of being in a better position to assess whether some context they know about is similar to the research context (Larson, 2009:32).

The motivated manner for describing how the qualitative research methodology employed for investigating this research topic and how it is applied was introduced in the previous sub-section of this chapter. This will now be continued in the remainder of this chapter which is dedicated to a description on the application of the qualitative research process.

### **2.3 THE QUALITATIVE RESEARCH APPROACH**

The reader is informed in Chapter 1, Section 1.5.1 of this report of the researcher's decision that a qualitative research approach would be adopted for this investigation.

To elaborate further on the introductory remarks made about qualitative research in Chapter 1, Creswell (2009:4) states that a researcher will decide on using a qualitative research approach when the aim of the study is to explore a problem experienced by humanity with a view to gaining an understanding of the meaning that individuals, or groups of individuals, ascribe to the identified problem. Researchers utilising the qualitative approach normally employ data collection methods such as in-depth interviews, focus group discussions and observations to examine the participants' experiences of the particular phenomenon in detail (Hennink, Hutter and Bailey, 2011:8). These methods of data collection allow researchers to "get at the inner experience of participants" and from this to discover and understand how meanings are formed in a cultural context (Corbin and Strauss, 2008:12-13). Neuman (1997:14) agrees pointing out that one of the features of a qualitative style is to come to an understanding of how social reality, embedded with cultural meaning, is constructed. These steps culminate in a report, which can be viewed as flexible, since it is written in a narrative style and includes the thoughts and biases of the researcher's actions (Creswell, 2002:58).

From this description, the conclusion can be drawn that qualitative research has distinct characteristics (cf. Munhall, 2001; Williams, 2003; Corbin & Strauss, 2008, Fetterman in Given, 2008:250; Creswell, 2009; Yin, 2010; Marshall and Rossman,

2011:2-3; Welman, Kruger & Mitchell, 2012:192; Maxwell, 2013). These distinctive characteristics, mentioned by more than one author, are presented in table format (Table 2.2).

**Table 2.2: Characteristics of qualitative research**

<b>Characteristic of qualitative research</b>	<b>Authors who mention this as a characteristic</b>
Qualitative research allows for an emergent design that takes shape as the study progresses	Hurworth (2005:125); Morgan (2008:245); Creswell (2009:176); Marshall & Rossman (2011:2); Welman et.al. (2012:192)
Qualitative research is emic: concerned with the meaning of events being studied	Fetterman (in Given 2008:250); Creswell (2009); Yin (2010)
Qualitative research is conducted in a natural setting	Munhall (in Rolfe, 2006:306); Corbin & Strauss (2008); Creswell (2009:176); Marshall & Rossman (2011:2)
The main instrument in qualitative research is the researcher	Creswell (2009:176), Marshall & Rossman (2011:3, 112)
This type of research involves complex reasoning	Creswell (2009:176), Yin (2010)
Qualitative research delivers a holistic representation of the emergent picture	Munhall (in Rolfe, 2006:306); Creswell (2009:176), Marshall & Rossman (2011:2)

Each of these characteristics is now elaborated on in terms of their academic meaning and will be followed by a description of how they were operationalised in the context of this study.

- ***Qualitative research allows for an emergent design***

This distinctive characteristic of qualitative research allowing for an emergent research design, or the design taking shape over the course of a project, is indeed associated with qualitative, inductive approaches of exploration and evaluation (Hurworth, 2005:125; Morgan, 2008:245; Corbin and Strauss, 2008:13; Creswell, 2009:176 & Yin, 2010:77).

This means that during the fieldwork stage of the project the plan as proposed originally may have to be adjusted as the incoming information informs the researcher of changes required. This could include changes to the research sites, the number of participants interviewed, the data collection methods and the number of interviews conducted (Hurworth, 2005:125, Creswell, 2009:176, Welman et al., 2012:192). Whilst qualitative research concentrates on obtaining information from the participants about the problem being investigated (Creswell, 2009:176), the information obtained or the lack of information, may require the researcher to make some changes (Hurworth, 2005:125). This notion of allowing for an emerging design when working from a qualitative perspective is so strongly advocated that Silverman (2013:234) goes so far as to say that adhering rigidly to your original research design “can be a sign of inadequate data analysis rather than demonstrating a welcome consistency”.

Although the researcher introduced the intended and desired course of action (i.e. the research design and methods) fully in Chapter 1, Section 1.5.2, the need for embracing this aspect of the emergent design became evident once the data collection had commenced. In order to illustrate this, it is necessary to look at the population groups that were initially identified in the proposed research plan (see Chapter 1, Section 1.6). Initially, as described in Chapter 1, Section 1.6.1, the population identified for this study was to comprise two sample groups, namely:

**Group 1** comprising all registered social workers in Cape Town and along the Garden Route in the Western Cape who rendered child protection social work services

**Group 2:** All service providers (i.e. hotel staff, taxi drivers, guest house owners and tour operators) in the hospitality and tourism industry in Cape Town and along the Garden Route.

These two population groups were selected due to their supposed knowledge of the phenomenon under study and therefore their ability to help provide answers to the research questions emerging from the problem formulation. The stated problem is to determine the state of the knowledge on and response to commercial sexual exploitation of children with specific reference to child prostitution and child sex tourism in the Western Cape, from the perspectives of the social workers and from service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry (i.e. at tourist points of booking, entry and places of accommodation) and to seek solutions for this under-reported phenomenon under investigation.

In reality, as the researcher progressed with the interviews with the chosen two sample groups it began to become apparent that, while these social workers were informed about child sexual abuse, they were not informed about the phenomenon of child sex tourism as related to commercial sexual exploitation of children. Indeed, many social workers (approached for participation in this study, and the ones ultimately recruited for participation in this study) directed the researcher to non-social work colleagues, such as project managers, directors and child care workers in NGOs, as well as police officers and adult survivors of CSEC, whom they presumed would know more about the topic under investigation.

The researcher then had to divert from the original plan and, in consultation with her supervisor, decided to add populations to include other interest groups - i.e. non-social workers from NGOs, police officers of the Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Unit (FCS Unit) of the South African Police Service (SAPS) and adult survivors of CSEC as participant groups. The motivation for including the three other interest groups was informed by the responses from the social workers initially interviewed as explained.

At first it was not deemed possible to approach street children who were victims of CST and/or engaged in child sex work due to their transient nature and inaccessibility. However, in order to triangulate information received from social work and hospitality and tourism participants, it became necessary to include adult survivors of CSEC. By adding the other interest groups, the researcher also had to develop interview schedules that included questions (see Sub-section 2.7) that would facilitate the process of interviewing all participants on the topic being investigated.

The design thus evolved in this specific way and thus this study can be described and characterised as having an emergent design. The next characteristic to be discussed is the emic nature of qualitative research.

- ***Qualitative research is emic***

When working from an emic perspective, the qualitative researcher is interested in obtaining information about the insider's point of view. Central are the meanings a person attaches to reality from their internal world based on certain facts, events or experiences (Hennink et al., 2011:18). The focus of the researcher remains on the participants' meaning about a problem, not the meaning the researcher brings to the

problem (Fetterman in Given 2008:250; Creswell, 2009:175). This perspective can usually be attained by asking participants open-ended questions to elicit information about certain issues from their own perspectives, as the aim is to understand the participant's intention, meaning and actions (Williams, 2003:5). Asking these types of questions will form a frame for the concepts or ideas and situations that are exposed. Further finer questioning will allow the person to elaborate, allowing the researcher to get an idea of the participant's full frame of reference (Fetterman in Given, 2008:250).

In addition, Yin (2010:93) points out that qualitative research is concerned with the meaning of the events being studied and not just their occurrence. Researchers who take an emic approach, and approach which is grounded in a phenomenological view of the universe, accept that there are many possible realities that depend on the perspective of the individual participant (Fetterman in Given, 2008:250).

By means of constant clarification participants, the researcher assessed each participant's perception of their experiences and the meaning they attached to them, and saw to it that the focus remained on the topic under study and related to it.

The researcher also consulted her supervisor on a regular basis via e-mail and forwarded transcripts of the interviews conducted for him to read to make sure she stayed on track and did not insert herself into the interviews. In addition, the researcher tried where possible to use the language (either English or Afrikaans) of the participants which allowed them to express themselves better. Importantly, the researcher ensured that she devoted time for reflection, especially after receiving feedback on the transcripts from the supervisor in order to be mindful of any possible problems in future interviews.

The interviews were held at a place with which the participant was familiar and could feel comfortable. This meant that the researcher was entering the world of the participant and could embrace the participant's setting more fully, enabling it to be described as a natural setting in the context of this study, which is the characteristic discussed next.

- ***Qualitative research is conducted in a natural setting***

Qualitative researchers do not like to have distance between themselves and their participants and rather seek to connect with them. There will therefore be a tendency

for them to go to the participants and collect data in the field where the participants are, or even at the site where the phenomenon exists (Corbin and Strauss, 2008:13; Creswell, 2009:176). Creswell (2009:176) describes this “up close” and personal engagement when collecting data by talking directly to people in their own setting, as a “major characteristic” of qualitative research.

Whilst the researcher endeavoured to conduct the interviews at the sites where the participants were located, it was not always physically possible for her to go to these settings to engage with each of the participants in a face-to-face fashion. However, she tried at all times to allow the participants to engage with her in a way, and at a setting, most convenient for them. Below is a summary of the locations of the data collection.

**Table 2.3 Locations of data collection**

Interest Group	Settings where the data collection was conducted				
	At place of employment	At re-searcher's office	In a public place/shelter	At the participant's/ another's home	Via telephone or e-mail
Social workers (19)	16 (A, B, C, E, F, G, J, K, N, R, U, Y, Z, KK, UU, XX)				3 (AA, FF, TT)
Non-social work service providers (13)	5 (P, V, RR, SS, V V)	2 (NN, YY)	1 (QQ)	1 (AAA)	4 (BB, H, II, JJ)
SAPS FCS UNIT members (6)	6 (SAPA, SAPB, SAPC, SAPD, SAPE, SAPF)				
Adult survivors (4)			2 (MM, ZZ)	2 (BBB, CCC)	
Tourism Participants (13)	10 ( I, L, M, O, S, T, W, X, CC, OO)	1 (EE)			2 (GG, LL)
TOTAL 55	37	3	3	3	9

- ***The main instrument utilised in the research process is the researcher***

The fact that qualitative research findings and the answers to the research questions are embedded within the experience-based life world of the participants and the behaviours they display, Mikėnė, Gaižauskaitė, Valavičienė (2013:49), point out that in qualitative research, the researcher becomes an active “tool” for “unlocking” and collecting this information from the participants. Qualitative researchers examine documents, observe behaviour or interview participants when collecting data and, although they may use an interview guide or a protocol during the information gathering process, they do the actual data collection themselves and are therefore regarded as a primary data collection instrument (Creswell, 2009:176). The qualitative researcher displays, *inter alia*, the skill to:

- View the phenomena being studied holistically
- Reflect, on an on-going basis, on “the self of researcher” in the inquiry
- Be sensitive about their own biography and how this would influence the project
- Use complex reasoning (adapted from Marshall & Rossman, 2011:3)

Being informed about the fact that the researcher should be the key instrument in the process of data collection in qualitative research, the researcher dealt with all the face-to-face, semi-structured interviews herself. Of the total of 55 interviews (Table 2.3) 46 were face-to-face events. The remaining participants provided the answers contained in the interview-guides telephonically or the required data was received via e-communication. The collecting of information via e-communication (e-mail) and telephonic interviews was only opted for where there was no alternative available for face-to-face interviewing. Although not physically present in the interviewing context, the researcher was only an e-mail or telephone call away to clear up uncertainties that could arise with e-communication as the interview guide was e-mailed to those specific participants and they had to respond questions via e-mail.

- ***Qualitative research involves complex reasoning through inductive logic***

Qualitative researchers move between concept and data and a researcher can achieve flexibility in two ways, either following an inductive or a deductive approach (Yin, 2010:94). An inductive approach, according to Babbie (2010:22), is one in which the researcher starts with observations about the world that are be detailed and particular, then moves towards more generalised and abstract ideas. In other words moving from “a set of specific observations to the discovery of a pattern” which is representative of a

relationship or an order amongst all the given events. With an inductive approach, which qualitative researchers use most commonly, the data tends to lead to the surfacing of concepts, whereas researchers who are more inclined to use the deductive approach, allow the concepts to guide the data collection and give it direction (Yin 2010:94).

Using inductive logic entails working back and forth within the data and the emergent themes, until a theme set has been developed; starting at the basis of the information gathered the researcher works upwards to a more abstract information set (Creswell, 2009:175). This method of reasoning and logic has also been described by Babbie (2010:22) as “a logical model” which allows for the development of general principles resulting from the specific observations made in the research process.

In the case of this research project the researcher collected the data, transcribed it, read the transcripts a number of times and evaluated the records. In many instances, the participants checked the data for correctness as transcripts (those from face-to-face and telephonic interviews) were sent back to the participants for member checking<sup>1</sup> or additional information. Additional information was also requested in some instances from the participants who answered the interview questions via e-communication. Being able to return to the source of the data helped the researcher to refine, clarify and constantly confirm the information received during the data collection period in order to develop themes which could be utilised for the coherent reporting of the data in the final report.

It was while the researcher was transcribing and reading the transcripts of the first interviews conducted that, in consultation with the study supervisor, it was deemed necessary to include more populations (interest groups) in the study, as the original sample groups decided upon were not as information-rich as was initially thought.

---

<sup>1</sup> Member (or participant) checking is a process of validating a participant's response to the researcher's interpretations or transcriptions of the interview between the researcher and the participant. Similar to verbal data collected, member responses cannot be taken at face value and assumed to be as the “best measure of the trustworthiness” of the findings reached by the research. It is possible that members may forget what they said during the interview, regret what they said, or they may feel that they have to agree with the researcher. They could also feel as though they want to present themselves differently from the way they felt they did in the original interview (Sandelowski, 2002:105).

- **Qualitative research develops a complex and holistic picture**

One of the aims of the qualitative researcher is to paint a holistic word picture of the phenomenon being investigated. This is achieved by adopting a wide-lens perspective while investigating a phenomenon and may, *inter alia*, entail looking at and reporting on many different perspectives and identifying a multitude of factors involved in a situation to describe the greater picture that emerges from the data (Creswell, 2009:176).

While investigating the issue of commercial sexual exploitation of children with a particular focus on CP and CST, the researcher aimed to get the 'full picture'. The perspectives and experiences of the adult survivors of CSEC, the social workers who interact with commercially sexually exploited children, the police who are tasked with protecting them, the non-social work staff from NGOs who deliver services to them and the hospitality and tourism industry workers who observe them with their clients were all represented. This is evidence of the researcher's attempt to provide multiple perspectives and to present a broad picture of the theme of this report.

Having analysed the characteristics of qualitative research and given a description of how this was operationalised in this study, the researcher proceeds to address the research design.

## **2.4 RESEARCH DESIGN**

The concept 'research design' was introduced in Chapter 1, Section 1.5.2 of this report and the researcher stated that a collective case study design complemented by an explorative, descriptive and contextual research design would be used.

In elaborating on the meaning of the concept 'research design', DeForge (in Salkind, 2010:1252), Creswell (2009:3) and Cheek (in Given 2008:762) all concur that the research design refers to the logical structure or plan of action for a research project, depicting the procedures from the wider assumptions to the finer detail about the research methods which a researcher carries out to address the research problems and questions that stemmed from a research idea.

With reference to the "finer details about the methods", the research design or plan, in actual fact, provides a detailed description of how the data will be collected, the sampling techniques and strategies to be employed and how the collected data will be analysed (DeForge, 2010:1253). The research design is far more than simply a

collection of methods - it rather describes the decisions about how the research was conceptualised, how it will progress through its various phases and the contribution the research is anticipated to make to a particular field of study (Cheek in Given, 2008:762). The chosen research design is now dealt with in detail.

- ***The collective case study design***

In view of the researcher's intention to provide a multi-perspective report on the status of the knowledge of and response to commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC) with a specific focus on child prostitution (CP) and child sex tourism (CST) the collective case study, as qualitative strategy of inquiry (Creswell, Hanson, Clark Plano & Morales, 2007:245) was employed. Creswell et al. (2007:245-246) claim that in the case of the collective case study, the researcher purposively selects multiple cases to obtain a multi-perspective on the issue or concern being explored. In this study the multiple cases comprised social workers rendering child protection services, service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry, non-social workers from NGOs, police officers of the SAPS FCS Unit and adult survivors of CSEC. The specific phenomenon or issue that was the focus of the exploration centred on state of their knowledge of and response to CP and CST.

In employing the collective case study design instrumentally, which specifically refers to gaining insight into a phenomenon (Baškarada, 2014:5), the researcher commenced with the activity of purposively procuring a sample comprising various information-rich cases. She then engaged them in a deliberate fashion in the process of data collection to comply with the aim of case study research which is to undertake intensive exploration of the chosen phenomenon to come to a holistic understanding of something that is unique to the cases (Guest et al., 2013:9, 14).

- ***The explorative research design***

Explorative research is undertaken to explore relevant issues (i.e. the extent and response to CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST), especially since the topic is known to be sparsely or under-researched (Tepelus, 2008:111; Cody, 2010:2014; George & Panko, 2011:141; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:80). Exploratory studies are undertaken most often to learn more about a topic that the researcher is curious about, and is one for which a better understanding is required. Other reasons are: to “check the feasibility” of further studies about the phenomenon; and/or for a researcher whose

goal is to develop new questions about the phenomenon, to extend an inquiry; and to develop new methods of researching this phenomenon in the future (Babbie, 2010:92; Burns & Grove, 2003:313).

In line with this description of an explorative study, the researcher concluded that this research study needed an explorative dimension.

When the researcher began to formulate a research proposal, she came to realise that the issue of CSEC that involved CST, was largely unexplored in South Africa, an observation also documented by ECPAT (2006:12) and Sakulpitakphon (2007:5). This meant that all information surrounding this topic that could come from a fairly diverse range of people would be valuable, and provide the researcher with new insights that could be disseminated to a wider research community.

- ***The descriptive research design***

Descriptive research is interlinked with exploratory research in that it paints a picture of the specific details of the phenomenon studied or explored, with the aim of describing it accurately and comprehensively (Hennink, et al., 2011:238). Descriptive research seeks to answer the “what, where, when and how” questions and focuses on observation that is followed by description of what has been observed, using accurate and scientific methods of description (Babbie, 2010:93-95). Based on the data that became available from exploring the perspectives of sampled participants from different interest groups, the researcher employed a descriptive research design. Such a design provides the basis for developing familiarity and an understanding of the topic from the insider’s perspective, in terms of how issues are intertwined and the delicate nuances that surrounding them (Hennink et al., 2011:238).

- ***The research design is contextual***

In addition, the contextual arena in which a phenomenon occurs is important and, although context is important as an identifier of the conditions in which something occurs and through which people respond to those occurrences, it does not define the course of action taken by a person and the consequences of the action taken. The person’s actions and responses may in turn affect the conditions (Corbin & Strauss, 2008:4). Qualitative researchers “place parts of the social life into a larger whole”, as

without understanding “where each part fits into the whole” (Neuman, 1997:331), considerable meaning will be lost.

In this research, the researcher purposively selected samples (see under sampling heading Chapter 1, Section 1.6.1, and discussed later in this chapter, Section 2.6) that were deemed to be representative of seemingly diverse groups. The assumption is these participants could influence and have a bearing on the implementation of the research design as they had first-hand experience of some facets of the topic. Their contribution could enhance an attempt to obtain a contextually situated and multi-perspective picture of the phenomenon of CSEC with an emphasis on CP and CST.

Apart from employing the aforesaid research designs, the researcher decided to add a phenomenological research design component as part of the strategy of inquiry to accommodate the exploration of the lived-experiences of the adult survivors of CSEC. The phenomenological research design is now explained.

- ***The phenomenological research design***

When adopting phenomenology as a strategy of inquiry forming part of a qualitative research design, the researcher’s intention is to “pay close attention to how the people being studied experience the world” (Hammersley in Lewis-Beck, Bryman & Liao, 2004:815). Creswell (2009:12) elaborates and notes that including phenomenology allows researchers to meet their need of wanting to identify the “essence” of a human experience (i.e. What is it like... How is/was it for you...?). This is in relation to an event, experience or phenomenon an individual participant had first-hand knowledge about and would be able to describe without judgement. A central concept of “epoche” is present in a phenomenological approach which means that researchers “bracket” or suspend their own preconceived ideas about a phenomenon in order to be able to understand it through the descriptions of the individual participants (Miller & Salkind, 2002:152). ‘Bracketing’ entails the process whereby the researcher “unknows” what is known in order to avoid making assumptions about the life world of the participant. According to Munhall (in Beech 1999:44), this eliminates the influence of the researcher’s own experiences and life world.

Miller and Salkind (2002:152) describe a number of steps, derived from Moustakas (1994) and Polkinghorne (1989) that apply to a phenomenological study:

- The identification of a central phenomenon to study

- The asking of central research questions that focus on capturing the essence or meaning of the phenomenon
- Collection of data primarily through interviews
- Analysis of the data
- Reduction of the statements to meaningful units or themes
- Analysis of the context in which the meaning was experienced by the participant
- Reflection on the experiences of the researcher
- Writing up a detailed analysis of the data collection

This strategy of inquiry fitted in well with the explorative, descriptive and contextual research design in that it allowed the researcher to ask the adult survivors how it was for them to be commercially sexually exploited as children (i.e. how it happened, why it happened and how these incidences affected them). In this way, the researcher could explore and try to gain insight into the life experiences of adult survivors of CSEC through their frame of reference.

Having detailed the strategies of inquiry used for this research, the next section of this chapter focuses on the research methods employed in this study.

## **2.5 RESEARCH METHODS**

Both DeForge (2010:1253) and (Creswell, 2009:3) refer to the fact that who the participants will be, how they will be recruited, how and what data will be collected, and how the collected data will be analysed and verified should be included in the research plan. These are collectively referred to as the “research methods”.

In the discussion to follow, the research methods proposed in the research plan will be revisited, elaborated upon and a description provided on how they were employed in the study. Where the researcher had to divert from the proposed research methods and adopted other research methods will also be indicated and motivated.

## **2.6 POPULATION, SAMPLE AND SAMPLING TECHNIQUE**

In the context of research the aspect of ‘population’ refers to the “universe of units, such as individuals, social groups, organisations or social artefacts” (Hennink et al., (2011:85) about which the researcher wants to draw conclusions and from whom the

researcher wants data (Pavlichev in Lewis-Beck, Bryman & Liao, 2004:834). The study's population is defined beforehand during the design phase of the study. Who the population will be is informed, *inter alia*, by published literature and the nature of the research question. Hennink et al. (2011:85) further note and recommend that the population may be refined or even expanded as the study progresses. For example, once data becomes available, and the researcher becomes more informed about the research issues, additions to the original population may be required (Hennink, 2011:85).

Initially, two populations were decided upon:

**Group 1** comprising all registered social workers in Cape Town and along the Garden Route in the Western Cape who rendered child protection social work services

**Group 2:** All service providers (i.e. hotel staff, taxi drivers, guest house owners and tour operators) in the hospitality and tourism industry in Cape Town and along the Garden Route.

However, as the fieldwork progressed the researcher arrived at the conclusion that the participants from the selected sample groups had had limited encounters with victims and perpetrators of CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST and they had limited knowledge to share in terms of the questions posed to them. Being informed by the participants already interviewed about individuals that might be information-rich, the researcher, in consultation with the supervisor, decided to broaden the population of the study (as per the recommendation of Hennink et al., 2011:85).

Subsequently the following three populations were added and included in the study:

- Non-social workers in non-governmental organisations (NGOs) employed as unpaid volunteers or paid members of staff in organisations rendering services to commercially sexually exploited children. These included organisations involved in seeking lost or missing children, religious organisations involved with assisting street people, feeding schemes involved in feeding homeless people, shelters for adults and children of, on or in the street, organisations involved in combatting human trafficking and organisations that focused on policy and advocacy in terms of labour, human trafficking and commercial sexual exploitation.

- Members of the South African Police Service, in particular, members of the Family Violence Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) Unit, with operational responsibility within the delimited study area.
- Adult survivors above 18 years of age who were as children (under the age of 18 years old) commercially sexually exploited within the delimited study area.

The researcher did not have the luxuries of time and monetary resources to include everybody from all three selected populations in her study and therefore had to restrict the number of participants and draw samples (i.e. subsets from the whole populations (i.e. the larger pool of available units) (Mack et al., 2005:16) for inclusion in the study. Sampling in social research is done in to reduce the data collection costs in terms of money, time and energy and to increase accuracy in the data collection (Miller and Salkind, 2002:268).

As per the initial plan, purposive sampling was chosen for selecting the participants from the social work and hospitality and tourism population groups. The researcher subsequently decided to select participants from the other population groups also in a purposive fashion. It is customary within the ambit of qualitative research to use purposive sampling as a non-random sampling technique for participant selection. Hennink et al. (2011:85) explain that when the researcher selects participants purposively both a “deliberate” and a “flexible” process is followed. The researcher looks for and selects participants “deliberately” or “on purpose” based on them being informed, experienced or “information-rich” about the topic under investigation, and able to provide answers to the research questions posed (Maxwell, 2013:97). In this study the researcher could be flexible and follow the advice from Hennink, et al. (2011:85). Thus the number and choice of participants were not cast in stone at the outset of the study but refined during the process of data collection. This need for researcher flexibility in the participant recruitment process is underscored by Mack et al., (2005:33) as the population from which the sample has to be drawn can be vulnerable, stigmatised by being involved in the study, and could be very mobile and transient. Moreover, misinformation about the study can further undermine willing participation that would render this process rather challenging.

Once the researcher decides on a suitable sampling technique for participant selection, the identified participants must be recruited. Guest, Namey & Mitchell (2013:67) are of the opinion that recruiting methods are related to sampling strategies stating:

“Recruitment of participants refers to the process by which participants are first informed about and, if eligible, asked to join a study”.

The activity of recruitment can be seen as the method used to obtain a desired sample. Various methods can be employed to recruit participants according to the chosen sampling procedure from an identified population for inclusion in a study (Guest et al., 2013:68-69; Hennink, 2011:29-102) as depicted in Table 2.4.

**Table 2.4: The methods or strategies for purposive recruitment according to scholars in the field**

<b><i>Gate-keepers</i></b>	There are various prominent individuals (i.e. community, religious and political leaders) and organisations that have access of entry and/or control access of entry into research sites, or to participants a researcher might be interested in interviewing. These individuals and/or organisations are by virtue of their prominence, popularity and influence able to persuade community members to (or not to) participate in a research project. They are “central elements of access” (Reeves, 2010:317; Hennink, et al., 2011:92-102; Maxwell, 2013:90)
<b><i>Formal and informal networks</i></b>	Formal and informal networks may be groups or associations a researcher belongs or is affiliated to, but may also refer to organisations to which the prospective participants of a study’s population belong to; or networks that form at events researchers attend formally/informally and/or services they use formally or informally (Hennink et. al, 2011:92-102)
<b><i>Snowball recruitment</i></b>	Snowball sampling, according to Atkinson and Flint (in Miller & Brewer, 2003:274–275) is used most often when qualitative research is conducted and is regarded as a “socially-based” type of recruitment (Guest et al., 2013:69). This type of sampling entails one purposively selected participant providing the researcher with the name of another participant who matches the identified criteria of inclusion and has the knowledge and experience required, who in turn provides the name of yet another participant or referrals to others who may contribute to the study (Vogt, 1999 in Miller and Brewer, 2003:270, Noy, 2008:330), and in this way suggest that “hidden populations” or difficult to access groups are often found

	(Atkinson and Flint, in Miller & Brewer, 2003: 274 – 275; Mack et al., 2005:17; Kuper, Lingard & Levinson, 2008:688; Babbie, 2010:193)
<b><i>Notices and advertisements in the media</i></b>	It is also possible to use notices and/or advertisements which may be posted in the printed media (including newspapers, magazines) or on radio or on television. In addition, notices or postings on the internet may also be used to purposively recruit participants (Guest, et al., 2013:68)

In this study various strategies for purposively selecting participants were utilised. Table 2.5 (on the next page) details the manner in which each participant was recruited and categorised, from Participant A to Participant HHH.

**Table 2.5: A description of the recruitment methods employed for the recruitment of the participants**

Participant Code	Recruitment methods employed: A description
<b>Recruitment through the use of gatekeepers</b>	
Participants MM, BBB, CCC, ZZ - <b>Adult survivors of commercial sexual exploitation as children</b>	Participant MM was recruited by approaching Participant II (a non-social worker at an NGO) who was the ‘gatekeeper’ at the shelter which Participant MM frequented. Participants BBB and CCC were recruited via ‘gatekeeper’ - Participant AAA - a non-social worker at an NGO rendering services to street children who were sexually exploited.) Participant AAA shared with the researcher that that she knew them personally and that they had highly relevant information. Participant AAA called them and recommended these participants speak with the researcher. An interview was granted by Participant BBB immediately and he came to the home of participant AAA, while Participant CCC was interviewed at the home of another NGO colleague of Participant AAA. Participant ZZ was recruited through ‘gatekeeper’ - Participant VV. She, who works at a welfare organisation rendering services to street people, approached a number of street people on behalf of the researcher to ascertain their willingness to participate in the research project. Participant ZZ who frequents their drop-in service was the only person who agreed.
Participants SAPA, SAPB, SAPC, SAPD, SAPE & SAPF <b>Members of the FCS Unit of the South African Police Service (SAPS)</b>	The South African Police Service (SAPS) that employs these potential participants was approached by the researcher through an official application obtained from the Office of the Provincial Commissioner: Western Cape, located in Cape Town, as it was identified as a national organisation working, amongst other things with the protection of sexually abused children. The organisation then granted permission (Addendum H) and supplied a list of people with whom the researcher was permitted to speak for interviews. After five months and supplying considerable documentation regarding the researcher’s credentials and backup confirmation documentation from the researcher’s supervisor, the list of possible participants were then forwarded to the researcher by the SAPS Western Cape Strategic Command. From this list of names the researcher selected representatives who operated within the main areas in which the researcher was collecting data; namely, districts along the Garden Route and in Cape Town.

Participant HH <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b>	The researcher was already aware of this potential participant due to the geographical location of the child advocacy organisation that employs her. The researcher then approached her employer to request an interview with the employee. The preamble and informed consent were then sent to the employer who acted as the 'gatekeeper' and passed it on to the participant for perusal and deciding whether or not to participate. She agreed to participate and to provide answers to the questions via e-mail.
<b>Recruitment through utilising formal or informal networks</b>	
Participant A <b>Social worker</b>	The researcher belongs to a formal network of social work professionals who meet monthly for group supervision, presentations and discussions, and she knew that Participants A and B are knowledgeable about child sexual abuse.
Participant B <b>Social worker</b>	They were approached after one of these meetings to ascertain their willingness to be interviewed. This was further followed up with a telephone call to each of the participants.
Participant E <b>Social worker</b>	The researcher knew this participant from Continuous Professional Development (CPD) activities they both attended and was aware of her field of expertise being that of working with sexually abused children.
Participants D, H, I, L, M and OO <b>Hospitality and tourism participants</b>	Participants D, H, I, were personally known to the researcher as guest house owners, L and OO as hotel managers and M as a tour operator in the research area.
Participant C <b>Social worker</b>	During the researcher's search for participants, this participant's organisation's name was listed as a child welfare organisation in the local FAMSA resource list, to which the researcher has access (the researcher is a supervisor for FAMSA). The researcher contacted her telephonically and she agreed to participate.
Participant J <b>Social worker</b>	The researcher received notice via SAASWIPP of a course about working with sexually abused children and noted the presenter's details and contacted her telephonically for a face-to-face interview.
Participant K & N	Participants K, N & NN were known to the researcher due to contact through the course of social work activities as both

<p><b>Social workers</b> NN <b>Non-social work</b> <b>NGO participant</b></p>	<p>these participants work with sexually abused children at child welfare organisation on the Garden Route the researcher knows about. The researcher established contact with them telephonically and they agreed to participate.</p>
<p>Participant DD <b>Hospitality and</b> <b>tourism participant</b></p>	<p>Participant I (a guest house owner) knows this participant and recommended the researcher speak with her as she felt that this participant had much first-hand information. However, she was extremely difficult to contact as she did not return any calls. After many months she opted to answer the guide questions via Participant I who returned them to the researcher by e-mail.</p>
<p>Participant O <b>Hospitality and</b> <b>tourism participant</b></p>	<p>Participant O is the HR Manager at a hotel the researcher frequents in Cape Town and was approached in person and agreed to participate.</p>
<p>Participant P <b>Non-social work</b> <b>NGO participant</b></p>	<p>Participant P was located through an internet search on Google using the key words 'child sex tourism'. The participant's name was mentioned frequently in this regard and works in this area of child abuse and was thus contacted by telephone. He agreed to participate in the project.</p>
<p>Participant R <b>Social</b> <b>worker</b></p>	<p>In an attempt to recruit social workers for the study, the researcher approached the South African Association of Social workers in Private Practice (SAASWIPP) to send an e-mail request out through their Western Cape network. They complied and Participant R responded to this request via e-mail to the researcher agreeing to participate.</p>
<p>Participant Z <b>Social</b> <b>worker</b></p>	<p>The researcher's supervisor knew this participant from previous contact as a student and recommended that the researcher contact this participant for an interview.</p>

Participants S, T, X <b>Hospitality and tourism participants</b>	The researcher searched through the signatories to The Code <a href="http://www.fairtrade.travel/">http://www.fairtrade.travel/</a> on the website <a href="http://www.thecode.org.za">www.thecode.org.za</a> in order to find tourism organisations that were aware of/knew something about child sex tourism and found Participant S, T and Participant X in this way. All three were contacted at their establishments and all three agreed to participate in the research by granting interviews at their establishments.
Participant AA <b>Social Worker</b>	This participant was identified as a person with a great deal of information as the researcher had met her previously at a course she had presented on paedophiles on request by the researcher. She was approached for an interview but due to her geographical location she could not make herself available for a face-to-face interview and therefore opted to answer the questions in the interview guide provided via e-mail.
Participant BB <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b>	The researcher contacted this person as a potential participant as she was aware of her as a person since she works with street children and abused children in a town on the Garden Route. She agreed to an interview and a date and time was arranged after which the preamble and informed consent documents were e-mailed to her.
Participants CC, EE <b>Hospitality and tourism participants</b>	The researcher approached the tourism boards and accommodation organisations of various towns within the Garden Route area and one of these agreed to send an e-mail request to their members. In response to this e-mail and an article written by a local online media group for Knysna Tourism, in response to that request, the participants contacted the researcher saying that they would agree to participate in the study. (Addendum G)
Participants FF, KK, TT <b>Social workers</b>	The researcher identified a number of social workers through incoming e-mails regarding courses on the Garden Route offered by FAMSA and harvested e-mail addresses in this way. These people were then contacted by e-mail for interviews and three people responded that they would participate by responding to the questions in the interview guide via e-mail.
Participant GG <b>Hospitality and tourism participant</b>	The participant was approached after being identified as the South African representative of an international tourism advocacy organisation and a person with knowledge on the subject being studied. Due to her geographical location, she was not able to be interviewed face-to-face but agreed to be interviewed telephonically.

Participant JJ <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b>	The researcher performed a Google search using keywords 'child abuse' and 'child sexual exploitation' to find child protection and advocacy organisations and directories on the internet in order to find appropriate participants. Participant JJ was found through this channel but she did not agree to be interviewed face-to-face and had to be interviewed via e-mail. She, in turn, recommended persons to approach.
Participant UU <b>Social Worker</b>	This person was selected after she was recommended by the researcher's supervisor who had personal knowledge of her work with perpetrators of child sexual abuse. She works within the geographical study area of the research and agreed to a face-to-face interview.
Participants VV & WW <b>Non-social work NGO participants</b>	Participant P (a non-social worker) supplied the researcher with three lists (containing the particulars) of individuals who had attended various conferences focused on sexual abuse of children. From those lists the researcher identified Participant VV's superior and called for an interview. The initial person identified would not grant an interview but instead referred the researcher to Participant VV who had 'coal face' experience of working with street people and she agreed to an interview. Participant WW too was identified through these lists and approached telephonically for an interview.
Participant YY <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b>	Participant YY approached the researcher for an interview for her own study and at that time the researcher asked the participant if she would reciprocate as she was known to the researcher and met the criteria for inclusion in the study. She agreed to participate.
<b>Recruitment through snowball sampling</b>	
Participants U & V <b>Social worker Non-social work NGO participant</b>	Participant P (a non-social worker) recommended Participant U who met the criteria for inclusion. The researcher contacted her telephonically and she agreed to participate, but wanted Participant V to join the interview based on being knowledgeable about the topic under investigation.
Participant Y	Participant Y's supervisor's number was provided by Participant U (a social worker) but upon contacting the supervisor

<b>Social worker</b>	he informed the researcher that he could not grant her an interview and referred her to Participant Y, who agreed to participate.
Participants F & G <b>Social workers</b>	Participant F was recommended by participant E (also a social worker) who regarded the former to be informed about the topic under investigation. The researcher called Participant F and she agreed to participate. This participant referred the researcher to Participant G, who upon establishing contact with her telephonically, consented to participate.
Participant Q <b>Hospitality and tourism participants</b>	Participant Q is employed by Participant O (a hotel manager). After Participant O's interview, he called in Participant Q, as he regarded her to be in possession of valuable knowledge on the topic and she agreed to participate in the study.
Participant LL <b>Hospitality and tourism participant</b>	Participant L's employer was recommended by participant GG (an individual involved in advocacy for the tourism industry) but he was not able to provide an interview and instead requested Participant LL to stand in for him, but due to LL's geographical location, she could not speak face-to-face with the researcher, but responded to the interview guide questions via e-mail.
Participants QQ & RR <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b>	Participants QQ and RR were both recommended by Participant SS (a non-social worker) when the researcher called to confirm the appointment with SS. The researcher then called Participant QQ and found that she is employed in a safe house for trafficked and abused people and therefore met the criteria. She agreed to a face-to-face interview, not at her place of employ, but at a public place. Participant RR also met the criteria as she is also employed in an organisation that works with trafficked people and she agreed to participate in the study.
Participant II <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b>	Participant II was contacted telephonically after referrals by Participants A and B (both social workers) as an 'information-rich' person. He would not grant a face-to-face interview but agreed to answer the interview guide questions via e-mail. Responses were checked and returned to him a number of times for further clarification and elaboration (member checking).
Participant SS	The researcher identified and established contact with an employee within the NPA (National Prosecuting Authority)

<p><b>Non-social work NGO participant</b></p>	<p>meeting the criteria of inclusion but this person was unwilling to be interviewed and referred the researcher to Participant SS instead. The researcher contacted Participant SS telephonically, established that she met the criteria of inclusion in that she had experience and information on human trafficking and she agreed to an interview which was conducted at her office.</p>
<p>Participant XX <b>Social worker</b></p>	<p>Participant XX was contacted after participant UU (a social worker) recommended her colleague. The colleague was not willing to participate and referred the researcher to Participant XX, who agreed to participate.</p>
<p>Participant AAA <b>Non-social work NGO participant</b></p>	<p>Participant AAA was mentioned by Participant SAPD (a member of the FCS Unit of the SAPS) and her contact details were obtained from him. The researcher then contacted her by telephone and first met her at a coffee shop during which time the researcher established that she had worked extensively with sexually exploited street children in her NGO. The interview was then conducted at her home straight after this initial meeting.</p>

### 2.6.1 The aspect of sample size in qualitative research

Small samples of participants are usually common in qualitative studies (Creswell, 2009:181) because it is the depth of information that is of interest to the researcher, as well as the fact that it is the participants' experiences and experience-based perceptions (Hennink, et al., 2011:88) that count. The number of participants to recruit for this kind of study is usually determined by a principle of saturation, which is the point at which the information you collect becomes repetitive (Glaser & Strauss in Hennink, et al., 2011:88). While Marshall and Rossman (2011:103-104) agree that it may be true that the size of the sample is affected by available time and finances, they posit that meeting the purpose of the research is a more important concern. Although a research plan must be designed and proposed prior to the commencement of the project, the researcher must be mindful of the need for flexibility, hence the sample could result in being simply only theoretically informed. Data collection and analysis are conjoined and there is a flexibility that allows the researcher to go where the most fruitful data collection samples would be found (Denzin, 1989:73; Corbin & Strauss, 2008:145). Murphy et al., (in Higginbottom, 2004:13) concur stating that samples in qualitative research can be recurrent and emergent in nature and are not necessarily static or exactly as originally proposed in the research plan. This is in line with Higginbottom's (2004:13) own view, which states that, within qualitative research the population groups of the study sample are identified both at the start of the study and during the emerging research design; it may not be possible to fully specify the number of participants required at the start of the study.

From Table 2.4 (Section 2.6) it is evident that a much larger sample of participants was selected than is normally associated with qualitative research. This is not contrary to qualitative practice because, as Marshall and Rossman (2011:103) point out, a larger and relevant sample is likely to result when a study takes place in a disparate and varied setting with diverse participants and this enhances the transferability of the study findings.

The initial plan for this study was to draw samples from only two populations, that is, social workers and the hospitality and tourism industry employees, from within the geographical areas of Cape Town and along the Garden Route in Western Cape. As explained earlier in Section 2.6, the motivation for this decision was based on the fact that these population groups were regarded as 'information-rich' and 'knowledgeable' about the topic being investigated. However, when the researcher started to collect

data from the participants from the social work sample group it turned out that they were not well informed. In fact, some of the participants interviewed referred the researcher to other individuals representing other populations whom they regarded as more informed. This state of affairs led the researcher, in consultation with the study supervisor, to expand the number of populations from which samples could be drawn. Consequently the researcher identified three other populations and samples were drawn. These were adult survivors, who as children were commercially sexually exploited; non-social workers who were directly involved in service delivery to children on the street and children victimised through sexual exploitation; and a sample comprising members of the Family Violence Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) unit in the South African Police Service (SAPS).

Although a qualitative study sample can possibly be clearly defined on paper at the outset of a research endeavour, and during the planning stages of a research project, the data generated from the sampled participants may dictate the need for a different sample to be included. This would allow for the exploration of the depth and variations within the data pertinent to a given case or topic (Hammersley & Atkinson, Mays & Pope, Miles & Huberman in Higginbottom, 2004:16) and “to ensure the full range and extent of a phenomenon are represented”. It is for these reasons that the sample in this study was larger than originally anticipated.

#### **2.6.2 Preparation of the participants for the process of data collection**

As per the initial plan (see Chapter 1, Section 1.6.2), the researcher proposed to collect the data from the recruited participants by means of individual, in-depth, semi-structured interviews. As the fieldwork unfolded, the researcher had to divert from the original plan and add telephone interviews and e-communication as a means of data collection. The latter methods of data collection had to be added as some of the recruited participants, eligible for participation, preferred to participate in this research project in this manner. The fact that they were location-wise removed from the researcher, and/or did not want to be interviewed face-to-face, made this mode of data collection necessary.

Whilst potential participants have to be informed during the recruitment stage about the method of data collection and the kind of data to be collected, Mikéné et al. (2013:52) point out that, prior to the actual collection of data, the recruited participants have also to be adequately prepared for participating in this research activity. The individuals

recruited for possible inclusion in the research study should be informed of the goal, purpose and nature of the research, how the data collected will be used and what the participant's rights and privileges are in order for them to be able to decide whether they want to participate or not (Leedy & Ormrod, 2005:101). The potential participant should receive a letter explaining all this information fully (Smith et al. in Doody & Noonan, 2012:31) as well as being given the informed consent documents which they need to sign, testifying to their consent to participate. Creswell (2009:198) is of the view that this information should be given verbally and in writing, and where sensitive information is requested from participants it is important to take steps to protect them.

The recruited participants have to be prepared so that they understand exactly what the data collection method entails. They should become versed in the art of being interviewed so that they know what to expect; what time commitment will be required from them; and they must be alerted to the fact that the interview will be digitally recorded (Doody & Noonan, 2012:31).

McNamara (in Turner, 2010:758) and Mikéné et al. (2013:55) provide the following pointers to keep in mind as part of preparing the recruited participant for the activity of data collection:

- Choose an interview setting with as little distraction as possible and which will be most comfortable to the research participant
- Fully explain the method of data collection to be used, the 'how' the interview will be conducted (i.e. the format), highlighting the purpose of the interview as well for the participant to know exactly what is required
- Indicating the approximate length of the interview
- Discuss the issue of confidentiality, and anonymity with the participant
- Provide the participant (once again) with contact details should they wish to get in touch with the researcher
- Answer any questions prior to the commencement of the interview
- Explain how the recording device works, motivating its use and request the participant's permission to use it

The researcher bore all these guidelines in mind and tried to ensure that all the face-to-face interviews were conducted in a quiet and private setting of the participants' choice. Some of the interviews were conducted in their private homes. When the interviews were held at the home of the researcher it was usually done in the study with the door

closed, as was also done for telephonic interviews, for privacy and to avoid possible disturbances. The participants who were approached via e-communication were requested to answer the questions in the interview guide at a time convenient for them and when they could do so on their own. They were reminded to answer the questions according to their own perspective and experience of the issue. The researcher had to trust the honesty of the e-communication participant as there was no way to check on this for verification. However, there would be little reason for a participant to lie about who completed the questions.

The introductory letter (Addenda A – E) detailing the aim of the research, the nature of the participant's involvement, other logistical arrangements, their rights and all other relevant information, together with the informed consent form (Addendum F) were given to each participant during the initial contact session when their possible recruitment was discussed. This was done in order to give them time to peruse it before they agreed to participate and any queries they had about the study or the informed consent could be addressed. They had the option to refuse to be interviewed if they so desired. All the documentation was also given prior to the commencement of the interview, which did not happen without their signed consent.

While some of the participants only signed the informed consent form to confirm their verbal consent that was provided at the beginning of the interview, some of the participants signed these ahead of the interview appointment and handed them to the researcher on arrival. Prior to proceeding with the official collection of the data, another opportunity was offered that allowed for discussion of any concerns raised and to clarify any matters contained in the documents given to the participants.

Although McNamara's (in Turner, 2010:758) pointers were followed when preparing the participants for the activity of data collection, the researcher added some additional information that was not mentioned in the list. She explained to the participants that the transcriber<sup>2</sup>, the independent coder and the researcher's supervisor would be the only people who would have access to the data, as the possibility existed that they would have to work through the transcriptions and might even deem it necessary to listen directly to the recordings for data analysis and verification purposes. However, they too were obligated to treat the content as strictly confidential and would act in line with their

---

<sup>2</sup> The transcriber of a number of the transcripts was an individual well known to the researcher, a retired former personal assistant, who had experience in transcribing documents; a confidentiality agreement was signed prior to the transcriber having access to any recordings or documents; the transcriptions were done on the researcher's premises.

professional status. The researcher also requested, at the outset of the interview, and in the preamble documents (Addenda A - E) that permission be given for a recording device to be used. They were informed that a transcript would be made of their interview, which would be available to them to peruse should they wish to do so, and that this transcript might be sent to them for clarification or additional comments, a procedure known as member checking.

### **Negotiating access to a transient or vulnerable population**

Negotiating access to a vulnerable or transient population can happen through speaking to managers and social service professionals in agencies who are then according to Reeves (2010:318) referred to as “formal gatekeepers”. Examples would be homeless shelters, courthouses, the Department of Health and substance abuse facilities.

While performing a study with former crack cocaine users and sex workers who became politically active, Berger (in Marshall and Rossman, 2011:116) found that these gatekeepers do not always immediately agree to set up interviews with the people under their care, as they are rightfully protective of them. Berger further asserts that these gatekeepers are also protective of their own views about the issues these people in their domain have to deal with and overcame this hurdle by rewording her request to these gatekeepers using a shorter hook and by “planning ahead to counter direct assumptions”.

In this study the transient or vulnerable population were the adult survivors of CSEC and they were all reached by means of gatekeepers in shelters and NGO facilities, as explained in Table 2.3 in Section 2.3. The researcher’s preparation of these four adult survivors was thus different to that of other participants. Permission was obtained through the gatekeepers who had initially relayed the information contained in the preamble and informed consent document and detailed the reference to the emotional and ethical considerations involved as well as the offer of counselling backup after the interview. When the participant was face-to-face with the researcher all this information was again shared with them and again the researcher sought permission to record the interview. Once each of the participants was fully prepared for the interview, the full data collection process could commence and this is the focus of the next section.

## **2.7. METHODS OF DATA COLLECTION AND THEIR APPLICATION IN THIS STUDY**

The thorough preparation of participants was followed by the actual interview, and by recording it the researcher began the data collection process in earnest. This is now discussed in detail.

### **2.7.1 Qualitative face-to-face interviews**

The researcher, as per the original plan (see Chapter 1, Section 1.5.1), decided to use face-to-face, semi-structured, in-depth interviews to collect data from the sampled, recruited participants from the five different population groups. Hennink et al. (2011:109) maintain that qualitative interviews as facilitated by open-ended questions contained in an interview guide are the “first-best option”. Mikéné et al. (2013:51) note that qualitative interviews allow for in-depth, contextualised, open-ended responses from research participants about their views, opinions, feelings, knowledge and experiences. Alvesson and Svensson (in Thorpe & Holt, 2008:118), concur and elaborate by noting that, with qualitative interviewing, the researcher aims to obtain knowledge and information about the each participant’s life world to get their perspective of the research topic. Hence in the interviewer-interviewee relationship the participant is considered the expert on the subject of which the researcher is the student (Mack et al., 2005:29). Face-to-face interviews are characterised by various advantages and disadvantages and these are now discussed in more detail.

#### **2.7.1.1 Advantages and disadvantages of face-to-face interviews**

Interviewing by means of face-to-face interviews can be fraught with difficulty, although there are also many advantages to this method. The table on the next page lists the advantages and disadvantages of face-to-face interviews as a method of data collection as described by Doody and Noonan (2013:29).

**Table 2.6: Advantages and disadvantages of face-to-face interviewing**

Advantages	Disadvantages
Face-to-face interviews are useful to gain insight and context as the researcher can observe and listen	The participant might perceive the researcher's presence as intrusive
Participants are given an opportunity to describe what is important to them; the researcher is able to do the exploration	These types of interviews can be time-consuming to arrange, conduct, transcribe and analyse
This type of interview is useful in the process of generating stories and obtaining quotes and allows for more complex questioning	There are more expenses attached to face-to-face interviewing when compared with other methods of data collection
The researcher is able to develop a rapport with the participant and probe responses further for clarification	They need to be handled sensitively as they can evoke strong feelings
The researcher is able to explain the purpose of the research to the participant and answer any of the participant's questions about the research; participants are also able to clarify their understanding of questions and therefore provide detailed responses	Face-to-face interviewing can be susceptible to bias because the participant wants to please the researcher and the participant may therefore say what they think the researcher wants to hear in order to create a favourable impression with the researcher; this may lead to dishonesty on the part of the participants; participants tend to say something, rather than nothing and a researcher's expressions and responses may influence the way a participant responds to questions

Whilst the original plan was to only utilise qualitative face-to-face in-depth semi-structured interviews to collect data, the researcher had to (as explained in the first paragraph under Section 2.4.2) add telephone interviews and e-communication as ancillary methods, and these methods of data collection now become the focus of discussion.

## 2.7.2 Telephonic interviews

The use of telephones for data collection, according to Holt (2010:115,120), can be regarded as a valid and productive methodological research tool for ideological reasons (i.e. where participants do not want to be interviewed face-to-face) or for practical reasons (i.e. as was the case in this research where one of the participants stayed in a different province). It can be considered as the next best option and be a more favourable mode than the face-to-face interviewing, which is often considered the default mode.

The following are the advantages and disadvantages of telephone interviews.

### 2.7.2.1 Advantages of telephonic interviews

Ideas from the literature consulted (Holt, 2010: 115-117; McCoyd & Kerson, 2006:223; Bloor & Wood, 2006:61) point to these advantages of telephone interviews for collecting data from participants in a research project:

- The telephone allows for an auditory component which provides the researcher with a measure of vigilance and rapport
- There is less social pressure than with face-to-face interviews and the “use of the telephone with such participants may at least reduce the intensity of the ‘surveillant other’”, according to Walkerdine (in Holt, 2010:115)
- Participants are able to control when and where they complete the interview, and do not feel as embarrassed if they have to postpone the interview as they would if they postponed when the researcher turns up for a face-to-face interview.
- Participants have more control over their privacy in that they can move around while being interviewed to spots at home where they are more private.
- Telephone interviews reduce travel time and expenses thus researchers are able to cover a wider geographical area.

Telephonic interviews are asynchronous because there is a time lapse that allows both the interviewer and the participant time to respond, allowing for a higher level of reflection, which may provide a richer data quality. Furthermore, participants are in a controlled setting of their choice (Egan in Given, 2008:245).

### 2.7.2.2 Disadvantages of telephonic interviews

From a methodological point of view, the researcher does not physically enter the 'world' of the participant, therefore the telephone interview lacks ethnographic information, which is derived from a participant's home, community or workspace during a face-to-face interview. This precludes the researcher from adding their own contextual data to the interview (Holt, 2010:115). Telephone interviews are frequently shorter than their face-to-face counterparts (Irvine, Drew & Sainsbury, 2012:87-106). The lack of face-to-face contact is thought to restrict the way rapport develops between interviewee and interviewer which inhibits the naturalness of the encounter (Shuy, 2003 in Irvine et al., 2012:87-106).

Only one participant (Participant GG) was interviewed telephonically (Table 2.7) and agreed to the telephonic interview being recorded digitally. She stated that she preferred participating in the research in this way rather than only responding to the questions contained in the interview guide via e-mail. She felt it was more personal as she could discuss her thoughts with the researcher in more detail.

This participant was located in Johannesburg and was therefore not accessible to the researcher for a face-to-face interview. When the researcher asked the participant via e-mail for an interview she indicated that she would prefer to be interviewed telephonically. The introductory letter to the research and the informed consent form were e-mailed to the participant. A time was agreed upon via e-mail for when the researcher could call the participant at her office for the interview. The researcher had already set up her recording equipment and, prior to the commencement of the interview, informed the participant that she was being recorded. Once again her permission was requested. The interview lasted 55 minutes. The participant agreed that the participant could send the transcribed interview for further clarification if necessary.

Ten participants participated in this research project via e-communication. The questions contained in the relevant interview guides were sent to the respective participants via e-mail. They also responded to these questions via e-mail. E-communication as means of data collection is now introduced and its advantages and disadvantages are discussed.

### 2.7.3 Data collection through e-communication (e-mail)

Electronic mail or e-mail technology is a “store and forward” technology where messages are composed by the sender and transmitted to a mail server after which it is received on the addressee’s mail service provider from where the user will download it to their computer; the mail can be addressed to a single user or to many at one time (Gaiser & Schreiner, 2009:37-38). The use of electronic mail (e-mail) is a relatively new concept in field of qualitative research and emerged in the 1990s as a qualitative method of inquiry, according to Egan (in Given, 2008:245). This author points out that e-communication as means of data collection differs from face-to-face interviews due to its asynchronicity, reduced cues (participant and researcher cannot see each other) and anonymity, which may provide more comfort for self-disclosure. The specific advantages and disadvantages of e-communication as a tool for data collection will be discussed next.

#### 2.7.3.1 The advantages of e-mail data collection

The advantages of collecting data through e-mail is that it is easy and manageable, and the data is already in text form and does not need transcribing (Gaiser & Schreiner, 2009:48, McCoyd & Kerson, 2006:399). Responding to the research questions via e-mail allows the participant more freedom of expression and to be in control of the situation. They can decide on how expansively to respond to the questions in the interview guide and they are allowed to complete the questions at their own pace and in written format, thus reducing social pressure (McCoyd & Kerson, 2006:220). This mode of data collection has gathered “rich bilateral streams of data from otherwise inaccessible” participants (Murthy, 2008:53–71).

#### 2.7.3.2 The disadvantages of e-mail data collection

The disadvantages of e-mail data collection are the following: there are no visual cues or direct observation of the participants’ emotions; text could disappear (be deleted accidentally by the participant or the researcher); e-mail addresses could change and participants would be too hard to find; and this mode of data collection can take longer to complete than, for example, a face-to-face interview (McCoyd & Kerson, 2006:220). In addition to these disadvantages, the interview may possibly not be answered by the person to whom the questions are directed or the participant may get assistance from another person or even influenced by them. It is difficult for the researcher to either

manage such a situation or control the environment of the participant engaging in this task.

This researcher took precautions to limit this particular disadvantage. Upon ascertaining the willingness of the potential participants to participate in her research project, she stipulated the condition for responding to the questions through e-communication by briefing them about the fact that she wanted them to respond to the questions on their own, alone, with no one else present. They agreed to this, and the letter introducing the research project and consent form were e-mailed to them. The completed consent forms were sent back to the researcher by an electronic facsimile device. She then invited them to respond to the questions contained in the interview guide via e-mail. While it is difficult to imagine a situation in which participants would have someone other than themselves answering the interview guide questions, the researcher did not exclude this possibility. She was, however, convinced that this would happen on the odd occasion, as all the participants recruited had a keen interest in the topic, prided themselves on their status in their respective professions, and were excited to add to its body of knowledge. The researcher therefore trusted them to answer the questions themselves without being influenced by others.

The researcher experienced the following challenges in respect of the data collection through the mode of e-communication. Some of the participants provided very brief or cryptic-style answers to some of the questions, and e-mail requests for further elaboration in some instances bore no results. In addition to this, some of the participants took very long to respond, and had to be prompted (over an extended period) to return their response to the researcher. One participant took four months to return her answers.

Ultimately four social workers, two hospitality and tourism employees and four non-social workers were interviewed using this method. Of the four social workers interviewed this way, three were within the distance range of the researcher's normal travelling as they were located on the Garden Route or in Cape Town, but they did not want to be interviewed face-to-face as they were very busy and could not take the time off work for an interview and, in any case, preferred to participate via e-communication. The fourth social worker was out of the province and too far from the researcher.

Two participants from the hospitality and tourism industry opted for participating through e-communication. Of the two, one was located in a different province and

therefore inaccessible to the researcher. The other could not be contacted directly despite numerous attempts on the part of the researcher. Ultimately, another participant who had recommended her for the study interviewed her and wrote down her responses which she sent to the researcher. However, due to the poor quality of the responses, it was dismissed from the study.

Four of the non-social workers employed at NGOs opted for participation in this research via e-communication. Of these, two were located very close to the researcher but did not want to take part in face-to-face interviews, as they were busy with their work and would not take time off to answer the guide's questions. Two others were located some distance from the researcher but, despite the researcher offering to travel to them, they declined and opted for e-mail communication as way to respond to the questions in the interview guide.

Table 2.7 summarises the numbers of participants interviewed and the mode according to which they engaged in the process of data collection.

**Table 2.7: Methods of data collection**

<b>Participants</b>	<b>Individual face-to-face Interviews</b>	<b>E-mail communication</b>	<b>Telephone interviews</b>	<b>Totals</b>
Social workers	15	4		19
Hospitality/tourism	11	1	1	13
NGO employees	9	4		13
SAPS	6			6
Adult survivors	4			4
<b>Total</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>55</b>

Of the 15 social workers who were interviewed face-to-face (Table 2.7), one (Participant U) was interviewed in the presence of another participant (Participant V), a non-social work employee of the NGO, who worked with child trafficking and had experience in the field of child exploitation. Participant U made this request because she was new in the organisation and wanted to cross-check that the information she supplied regarding the organisation was accurate. In the end, a situation arose where this researcher interviewed these two participants concurrently.

Three of the adult survivors were interviewed in the presence of their gatekeepers who had played a key role in organising the interviews on behalf of the researcher. Their presence in two of the instances (Participant MM and Participant CCC) did not create a disruption. In fact, the gatekeepers themselves expressed surprise at how much the adult survivors revealed. In the third interview, however, the presence of the gatekeeper and one other NGO staff member, as well as a friend of the gatekeeper, did not inhibit the adult survivor, in the researcher's opinion, but it did push the interview to go in the direction that the gatekeeper wanted it to go. The researcher had to stop the tape on numerous occasions and remind the gatekeeper that the words and opinions expressed had to be those of the adult survivor. The other people present then did respect the researcher's request although they did add their comments from time to time. This made the interview much longer than it could have been, but still provided rich information from the participant.

As is the custom with qualitative interviewing and telephone interviews, to facilitate the interviewing process and allow the participant to express their own opinions and perceptions of the topic under study, the researcher designed a mainly unstructured and open-ended set of questions as an interview guide as Creswell (2009:181) suggests. At the outset, as per the original plan, the researcher devised two interview guides, one for the social work participants, and another for the hospitality and tourism industry participants. The respective interview guides contained two sets of questions. The questions in the first section were geared towards gathering information of a biographical nature to compile biographical profiles of the participants; and the second section contained questions pertaining to the various aspects and facets of the research topic under scrutiny.

Since the participants in the initial sample groups did not possess the assumed information-rich data required, and the researcher could access individuals belonging to other population groups based on referrals, especially from social workers, a change of modus operandi seemed desirable. The researcher, in consultation with the study supervisor, decided to expand the database to include three population groups: one, a sample of non-social workers in NGOs who were directly involved in service delivery to children on the street and children victimised through commercial and other sexual exploitation; two, a sample comprising of members of the SAPS FCS Unit; and three, adult survivors, who as children were commercially sexually exploited. For each of these sample groups interview guides containing questions of a biographical and topical nature were developed. While the reader is requested to revisit the interview

guides for the social worker and hospitality and tourism industry participant sample groups, (Addenda A and B, or see Chapter 1, Section 1.6.2) the interview guides with questions directed to the additional sample groups will now be introduced here.

In the case of the non-social work employees at NGOs focusing specifically on service delivery to the victims of child sexual exploitation, the topic of the questions in the interview guide directed to them focused on the nature of the training they received for the service they deliver. The questions pertaining to child sex tourism and sexual exploitation remained largely the same as those contained in the interview guide for the social workers. However, in addition, the researcher wanted to know what the perception of each of these three groups was on how social workers deal with child sexual exploitation, and how they can respond to the phenomenon of CSEC. She therefore formulated extra questions to specifically explore these two aspects as tabulated below.

The interview guide with questions directed to the sample of non-social work employees from NGOs rendering services to victims and perpetrators of CSEC.

**Table 2.8: Interview guide questions for the non-social work participants**

Biographical Questions	Topical Questions
In what type of organisation are you employed?	What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?
Are you registered with any professional bodies/organisations? If so, with whom?	What is the extent of CST in the geographical area your work covers, or how much do you know about? (Please describe as fully as possible)
What geographical area does your work cover?	Please describe, as fully as you can the cases of CST that you have dealt with/know about?
How many years have you been doing what you are doing?	What factors do you think contribute to the phenomenon of CST?
	What enables you to render services to the victims and perpetrators of CST?
	What obstacles do you believe prevent you, or those whom you know of that work with victims or perpetrators, from working effectively with these groups?
	What is your opinion on the social work services

	<p>delivered to victims or perpetrators of CSEC?</p> <p>Is there any further comment or information that you would like to add?</p> <p>Is there anyone else you can recommend that I should speak to concerning this issue?</p>
--	---

An **interview guide** was also developed for the sample group from the **Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) unit in the South African Police Service (SAPS)**, which was approved by the SAPS Strategic Command. It follows a similar pattern to the guides used for the social workers and NGO employees and is presented next.

**Table 2.9: Interview guide questions for the SAPS FCS Unit members**

<b>Biographical Questions</b>	<b>Topical Questions</b>
<p>In which unit of your organisation are you employed?</p> <p>What is your rank?</p> <p>Are you registered with any professional bodies and if so what are they?</p> <p>What geographical area does your work cover?</p> <p>How many years have you been in the SAPS?</p>	<p>What is your understanding of the concept ‘child sex tourism’?</p> <p>What is the extent of CST in the geographical area your work covers? How much do you know about?</p> <p>Please describe, as fully as you can the cases of CST that you have dealt with or know about?</p> <p>What experience have you had with working with victims of CST?</p> <p>What experience have you had with working with perpetrators of CST?</p> <p>What do you think are the contributing factors to this phenomenon of CST?</p> <p>What obstacles do you believe prevent you or those that you know of who work with victims or perpetrators, from working effectively with these groups?</p> <p>What enables you to render services to the victims and perpetrators of CST?</p> <p>What is your opinion on the social work services delivered to victims or perpetrators of CSEC?</p> <p>What South African or international legislation covering CST are you aware of?</p>

The interview guide developed for the adult survivors of commercial child sexual exploitation contained the following **biographical and topical questions**:

**Table 2.10: Interview guide questions for the adult survivors of CSEC**

Biographical Questions	Topical Questions
<p>Tell me about yourself</p> <p>Where do you come from?</p> <p>What age were you when you came to live on the street?</p> <p>How old are you now?</p> <p>Where do you live now?</p> <p>Where is your family?</p>	<p>The following probes were used to further explore the participant’s story:</p> <p>Tell me the story about you being commercially sexually exploited - how did it happen that you were picked up on the street as a child?</p> <p>Where did the people who picked you up take you?</p> <p>What did they want from you? What did they want you to do?</p> <p>Did they give you something in return?</p> <p>If they gave you something, what did they give you?</p> <p>Who picked you up? Describe as much as you can about the person(s)</p> <p>Where did the people who picked you up come from?</p> <p>What was their population group? Were they black, white or coloured or Indian?</p> <p>How old were they? Describe in words</p> <p>Were they men or women?</p> <p>Did you ever speak with or ask for help from social workers at any time?</p> <p>Did you ever speak with or ask for help from the police?</p> <p>Did you receive help from anyone?</p> <p>Were there ever any drugs involved, used on your side or on theirs (the people that picked you up)?</p> <p>Was there ever more than one person at a time that picked you up?</p> <p>Were you always alone or did you go with friends?</p> <p>Did anyone ever hurt you – was violence involved?</p> <p>What else can you tell me about your experiences?</p>

2.7.3.3 Interviewing skills and techniques used to facilitate the face-to-face and telephonic interviews

In following the advice of Smith (in Doody & Noonan, 2013:31) who suggests that researchers learn the questions contained in the interview guide off by heart so as not distract a participant and break the flow of the interview if the researcher continually refers to the interview guide, the researcher did just that. In order to ease the participants into the process of being interviewed (especially with the adult survivors),

the researcher started the interviews by focusing on obtaining the biographical information from the participants.

The researcher approached each interview in a respectful manner and worked from the premise of her being the “student” in this interviewer-interviewee relationship. She regarded the participants as the “experts” (Mack et al., 2005:29). Doody and Noonan, (2013:31) quote Holloway and Wheeler who underscore the need for a relationship of trust, characterised by being empathic, listening attentively, maintaining eye contact and a neutral demeanour. Once a trusting relationship is in place, the participant opens-up and comfortably answers the questions honestly.

Apart from applying several of the known interviewing techniques and skills that tend to create a non-threatening environment, the researcher also probed for clarity, being led by the participants, and summarising for clarification. She redirected the discussion if a participant diverted from the topic and the question as framed in the interview guide.

#### 2.7.3.4 Piloting the data collection tools

The activity of piloting the data collection tools, according to Grove, Burns and Gray (2013:703), entails subjecting them, especially the questions in an interview guide, to a smaller version of a proposed study to develop or refine the data collection tools. Kumar (2013:305) adds to this by noting that, based on the outcomes of piloting the data collection tools, modifications to the formulated questions can be made to ensure that they do obtain the data required (Hennink et al., 2011:120). This researcher conducted one pilot interview with a representative from each of the following sample groups: the social workers, the non-social workers and service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry, to ascertain if the questions were understandable and to assess whether the questioning and probing techniques would facilitate communication between interviewer and interviewee to elicit rich data. In consultation with the study supervisor, pilot or test studies were not conducted with the members of the SAPS FCS Units or the adult survivors of CSEC, as the number of available participants in these categories was limited. In any event the researcher had already interviewed a number of participants from the other groups and problems were not encountered other than that she had to take care to not be tempted to guide the participant in the direction she wanted the interview to go, but had to consciously rather allow the participant to lead the conversation.

From the piloting of the data collection tools, the researcher found that two questions turned out to not be entirely relevant to the study, and she decided to omit them in the main study. They concerned the extent of adult sex tourism in the geographical area in which the participant worked and how much the participant knew about it (which were contained in the interview guides of the social workers, service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry, SAPS FCS Unit members participant group and the one for the non-social workers).

## **2.8 Digital audio recordings and transcriptions**

In Chapter 1, Section 1.9, the researcher introduced the fact that the face-to-face interviews would be digitally audio recorded. This aspect was communicated to the individuals eligible for participation in the research during the recruitment phase, when they were recruited participants and prepared for a face-to-face interview and/or a telephone interview and also prior to the actual interviews. Reference to this fact of digitally recording the interviews was also made in the written preamble requesting the individual's participation in the research project, (see Addenda A to E). Moreover, it was clearly stated that the participants' permission would again be sought immediately prior to the actual interview. The researcher honoured this commitment throughout the data collection process as digital recordings were required for analysis and interpretation. From an ethical perspective meticulous attention was taken to alert each participant of the use of recording equipment, and thoughtful precautions were taken to see that the commitment to the participant's confidentiality and guarantee of anonymity was not compromised. According to Lofland (in Corbin & Strauss, 2008:31) and Creswell (2009:198), this is central to the researcher's obligations towards the participants in the study.

The production of digital audio recordings is a typical technique for data collection in research. It refers to the recording of sound, especially speech (Bloor & Wood, 2006:16). When conducting qualitative research interviews, wherever it is possible, Kukartz (2014:122) suggests that a researcher should work with audio recordings to refresh their memory of what was shared during the interviews. There are both advantages and disadvantages to working with voice recorders (Table 2.8) below.

**Table 2.11 Advantages and disadvantages of using audio recording equipment (according to Bloor & Wood, 2006:16-18)**

Advantages of using audio recording equipment	Disadvantages of using audio recording equipment
The reliability of the information is enhanced as it is no longer collected selectively or from the researcher's memory; it and can therefore be analysed more effectively	A disadvantage to the participant is that anonymity is lost as the exact words and voices are recorded and there is always a danger of exposure
The researcher is relieved of the task of note-taking during the interview which means they are able to concentrate on what the participant is saying as well as prompt the participant for more information	Participants may become reluctant to speak freely while being recorded, due to fear of exposure or due to the distraction caused by the presence of the recording equipment and a bias may be caused
Using recording devices can lead participants to believe that their views are being taken seriously	

In addition to digital audio recordings, Creswell (2009:183) recommends that even if a researcher is using audio recording equipment notes should be taken too as equipment may fail. Notes tend to reflect important ideas in the document and provide information about the document. The researcher followed this advice.

When it comes to transcribing the digital audio recordings of the interviews conducted, Silverman (2013:233) points out that transcribing should start immediately after interviewing so that review of the data can begin straight away, while interviewing other participants continues.

In following this suggestion, the researcher transcribed each interview as soon as was possible after conducting each face-to-face or telephone interview. As the transcriptions contain the data to be analysed, Kukartz (2014:122) suggests that the arrangements for the formatting, the organisation, the saving and storage processes are co-ordinated right from the start so that the analytical process can begin once data collection is done.

In this study, the data was transcribed by means of an electronic transcription system whereby the recorded data was downloaded into a software system on a computer that was connected to earphones. While listening to the earphones either the researcher, who transcribed most of the interviews herself or the external transcriber typed the information in numbered rows (lines), using the MSWord-computer software programme leaving a large margin (column) on the right hand side of an A4-page format sheet, making it easier for referral and to find information once it had been coded or grouped. The transcripts were then printed and read for obvious errors, corrected and sent to the researcher's supervisor for comments. This process was a helpful indicator for assessing the approach of saturation. Once the transcriptions were completed data analysis began and this is now described in detail.

## **2.9 DATA ANALYSIS**

In Chapter 1, Section 1.6.3 of this report, the researcher stated that the data would be analysed utilising Tesch's eight steps as described in Creswell (2009:186).

How these suggested steps were executed will now be explained.

### **Step One: Carefully read through all the transcriptions in order to get a sense of the whole picture and write down thoughts as they come to mind**

The researcher carefully read through every transcribed interview, all of which were transcribed verbatim in either Afrikaans or English, depending on the preference of the participant, and the e-mail communications. The latter contained the participants' responses to the questions contained in the respective interview guides sent to them. While reading through the transcripts she took notes of the information shared by the participants and in so doing started to get a sense of the whole picture. As thoughts and ideas came to mind, during the reading of the transcripts, they were written down to record the ideas the researcher was getting from the transcripts. This was to minimise misunderstanding, misinterpretations and to help the researcher understand the language and semantics of the various participants.

### **Step Two: Choose one of the transcripts either randomly or one which is of particular interest and think about what the underlying meaning is about**

The researcher selected one transcript (Participant MM), an adult survivor of CSEC, and went through it carefully, questioning continually what the underlying meaning of the communication was, and making notes about the meaning and thinking about the emerging topics. Once this had been completed for the whole transcript of Participant MM, the researcher continued with a few more transcripts, ensuring that transcripts were selected from participants sampled from all four population groups.

**Step Three: Once the above step has been completed for all the transcripts start compiling a list of the topics that have emerged from them and order the topics into 'major' topics, 'unique' topics and 'leftovers'**

The topics that emerged were written down and then ordered into major topics. This was done to determine how the participants seemed to understand the term 'child sex tourism', as an aspect of CSEC. Their perceptions of the extent of the phenomenon and suggestions that seemed to be unique topics were noted, as resulting from their experiential exposure to CSEC. The 'leftovers' represented more individual circumstances or thoughts about the phenomenon that were not able to be grouped with others. It was obvious that some comments from individuals were unsolicited and sometimes did not relate directly to any of the questions the researcher had asked.

**Step Four: Return to the data with this list of topics and using abbreviated topic codes mark the presence of these types of information in the transcripts**

The next part of the process entailed assigning a code or an appropriate abbreviation to each of the identified topics, after which the researcher returned to the transcripts to mark each portion of text applicable to that topic, giving it a relevant code. The researcher then used coloured markers to mark each portion of text that was believed to fall into certain topics in similar colours. This made the transcript texts visually easier so that portions of 'like' text within the transcripts and across the transcripts could be easily spotted.

**Step Five: Revisit the topics and reformulate them as themes**

The researcher then rephrased the identified topics where necessary and grouped them into themes. The ones she felt were self-explanatory and descriptive enough she adopted as they stood.

### **Step Six: Alphabetise the codes once the list was finalised**

The abbreviations for each of the categories were then finalised and the list of codes were arranged in an alphabetical order to create a structure and for ease of reference.

### **Step Seven: Collect all the data that belongs to each category and start with an initial analysis**

Using the cut and paste facility on the computer, the researcher then began to group the storylines that belonged to a specific theme together. This was done for all the themes.

Early on in the analysis, once the researcher started to note the topics that emerged from each sample group, it became apparent that, through their communication, the concerns, interests and topics of the participants who were adult victims differed vastly from those of the other three sample groups. They were therefore analysed according to a separate set of codes. However, where overlap occurred, their comments and codes were combined with those of the other participants.

After completing these seven steps for all the transcripts the researcher was able to group all the data according to the identified themes and begin with compiling the chapters in which the findings were to report.

### **Step Eight: Recode existing data where necessary.**

Tesch (in Creswell, 2009:186) states that if necessary recoding of data can be done. In this study this was not necessary.

As mentioned in Chapter 1, Section 1.6.4 an independent coder was appointed to analyse the data independently from the researcher. This aspect and the independent coder arrangements is presented next.

#### **2.9.1 Independent coding and independent coder arrangements**

Arrangements were made for the involvement of an independent coder who was well versed in qualitative research and familiar with Tesch's steps for qualitative data analysis as detailed in the introduction to this section (Section 2.9 and also 1.6.3), to

assist with the data analysis. In order to establish dependability, the researcher and the independent coder coded and analysed the transcripts of the interviews and the e-communication responses without liaising with each other.

The researcher and the independent coder met on 5 and 6 March 2014 and the study supervisor facilitated this meeting, which lasted more than eight hours. The purpose of the discussion was to reach consensus about the themes. The themes were derived independently and were interrogated, while points of difference were discussed at length. After each theme was thoroughly reviewed, reworked and the data revisited, a final set of themes emerged.

The researcher then reviewed these themes again on her own after the consensus discussion to be sure that every bit of available valuable data was captured and analysed. The themes that emerged are now summarised but explained and dealt with in full later in Chapters 3, 4, 5 and 6.

The findings in relation to the adult survivors are presented in one main theme with seven sub-themes in Chapter 3 (see Section 3.3) as:

**Theme 1:** The accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their commercial sexual exploitation as children

The findings in relation to the service providers, namely the social workers, the non-social work participants and the FCS SAPS participant group are presented in Chapters 4 and 5 as:

**Theme 1:** The service provider groups' levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge on the legislation applicable to prohibiting CSEC, with specific reference to CST

**Theme 2:** The service provider groups' perceptions of the extent of CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST, and their levels of exposure to victims and perpetrators of the specified types of commercial sexual exploitation

**Theme 3:** The service provider groups' accounts of the profile of the victims of CSEC

**Theme 4:** The service provider groups' accounts of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC

**Theme 5:** The service providers groups' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST

**Theme 6:** The service providers groups' accounts of factors enabling them to respond to CSEC

**Theme 7:** The service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST

**Theme 8:** The suggestions from the service provider groups in response to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST

The findings in relation to the hospitality and tourism industry are presented in Chapter 6 as:

**Theme 1:** The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST

**Theme 2:** The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of and their exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business

**Theme 3:** The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC

**Theme 4:** The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts in terms of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC

**Theme 5:** The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST

**Theme 6:** The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' suggestions for addressing CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST

Once themes have been devised it is important to understand how data can be validated and this is an aspect that is explored further in the following section.

## 2.10 DATA VERIFICATION

In Chapter 1, Section 1.6.4, the researcher stated that "data will be verified according to truth value, applicability, consistency and neutrality" and suggested that questions could be asked to ascertain the presence of these elements. These questions include asking; how credible are the findings? How well was the data collection carried out? How defensible is the research design? How well has the detail, depth and complexity of the data been conveyed? How clear are the links between the data and interpretation of conclusions? How clear and coherent is the reporting? How

adequately has the research process been documented and what evidence is there of attention to ethical issues? (Babbie, 2010:417).

The model the researcher elected to use (see Chapter 1, Section 1.6.4) for ensuring the trustworthiness of the qualitative data in this research project is Guba's model (in Krefting, 1991:214-222). Guba's model, according to Shenton (2004:63-75), "has been accepted by many" and addresses credibility (which this author prefers over internal validity), transferability (preferred over generalisability), dependability (preferred over reliability) and confirmability (preferred over objectivity).

In addition to reliability, validity, is one of the strengths of qualitative research, and its basis lies in finding out whether the findings given in the report are accurate "from the standpoint of the researcher, the participant, or the readers" (Creswell (2009:191). Each study contains various claims which may or may not be valid, and the goal of the researcher is to validate as many claims as possible. A study that is considered valid means that the data for the study was properly collected and interpreted so that the conclusions are accurate reflections of the real world, and representative of the world that the researcher has studied (Yin, 2011:78). To this end the researcher looked at strategies for credibility, transferability, dependability and confirmability in terms of Guba's model as well as the comments of Maxwell (2005) and Creswell (2009). In the table on the next page, the characteristics which Guba (in Krefting, 1991:214-222), Maxwell (2005) and Creswell (2009) advocate are presented along with a description of their application in this research.

**Table 2.12: Guba’s model for ensuring trustworthiness of qualitative research and the practical application of these methods applied in this study (Krefting, 1991:215-217) and Shenton (2004:63-75)**

<b>Characteristics of Guba’s model with description of each characteristic</b>	<b>Steps taken by researcher</b>
<p><b>Truth value:</b> Relates to credibility and is established through the discovery of the lived human experiences and the perception thereof by informants. According to Shenton (2004:64), truth value relates to credibility and depends on the congruency of the findings with the “lived experiences”. In establishing credibility the question of whether the researcher has accurately reported the phenomenon being studied and whether the “lived experiences” are in fact those that are reported accurately by the researcher (Shenton, 2004:64)</p>	<p>The researcher applied the following strategies to ensure that the research findings were a credible reflection of the lived experiences as reported by the various participants in the study: Intensive long-term field involvement which will enable the researcher to produce a “complete and in-depth understanding” of the phenomenon under study is proposed by Maxwell (2005:244-245) and Creswell (2009:193-194). Fieldwork for this research continued for 14 months and only terminated on agreement between the researcher and the supervisor when deemed to be complete</p> <p>Through conducting the interviews in venues that were both convenient and safe for the participants, and using various interviewing techniques and skills, which included probing for clarity, being led by the participants and summarising for clarification, optimised the interviewing process</p> <p>Checking transcripts to make sure that they do not contain obvious errors is another important way the researcher made sure the data is credible</p> <p>Member checking, which a process of taking the transcribed information back to the participant in order to ensure that the meaning and context has been interpreted correctly, is advocated by Creswell (2009:191). The researcher did this for participants in the face-to-face and telephonic interviews and also for the data gathered via e-communication</p>

	<p>Preparation of participants included their understanding that there were no taboos, wrong answers or judgement inferred in any of the questions asked, and that their honesty would make a valuable contribution to the ultimate value of the project to the Profession of Social Work. Peer debriefing or consultation, described by Creswell (2009:191) as the process of involving a person who reviews and asks questions about the qualitative study, “so that the account will resonate with people other than the researcher” was done as the researcher had frequent research supervision and consultation sessions (per e-mail and telephonically) with her study supervisor to discuss feedback on the transcripts which were sent through to him as soon as they were transcribed. Challenges experienced during the fieldwork, and phases of the emerging research design were regularly discussed with the promoter too.</p> <p>The background, qualifications and experience of the researcher are important in establishing credibility and to this end the researcher provided a preamble document (Addenda A - E) as well as the contact details of the supervisor, the Departmental Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa, which had approved the study. The address, telephone and e-mail contact details of the researcher was given to the participants to enable them to check any information or the credentials of the researcher, should they wish to do so. In addition, the researcher is a registered member in good standing of the SACSSP and SAASWIPP and has also been SAPS checked and cleared (at the time her registration to the UK health professions board was approved).</p>
<p><b>Applicability:</b> Applicability is established through, and relates to, transferability, and is</p>	<p>To this end the researcher followed the guidance of various scholars; Cole and Gardener (1979:167-192); Marchionini and Teague (1987:139-155) and Pitts (1994), as summarised by</p>

<p>concerned with being able to demonstrate that the results of the research project can be applied to a wider population, according to Merriam in Shenton (2004:69). Guba in Shenton (2004:70) recommends a full or thick description of the “contextual factors impinging on the inquiry”.</p>	<p>Shenton (2004:70) by including the following information in her descriptions in this chapter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The number of organisations who took part in the study and where they were located</li> <li>Restrictions of those who took part in the study</li> <li>The number of people who took part in the fieldwork</li> <li>The data collection procedures that were utilised in this study including how many data collection sessions (interviews)</li> <li>The period of time it took to collect the data</li> </ul>
<p><b>Consistency:</b> Consistency is established through and relates to dependability (Krefting, 1991:216). To this end Shenton (2004:71) and Creswell (2009:191) suggest that, in the interests of dependability the processes which were followed during the course of the study should be described in detail in the research report for the study to be repeated in the future and so that the same result could be obtained. Shenton (2004:71) notes that various areas of focus are important in the write-up of a qualitative report and these include: the research design; implementation and description of its planning and execution; a further focus on the details of how the data</p>	<p>The researcher provided a thick description of the research method in this chapter in order to fulfil, as closely as possible, the requirement mentioned by Shenton (2004:71–72) and Creswell, 2009:191) that a comprehensive, step-by-step report on the research methodology, and how it was followed, will enhance the probability of another researcher undertaking a dependability audit if and when required</p> <p>Additionally the service of an independent coder, Dr Huma Louw, versed in the art of qualitative data analysis was utilised to further establish dependability</p>

<p>was gathered and the fieldwork methodology utilised during the data gathering operation; and finally, a reflection by the researcher on the project and the effectiveness of the various aspects</p>	
<p><b>Neutrality:</b> Also termed ‘transparency’ relates to confirmability (Krefting, 1991:217).</p>	<p>Triangulation is a form of confirming data and entails collecting information from varying sources and cross-checking data received by examining different sources and using these to “build coherent justification for the themes” (Maxwell, 2005:244-245; Creswell, 2009:193-194). The researcher sought input from five diverse population groups on the same topic thereby achieving triangulation of the information</p> <p>Many interviews, once transcribed were sent back to the participants for checking and to provide clarification or to elaborate on certain aspects of their narratives in order to ensure it was the viewpoints of the participants and not the viewpoint of the researcher that was being recorded. Maxwell (2005:244-245) and Creswell (2009:193-194) advise this procedure.</p>

## 2.11 ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS

In Chapter 1, Section 1.6.5 of this report, the researcher mentioned that in order to consider research as ethical “it should be in keeping with generally accepted ethical principles, which include equity, honesty and humane consideration” (Glatthorn & Joyner, 2005:8). This, these authors say means that the researcher must show compassion for the participants and must keep in mind that no harm must come to them as a result of the research. Babbie (2010:64) holds forth that, as part of living in a particular society, people need to know what that society considers ethical or unethical, and asserts that the same holds true for the social research community. Thus anyone who is involved in Social Science research needs to be aware of general agreements shared by researchers about conduct that is considered ‘proper and improper’ when conducting a scientific inquiry.

The elements or measures proposed by the researcher in Chapter 1, Section 1.6.5 to be used as indicators of ethical behaviour were noted as follows: informed consent, anonymity confidentiality, the management of information and the provision of debriefing services where required. This is in accord with what Alston and Bowles (2003:21) advocate as questions which the researcher should ask about their process when conducting qualitative research. These are: *Do participants understand the potential risks and advantages stemming from their involvement in the research? Did they give their informed consent? How does the researcher make provision for confidentiality and privacy? Does the process of data collection include debriefing?*

In answering these questions in relation to her own research, the researcher had to reflect on the processes she applied and consider whether the proposed processes to safeguard ethics were indeed followed in the study. These points are now addressed.

### 2.11.1 Obtaining informed consent

When a participant considers consenting to participate in a research project a decision is dependent upon the provision of adequate information about the goal of the research, what the participants’ involvement will entail, being informed about risks related to the research and the participants’ rights, so that they will be in the position to make a calculated decision whether or not to participate (Hennink et al., 2011:67).

In addition to the these guidelines, the motivation for informed consent stems from the researcher being registered as a social worker with the South African Council for Social

Service Professions in accordance with Act 110 of 1978 as well as with the South African Association of Social Workers in Private Practice (SAASWIPP) and has therefore upheld a number of professional codes of ethics. Of particular interest, on the SACSSP website under ethics guidelines in section 5.1.4 (c) the following is stated: "Those engaged in evaluation or research should obtain voluntary and written informed consent from participants without any implied or actual deprivation or penalty for refusal to participate; without undue inducement to participate; and with due regard for participants' well-being, privacy and dignity. Informed written consent should include information about the nature, extent and duration of the participation requested and disclosure of the risks and benefits or participation in the research".

In Chapter 1, Section 1.6.5 the researcher explained that individuals eligible for participation in this study would be adequately informed about this study regarding the goal of the research, why they have been approached to participate in the project and what their involvement would entail. They also needed to know how long the interview would be, what the risks related to participating in the research would be and what, their rights were so that they would be in the position to make a calculated decision whether or not to participate, or even to terminate their involvement if they so wished. The researcher gave the information in an introductory preamble letter and sent to the potential participants via e-mail (see Addenda A - E). It was also explained to the eligible individuals telephonically when approaching them about participating in the study, and in person when the researcher met with them for the interviews. Participants were then encouraged to ask any questions they had regarding anonymity, confidentiality or anything else either mentioned in the informed consent form or raise an issue that was omitted in the given documentation.

Once the participants indicated that they understood the research and their rights with regard to participation, especially their right to withdraw at any time, the researcher asked for consent to go ahead with the interview. The researcher requested each participant to sign the informed consent to confirm their understanding of the conditions, after which the researcher co-signed. The researcher pointed out to the participants that the preamble contained the researcher's contact details as well as contact details of the supervisor and university should there be any concerns or questions they felt they had regarding the research. The researcher also offered the participants copies of the signed consent form for their records. It was explained in the informed consent document that the final report of the research would be disseminated as follows:

- A copy of the research results/report will be forwarded to the Minister of Tourism at the South African Department of Tourism
- A copy of the research results will be sent to ECPAT, the body responsible for the global monitoring of sexual exploitation of children
- A report will be sent to Joan van Niekerk at Childline South Africa
- A report will be sent to Fairtrade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA)
- A report will be sent to The code International, New York City
- An article will be written for local news/general interest magazines such as The Star, You magazine
- A copy will be sent to UNICEF Innocenti Research Centre, Florence, Italy.

Since the four adult survivors of CSEC (Participants MM, ZZ, BBB and CCC) were illiterate these participants were not able to read the preamble or informed consent documents. For this reason the researcher explained these documents to the participants using appropriate language while checking to make sure the participant understood prior to their signing the consent form.

Apart from the efforts by the researcher to provide comprehensive information and inform the eligible individuals adequately about the research, it became apparent to the researcher that (some) participants often signed the informed consent document without thoroughly reading the preamble document. She therefore made a point of ensuring that they understood the terminology in the document with specific reference to how the data they shared would be used, and disseminated, and how the recording of what they said in the interview would remain confidential all the time, especially when managing the information gathered.

One particular participant took issue with the wording contained in the preamble pointing to the fact that a participant could be dismissed from the study under the following conditions: *"... if the information you have to divulge is emotionally sensitive and upsetting to you to such an extent that it hinders you from functioning physically and emotionally in a proper manner .... Furthermore, if participating in the study at any time jeopardises your safety in any way, you will be dismissed"*.

This participant did not sign the informed consent due to this wording even though she had no problem with the further content of the document or the questions. This disagreement over the wording was fed back to the study supervisor who put it in context.

Subsequently the researcher ensured that all participants understood what was meant so that that conducting the study in an ethical manner was ensured, and no one felt traumatised, especially the adult survivors, and that they did not feel awkward or jeopardised in any way as a result of participating in this research project.

#### 2.11.2 Confidentiality and management of information

It is important to assure participants that what they say will be kept confidential in order to earn their trust and thus elicit good data (Mack et al., 2005:31). It is also important to carefully manage the data collected in order to maintain that confidentiality, and preserve the safety of the participants. The SACSSP also shares this sentiment on their website under section 5.1.4 (l) which states that those social workers who are engaged in research should ensure the “privacy, anonymity and confidentiality of participants and of the data obtained from them”. In addition, participants should be informed of the limits to the confidentiality clause stated in a document. The procedures used to maintain confidentiality should be explained to the participants.

Confidentiality was maintained by treating all the information shared by the participants as confidential. The researcher was also at pains to disguise the identity of the participants in this report and by assigning alphabetical codes to the participants to protect their identities. One participant was not discussed with another participant, and the only way one participant would know about another would be if they discussed the project or the interview with each other. The exception would be the case where one participant sat in on the interview with another participant - Participant U and V opted to be interviewed together, and the three adult survivors were interviewed in the presence of their carers who served as gatekeepers.

Only personal information that was necessary for the study was recorded. All information and notes on the interviews and transcripts will be kept in safe storage on the researcher's premises, in a locked storeroom until the time comes for destroying them, which will be done five years after completion of this project. Until then the material will only be accessible to this researcher. In order to further secure the identities of the participants coding as pseudonyms were employed. Real names and identities are stored in an entirely different place away from the coded names.

The researcher became aware of the fact that snowball sampling as method to recruit participants could jeopardise a participant's anonymity, especially in cases where

participants were requested to refer the researcher to other individuals whom they regarded as information-rich about the topic. This happened in cases where participants very often asked the researcher directly whether she had spoken to this colleague or that one. In such a situation, the researcher stuck to her commitment to confidentiality and avoided answering this type of question by saying she was observing the ethical consideration of confidentiality to which she was bound.

### 2.11.3 Debriefing

It is possible that the researcher could unearth issues long forgotten or open wounds that may have been closed, such as a participant's own sexual abuse or a participant witnessing the sexual abuse of a child, and the researcher needs to be aware of the impact this can have on an individual (Creswell, 2009:91). On their website, the South African Council for Social Service Professionals (SACSSP) places a section 5.1.4 (i) that refers to the aspect of ethics of care: "*Social workers should take appropriate steps to ensure that participants in evaluation and research have access to appropriate supportive services*".

The researcher stated up-front in the written preamble given to individuals eligible for participation in this research project that private counselling would be available should it be needed. It would be at no charge to the participant. The researcher also observed the verbal and non-verbal cues of the participants to note any signs of distress. On one occasion, one of the adult survivor participants appeared to the researcher to be exhausted and tired. While asking the questions that were required for the study, the researcher watched the participant carefully to see if counselling or assistance was required. The participant refused further help but did want to end the interview. After sensing something was wrong researcher asked the intermediary who worked at the shelter and who had set up the interview with the participant, requesting she share with her why the participant appeared exhausted and offered counselling or assistance with caring for the adult survivor. However, the intermediary did not feel this was required and felt that the exhaustion was due to the participant's life on the street, not the interview. After a week, the researcher again checked with the intermediary but she could offer no further information about the participant, as he comes and goes at the shelter with no regularity.

Another participant, a social worker at a shelter, became upset while discussing what the children shared with her, and said that she often became physically ill. At the end of the

interview she appeared to be quite unsettled, and the researcher offered her a debriefing session with a neutral counsellor, but she said that this experience was part of her job. She shared that, in talking about the abuse the children suffered, brought up her own issues, but that she was dealing with them herself.

A third participant, who was an NGO employee, also became upset at the end of the interview with one of her clients as she had sat in on the interview. She indicated that she felt physically ill and this work had absorbed her life and upset her as she recalled the stories. Listening to the participant recount his stories had upset her. She too refused assistance and said that she had a private counsellor with whom she discussed her issues and would do so in her own time.

In all three instances the researcher offered counselling to the participants. In the case of the adult survivor the researcher then reinforced this offer of counselling for the participant via the gatekeeper as well. No one accepted the offer for counselling. The researcher did follow-up with telephone calls and e-mails, but still no one wanted counselling or any assistance.

The section on ethics now concludes the presentation of the research methodology.

## **2.12 CHAPTER SUMMARY**

The researcher started this chapter by providing a motivated explanation for the manner in which she presented the description of how the qualitative research methodology was utilised to provide, amongst other measures a 'decision trail' by means of thick, detailed description on the research methodology employed to enable a dependability audit to be conducted in the future, should such a need arise.

The focus of this substantial description covered aspects of the nature and characteristics inherent in the qualitative research approach. Furthermore the adoption of this approach to investigate the topic under discussion was motivated as was the chosen research design. Descriptions of the populations from which the samples were drawn, and the procedure utilised for recruiting the participants, were given. The chapter also provided a full description of the data collection methods and the application of the eight steps for qualitative data analysis as proposed by Tesch (in Creswell, 2009:186) was explained. The strategies employed to ensure the trustworthiness of the research findings were addressed.

The chapter concluded with a discussion on how the ethical issues that are inherent in a research project were integrated in this research, such as provision for informed consent, confidentiality, debriefing and the measures the researcher put in place to safeguard and protect the participants, as well as how the researcher proposed to share the information following the completion of the project.

Having explained all of these processes, the next step is to report on the information gleaned from the data collected, as this is a preparatory chapter that therefore paves the way for the presentation of the findings which will follow in the next chapter.

## **CHAPTER 3**

### **RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS AND RECOLLECTIONS OF ADULT SURVIVORS IN RELATION TO THEIR COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION AS CHILDREN (CSEC)**

#### **3.1 INTRODUCTION**

As stated in Chapter 1, Section 1.5.2 of this report, one of the research aims is to understand the phenomenon of CSEC through exploring and describing the perspectives and experiences of adult survivors who were victims of child prostitution and child sex tourism.

In order to realise this, the researcher decided to expand the study's basic research design that comprises a collective case study research design and exploratory, descriptive and contextual strategies of inquiry, by incorporating a phenomenological approach when dealing with this particular sample group. This is in accord with Kalaian's view (2008:730) which claims that the phenomenological research design is appropriate when seeking to understand and explain how an individual or a group of individuals experience a particular phenomenon from their own perspective. In reference to the selected theoretical framework for this research project, Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:3-6), the individual (in this case the adult survivor of CSEC, represents the microsystem, which Bronfenbrenner asserts has a resilient nature embedded in the individual's cultural context (Friedman & Allen, 2010:9). In terms of this theory, the individuals are viewed as "both cause and effect" of the situations in which they find themselves and the ability to cope necessitates the utilisation of problem solving skills to manage stressors in the microsystem (Friedman & Allen, 2010:9, 13). It is these and other aspects which is of interest to the researcher and hence the addition of the phenomenological approach.

The researcher conducted individual, in-depth, face-to-face, semi-structured interviews with the adult survivor sample group following an interview guide (see the preamble containing the guide in Addendum E and also Chapter 2, Section 2.7) that consisted of formulated questions and prompts to investigate the stated research problem (Chapter 2, Section 1.2).

The interviews with the adult survivors were digitally recorded with their consent, transcribed word-for-word afterwards and then subjected to a thematic analysis which, according to Ayres (in Given, 2008:867), is referred to as a reduction and analysis strategy as it segments, categorises, summarises and reconstructs the data to capture important themes that lie within that data. Tesch's (in Creswell, 2009:186) eight steps were used as a way of conducting a content analysis to arrive at the salient themes in the data<sup>3</sup>, which were introduced and discussed in Chapter 1, Section 1.4.2 and Chapter 2, Section 2.9 of this report. To enhance the credibility of the findings, the researcher also enlisted the help of an independent coder, as suggested by McBrien (2008:1287) and tasked her to perform a content and thematic analysis independent from the researcher. The study supervisor facilitated a consensus discussion in which the researcher and independent coder presented the themes they had arrived at independently in order to compile a consolidated list of themes that encapsulated the content shared by this sample group.

The outcome of this consensus discussion resulted in fifteen main themes (each with sub-themes, categories and where applicable sub-categories) that were introduced in Chapter 2, Section 2.9.1. The theme of this third chapter focuses on ***the accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their commercial sexual exploitation as children***. Before proceeding with this theme, a biographical profile of the adult survivor sample group is presented.

### **3.2 DEMOGRAPHIC DATA ON THE ADULT SURVIVOR SAMPLE GROUP**

A sample group of adult survivors as victims of CSEC (referred to as an 'adult survivors' in this document) was not included in the original research plan as explained in Chapter 1, Section 1.6. As the data collection process proceeded with the recruited social workers and the service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry, it became apparent that a change of direction was necessary. The researcher realised that the participants' responses to the questions posed to them bore testimony to their limited encounters with victims and perpetrators of CSEC as related to CP and CST, the main themes of this research. Furthermore, they had no or limited knowledge to share in answer to the questions posed to them about these topics under investigation. However, the social work and NGO participants interviewed suggested that the researcher target children who were

---

<sup>3</sup> The analysis of all the data collected from all the sample groups included in this study followed Tesch's eight steps (in Creswell 2009:186).

victims of CSEC. The social workers considered them as 'information-rich'. Categories to consider could be: children on the streets, who are children who beg or work visibly on the streets but go home at night; or children of the streets, who are children who have no homes and live on the streets (Ward & Seager, 2010:85-100); or children simply referred to in the Children's Act (Act Number 38 of 2005) as children in need of care and protection.

This suggestion from the social work and NGO participants would also support the guidelines of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child, adopted in 1995, which makes it necessary "to listen to and respect children's experiences and voices" (Articles 12 and 13), a notion that allows for children to be seen as "social actors" (Ebrahim, 2010:290). Following up on this idea, the researcher, in consultation with the study supervisor, decided to expand the study by including samples from populations not initially included in the study. This step is in line with the qualitative paradigm (cf. Hennink et al., 2011:85; Chapter 2, Section 2.3). However, the decision was taken not to include vulnerable children deemed to be in need of care and protection as suggested by some of the social work and NGO participants interviewed. The researcher decided instead to recruit adults (over 18 years of age) currently residing in the Western Cape in the designated study area of Cape Town and along the Garden Route who were victims of CSEC (i.e. under the age of 18 years old).

This decision was made due to the ethical pitfalls related to engaging vulnerable children who are deemed children in need of care and protection. The researcher decided on the 'adult survivors' for several reasons. Within the context of qualitative research, children in need of care and protection are grouped together with "homeless people, IV drug users and sex workers" and regarded as "transient" and "hard to reach" populations (Abrams, 2010:536). There are a numerous ethical issues and potential safety risks (such as the traumatisation of children) that tend to confront researchers when they collect data on violence against children, especially if questions are not asked in a sensitive manner (UNICEF, 2014:19). In South Africa, a researcher has an ethical responsibility to obtain parental/guardian consent for children younger than 18 years old to participate in a research project (Abrams, 2010:543; HSRC, 2012:2-8). Obtaining such permission is problematic for researchers because of the status of children on the street. Essentially they either have no or only intermittent contact with their parents. Coupled with this, there is also the possibility of them not wanting their parents to know about their participation in a study as the topic under investigation could possibly expose the nature of activities in which they are involved whilst on the street, and some of these might be illegal (Ebrahim,

2010:290; HSRC, 2012:2-8). The researcher appreciated these constraints even though acknowledging that a street-based recruitment process could yield appropriate participants and Abrams (2010:541) actually documents that speaking directly to children on the street is possible. However, she also realised that she would have to provide monetary incentives for their information, as the street is their means of survival. The researcher thus decided not to include children on the street in a sample group. This directed her away from children in need of care and protection.

The researcher then ventured out to recruit a sample of adult survivors, persons who, as children, were victims of CSEC, but soon she had to conclude that they too were hard to find. Some of the gatekeepers, in this instance, social workers and non-social workers employed in NGOs who rendered services to children and adult survivor victims of CSEC, were very protective of their clients. Some blatantly blocked the researcher's efforts to obtain access to them, and stated in their defence that they did not want them subjected to traumatising yet again when sharing their stories. In spite of this obstacle, the researcher successfully obtained, through their gatekeepers, a sample of four adults who met the required criteria of having experienced commercial sexual exploitation as children, and who were willing to participate in the study (see Chapter 2, Section 2.6, Table 2:5).

Non-social workers employed by NGOs introduced all four adult survivors; Participant AAA introduced both adult survivor Participants BBB and CCC; Participant II introduced adult survivor Participant MM; and Participant VV introduced adult survivor Participant ZZ.

In the cases of Participants MM and BBB, the NGO gatekeepers asked to be present during the interview suggesting that the adult survivors would be more at ease with a familiar person present. The researcher did not object to this and these NGO employees then sat in the interview with the adult survivor as a form of reassurance for them. Table 3.1 below presents the demographic data specific to the four adult survivors of CSEC.

**Table 3.1 Participant demographics: adult survivors of CSEC**

<b>Participant</b>	<b>Employment</b>	<b>Region</b>	<b>Gender</b>	<b>Race</b>	<b>Age</b>
MM	Unemployed	Knysna	M	C	23
ZZ	Unemployed	Cape Town	M	B	25
BBB	Unemployed	Cape Town	M	C	23
CCC	Unemployed	Cape Town	F	C	22

Table 3.1 indicates that the adult survivors were all unemployed in the sense that they did not hold down paid employment. Only one of these individuals came from a place on the Garden Route, while the other three were located in Cape Town. Three were male and one female; and three were coloureds while one participant was from the black population group. Their ages ranged from 22-25 years.

### **3.3 PRESENTATION OF THE SUB-THEMES AND CATEGORIES RELATED TO THE THEME: THE ACCOUNTS AND RECOLLECTIONS OF ADULT SURVIVORS IN RELATION TO THEIR COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION AS CHILDREN**

By way of providing an overview, the various aspects mentioned by the participants in the interviews are tabled (Table 3.2 on the next page) according to their allocated sub-themes, categories and sub-categories where applicable. The overall theme (Theme 1, Section 2.9.1) that emerged from the analysis of the data collected is described as *the accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their commercial sexual exploitation as children*.

**Table 3.2: An overview of the sub-themes, categories and sub-categories (where applicable) in relation to theme 1: the accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their commercial sexual exploitation as children**

Sub-theme	Category	Sub-categories
Sub-theme 1: The adult survivors were, as children, exposed to different forms of sexual exploitation (including CSEC reference to CP and CST)	<p>The adult survivors were exposed to sexual abuse as children</p> <p>The adult survivors were exposed to pornography as children</p> <p>The adult survivors were exposed to prostitution as children</p> <p>The adult survivors were exposed to child sex tourism as children</p>	
Sub-theme 2: Adult survivors' accounts regarding the biographical and psychosocial profile of the victims of CSEC	<p>The social background of children falling prey to CSEC</p> <p>Substance use/abuse as cause or enabler for CSEC</p> <p>The ages of children who fall prey to becoming victims of CSEC</p> <p>Race of victims of CSEC</p> <p>Gender of victims of CSEC</p> <p>The naïve nature of the victims CSEC</p> <p>The adult survivor participants' feelings and emotional reactions as a result of their exposure as children to CSEC</p>	<p>Feelings of depression and sadness</p> <p>Feelings of guilt, shame and embarrassment</p> <p>Feeling responsible for the sexual exploitation</p> <p>Feelings of confusion</p>
Sub-theme 3: Adult survivors' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of	The biographical profile on the perpetrators	The adult survivor participants' accounts of the origin of the perpetrators of sexual exploitation of children

<p>biographical information, client requirements, and their modus operandi for obtaining children to sexually exploit</p>	<p>The adult survivors' accounts of the perpetrators' requirements, requests and modus operandi in relation to CSEC</p>	<p>The adult survivors' accounts of the gender of the perpetrators</p> <p>The adult survivors' accounts of the ages of the perpetrators</p> <p>The participants' accounts of the perpetrators' race groups</p> <p>The perpetrators are interested in, and required younger children to sexually exploit</p> <p>The perpetrators' modus operandi was to use chemical substances during the sexual exploitation of the children, and encouraged the children to do likewise</p> <p>Perpetrators' modus operandi was sometimes violent towards the victims</p> <p>The perpetrators' modus operandi was to use various locations for the sexual exploitation of the children</p> <p>Perpetrators of sexual exploitation were more prolific during festivals that attract tourists and they find victims differently</p> <p>The perpetrators' modus operandi in some instances was to pick up children in pairs</p> <p>The perpetrators' service requests to the children in relation to the sexual exploitation of the children</p>
<p>Sub-theme 4: The adult survivors' accounts of how they were remunerated</p>		

by the CSEC perpetrators for services rendered		
Sub-theme 5: Adult survivors perceptions of the factors contributing to CSEC	<p>Poverty (in the context of a lack of food and being hungry) as a contributing factor to CSEC</p> <p>The adult survivors' chemical substance abuse and addiction as a contributing factor to CSEC</p> <p>Engaging in sex is an easy way of making money for survival as contributing factor to CSEC</p> <p>The immaturity and naiveté inherent in being a child as a contributing factor to CSEC</p>	
Sub-theme 6: Adult survivors' suggestions on how to address the CSEC		
Sub-theme 7: The recollections of adults survivors of CSEC on the nature of services rendered to them by service providers		

The ensuing part of this chapter will be dedicated to the presentation and discussion of the sub-themes and their accompanying categories and sub-categories (where applicable) by introducing, supporting or substantiating them by means of direct quotations or storylines taken from the transcriptions of the interviews conducted with the adult survivor participants. Literature will support the theoretical underpinning of the analysis and the data presented will be verified by using literature in a confirming and/or contrasting manner.

For purposes of clarification, the concepts 'child prostitution' and 'child sex tourism' in the context of this study will be appraised and appropriately positioned and reference to 'child exploitation', 'child sexual abuse' and 'commercial sexual exploitation of children' will be reviewed.

In South Africa, under the Children's Act (Act 38 of 2005): the following actions/acts are regarded as child exploitation:

- "All forms of slavery or practices that are akin to slavery, including debt bondage and forced marriage
- Sexual exploitation
- Servitude
- Forced labour or services
- Child labour prohibited in terms of Section 141 of the Children's Act (Act 38 of 2005)
- The removal of body parts".

In the same Act (the Children's Act 38 - Act No. 38 of 2005) and referring to the South African context, the concept 'child sexual abuse' is explained as meaning:

"(a) sexually molesting or assaulting a child or allowing a child to be sexually molested or assaulted;

(b) encouraging, inducing or forcing a child to be used for the sexual gratification of another person;

(c) using a child in or deliberately exposing a child to sexual activities or pornography; or (d) procuring or allowing a child to be procured for commercial sexual exploitation or in any way participating or assisting in the commercial sexual exploitation of a child".

As defined in Chapter 1, Section 1.7.4, the Children's Act (Act 38 of 2005), states that sexual exploitation includes the procurement of children for use in pornography, and trafficking of children for use in sexual activity. Under this Act (Act 38 of 2005), the 'commercial sexual exploitation of children' denotes the procurement of a child to perform sexual activities for

financial gain or some form of reward, including prostitution or pornography whether the reward is claimed by, payable or to be shared by the person who procured the child, his or her parent or caregiver or any other person or not.

In their Child Protection Handbook for Parliamentarians O'Donnell and Seymore (2004:64) explain that the term 'sexual abuse' is "often used to refer to abuse within the home or family" but they maintain that there is "no real agreement as to the distinction between sexual abuse and sexual exploitation". However, UNICEF (2014:60), in their document Hidden in Plain Sight, explains that sexual abuse becomes exploitative in nature when an exchange of money or other goods or an exchange of a non-material nature are given or promised for sexual activities, "irrespective of whether they occur with occasional partners or as part of a stable relationship".

The operations officer of international policy and programmes at the Coram Children's Legal Centre in the UK, Kent (2012:33) examined the Children's Commissioner for England's inquiry into child sexual exploitation by gangs and gives the Department for Education in England's definition of the concept 'child sexual exploitation': as "situations, contexts and relationships that are exploitative in which either a young person or a third party or parties receive something in exchange for sexual services performed by them or performed on them by someone else" (Kent, 2012:33).

As can be seen from the given definitions, the concepts 'child sexual exploitation' and 'commercial sexual exploitation of children' vary. McCoy and Keen (2014:168) point out that the term is not used consistently. Delanny (2005:ii) underscores this adding that, in a multi-cultural country such as South Africa, a common understanding of the terms is even more difficult as some practices that are seen as abusive by some, may be part of the tradition of others.

In the interests of consistency in this report, 'commercial sexual exploitation of a child' will be taken to mean a situation where an adult uses a child sexually and the adult pays for it with money, gifts or any other favours, such as alcohol, clothing, food or shelter. The payment for the sexual pursuit is made either to the child or to another person. It is referred to in this report as commercial sexual exploitation of a child or children and also as the abbreviated CSEC.

From the accounts and the recollections of the four adult survivors of CSEC, the researcher deduced that the exploitation to which they were exposed occurred while they were street

children. The commercial sexual exploitation of children under 18 years old who have either voluntarily entered the trade or been coerced to engage in prostitution is increasing, according to Snell (2003:508). Snell points out that, although there are no reliable statistics, the phenomenon of CSEC is most common amongst the children on the streets of the major cities of Africa. The same sentiment is shared by Delanny (2005:ii) who states that CSEC is a recognised and growing problem in southern Africa, but little data on the extent of the problem is available.

The question that arises is: *Who are these street children?* According to Parker Lewis (2007:17) a street child is someone younger than 18 years who has decided to leave home to care for themselves on the streets. Gregorian, Hura-Tudor and Feeny (2003:27) in their study of street children of Romania coined the distinction either by sometimes labelling the child as 'on' or 'in' the street. 'Children on the street' are those who engage in menial work on the street or beg, but who maintain some regular family contact and even contribute their earnings to the livelihood of their families (Richter, 1991:5). 'Children of the street' live on the street full time, without any adult supervision and only have intermittent or sporadic family contact (Richter, 1991:5). A third type of street child is designated as 'children in the street', and these children are, according to Gregorian et al. (2003:27), children who do not have any family and are totally on their own. They are youths and no longer seen as children, but are reckoned as former street children with whom reunification and integration projects have failed. In corroborating and summarising ideas about the meaning of the concept 'street child', and referring to descriptions provided by Hartjen and Priyadarsini (2013:187); West (in Iqbal, 2008:201) and Makofane (2014:138) and the Children's Act (Act No 28 of 2005), a pertinent definition reveals a combination of specific characteristics. A street child is an individual below the age of 18 years who, because of abuse, neglect, poverty, community turmoil or for any other reason leaves their home, family or community and then transits to the street. Here the child works and/or lives on the street without proper adult protection and supervision and engages in a variety of occupations becoming beggars, garbage pickers, newspaper, flower and fruit sellers, commercial sex workers and/or petty criminals.

According to the South African Department of Social Development's Annual Report (DSD, 2010), there are between 9 000 and 10 000 children in South Africa who live on the streets. The Save the Children Report (2005:9) states that it is poverty, overcrowding, abuse and neglect that cause them to find their way onto the street, which happens because of family disintegration and HIV/AIDS. This is in line with Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory explanation that problems will emerge if the interlinked system of microsystems, known as the mesosystem, "endorses deviant or delinquent behaviour" that conflicts with the exo- and

macrosystems (i.e. law enforcement agencies or social welfare laws such as truancy) (Muuss, 2006:305).

The accounts of three of the four adult survivors in this research sample meet Richter's (1991:5) definition of 'children of the street' in that they live on the street full time, without any adult supervision and only have intermittent or sporadic family contact. This situation points to disorganisation in the microsystem as described in Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory (see Chapter 1, Section 1.3). Participant MM described how a torrid childhood with no fixed abode after his mother passed away drove him to the streets: *"I grew up on a farm in Rheenedal. My mom and I moved after my mom and dad got divorced and I ended up here with my granny and after the death of my mother they [his grandparents] put me in a children's home and they went to Johannesburg"*<sup>4</sup>.

He eventually ended up with his unemployed, married sister at her parents in-law's house but took to the streets to care for himself at age nine as he did not want to be a burden to his sister and her in-laws, who took a dim view of his presence in the home as he made no financial contribution.

Another adult survivor, Participant CCC described the progression towards her arrival on the streets of Cape Town at age 11 as follows: *"First [I was] in Belhar and then at a place [called] Holy Cross, it's like a home for girls. I ran away from Holy Cross. The police picked me and my friend 'U' up in Belhar [and] we went back to Holy Cross. Then we left Holy Cross again and then Holy Cross, the nuns, they said they can't take us back because we cause too many problems; we run away and we can cause the other girls to run away as well. Then they said they must look for another place for us. So they searched for a place for us and then they got place for us at Ons Plek [shelter] in Cape Town"*.<sup>5</sup> The participant and her friend also ran away from this shelter and more about this is described later on (see Section 3.5.3) but she ended up on the street because of abandoning the shelter.

Participant ZZ also alluded to his family's dysfunction mentioning that he left home to fend for himself as he could not take the fighting and arguments at home any longer; *"... things were actually not right at home, too much shouting and fighting"*.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>5</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>6</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

By whichever means or misfortune children arrive on the streets, it is not disputed that they are exposed to many challenges. These include: being unprotected from the elements due to a lack of shelter; vulnerability to traffic accidents due to their intoxication from substance abuse; high levels of violence and abuse from fellow street people, gangs and the police; inadequate sustenance; as well as engaging in high risk sexual activities with a high risk of contracting HIV/AIDS and other sexually transmitted diseases (Ward in Dawes, Bray & van der Merwe, 2007:237, Sanders, O'Neill & Pitcher, 2009:54). Coupled with these challenges, street children also experience a lack of police protection, limited access to medical services, physical abuse and sexual exploitation (Delanny, 2005:9).

It must be noted that whilst the context where the commercial sexual exploitation of the four participants in this study took place was when they were on the street, CSEC is not only confined to this location. In confirming this statement, Kent (2012:33) mentions that in 2013 the Office of the Children's Commissioner in England launched an inquiry into child sexual exploitation by gangs and groups across England and found that the majority of victims were still living at home when the abuse began (Kent, 2012:33). In South Africa too, CSEC can occur at home. This made the headlines in a Cape Town newspaper when a mother was found selling her thirteen year old daughter for sex "for as little as R20 a time", assisted by the child's stepfather and two other accomplices (Schroeder, 2013:4).

On the streets children survive and/or cope by engaging in activities such as begging, selling products and goods, committing petty crimes and being involved with commercial sex work. With reference to the latter, girls in particular (but not exclusively) are vulnerable to being abused and exploited (van Niekerk, 1999; Delanny, 2005:9; Ward & Seager, 2010:85; West, in Iqbal, 2008:201; Chettiar, Shannon, Wood, Zhang, & Kerr, 2010:322–327; Bigelson & Vuotto, 2013:7). According to Friedman and Allen (2010:13) individuals at the microsystem level within the ecological systems perspective can successfully cope with stressors if they manage to "partially block out negative feelings" and in so doing maintain hope and solve problems. They furthermore assert that individuals deal with their stressors "along a continuum" where the two extremes are "adaptive coping" and "maladaptive defences". Some of the activities street children engage in may be viewed along on this continuum as they attempt to deal with their circumstances.

The recollections and accounts of the adult survivor participants who were sexually exploited as children called for presenting this theme under seven sub-themes with categories and sub-categories (where applicable).

### **3.4 SUB-THEME: 1.1: THE ADULT SURVIVORS WERE, AS CHILDREN, EXPOSED TO DIFFERENT FORMS OF SEXUAL EXPLOITATION (INCLUDING CSEC WITH SPECIFIC REFERENCE TO CP AND CST)**

The term 'child sexual exploitation' (explained in Chapter 1, Section 1.7.2) of this report and in Section 3.3 above) can take on various forms and CSEC can include child pornography, child prostitution, sex trafficking and child sex tourism (McCoy & Keen, 2014:169). The sexual victimisation of a child can take place directly or indirectly with indirect victimisation happening through hearsay and observation. While hearsay is described as "unverified information heard or received from another; rumor" (American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, 2003) and as "gossip, or; rumour" by the Collins English Dictionary (2003), the concept "observation" is described by the Oxford English Dictionary (1996:613) as observing or being observed and to observe is described as to "perceive" or "become aware of". Thus, observation of a phenomenon could be by first-hand viewing. Through hearsay, one can also become aware of a phenomenon or an incident through different descriptions or depictions of a situation by other people.

The reader is reminded that, in this report, 'exposure' means experiencing an event directly or indirectly with the indirect meaning referring to an event or phenomenon that was experienced by hearsay or observation.

The adult survivors were, as children, exposed to sexual abuse and different forms of sexual exploitation (including commercial sexual exploitation with reference to child prostitution and child sex tourism). This aspect of the first theme will now be presented as categories.

#### **3.4.1 The adult survivors were exposed to sexual abuse as children**

Child sexual abuse is described very simply by Berner and Elliot (2002:55) as "any sexual activity with a child where consent is not and cannot be given".

Sex, according to Parker Lewis (2010:75), is used in two ways on the street: first, as a means of producing an income, and second, as a weapon. Parker Lewis (2010:75), in her work at a shelter in Claremont, Cape Town, found that the older youth use sex to "subjugate" new boys on the street. This finding of Parker Lewis corroborates Participant ZZ's account that follows, and tells of his first night on the street in Cape Town, when he, at only nine years of age, had the experience of being raped by a gangster with whom he sought shelter. He shared the following: "*Then he keeps at it* [referring to the gangster continuing to ask him

to remove his pants], *asking me to pull my pants down. Then I said to him; 'no, I'm not going to pull my pants down, so he pulled it down himself and I just lay still and I just said to myself when I am done with this I might go to the police station or whatever. But for me it was very sore because he raped me...'*.<sup>7</sup>

Participant CCC also described an occasion where she and a friend were picked up to wash windows for an individual. However, he took them to the mountains [in Cape Town] and raped both girls there, after which he left them there and they had to walk back to town on their own. The participant mentioned being aged 11 at the time. She stated: "*Then the man had sex with us. That day I was very angry, because then we blamed each other, no you said we must go, no you said so, so then we both had to sleep with him – the fuck!*"<sup>8</sup> The participant's indignation has a great deal to do with the fact that they were not paid for this sexual contact, and were also not taken back to where they were picked up but had to walk back on their own.

While these two participants shared accounts about how they were raped by one person, one of the participants relayed an account that pointed to gang rape. With reference to this phenomenon of gang rape, an inquiry by the Children's Commissioner for England into gangs and groups of men who sexually abuse or exploit children provided a definition of gangs. Gangs are groups of mainly men and boys aged between 13 to 25 who come together (either in person or via technology) for the purpose of sexually exploiting children either opportunistically or in an organised manner (Kent, 2012:33). This particular study referred also to the fact that the majority of the victims of these gangs were mainly mixed race females (in the context of the UK).

In the storyline below, Participant CCC was not raped as she was 'rescued' by one of the gangsters who was supposed to rape her, but instead he helped her to escape, as he knew her from a previous location. Had he not intervened she would have been gang raped, something that had happened previously to her friends. She spoke about this along the following lines: "*[My friend 'L'] showed us the first time what 'stokkerol' is, there where the women get raped. There's maybe 30 guys that sleep with you, but the last one to have sex with you, has to get together with you, must take you like a girlfriend...maybe with 30 men, the last one must take you. It does not matter that all the men 'lay on your chest' [i.e. have sex with you] and now when the last one takes you, you sleep amongst them. Tomorrow it is*

---

<sup>7</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>8</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*like nothing happened and those are the girls that stand on the roadside [those who were raped became street prostitutes/bait]. She describes her experience further: “So we went there. When we got there it looked like there’s no one there and then when we got on top of the bridge, the middle of the bridge, we saw all the heads rise up, then we said, me and U [her friend]: “we want to go back, we don’t want to be here, look at all the men...”*<sup>9</sup> It was at this point that Participant CCC says her rescuer told the gang boss that she was in fact his girlfriend. He then he took her away back to the shelter from which she had run away.

These accounts testify to the fact that sexual abuse and violence occur independently of commercial sexual exploitation. The survivors themselves identified rape as something different to paid sex. Only Participant ZZ said that he had reported rape to the police.

The observations and comments of the adult survivors with regard to commercial sexual exploitation reveal that it can take on various forms, which would include child pornography, child prostitution, sex trafficking and child sex tourism as mentioned in the work of McCoy & Keen (2014:169). Pornography will now be presented as a category.

### **3.4.2 The adult survivors were exposed to pornography as children**

Child pornography (as described in Chapter 1, Section 1.7.7), one of the forms of child sexual exploitation, is the lewd or erotic visual depiction of a person younger than eighteen years old that is meant to arouse the viewer’s sexual desires. However, it does exclude any educational or family photograph of a nude child that is taken in a non-erotic way (McCoy & Keen, 2014:168; Taylor & Quayle, 2003:4). At the extreme worst end of the scale, it could be the filming or photographing a child suffering while being sexually abused (Taylor & Quayle, 2003:4). These authors speak out about how the internet has exacerbated the problem of child pornography and that around 20 000 new pornographic images are added monthly to the approximately 12 million already in circulation. Hartjen and Priyadarsini (2012:187) underscore this, pointing out that the advent of the internet has provided pornographers with an “unimaginable ability” to make and disseminate pornographic images of children that can be made anywhere and disseminated anywhere. This is also a means of exposing children to pornography. Kendall and Funk (2012:23) agree, postulating that videos can be self-made and almost any camera can be used, some so small that they could be easily hidden. This means that recording someone without their knowledge has become even easier. Some pornographers use cameras that are perched on their desktop computers or are contained

---

<sup>9</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

within their laptop computers for recording sexual acts discreetly. These are then broadcast and other sex offenders can view them. A number of factors contribute to the production and distribution of child pornography. Quayle (2010:96) proposes that these include “poverty, social disruption, corruption, an acceptance of abusive practices, and a willingness of others to exploit”.

In their recollections and accounts of their childhood sexual exploitation experiences, the adult survivors shared information indicating that they had direct and indirect exposure to pornography. This occurred by way of watching images of a pornographic nature themselves and also relaying the stories that friends, who were involved in the making of pornographic material, told.

In support of this, when asked whether they had ever been exposed to pornography, Participant BBB said: *“It was on top of the computer, was like a camera and then .... so when he’s like showing you pictures on the computer, we look at the computer and then the camera is watching us.”*

Child sexual abusers and paedophiles will collect images of children because the images both stimulate the perpetrator’s sexual arousal and lower the inhibitions of the child. The images also serve as ‘role models’ for the child to emulate as this represents what the perpetrator wants the child to do. This also prepares the child for future sexual contact (Kendall & Funk, 2012:20; Wilcockson, 2006:34-37). This appears to have occurred with Participant BBB when one of the offenders showed him images of boys prior to having sex with him. This participant, in recollecting the experience, said: *“So he showed me like boys, German boys ...”*

In confirming Participant BBB’s experience, ECPAT (2014a:20) stated that “cases of child sex tourists who sexually abuse children for the purpose of producing child pornography” have been reported in African countries including in The Gambia, South Africa and Uganda.

As in the case of direct exposure, no one knows how many children are exposed indirectly to sexual victimisation (Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:204). At least one of the adult survivor participants (Participant CCC) was indirectly exposed to child pornography through hearsay. Her friends, fellow street children, frequently shared information where men would photograph the girls whom they were with, and also show the girls photographs of other girls with whom they had sexual liaisons. This participant, however, stated that she had no experience of this herself. She spoke about this as follows: *“Many men take photos of the*

*girls, it comes about this way, and they take photos. They maybe keep it on their phones so when the next girl comes along they show [that image] to the new [girl]. I know lots of men do that, take photos and keep them”.*<sup>10</sup>

### **3.4.3 The adult survivors were exposed to prostitution as children**

Currently, under South African law, with specific reference to the Sexual Offences Act (Act No. 23 of 1957), sex work and the keeping of brothels in this country is criminalised. In spite of this, the Sex Workers Education and Advocacy Taskforce (SWEAT) reports on their website ([www.sweat.org.za](http://www.sweat.org.za)) that they, over a 12 month period (April 2011–March 2012) in Cape Town, conducted 321 site visits to brothels, clubs, bars and indoor venues where sex work takes place. They state that they also distributed 444 406 male condoms and 15 031 female condoms to sex workers and sex work venues. Through this activity they engaged with 2 962 sex workers during this outreach programme in the city.

Concerning the presence of children in the sex industry in Cape Town, as far back as 2005, the Save the Children Report on child abuse and exploitation in South Africa (Delanny, 2005:6) stated that, in terms of child prostitution, the Child Protection Unit of the SAPS estimated that 28 000 children in South Africa were involved in the commercial sex industry ([www.sweat.org.za](http://www.sweat.org.za)). More recently, Hartjen and Priyadarsini (2012:146), crediting UNICEF as their source, also quote this statistic stating that 28 000-30 000 underage children, approximately 50 per cent, as young as 10-14 years, are utilised for prostitution in South Africa. This figure of between 28 000-30 000 children in South Africa involved in prostitution, which is quite widely quoted in the literature, is however disputed by Wilkinson and Chiumia (2013:1) in the online newspaper, The Daily Maverick. They claim to have traced the source of these figures to reports by two individuals and have examined the documentation they cited claiming that the figures cannot be substantiated. Moreover, they are, in fact, repeatedly erroneously quoted in the context of South African sexual exploitation. Snell (2003:508) and Cluver, Bray and Dawes (2007:258) also mention the lack of available and accurate statistical information about the number of South African children involved in prostitution.

Child prostitution can be perceived in two ways. It is an abuse of children, and also a form of labour for children, they undertake for their own economic survival (van Niekerk, 1999; Delanny, 2005:6; West, in Iqbal, 2008:201; Ward & Seager, 2010:85; Chettiar et al.,

---

<sup>10</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

2010:322–327; Bigelson & Vuotto, 2013:7), which is also known as ‘survival sex work’ that is defined as sex in exchange for money, gifts, food, shelter, clothes or drugs (Chettiar, et al., 2010: 322–327; van Niekerk, 1999; Ward in Dawes, Bray & van der Merwe, 2007:238). As Participant MM attests: *“It’s, [referring to engaging in prostitution as a child] almost for me it is just about survival, so I told no one and it’s what my friends and I now joke about”*.<sup>11</sup>

All four of the participants shared accounts that point to their exposure and involvement in prostitution as children. Referring to the first time he was picked up by a client at age nine in the centre of town on a Sunday evening, Participant MM explains, *“...my first time there was a person and I was hungry so he asked me; ‘Okay where do you live?’ and he questioned me and I answered him. Then he asked me whether I had had sex with a man and I asked him ‘As in how?’ Which way? Then he explained to me and I agreed, went with him [engaged sexually], got money and came back home again”*.<sup>12</sup>

Participant BBB shared how he was involved in prostitution as a child: *“No if a guy pass you and he likes you he will stop [his car]... you will know this guy wants you, then you go over the street, then he will first ask you how much you charge and that and when he hear how much you charge and then he say like come, you know, because some people ... that’s the first thing they want to know is like how much you charge. I was hanging with the prostitutes there but they were very bigger than me and then afterwards I went to Beach Road and I first experienced someone like picked me up...”*

Participant CCC provided the researcher with a glimpse of how she negotiated her fees with the clients when stating: *“... you can try saying to me; ‘I want you’, then I’m going to say: ‘how much you going to pay me?’<sup>13</sup>”* She later shared with the researcher the following information pointing to her friends’ involvement in child prostitution: *“But my friends, that [referring to prostitution] was their thing. Like, ‘C’, they called her ‘Blondie’, so we always used her name halfway [only ‘Blondie’] then it changed to ‘Blondie and the boys’ because she used to go and receive the men and sometimes she would have sex with the men”*.<sup>14</sup>

Participant ZZ, spoke about how he became skilled at catching ‘bunnies’ (men wanting sex with young boys) after being raped by a gangster on his arrival on the streets of Cape Town. He describes how he started going out on his own after the rape and making a decision not

---

<sup>11</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>12</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>13</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>14</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

to hang around with the gangsters anymore. He went to Sea Point where he obtained prophylaxis and information from a Sex Workers Education and Advocacy Taskforce (SWEAT) representative at age ten. He then stood on the streets of Sea Point where he says: *“It’s like you jump into someone’s car and then you maybe give him a blowjob and so on, and then I started to do that thing ... just to get money...”*. The following account pointed to his on-going involvement in prostitution as a child, *“Sometimes they ask; yes, how much do you want? Maybe I’ll say R400 or R300, right, now that’s the price that you said then when the job is finished and they’ve paid you then they drop you somewhere where you want to be and then he just drives on”*.<sup>15</sup>

According to the adult survivors, there are people who visit them regularly and will ‘take care’ of them. A relationship of sorts exists albeit abusive; both parties appear to derive something from the transaction. The adult survivors refer to these clients as ‘custies’ – short for customers. Participant CCC explained how if you are with your ‘custie’ you will not wear shoes and will look dishevelled as that pulls on their heartstrings and encourages them to buy you something, whereas if you are with a client who is not a ‘custie’ you will look better dressed and wear shoes to be attractive to them. She put it as follows: *“If it’s my ‘custie’ then I’m going to have my dirty clothes on, so that my ‘custie’ can see; she’s dirty, ‘she has no shoes’, because if it’s a ‘custie’ she or he is going to feel sorry for you; ‘Shame you don’t have any shoes’, but now if it’s a new client then I am going to make a way to borrow shoes and clothes from someone to look right”*.<sup>16</sup>

#### **3.4.4 The adult survivors were exposed to child sex tourism as children**

Child sex tourism and the exploitation of other vulnerable people has emerged as an industry which is capable of generating huge revenues (Todres, 1999:3). Sex tourists engage in both commercial and non-commercial sex in both rich so-called First World and poor, Third World countries (O’Connell Davidson, 2011:132). This category not only includes people who travel overseas for the specific purpose of having sex with children, but also businessmen and women, domestic tourists, and local men and women who utilise tourism premises to engage in sex with children (UNICEF, 2012:8). Hartjen and Priyadarsini (2012:157) assert that many sex tourists have sex with children and rationalise this engagement with underage children by assuming that the child prostitutes have elected to work in the sex industry. They reckon that these children operate in environments or

---

<sup>15</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>16</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

destinations that are 'more natural, freer', that the children are more mature by local norms, or are already engaged in prostitution, thus no harm comes from the encounter.

A large number of children who are exploited by tourists are street children or children who are without the protection of their community (Capaldi, 2013:28) and child sex tourists are more likely to travel to places where the risk of being detected by authorities is lower because of high levels of corruption (Capaldi, 2013:28). Some child protection advocates contend that children are often exploited by adults of their own nationality (Bamford, 2000; Schurink & Schurink, 1996) but often it is tourists who are blamed for child prostitution (Snell, 2003:506-514).

Although Cluver et al. (2007:258) claim that data on sex tourism to South Africa is not available, Snell (2003:506-514) postulates that there is a high level of prostitution among homeless boys and they are often solicited by rich South Africans or tourist men or women in exchange for food, clothing or money.

The four adult survivor participants provided accounts of how they engaged in child sex tourism. They spoke to the researcher about having sex with tourists, and about observing their friends who had sexual liaisons with tourists or foreigners.

In describing how they recognise foreigners, Participants CCC, MM and ZZ shared the following information with the researcher.

Participant CCC pointed out that the foreigners' attire set them apart and helped "the girls" to identify clients as such: "...*the way he [referring to a foreigner] dresses it's not the type of dressing that you know, that's one thing you notice about them [foreigners], that's the first thing*".<sup>17</sup>

Participant MM noticed that strangers to town were more furtive about their origin and described it along the following lines: "...*different people ... not all people are originally from South Africa, or from Knysna, they come from towns [other places]. Every person wants to see a town, so as they go through the towns; [they say to themselves:] 'I've seen a little boy and I'm going to get a blow [i.e. oral sex] for this evening ... there is a way. That's more or less what they do, so you [referring to the foreigner and the locals from out of town] stay over*

---

<sup>17</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*the night and they're not going to tell you where they come from, they're just going to pack their things".<sup>18</sup>*

Participant ZZ shared the following in terms of how you can recognise a foreign child sex tourist, *"It's the way they drive, the way they look at you, and yes, it's what they do ...".<sup>19</sup>*

In particular, Participant CCC referred to one prolific user of street children at different points during the interview. She mentioned that he left the country for three months every year: *"Frank is from overseas. Frank comes across like a Chinese, he looks almost ... I don't know what place ... he's a foreigner, he goes in June and comes back in September".<sup>20</sup>*

Speaking about his observation of the tourists, Participant BBB commented on the foreigners' stupidity when they are intoxicated. He stated: *"How can I say when they [referring to the foreigners] pick up people they're like drunk and they like go with the girls and girls like have business with them [engaging sexually with them in return for money, goods or drugs] or the girls rob them - something like that. They [are] very stupid, the white guys. Some of them are very clever, you think they're stupid, but they're not stupid. It's only by luck if you get a guy from overseas".*

He also mentioned being picked up by foreigners amongst others. From his comment about a certain German man, his disdain is clear; *"I was there with a German guy also, but then he went to Germany. ... Yes he was a tourist he was wearing those stupid caps like the old people and this with the other weird thing like (gesturing a hat band)".* He also talked about an American on a motorbike who arranged a sexual liaison, paid for his taxi and met with him at a prearranged address in Camps Bay: *"Like this other man, from where was he? From America. He was in Camps Bay ... I met him in Sea Point. He told me he was on a bike so he gave me a scarf and a R50 [to pay for the taxi], then he said if it's more than the taxi I must just wait. He can drive that bike so quick man, the time we got in Camps Bay he was like just coming up the street you see".*

Participant BBB shared that many of his clients were Germans; *"No I only met people from Germany and that man from America. I always say there's lots of moffies in Germany".*

---

<sup>18</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>19</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>20</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

The purchasing of the same child or children for more than one sexual liaison is not uncommon. As Beddoe (2003:98) notes, women and children may be bought for the duration of a tourist's stay in countries where sex tourism is more open. With reference to CST, Participant CCC's mentioned that she noticed some girls were picked up and disappeared from the street for a couple of days as foreigners sometimes hire them for their entire holiday period. She intimated the following: *"Many of them [referring to the foreign clients] are from overseas and some of them are local, here from us, but if it's local, then you will see him a lot. If it's local, you'll see him a lot because he's from around here, but if it's a foreigner you'll see him maybe two or three times a week, or maybe you won't see the girl for a week, but if they are from here [locals] you can see it".*<sup>21</sup>

### **3.5 SUB-THEME 1.2: ADULT SURVIVORS' ACCOUNTS REGARDING THE BIOGRAPHICAL AND PSYCHOSOCIAL PROFILE OF THE VICTIMS OF CSEC**

In this sub-theme, a biographical and psychosocial profile of the victims of CSEC is presented in categories based on the adult survivors' accounts of themselves and others.

#### **3.5.1 The social background of children falling prey to CSEC**

Children's entry into prostitution and other harmful work may be due to the fact that many families live in abject poverty (Delanny, 2005:9; Cluver, Bray & Dawes, 2007:253) as they are forced to work to contribute to the family's income, or because they need to provide for themselves (Rebirth Africa Life on the Continent: 2014). Their situation of poverty, as well as the effect of HIV/AIDS, have had a negative impact on their lives as there has been a breakdown in family support mechanisms, migration has increased and prevalent gender inequality too have led to a growth in sexual exploitation of children (McCoy & Keen, 2014:168; Delanny, 2005:6). Living in conditions of family or community violence, or in isolation from their families as street children do, also makes children more vulnerable as far as sexual exploitation is concerned (Cluver Bray & Dawes, 2007:253). According to Parker Lewis (2010:62) most of the children under her care in a shelter in Cape Town had experienced acts of violence within their families, which the children simply could not even discuss. However, she asserts that in the shelter in which she worked in Cape Town, fewer than one per cent of the children presented evidence of sexual abuse at home, and that their decision to have sex was not linked to sexual exploitation at home. Children often end up homeless and living on the streets due to abuse, poverty, domestic violence, overcrowding,

---

<sup>21</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

pressure at schools or because they do not like being at home and decide to run away (McCoy & Keen, 2014:169). Once on the streets, they are exposed to all kinds of hardship and abuse, including selling sex for survival (Sanders, O'Neill & Pitcher, 2009:52; Barrett, 1998:478). Although the decision to engage in survival sex may be influenced by circumstances, de Sas Kropiwnicki (2012:253) maintains that sex work is undertaken by choice.

From Participant MM's life story, it became clear that his arrival on the street, where he fell prey to being sexually exploited as a child, was because he lost his mother, a significant person in his life. When he went home, his sister, having her own family by then, could not take care of him pushing him to the street to earn his own living at the age of nine: *"I grew up on a farm in R. My mom and I moved after she and my father divorced and then I ended up here at my grandma's. After the death of my mother they [referring to his grandmother] put me in a children's home and went to Johannesburg. So then it [referring to living in a children's home] just wasn't me, was just not for me. So I left the children's home, my sister came to fetch me. So I noticed that my in-laws [referring to his sister's in-laws] were not happy with me not working, and she wasn't working, her husband was working and they had little income in their home. So I decided okay my granny isn't here, I'm making things more difficult for my sister, she has children from this man and there could come a stage, it could be that they get tired of me, or tired of her, just through me [being there]. So I decided okay if I go to town in the day and sell a packet of potatoes, then I will have money in the evenings. And so my granny and them came back again [to stay with his sister] and then left again. They left me again, so I had no choice but to 'stand out' for myself".<sup>22</sup>*

Participant ZZ described the social conditions at home that drove him to the streets where he fell prey to being sexually exploited. He speaks of the fact that, when his mother burnt to death in front of him, there was no one at home to look after him so he took to the street, where he felt unsafe and has been sexually abused and exploited for over 15 years. He shared his story regarding this as follows: *"... I will never forget the day. It was Sunday. My mom would've come to sleep at home, then this man came to fetch her and they went to sleep in a little shack. We were just about to close the door when they shouted; moffie the shack's burning down! I ran outside and kicked down the door and saw my mother standing there burning, so I brought her out and I put her down in the road and they threw water on her. So I couldn't help her and they took her to Tygerberg Hospital. She looked better there. I was still working to be able to [stay]... here at X [the shelter]. Okay the driver [of the shelter*

---

<sup>22</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

where he was staying] said I must go with him to Kyalitsha to deliver bread. Then I asked where are we going now? He said: you will see now. So we arrived at my house and all the people were standing there and they said to me okay, now you can scream and carry on because your mother's dead". He continued further by stating: "There are many things happening in my life. Okay, my mom's dead, I still have a sister. Lots of things happen at home, most of the time I just come to Cape Town because I don't know what's going on with my people because when they have money... I don't worry if they have money but if I do go home then I must also give something for the home, but if I don't have ... a guy just carries on". He also referred to the circumstances at home in this vein: "...things were actually not right at home, too much shouting and fighting." Because of this, "I stay in Mannenburg ... but they shoot too many guns there. I have been abused many times already".<sup>23</sup>

Evidence from both these accounts is the fact that poor home conditions drove the adult survivors to the streets when they were children, where they had little or no parental supervision, a factor that McCoy and Keen (2014:160) name as a contributor to a child being vulnerable to sexual abuse. It turns out that some of the adult survivors felt pressurised to contribute financially to their own upkeep, and to the coffers of the family home, which rendered them vulnerable to "survival sex", which is a point Chettiar et al. (2010:322–327) also raise. Furthermore, and contrary to all expectations, Participants MM and ZZ (as street children), who had very little themselves, took some of their earnings home for the family. Hartjen and Priyardarsini (2012:72) also point out that there is generosity amongst street children to assist each other and their families. At one point Participant MM himself actually uses the word 'survival' in his attempt to explain why he engages in sex with men: "It's almost for me just about survival ...".<sup>24</sup>

### 3.5.2 Substance use/abuse as cause or enabler for CSEC

Research done by the South African child protection organisation, Molo Songololo (2005) and the UNICEF Innocenti Research Centre (2003) point to the fact that there are strong links between the trade in illegal narcotics and trafficking and CSEC. Cluver, Bray and Dawes (2007:258) note that "addiction is used to ensure compliance by children involved in commercial child exploitation". It is also believed that victims of childhood sexual abuse are at a greater risk of abusing both legal and illegal narcotics (McCoy & Keen, 2014:175), and it

---

<sup>23</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>24</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

is theorised that victims may use substances as a way of coping with the memories of abuse (Parker Lewis, 2010:52).

In line with this observation that drugs are used as a coping mechanism to enable the street children to engage in and perform sexual acts they do not necessarily want to, Participant CCC describes a typical occurrence. She and her friend would sometimes receive a half payment in advance of their sex with a client in order to go and buy drugs to put them in “a different mind” which would sometimes cause them not to want to engage sexually with the client. She expressed herself as follows: “...*but you [referring to the customer] give half [payment] now and you [referring to the customer] give the other half when we come back. As we receive the first half, we forget about home, first thing we do, we go and buy drugs, then we are in a whole different environment, our brains are no more, we don't really want to go and have sex with the man*”.<sup>25</sup>

According to the 2014 US Department of State TIP Report (2014:348), during 2013 South African law enforcement “reported increased coercion of sex trafficking victims via forced drug use”. Similarly, sex is used to obtain money for drugs, or in exchange for drugs, thus the child is driven to sex because of dependence on drugs or to pay off debts to drug dealers (de Sas Kropiwnicki, 2012:235-236; Luty, 2009:68).

Participant MM's response to this issue confirms this observation found in the literature that there is a connection between prostitution and drug addiction. Participant MM states: “*Others [referring to children addicted to chemical substances] might come from Cape Town to a drug centre here in Knysna, because he has a drug problem, now he gets discharged and when he is discharged he can't go back to his parent's home because they resent him. Now he ends up on the street or maybe he is from Knysna and he has a drug problem and his parents don't like it. Prostitution is the only way to get some of the stuff he needs, and drugs are on the street, you get it [drugs] quicker, as I said*”.<sup>26</sup>

Despite consulting a multitude of literature sources in which drugs such as thinners, cocaine and crack cocaine as well as dagga (marijuana) and Tik were mentioned, the researcher did not find much about the common use of the heroin-based drug ‘unga’ (also known as ‘nyaope’ or ‘wunga’) among street children. However, Moeng (2013) describes it as a mixture of “anti-retroviral drugs, milk powder, rat poison, bicarbonate of soda and pool cleaner, and

---

<sup>25</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>26</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

is usually laced with a cheap form of heroin". He states that it is often used together with dagga or tobacco. Farber (2008) maintains it is a major drug of choice on the Cape Flats, and in her article she quotes Jardine, director of the Cape Town Drug Counselling Centre, as saying that use of this drug is on the increase in disadvantaged communities. According to Pluddemann, a senior scientist at the Medical Research Council's Alcohol and Drug Abuse Research Unit, 'unga' is sold in smaller units and is just R30 or R40 per street unit (Farber, 2008). From Participant ZZ's account, this drug appears to be a huge push factor. Another of the participants, Participant BBB, specifically refers to it in his observations of other children. However, neither Participant ZZ nor Participant BBB admits to their own use of the drug.

Participant ZZ shared his observations of the young children who do 'unga', and pointed out that these children 'hustle', [that is, they either solicit customers or engage in shady deals such as begging and prostituting] to be able to purchase the drug they cannot do without. He said: *"Ok for me it's like they hustle, they actually hustle for drugs, if they have money, then they run from here straight to the Parade [a town square in Cape Town], straight to the merchants, they buy drugs. When they're finished buying drugs, they go to their places and start smoking. When they are high it looks like unga is something you have to use every day ... Now for me it [unga] is almost that thing of having to smoke it every day and if you don't smoke it in the mornings then you get sick, you must smoke it in the mornings".*<sup>27</sup>

Participant BBB's account corroborates with that of Participant ZZ as he remarked: *"I think the children on the street don't worry about what age they are and how small they are, they're doing it [i.e. engaging in prostitution] because they're hearing about money and the money is going to be quick you know, because they want to buy drugs and whatever."* Later in the interview he elaborated on this matter saying: *"They don't work even, they like to beg at the robots or hustle amongst parked cars. When a guy comes past and like speaks to them [enquiring about commercial sexual favours], who's going to say 'no' when they're living on the streets? Not because they living on the street and they need that money! Most of the little ones [small children that are] begging at the robots they are doing unga."*

Participant MM also had an opinion on this, stating: *"... today why more children go to the streets because of maybe we have a drug that we use – my mom and dad may be drunk every day and now I am a 'runaway' and a 'getaway'. Now I arrive on the street, now for me [it's] money..."*<sup>28</sup>

---

<sup>27</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>28</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

### 3.5.3 The ages of children who fall prey to becoming victims of CSEC

Child sexual abuse in South Africa happens across cultures and socio-economic circumstances and both boys and girls of an increasingly younger age are becoming victims (Delanny, 2005:7). In a South African study, conducted by the Community Agency for Social Enquiry (CASE) on behalf of Save the Children Sweden, the number of cases of child sexual abuse that were reported to Childline South Africa over a 10 year period were analysed. The data shows that the average age of child victims decreased from 1991 when the average age of victims of sexual abuse nationally was between 10 and 12 years of age (Delanny, 2005:7) and that in 2001 more than 50 per cent of children receiving therapeutic services from Childline in KwaZulu-Natal were under the age of seven years. Internationally, the age (7–9 years) appears to be the peak age of vulnerability for child sexual abuse with the median age of onset being pegged at between 10–11 years of age (McCoy & Keen, 2014:161).

The adult survivor participants indicated that they got involved in prostitution and child sex tourism between the ages of nine to eleven years of age. Although they alluded to sexual abuse before this age none of them mentioned it directly but they were not asked this question specifically. Participant MM recalls his first sexual encounter after being approached and picked up on the street but is not clear as to exactly how old he was as he has become confused over the years. *“I was nine, ten, one of the two, nine or ten, but it’s a while now I can’t ...”* (he shakes his head as a gesture to show that he is not clear).<sup>29</sup>

Participant ZZ reports that he was 10 years old when he was raped by a street gangster (as described under Section 3.4.1) and his engagement in commercial sex started a few days after that, *“I have been on the streets for 15 years. I am 25 now”*.<sup>30</sup>

After the rape, he made his way to Sea Point where he obtained information from SWEAT regarding prophylaxis and HIV. Armed with this information he embarked on his new career in the sex industry: *“Okay then I came [to Sea Point] on a Monday, then I spoke with Portia [from SWEAT], then she explained all this stuff to me, like this and this, so the next day I just returned to Sea Point and stood on the street there, and so I learnt to catch ‘bunnies’ [gay men]”*.<sup>31</sup>

---

<sup>29</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>30</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>31</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant BBB (an extremely effeminate young man) explains that he and companions are and were as children on the street, all 'lady boys' who dress like girls, use girl names and behave like girls. He arrived on the street at age eleven; *"I was like 11 years old"*. He described his first sexual experience that occurred at this time, while he was under the protection of his pimp 'Pretty Boy': *"So I was hanging with the prostitutes but they were much bigger than me and afterwards I went to Beach Road and I first experienced like someone picked me up"*. He went on describing the encounter with a male stranger as follows: *"...he wanted me to suck and that time I wasn't really fucking with anyone so he wanted to have sex with me but then he hurts me. Then afterwards we leave but when we drive to town he wants me to give him a blow job..."*.

Participant CCC had been in a number of children's homes prior to the final one from which she absconded. She described this shelter as a place where the housemother sold the girls to the street boys. Her arrival there at age 10 was pre-empted by various escapes from different shelters and children's homes: *"Yes when I came to [place of safety] I was going on for 11. I was nearly 11"*.<sup>32</sup>

After running away from this shelter too, she described meeting up with friends who were also runaways from her former home in a township neighbourhood, and their subsequent sexual encounters on the street at age 11: *"So I began to 'operate' with them in Cape Town, but I stayed here in Cape Town, so that I won't have to go back to [the shelter] again"*. Asked what she meant by the word 'operate', the participant replied; *"How can I say? 'throw charms'"*[referring to engaging in prostitution] *there at Gardens* [an area in Cape Town]. She then went on to describe how she and her friends 'operated'; *"you can still say to me 'How much do you want?' Then I say, give me R200..."*.<sup>33</sup>

The participants were asked to comment on the age of other children on the street who were involved in the sex trade. Participant BBB said that the children he observed were all younger than they looked because their drug abuse aged them prematurely. *"They're more like 13, like that age, but when they dressing up they look like big women because the drugs make their faces look old"*. On the other hand, Participant CCC revealed that the children often say they are older than they are, either because they want to escape being taken back to shelters; or because they know the clients are nervous of children who are too young.

---

<sup>32</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>33</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*“Now if the [clients] say to her, ‘N, we want you, then she say; ‘no’, then they ask; ‘how old are you’, then she says she is 11, then they say; ‘but you look nine’”.*<sup>34</sup>

Commenting on the ages of the children who worked for a pimp called ‘Mammies’ on the Parade in Cape Town, Participant CCC stated: *“They are 10 or 11, but very close together 10, 11, 12 or maybe two years apart”.*<sup>35</sup> When referring to one specific perpetrator and her awareness of the age of the children he prefers to engage with for sexual encounters, she said; *“Oh Jesus! Frank takes them from about nine! From nine!”*

#### **3.5.4 Race of victims of CSEC**

In South Africa, child sexual abuse happens across cultures and socio-economic circumstances (Delanny, 2005:7). This is confirmed by Participant MM, who referred to the child victims of CSEC race-wise: *“Yes, black, white and coloured I’d say”.* He later again refers to perpetrators of CST picking up children of all colours: *“All colours”.*<sup>36</sup>

#### **3.5.5 Gender of victims of CSEC**

All children are vulnerable. However, the girls are particularly vulnerable to gender-based violence and distinctly so in rape, sexual assault and sex trafficking (Delanny, 2005:7; Rafferty, 2013, 559–575; McCoy & Keen, 2014:161). In reviewing child prostitution in the 1990s worldwide, Barrett (1998:476) explains that he perceives a generally accepted ratio of four girls to one boy. However, Pawlak (2012:36) maintains that, although the level of sexual violence and sexual exploitation is at a lower level amongst boys, it still warrants more attention than it is currently receiving. Fergusson and Mullen (1999:13-14), in a study of the available literature based on studies on the prevalence of child sexual abuse in Australia, Austria, Britain, Canada, Finland, New Zealand, Norway, Switzerland and the United States, estimates that the rate of sexual abuse of girls is between 1.8 and 3.4 times higher than that of boys (McCoy & Keen, 2014:161). Nevertheless, this would depend on the definition applied to child sexual abuse. In South Africa, Snell (2003:509) states that prostitution is “also rife among homeless boys” and adds that both local people and tourists solicit them.

Since the adult survivor participants in this study were selected because they had been commercially sexually exploited as ‘children on the street’, the gender ratio of this particular

---

<sup>34</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>35</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>36</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

population should also be identified. From observation, the researcher is well aware that many girls and boys are still visibly active on the streets in most of the towns along the Garden Route and in the city of Cape Town. Approximately one third of all street children anywhere are girls and two-thirds are boys (Committee on International Relations, 2005; Fahmi, in Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:63). It is therefore not surprising that of the researcher's sample of four adult survivors of child sexual exploitation, three were male.

Participant ZZ mentioned his concern about very young girls (under 12) who prostitute themselves on the roadside in the city of Cape Town. *"I see a lot of children, yes, lots of girls who sell their bodies and so on, then I say to myself you are girls, you sell your bodies just to get money, but you have homes to go to".*<sup>37</sup> Later on in the interview he expands on this saying that there are children of both genders on the roadside selling themselves. *"Young girls who stand at the roadside. Girls and boys".*<sup>38</sup>

Participant BBB expressed the opinion that many men only pick up little boys: *"They only pick up like boys. Even the time I was like going with that man with the green car [referring to a well-known alleged paedophile], then we pass like the children who beg at the robots then he say come let's go fetch that little one...".*

### 3.5.6 The naïve nature of the victims of CSEC

Two of the participants felt that when they were first sexually abused, they were very naïve and were sure that other children felt this too. Participant MM expressed the opinion that children became embroiled in this lifestyle before they realised what was happening or knew about such things: *"...he [children] always arrives on the street before he ...before they have brains...".*<sup>39</sup>

This is a sentiment that is echoed by Participant BBB when he says: *"...I see lots of people and the things happen here but that time I was still young, I didn't know ...".*

---

<sup>37</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>38</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>39</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

### 3.5.7 The adult survivor participants' feelings and emotional reactions as a result of their exposure as children to CSEC

The short- and long-term effects of child sexual abuse and sexual exploitation are “devastating” and can cause children to go missing (Kent, 2012:33). Consequences referred to in the literature are many and varied: anxiety disorders, dissociation, low self-esteem, depression, hysterical symptoms and disturbances in sexual behaviour when they are children. There is evidence that some of these symptoms persist into adulthood such as depression, low self-esteem, suicidal behaviour, substance abuse, borderline personality disorder, multiple personality disorder, sexual dysfunction, victimisation and sexual offending (Sanders, O'Neill & Pitcher, 2009:54; Cody, 2010:206; Parker Lewis, 2010:129; McCoy & Keen, 2014:170). One child's experience of exploitation can be very different from that of another child. This variance can depend on factors such as the child's age, the child's relationship with the abuser, the type and length of abuse, the environment, and the resilience of the abused child. Some children may not exhibit many signs of distress and appear as though they are unscathed, while others may be affected badly (Coren & Hutchfield, 2009; Cody, 2010:206). The following storylines describe some of the adult survivors' feelings. Although the adult survivors studied in this research project projected a nonchalant attitude, many of their comments reflect deep feelings about their lives.

➤ Feelings of depression and sadness

In testifying to and confirming the mental health outcomes of childhood sexual abuse with reference to depression and suicidal ideation (Areola, 2008:246-252; Cody, 2010:26), Participant ZZ's disclosed: *“I thought I was going to meet new people... but my life is very hard because really things happen [referring to the harsh social conditions at home, pushing him to the street and the abuse and sexual exploitation on the streets]... many times I think to myself I want to throw myself at the oncoming cars and then I think; no, you mustn't do that”*.<sup>40</sup>

Apart from being light-hearted about the matter of engaging in prostitution and sex tourism as a child, which can be perceived as a coping mechanism, Participant MM, through sharing the following information with the researcher, made his feelings of remorse and sadness public. He said: *“I really don't know, it's different, there are two sides, you don't feel one way, you feel two ways; one side is funny, you think okay right make jokes about it [sex with*

---

<sup>40</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

people on the street], *you laugh about it even though you do it. You even laugh at yourself while you are doing it, but then as you progress through the week then you feel the silence, then you think back about your weekend, and there's a place where it is no longer funny. So you always sit and think ...*".<sup>41</sup> It is interesting to note that the reality hits home a couple of days down the line after the incident.

➤ Feelings of guilt, shame and embarrassment

Childhood sexual trauma victims can experience feelings of guilt which undermine their ability to protect and defend themselves (Lutya, 2009:69; de Sas Kropiwnicki, 2012:235). Child prostitution is seen as specifically damaging in the academic literature in both a physical and in a psychological sense as it leads to low self-esteem, shame, guilt and a loss of self-respect (de Sas Kropiwnicki, 2012:235). Hayes (2012:273) confirms this in her account of being trafficked for prostitution where she describes her time in that life as "filled with fear, loneliness and shame". From the information shared by two of the adult survivor participants, the researcher became aware that they experienced feelings of guilt and embarrassment, especially in terms of what might happen in future, and what people will say if they come to know about their life when involved in sex work.

Participant MM said: "*For me there are two sides of the situation, on the one hand it feels funny for me, because he's a man, on the other hand I feel; 'Wow! Did I actually sleep with a man?' It just your conscience bothers you – like what will happen in 20 years' time?*"<sup>42</sup>

Participant BBB referred to this when stating: "*I was always shy talking with people about it. You know? ... Ja, because afterwards they're going to like look at you*".

Participant BBB also pointed to the little children who hustle at the traffic lights for small change and who get picked up for sex, saying that they deny having sex with people because they are embarrassed: "*...because they are shy*".

➤ Feeling responsible for the sexual exploitation

There is a great deal of debate in the literature on child prostitution and child sexual exploitation as to whether or not a child is culpable with regard their decision to have sex for a price (de Sas Kropiwnicki, 2012:236; Lutya, 2009:70; Areola et al. 2008: 246–252). It is

---

<sup>41</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>42</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

argued that saying that they choose to be exploited is a false assumption since they have not have the ability to make well informed decisions that are rational and that they do not have the power to choose a different path for themselves. This is supported by de Sas Kropiwnicki (2012:236) who states that although adolescents may not have been forced into prostitution against their will, their decision remains influenced by a number of factors that diminish the concept of free choice in the matter.

Bearing in mind that the encounter Participant MM was describing took place at age nine, and the estimated age of the perpetrator was around 50 years of age, the opinion expressed was one of joint culpability: *"I wouldn't say it [referring to the sexual act] was rape because we've agreed [he has agreed for a price to have sex], so I can't say it's rape, what I would say it is abuse, that's what I'd say"*.<sup>43</sup> From Participant MM's comments the reader gets a sense of the child feeling responsible for the sexual exploitation because money for the sexual encounter was charged and paid. The transactional nature of the encounter engenders a sense that the child accepts responsibility for the happening.

➤ Feelings of confusion

A dynamic interplay of emotions and circumstances result in confusion for the sexually exploited child. The need for money drives the child to form of behaviour that meets the needs of the adult predator, but meeting the need for survival and the subsequent behaviour leaves the child confused. Participant MM referred to his feelings (also mentioned above) of confusion along the following lines: *"I really don't know, it's [sex with a man as participant indicates he is not gay] different ... it's two sides, you don't feel one way, you feel two ways; one way it is funny, you think okay right, you make jokes about it [sex with a man] you laugh about it, it's funny even though you do it. You also laugh at yourself as you're doing it, like ... but as you go through the week then you're going to feel the quiet, then you think back over your weekend and there comes a time when it's not funny. So you always sit and think..."*. Later on in the interview he continued by saying: *"As I say there are two sides, on the one hand you think it's funny, and now those that are still small that go to the streets, it's sad to think that this thing happens to street children just to get money and to give money is a joke for you. Because... [dry laugh]... it's funny"*.<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>43</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>44</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

### 3.6 SUB-THEME 1.3: ADULT SURVIVORS' PROFILING OF THE PERPETRATORS OF CSEC IN TERMS OF BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION, CLIENT REQUIREMENTS, AND THEIR MODUS OPERANDI FOR OBTAINING CHILDREN TO SEXUALLY EXPLOIT

Based on the information shared by the adult survivor participants of CSEC, this sub-theme is divided into two categories, namely:

- A biographical profile on the perpetrators
- The perpetrators' client requirements, requests and modus operandi in relation to CSEC

#### 3.6.1 A biographical profile on the perpetrators

It is clear from the literature that there is no single 'type' of exploiter and that child sex exploiters differ in age, sex, sexual orientation, ethnicity and wealth (Rao, 2003:155; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:92; Vallance, 2011:256; UNICEF, 2012:8). However, in the context of this study, a distinction needs to be drawn between child abusers and perpetrators of CSEC. On the one hand child sex abusers are more likely to be family members or people known to the child through family or friends (Vallance, 2011:256; McCoy & Keen, 2014:156), whereas perpetrators of CSEC are likely to be strangers.

From the perspective of CP, CST and sex trafficking, with reference to the so-called "commercial side of child sexual exploitation", Delanny (2005:8) states that the profile of perpetrators involved in this spectrum of sexual exploitation of children differs from child abusers. The exploiters are those people who are typically operators of brothels, traffickers, consumers of child pornography and clients of child prostitutes. In many cases they are not known to the children and most of them may be female.

Child sex exploiters include:

**Paedophiles** are persons who are sexually attracted to pre-pubertal children (Beddoe, 2003:198; UNICEF, 2012:8). The disorder or behaviour includes a variety of symptoms such as inappropriate sexual fantasies and sexual activity with children who are prepubescent, usually under 13 years old (Bowman, 2010:444, Vallance, 2011:256). Bowman (2010:444-445) explains paedophilia further according to four characteristics. First, paedophilia is illegal; second, it is an indicator of psychopathology in the perpetrator; third, a paedophile is an individual who is regarded as infringing the norms of modern sexuality; and finally fourth,

paedophilia when utilised as a description of sexual relations between an adult and a child represents a “violation of the ‘natural’ order of modern childhood”.

**Preferential child sex abusers**, lean towards having sex with children, although they may still experience a sexual attraction towards adults and choose children in the adolescent stage (pubescent) (ECPAT, 2009:4; UNICEF, 2012:8,); such a person is “akin” to a paedophile (Ireland, 1993:264).

**Situational child sex abusers** do not have a specific predilection for children, are simply interested in having sex with someone, and do not care whether it is with an adult, so they will have sex with a child simply because children are available to them, either through their own family or through prostitution (ECPAT, 2009:4; UNICEF, 2012:8). They are more than likely to be people with a poor self-esteem and weak coping skills and/or people who display poor or indiscriminate sexual judgement (Ireland, 1993:264).

This information confirms that perpetrators of child sexual abuse and exploitation differ widely from each other in terms of their origin, race, gender and age and their sexual preferences and this becomes apparent in the adult survivor storylines that follow.

- ***The adult survivor participants’ accounts of the origin of the perpetrators of sexual exploitation of children***

The participants’ accounts pointed out that the perpetrators were locals, out-of-towners, foreigners and some of their places of origin were unknown or unrevealed.

Participant ZZ mentioned that **the origins of many of the participants are unknown or unrevealed to their victims**. Many perpetrators have no conversation with the children they pick up, other than to instruct them as to what they require sexually or to haggle over the price of the service they require, and they simply do not know where the perpetrators are from. Participant ZZ simply stated: “*They don’t tell me [where they are from]*”.<sup>45</sup>

Participant MM motivated why the perpetrators do not share where they are from, explaining: “*...they’re not going to tell you where they come from because they are scared you are going to follow them to make more money out of them, or to tell their wives.... They won’t honestly*

---

<sup>45</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*tell. They will say they are from Knysna, then they're not from Knysna, they will say they're from George, then they're not from George, like that".*<sup>46</sup>

The following storyline points to the fact that **the child sexual perpetrators they had encounters with or know of were locals** (i.e. from around the area): *"I'd say not a lot of locals, about three or four locals that I have experience of".*<sup>47</sup> (Participant MM.)

Participant CCC: *"...a white man, but he speaks Afrikaans, [from] somewhere there in Pinelands or somewhere there...".*<sup>48</sup>

From the participants accounts the researcher also heard that while **some of the perpetrators** of CSEC are locals, others were **'out-of-towners' and foreigners**.

Participant MM's experience and perception was that majority of the perpetrators engaging in CSEC on the streets were people from outside of the towns where they commit the sexual acts with the children, and were tourists. He also provided the motivation as to why they do not commit these acts where they live. He stated: *"... they [referring to the perpetrators] won't do it in their own place, as I said, [describing the thinking of the perpetrator] I am from Knysna, I am known in Knysna, I 'have' a child, now I am scared tomorrow he is going to come to my house and look for more money, he knows where I live, I am known. Now I don't want to give him [more money] and then maybe he will go to my wife, maybe I am married...".* He elaborated: *"There are three or four locals the rest are all tourists".*<sup>49</sup>

From what the adult survivor participants shared, the researcher realised when the participants referred to 'foreigners' the term sometimes implied people from upcountry (Johannesburg or anywhere out of Cape Town), and sometimes being people from other countries whether these are in or outside of Africa. The following storylines attest to this:

*"Many of them, most of them are from overseas and some of them are local, here from us, but if local from us... So but if it's from here you can see".* (Participant CCC.)<sup>50</sup>

---

<sup>46</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>47</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>48</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>49</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>50</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*“Most of those I’ve been with ... two of them are still in Knysna from England and actually that one I was with for the first time that I met he was also from England”.* (Participant MM.)<sup>51</sup>

Participant ZZ shared the following information during the course of the interview about the origins of the perpetrators: *“Maybe French or German”* and also added: *“No the pongos, the pongos, the Nigerians...It’s the way they [referring to the foreigners] drive, the way they look at you and yes that which they do ... [that indicates that they are foreigners]”.*<sup>52</sup>

Participant BBB spoke about the places of origin of the perpetrators that he had encounters with: *“Like this other man, from where was he? From America. He was in Camp’s Bay ...Even the Somalis I pick up once... No I only met people from Germany and that man from America. I always say there’s lots of moffies in Germany”.*

Participant MM shared his perceptions of the place of origin of the perpetrators along the following lines: *“... they were also from the farm where I grew up, hippies, and there were also [women] from London”.*<sup>53</sup>

- ***The adult survivors’ accounts of the gender of the perpetrators***

In their handbook for parliamentarians, UNICEF (O’Donnell & Seymore, 2004:65) states that child sex offenders can be found in any occupation, in both rich and poor countries and may be married or single, foreigners or locals, heterosexual or homosexual with the majority being male (Vallance, 2011:256). The adult survivors’ storylines confirm that the majority of their clients were adult males, who were ‘old’. To confirm this, accounts of Participants MM and ZZ are provided.

Participant MM stated: *“I would say that they are men who travel alone, who are on holiday, and tell their wives they are coming for work so that she knows where he is going”.*<sup>54</sup>

Participant ZZ simply said, *“They [referring to the perpetrators] were men”.*<sup>55</sup>

---

<sup>51</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>52</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>53</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>54</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>55</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Eldridge and Saradjian (in Laws, Hudson & Ward, 2000:404) describe the behaviour of women who sexually exploit children as “the antithesis of the stereotype” and therefore it is not expected from women (Vallance, 2011:257; Ackerman, 2011:1309). Although women are in the minority as perpetrators of child sexual abuse (Vallance, 2011:257; Ackerman, 2011:1308), this could be more prevalent than the statistics suggest. Under-reporting may be due to the guilt and shame of being abused by a women or to professional bias arising from the belief that women do not abuse children or fear of law enforcement or even due to the fallacy of the impression that the extent to which harm caused by a female abuser is minimal (Ackerman, 2011:1308).

It is also believed that women, perceived to be wealthy and known as ‘sugar mommies’, pick up boys for sex (Smith et al., 2010:153). In her research, Parker Lewis (2010:78) mentions ‘shelter’ boys in central Cape Town who spoke to her about women who offered work, then picked the boys up, and took them home for a shower and sex.

Participant MM also spoke about the ‘sugar mommies’ and recalled that he had, on more than one occasion, been picked up by women, and Participant BBB said: “Yes *they* [referring to child prostitutes or children who ‘hustle’] *go with sugar mommies. Even Charles* [another street child] *had a sugar mommy here in Plein Street. He told us he came from his sugar mommy, I think it was a coloured woman or something like that...*”.

Participant MM commented about his encounters with women as follows: “*The women* [with whom he had had sexual encounters] *were mostly lesbians*”.<sup>56</sup>

Participant CCC, the only female adult survivor interviewed, shared the following about women also being perpetrators: “*The woman, I still see her in Cape Town, but I don’t think she realises* [recognises the adult survivor] *the face. One day I was dirty, so I was there in the Gardens* [public] *toilets and I wanted to ask if I can wash myself there, then she said to me she is looking for girls to come and live with her*”.<sup>57</sup>

- ***The adult survivors’ accounts of the ages of the perpetrators***

The participants guessed the ages of the perpetrators with whom they engaged with sexually.

---

<sup>56</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>57</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*"Maybe close to fifty... I will say close to his 50s". (Participant MM.)<sup>58</sup>*

*"...but he's like an old man". (Participant BBB.)*

*"...Over sixty close to seventy. That's how old Frank's faced looked .... Frank is that age, yes, he looked that age". (Participant CCC.)<sup>59</sup>*

- ***The participants' accounts of the perpetrators' race groups***

These storylines provide information about the race groups of the perpetrators with whom the participants were intimate with as children:

*"Yes [the people] I've been with were all white, not yet with any blacks or coloureds, just white". (Participant MM.)<sup>60</sup>*

*"Most were white people - 'whities' ... Sometimes there are coloureds. Black people as well because why [but] you never know what they can do with you". (Participant ZZ.)<sup>61</sup>*

*"It's white guys and black guys..." (Participant BBB.)*

*"Like mine were more those decent coloured, understand? Not the bossy ones and white. I always thought twice about going with a 'darkie' [referring to a black person] because you don't know what is in the car for the things you will see, what lies ahead for you". (Participant CCC.)<sup>62</sup>*

### **3.6.2 The adult survivors' accounts of the perpetrating clients' requirements, requests and modus operandi in relation to CSEC**

The perpetrators' requirements, request and modus operandi are presented under this category as sub-categories.

---

<sup>58</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>59</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>60</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>61</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>62</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

- ***The perpetrators are interested in and required younger children to sexually exploit***

In a paper based on the 2001 presentation at the UN Commission on Human Rights (57th Session) on sexual violence against street children, Wernham (2001:6) states that there is evidence that shows that men are increasingly looking for younger children of both sexes for sex. Hartjen and Priyadarsini (2012:148) record that many men who seek out relations with prostitutes seem to prefer younger girls as younger girls are deemed to be ‘gold mines’ by traffickers and pimps because the customers look for “fresh meat”. It is a feature of the sex industry that clients will pay more for younger women or girls (Barrett, 1998:480; Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:148). This agrees with information on pornography data (as mentioned in Chapter 1, Section 1.1.1) from the National Centre for Missing and Exploited Children (NCMEC, 2012) in the United States of America which shows that 19 per cent of identified child pornography offenders had images of children younger than three, as preverbal children are deemed a ‘safer’ option for the production of pornography. A further 39 per cent had images of children younger than six; and 82 per cent had images of children younger than 12 (NCMEC, 2012). It is also thought that both pre- and post-pubescent children (some as young as three years old) are involved in CST (Barrett, 1998:484) and, according to Lim (1998:176), there is a belief amongst the children’s clients that sex with a very young virgin has a rejuvenating effect on the client.

When looking at the accounts shared by participants BBB and CCC that show that they knew that the perpetrators are interested in younger children, they played along in order to get the business.

In Participant BBB’s case, the perpetrator was worried about the fact he was underage, and he lied by saying that he was 18 years old as follows: *“No he asked me the whole time how old I am, how old I am. He keeps on, he’s very worried that he’s coming in trouble because he keep on ask me how old I am so I told him no I’m 18 years old”*.

Participant CCC explained how she would present herself to be older than her real age when approached by men: *“When I am 10 I will tell the man I am 13, 14 because my body looked like it. I was short and fat. My body didn’t look so small”*. Her friend [she referred to as ‘N’] whom she describes as having the face of a baby would do the same: *“they ask, ‘how old are you? N says she is eleven then they say but you look nine”*.<sup>63</sup>

---

<sup>63</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

- ***The perpetrators' modus operandi was to use chemical substances during the sexual exploitation of the children and encouraged the children to do likewise***

Child prostitutes, according to Rowan (2006:16 -17), are from the lowest financial echelon of society and may be homeless and drug-dependent. Substance abuse, such as drug or alcohol abuse, forms a vicious circle where, on the one hand, substances are taken in order to cope with the prostitution, and on the other hand, prostitution is undertaken to support the substance habit. Substance abuse is a “common feature associated with young women and prostitution” (Barrett, 1998:481).

Participants MM and BBB mentioned to the researcher that some of the perpetrators invited them to use and then gave them some chemical substances to take:

*“As you arrive at his house, he might give you a pill to drink, something to sniff, not coke [cocaine], they buy it at the Hustler Shops, almost like a little bottle of ‘poppers’ [an erection stimulating drug] – it will keep you stiff [erect]”.*<sup>64</sup> (Participant MM.)

Participant BBB described a scenario where he was involved with drugs pushed onto him by a client: *“First we [sniffed] poppers and that time I didn’t smoke drugs. He did it [took drugs] but I said to him I didn’t want to do it...”*. Participant BBB then continued talking about a second encounter with the same client stating: *“... I thought he didn’t know it was me [when they met for a second time] because I’d grown up a bit. ... then he wanted to like give me drugs, the second time he wanted to give me drugs... I said, no!”* He went to say that the perpetrator demanded that he use drugs prior to having sex and, although the participant did not want to do so, he felt he had no option as the perpetrator told him he would not take him back to town if he did not. He explained: *“I didn’t want to, so he also like forced me, not forced me really but he kept on saying how am I going to go back [to town] and that, so afterwards we did whatever he wanted me to do and drink wine and that but when you drink wine you are so stupid and then he brought me back to town”.*

Participant ZZ stated that he sometimes refused the drugs that the perpetrators offered: *They [referring to the perpetrators] used drugs themselves yes, but then they asked me; “what do you do?” So I said, “I don’t do drugs”. So they said: “Its fine”.*<sup>65</sup>

---

<sup>64</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>65</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

- ***The perpetrators' modus operandi was sometimes violent towards the victims***

Alongside drug abuse is the physical abuse child prostitutes endure “at the hands of pimps, clients and police” (Shaw, Butler and Crowley 1996; UNICEF 2001; Hesselink-Louw and Bezuidenhout 2002; Willis and Levy in de Sas Kropiwnicki, 2012:236). Street life (for prostitutes and/or street children) is dangerous and exposes the children to physical dangers such as stabbings from other street people, beatings from vigilantes and patrons (Sanders et al., 2009:54; Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:76). As mentioned before, all the adult survivors in this study were street children. Capaldi (2013:29) postulates that street children face a great deal of verbal and physical violence and abuse. A large number of street children are subjected to a variety of forms of abuse including “beatings, harassment, cursing, theft of their savings or the goods they are selling and of course, sexual abuse”. In fact, Lim (in Sanders et al., 2009:54) contends that child sex workers experience a higher level of both physical and sexual violence than adult prostitutes do. The adult survivors all reported abuse of some sort mentioning theft of their property, rape, murder (of their friends) and physical violence specifically.

Participant ZZ recalled an incident where two perpetrators who had picked him up for blowjobs became violent with him, using a firearm, after he had done what they asked. He stated: “Yes *they* [referring to the perpetrators] *have pointed a .45 [gun] at me before. It was a white man...it looked like he was drugged, I screamed, I was scared. Then the one white man said to this white man 'leave the fucking boy alone', then he took the gun away from my face ... you know what they did with me? While they were driving, the other white man said to this white man he must open the door and throw me out the car, and they really did it*”. After this incident, he time in hospital and then recuperated at a shelter<sup>66</sup>.

Participant BBB described one of the clients (an old man around 70 years of age) he had seen engaging with child prostitutes walking around with a stun gun: “*Ja, he was like, he walks more slower ...he also hangs around with these shock things [stun gun]*”.

Participant MM shared a story with the researcher about how one of his friends, who operated as a sex worker, was killed at the hands of her [the friend's] customer: “*It was one of the first 'sugar butts' [prostitutes] in Knysna and she went with the guy and he got 'heavy' with her, the man expected more from her and the money he was going to give her wasn't*”

---

<sup>66</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*very much to put it that way, and so she didn't agree and the man took her out of town and killed her, like that".<sup>67</sup>*

- ***The perpetrators' modus operandi was to use various locations for the sexual exploitation of the children***

Children are sexually exploited in a number of locations, both on the streets where they are picked up, and off the streets in hotels, lodges and private homes or apartments (Beddoe, Hall & Ryan, 2001:11), or in public areas, such as roads, beaches, markets or parks (Capaldi, 2013:26). The adult survivors' storylines reflect the range of locations where they had sexual liaisons such as top five star hotels, private homes or apartments, quiet streets and vehicles.

Participant MM described various locations including private holiday homes: *"He [one of his customers] has like a holiday home in Knysna"*. Another perpetrator took him to a local hotel, where he says the owner 'knew' him and did not object to him booking in with a client: *"He took me to a hotel, the Royal Hotel. I [Participant MM] made friends long ago with the owner of the place [hotel] so they knew me, what person I am, so they started liking me and I would always just say this is a tourist and I'm showing him around so they didn't ask questions".<sup>68</sup>*

Participant ZZ pointed out that he had been to homes and a five star hotel in Cape Town, but had also engaged sexually with clients in cars and public areas such as Gardens in Cape Town. He mentioned: *"Yes, like I've been in Ocean View as well, Table View...different types of cars, then they take you to different places ... Maybe a hotel, or maybe any place, and then as you finish the thing off then they drop you, maybe just in another place. I was once in a five star hotel [referring to a hotel on the main road of Sea Point]".<sup>69</sup>*

Participant CCC described the locations where the perpetrators took her as hotels, lodges and what she described as 'small places' and dark streets. *"No it's not a house, it's like an expensive hotel you know, expensive hotel ... I've been to the Train Lodge [in central Cape Town], I've been at Seagulls [in Green Point, Cape Town], I've been at Barrack Street there's also a Lodge [name unknown], I've been to the Formula One [Hotel in Cape Town]. Most of the time they take you to places, maybe they don't occupy the place but maybe it's just a small place"*. Describing these locations she stated: *"Or in Long Street [in Cape Town]*

---

<sup>67</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>68</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>69</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*if someone asks me for business, then I must go where I know the boys' [street boys] eyes are on me [the other street people keep an eye on her to make sure she is safe with her client], understand? You maybe take him down in Bloem Street in that dark area".<sup>70</sup>*

Participant BBB described encounters at perpetrators' homes in the Cape Town suburbs of Claremont and Camps Bay, at hotels, apartment blocks and in the back alleys of the BoKaap area of Cape Town. *"Yes! I was even in that hotel opposite, what's its name, you know this glass building - Convention Centre [in Cape Town] now you see that hotel opposite [Southern Sun]. That hotel works with the cards; it's very expensive that place but we didn't go in by the door we went in by the back by where the cars go in so he told the security I'm helping him unpacking stuff up to his room so that's the way I got into the place".*

Participant BBB also pointed out that the 'bunnies' (gay men) frequent a swimming pool in Sea Point called Graaf's Pool where they tan naked and solicit children (and adults) for sex. He also shared how his friend engaged sexually with two men at once in the upmarket Mandela Rhodes Hotel in Cape Town, and stealing foreign currency from them inside the hotel: *"...she stole from a guy R3 000 and she stole foreign money, pounds, she stole pounds, she was inside the hotel, by Mandela Rhodes Hotel. She was inside there and she took everything, she said she had two men..."*

- ***Perpetrators of sexual exploitation was more prolific during festivals that attract tourists and they find victims differently***

One of the participant's narratives clearly showed that perpetrators were more prolific during events that attract tourists. In confirming the aspect of sex abusers being plentiful during festivals, Participant MM remarked: *"...yes many of them come during the festivals [There is a great influx of visitors during major events, like the Knysna Oyster Festival and the Pink Loerie Festival<sup>71</sup>]"*.<sup>72</sup>

When it comes to the aspect of **their modus operandi to find children**, the research, based on the accounts of the participants, finds that **some of the perpetrators operated on their own and others used intermediaries** (i.e. pimps, boyfriends or partners) **to obtain children for the purpose of commercial sexual exploitation.**

---

<sup>70</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>71</sup> The Pink Loerie Mardi Gras & Arts Festival is an annual lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex (LGBTI) festival which takes place in Knysna in the Western Cape province of South Africa.

<sup>72</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

It surfaces that most of perpetrators operate on their own to obtain children whom they engage with sexually at a price. Participant ZZ's version clearly points out how a foreign **perpetrator operated on his own**: *"He just picked me up, took me to a five star hotel, then we did it, he did the job, and he just left me money".*<sup>73</sup> However, two perpetrators also picked this participant up on more than one occasion, which **points to the way perpetrators sometimes operate in pairs**. This participant describes the occasion where two white men picked him up and then threw him from the car (Section 1.3.2 under the category: The perpetrators modus operandi is sometimes violent towards the victims).

According Participant BBB, there was a prolific child sex exploiter who lived in Senator Park in Long Street, Cape Town, called 'B' who only picked up straight little boys and took them to his apartment for sex. In response to the researcher asking whether he picked up only little children, the participant answered, *"Yes little, but he picks up only the boys, only the children that's mostly in Long Street"*.

Participants' CCC and BBB's accounts (presented further on after the following explanatory paragraph) also testify to the fact that **perpetrators find children to exploit sexually through intermediaries (i.e. pimps, partners, boyfriends and the children's own mothers)**.

This train of thought concerning intermediaries being instrumental in helping perpetrators to find children to exploit sexually is confirmed in the literature. Rurevo and Bourdillon (2003) point out that girls who arrive on the streets in Zimbabwe may be taken up by "aunties" who provide them with shelter and clothing in exchange for sex work. A similar situation appears in a study conducted by FBI agents in the USA in which perpetrators of CST had either been caught in sting operations or as a result of reactive investigations following a complaint received where the abuse had already taken place. The FBI agents (Patterson 2007:16-21) found that one offender confessed that he paid a mother for sex with her child because he knew she could not afford the electricity bill. More recently, Schroeder (2013:6) reported that in South Africa parents were in court for selling their 13-year-old daughter to strangers for sex.

In describing a pimp's reason for operating on the Parade [a town square in Cape Town] Participant CCC shared the following: *"Mammies [name given to the pimp] was [like] their [referring to the child prostitutes] mother. Mammies was the brains behind the whole thing;*

---

<sup>73</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*she was the one ... like in bars, Yummy's ... [and] Chicken Express [i.e. bars where she would hook up men with the girls].... Now lots of men came there for girls. [At] Yummy's were a lot of sailors that were looking for girls, and then they would ask Mammies. Then Mammies would ask them: 'are you looking for a good time?' Now okay the closest thing was Train Lodge [a hotel], that was always the place for Mammies. The girls always went there from her, and then if you got a man she booked you in at Train Lodge. It's not far from her. They [the customers] pay her [Mammies]... and the following day Mammies, she would give the girl with some cheap clothing".<sup>74</sup>*

Confirming Participant CCC's storyline, Participant BBB relates the following about the female pimp. *"She [referring to Mammies] was like the one that was on the Parade like the mother for all the children but then she was a mother that was seeing that was knowing what was going on and ... Ja she knows about that guy and that guy and they go with them, because like they bring the money to her. She was kind of like the pimp because why when they go with guys and they used to go to her and give her something".*

The explanation from Participant CCC indicates the fact that perpetrators could also find children to exploit sexually through organised groups such as Mammies, the pimp, who had a group of children working for her. In addition to this, she said that some Nigerians pimp out their girlfriends. She explained: *"I am going to say it this way, say you meet a Nigerian and you are in the business of prostitution then they're going to have you do other prostitution for them. I went into a relationship, I stayed on the street and I didn't turn prostitute because I told them they are not going to 'use' me. I can see how they operate, the other girls all stood on the street, rather that guy and I take the train and go to Cape Town; he can sell drugs and I hustle for clients..."<sup>75</sup>*

Participant BBB also referred to the common occurrence of perpetrators pimping their partners i.e. girlfriends or boyfriends out. They explain that some of the children are around 13 years old but they look older when they are dressed up and to go with regular customers (known as cuties) who phone them and pick them up in Long Street or Loop Street in Cape Town central. *"It's mostly in Long Street and Loop Street, they got boyfriends, like Pongo [Nigerian] boyfriends, Tanzanian boyfriends, so they most of them they like get them there like their regular clients they call and that. So in Long Street it's only like the prostitutes.... It's their own boyfriends who used to pimp them out".*

---

<sup>74</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>75</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant CCC also mentioned how **some mothers prostitute their children**: “...*the mothers take them even and wait for him with the child...I told ‘C’, ‘you and your mother both fuck with Frank’ [a notorious child sex exploiter]...Then I said, ‘what kind of mother is going to take her child to the ‘mirrors’ [a known pick up point for Frank and other child sex exploiters]. What kind of mother is going to wait for her child to jump in a car and wait until the child comes back at night? That’s not nice. You could have gone with the child”.*<sup>76</sup>

As a matter of concern, the sexual exploitation of children as related to tourism and its reporting mechanisms in Gambia, Kenya, Madagascar, Senegal and South Africa was assessed. From information gathered in these countries between July and November 2013. ECPAT Netherlands (2014:72) states that there are both individuals and organised criminal syndicates from countries like Nigeria, Russia and Bulgaria that operate within the sex trade in South Africa. Children sometimes seek protection from these gangs, but the gangs can introduce them to a range of other problem behaviours that include gambling, pick pocketing, thievery and prostitution (Capaldi, 2013:26). Sexual exploitation associated with gangs manifests in different ways such as the exploitation of girls and young women who are used by young men as a rite of passage, to subjugate new boys on the street or as a means of repaying a gang debts (Department for Education UK, [sa]: 6; Parker Lewis, 2010:75). In this regard, van Vuuren (in Bamford, 2000) states that, in South Africa, evidence has been found of gangs utilising children as commodities and trading in children for guns. Children whom gangs abuse sexually are then forced into prostitution and are seen as “promiscuous, children who are keen to engage in risky behaviour”, which limits the social assistance they can expect (Kent, 2012:33).

The aspect of being exploited by gangs when being a child on the street was reported by Participant ZZ who recalled an experience of his first night on the street in Cape Town (also reported in Section 3.4.1). At the age of nine he was raped by a gangster with whom he sought shelter: “*Then he keeps at it, asking me to pull my pants down. Then I said to him; no I’m not going to pull my pants down, so he pulled it down himself and I just lay still [while the sexual assault took place]*”.<sup>77</sup>

This participant, in addition to this story shared, also spoke about another gangster called ‘D’ whom he said often raped, robbed and abused him physically if he did not comply with his request to come with him [for sex]. He then also instigated his fellow gang mates to beat up the participant: “*...I can never forget ...He’s abused me a lot already and he’s still in the*

---

<sup>76</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>77</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*Cape and I still want to put him in jail. His name is 'D'. ... He's Muslim. He is always at the Parade; I really want to put him in jail. He has abused me many times. He abuses all the children, other people's children and he hurt me a lot. In the evenings at 6 o'clock, maybe 7, then I'm sitting there, then he says I must go with him. If I don't want to go with him then he tells other people to beat me up. Then he maybe just walks away. He's a gangster, yes, he a 28 [gang member]. Then he comes and I am very frightened".*

From the participants' stories the researcher discovers that being raped by gangsters does not happen just happen on a one-on-one basis. Gang rape is a common practice in areas frequented by street children who would be vulnerable victims. In this storyline it is clear that the participant was not gang raped as she was 'rescued' by one of the gangsters in the group who was supposed to rape her. He helped her escape, as he knew her from the children's shelter where she was previously. Had he not intervened she described the gang rape that had happened to her friends and what she felt would have happened to her (also documented in Section 3.4.1). *"[My friend 'L'] showed us the first time what 'stokkerol' is, there where the women get raped. There's maybe 30 guys that sleep with you, but the last one to have sex with you, has to get together with you, must take you like a girlfriend...maybe with 30 men, the last one must take you. It does not matter that all the men 'lay on your chest' [i.e. have sex with you] and now when the last one takes you, you sleep amongst them. Tomorrow it is like nothing happened..."*<sup>78</sup>

It was at this point that her rescuer (one of the gang members) lied and told the gang boss that she was in fact his girlfriend and he took her away back to the shelter she had run away from with 'U'.

- ***The perpetrators' modus operandi in some instances was to pick up children in pairs***

From the adult survivor participants' accounts it appears that it is not uncommon for two perpetrators to pick up children together. Participant BBB mentions that this happened often when he was on his own and picked up by two men. He shared the following information in this regard: *"...so we go to his place and so he wanted this [other] guy to have sex with me ... so he told this guy to have sex with me".*

---

<sup>78</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Being picked up by more than one perpetrator is also something that Participant CCC describes, “...if the man [client] says I want to have both of you [to the participant and her friend], then I say ‘yes, yes you can have both of us, how much are you going to give us?’”<sup>79</sup>

Participant ZZ too was picked up on more than one occasion by more than one perpetrator. “If they are two and I am alone then the one will start to take off his pants and then I must suck his thing and then when I am finished then I must suck the other one”.<sup>80</sup>

Participant MM and his friend were picked up by two men: “There have been two, yes. Once in my life, they are still in Knysna, when like I say... it’s not the first time there have been two, the first time I didn’t go in [didn’t get into the car], when it was two. The second time it was two and I went, my friend was with me, and so it’s never happened like three people”.<sup>81</sup>

- ***The perpetrators’ service requests to the children in relation to the sexual exploitation of the children***

Sexual contact that occurs under circumstances of CSEC involves prostitution of children, pornographic interactions, CST or trafficking and can take many different forms of exploitative sex acts such as touching the child, sexual intercourse, deviant sexual activity or sexual contact of any nature whether penetrative or not (McCoy & Keen, 2014:150). In addition, services that perpetrators demand can require looking at naked children, feeling children, as well as posing for or viewing pornography with a child, performing sex acts for others to view in real time known as cybersex, and sex tourism (ECPAT International, 2011a; McCoy & Keen, 2014:150).

From the reports of the adult survivor participants, the researcher realises that the perpetrators sexual requests vary considerably as observed in the literature.

**Oral sex** appeared to be a request from clients. Participants ZZ and BBB revealed: “... I have to suck the one’s thing [penis] and when I am finished then I have to do the other one”. (Participant ZZ.)<sup>82</sup>

---

<sup>79</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>80</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>81</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>82</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant BBB describes a client [a university professor] who picked him up more than once, took him to his house for sex and then demanded oral sex on the drive back into town: *“Then afterwards [after sex at the home of the perpetrator] we leave but when we drive to town then he wants me to give him a blow job as we like come to town and that but then it’s almost like he stopped and then he wanted me to do it because if I don’t do it then he’s going to like drop me wherever, so I need to do it [perform oral sex], so he dropped me in town”.* (Participant BBB.)

Participant CCC, the only female adult survivor added the following in terms of oral sex: *“Now it’s different, you don’t hear about “blowjobs” anymore, they don’t call it that now.* [Participant did not elaborate on what they now called it or whether this was still called for by clients]. *“Like it’s different today”.*<sup>83</sup>

**Full-on sexual intercourse** was also on the menu of the services requested. The following accounts speak about this:

*“...okay so now they maybe ask you for a ‘full house’. A ‘full house’ is everything; like blowjob, sex, from behind [anal sex]. Now they might ask you for a ‘short time’ [straightforward sexual intercourse only]; that’s just sex....”* (Participant CCC.)<sup>84</sup>

*“Like in he’s maybe going to suck me off or maybe I’ll sleep there with him for the whole night and sleep with him [referring to full-on sexual intercourse], so maybe I’ll keep him happy for the whole night, then in the morning he will try and make a price of R500, R400....”* (Participant MM.)<sup>85</sup>

*“Like rape and it’s sore. I feel sore”* (Participant ZZ.)<sup>86</sup>

Participant BBB describes his client as first offering him drugs and when he declines, the client himself uses the drugs after which the sexual intercourse and blow job take place, *“... afterwards he wanted me to suck and that time I wasn’t like really fucking with anyone so he wanted to have sex with me and but then he hurts me.”* (Participant BBB.)

---

<sup>83</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>84</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>85</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>86</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant BBB (with embarrassment) referred to an American client who wanted to anally stimulate him. This act is known as performing anilingus or “rimming” (Castleman, 2010) “...ooh Jirre [God] *this sounds so dirty, he wanted to like suck my ass ...*”.

Participant BBB also mentions one perpetrator who only picks up small children and with disgust recalls what he does with their sperm: “...*he’s so dirty [perverse] the way I’m going to say it. He takes the children’s sperm when they come in the condom, then he takes that sperm and go make ‘bompies’ [sperm ice lollies], ask every one of the kids, then he goes to make ‘bompies’ and put it in the fridge with their names on*”.

In the storylines that follow, the intention of the perpetrator is not clear. However, in the first story the perpetrator’s request was for the participant and her friend to parade nude in front of him. In the second story, the perpetrator wanted a third party to have sex with the child victim in front of him. This could point to voyeurism, explained by Davis (2002:76) as a type of compulsion or behavioural pattern that results from thoughts of very sexually perverse acts, also called obsessions, and is the origin of many crimes that appear to be sexually motivated. Simply put, voyeurism is behaviour that entails obtaining arousal sexually by the unauthorised observation of others while they are engaged in intimate acts (Sullivan, 2009:539; Springer, 2010:873; Maddex, 2006:369). These individuals are prone to watching others disrobe or engage in sexual behaviour.

Participant CCC relayed an incident where a perpetrator wanted **her and a friend to undress and parade in the nude in front of him**. “Now he [referring to the client] says *he’s not interested in me, he’s interested in ‘L’ but ok, if ‘L’ and I are in this thing together he will see when ‘L’ and I are naked [he wants to see them both naked]. Okay and then ‘L’ and I did it because it’s money and I drink and ‘L’ and I are naked in front of the man and everything and now ‘L’ models in the nude up and down...*”.<sup>87</sup>

Participant BBB described **one prolific user of child prostitutes who sometimes wanted someone to engage sexually with the participant so that he, the client could watch them**: “*I went, so we go to his place and so he wanted this guy to like have sex with me*”. Although the participant had had sex with this perpetrator before, he was afraid of being made to have sex with the ‘large black man’ [co-perpetrator that the regular perpetrator had brought with him] and he therefore made a plan to escape and successfully managed to do so.

---

<sup>87</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant BBB shared an incident (also recounted in Section 3.4.2) in which one of his **clients was exposing him to material of a pornographic nature and, from the participant's account, it seems that he was also filmed**: *"It was on top of the computer, was like a camera and then .... so when he's like showing you pictures on the computer, we look at the computer and then the camera is watching us"*.

A report by the U.S. Department of Justice's Office for Victims of Crime (in Renzetti & Edelson, 2008:365) suggests internet crimes against children can take the four forms. First, using online contacts to entice children into meeting with the purpose of sexually abusing the child; second, using the internet to produce, manufacture, and distribute child pornography; third, **using the internet to expose a child to pornography** (see Section 3.4.2); and fourth, enticing a child into travel for the purpose of sexually abusing him or her. The production and viewing of pornography plays an important role in the abuse of children (Russel & Purcell, 2009:59-61).

A trend has been identified in the Philippines, for example, where paedophiles use "internet sex dens", which pull children off the streets, for real-time viewing of child sex crimes (ECPAT International, 2011b). Reference is also made in Chapter 1 (see Section 1.1.2) of this report this new trend in child abuse which is a form of virtual CST in that paedophiles and child sex offenders are now using internet live streaming sites to order custom-made child sex crimes for real-time viewing (The Star, 18 May 2012).

Participant CCC also shared the following incident with the researcher where the client fondled her: *"He [referring to the client] feels me up and 'E' [her friend] asks: 'how much is he going to pay if he just feels you up'"*.<sup>88</sup>

In the previous sub-theme (Section 3.6, sub-theme 1.3) the accounts of the adult survivor participants were provided in terms of profiling the perpetrators of child sexual exploitation in terms of biographical information about them, their requirements in terms of their child client, their service requests to them and their modus operandi to obtain the children to sexually exploit. In the next section of thesis, the focus of the discussion shifts to the accounts of the adult survivor participants on how they and other victims of CSEC were remunerated for the services rendered.

---

<sup>88</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

### 3.7 SUB-THEME 1.4: THE ADULT SURVIVORS' ACCOUNTS OF HOW THEY WERE REMUNERATED BY THE CSEC PERPETRATORS FOR SERVICES RENDERED

That children do sell sex is clearly linked to poverty, debt, homelessness, running away, being in institutional care or running away from such an institution (van Niekerk, 1999; Sanders, O'Neill & Pitcher, 2009:53; Bigelson & Vuotto, 2013:7). ECPAT (2014:2) explains that the sexual exploitation of a child occurs when a child is used or abused sexually and the adult pays to do this "in cash or in kind". This payment can be in the form of money and/or gifts or favours. The gifts could be in the form of food or clothing, whilst the promises could range from the promise of higher marks or pass marks in school or shelter or protection. McCoy and Keen (2014:168) underscore the monetary incentive when postulating that CSEC is child sexual abuse that "generally involves money". For young children and youth to "sell" sex is predominantly seen as a "survival strategy" for youth to meet their basic human needs (van Niekerk, (1999); Saunders, O'Neill & Pitcher, 2009:53; Bigelson & Vuotto, 2013:7). In some places it can be cheaper to buy sex from a child or from an adolescent male than from an adult sex worker, and this trend, according to O'Connell Davidson (2005:120), feeds the notion of the perceived worthlessness of the children involved.

Following these introductory remarks, the accounts of the adult survivor participants feature the methods of payment of services rendered to perpetrators.

One perpetrator, who has been around for more than 10 years, is known by two of the participants to be generous with his money when rewarding the children with money and gifts (i.e. chocolates and toiletries). According to Participant CCC: "*he [referring to Frank who is a prolific sex client and well-known to the children] buys shoes and toiletries and if you want wine you can take*". She later recalled how Frank paid fellow street children for sexual services rendered to him: "*Frank buys shoes for R1 300 – R1 700, F buys R700 – R800 worth of toiletries, Frank buys clothes for R1 000*".<sup>89</sup>

Participant BBB also testified to Frank's generosity with the children he abused sexually along the following lines: "*You can see the girls will be in town and others will say; Oh, look who's been to Frank because you can see the clothes, the shoes, you know they've got a new outfit on and have toiletries*".

---

<sup>89</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant CCC also made it clear that she wanted cash for sexual services rendered, and was not interested in being paid with drugs. She expressed herself as follows: *“No I want money, I don’t want drugs. I first want to see how much money you have in your pockets because many men say no to you”*.<sup>90</sup>

During his interview, Participant BBB provided snippets of information that specifically related to the payments he received for services rendered and matters related to this aspect, referring to the first amount he received and his reaction at that time was that he thought it was a large amount of money. He volunteered that both he and the other children did not want to engage in ‘selling themselves’, but they had to do so in order to survive. He stated: *“So he [referring to the first perpetrator] gives me a R50, but I didn’t know how much is money because a R50 for me is like so much. It was so a lot for me and the second time this guy also picked me up we went to his place again, so afterwards he came but then he gave me money like R300. What really happens is here you know if the guy picks you up you’re going to get money and that’s the reason you go with but sometimes you must do something you don’t want to do and that’s what makes you feel not nice...”*.

Related to the aspect of payment by the perpetrators for services rendered, Participant BBB’s perception was that the gay men were the ones with the money. He explained: *“... they’re men with money. You know if a guy picks up a lady he will pay them R300, but if a moffie [meaning a gay man], a white man from overseas, picks us up they pay more, three times the price than them because they’re scared they going to be in trouble. They don’t want their names to be dirty when you see them in the street”*. He also referred to the fact that the asking price could not be too high especially when it comes to the clients of colour when he remarked: *“...like from Cape Town if you charge a coloured R350, it’s by luck if they pay that price you know”*.

Related to this sub-theme on the payment for sexual services rendered, Participant CCC shared with the researcher an experience in which the girls were arrested for prostitution and were sexually exploited by police officers and offered a half packet of cigarettes as payment. *“Now he [referring to the police officer who takes roll call in jail] comes back, you’re standing at the grill [of the police cell], all the others are sitting or maybe lying down, now he will say to you: come with me to the other cell [to engage sexually], then I’ll give you a half packet of ‘angies’ [cigarettes]”*.<sup>91</sup>

---

<sup>90</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>91</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

The participants also shared their perceptions on what they deem as factors contributing to CSEC. This will now be presented as sub-theme 1.5.

### **3.8 SUB-THEME 1.5: ADULT SURVIVORS' PERCEPTIONS OF THE FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO CSEC**

The adult survivor participants perceived the following to be the contributing factors:

- poverty (i.e. a lack of food and being hungry)
- the adult survivors' chemical substance abuse and addiction
- engaging in sex is making easy money for survival
- immaturity and naivety inherent in being a child

These will now be presented as categories:

#### **3.8.1 Poverty (in the context of a lack of food and being hungry) as contributing factor to CSEC**

The harmful sex work undertaken by South African children is possibly due to their poverty and lack of basic means to survive. According to UNICEF (2012), approximately 11.9 million children in South Africa out of a child population of 19 million, live in poverty. Children who reside in poverty-stricken households where there is little or no income are more vulnerable to crime such as being abused, neglected and exploited (Biersteker, 2012:53). The UNICEF Report also reveals that around 1.7 million of these children live in informal housing such as backyard shacks or squatter settlements (Edmonds, 2006; UNICEF, 2012). 'Opting out' is not a path a child chooses but is rather the result of being pushed away from being at home because of hunger, neglect and possibly physical and sexual abuse. Therefore, children often abandon their homes to look for ways of fulfilling their needs on the streets, *inter alia* engaging in prostitution (West in Iqbal, 2008:201; Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:67-68).

Participant MM bluntly shared with the researcher how a lack of food and hunger led him to prostitution. This information endorses the phenomenon of CSEC. *"As I said on the streets sometimes it's still, quiet [referring to not getting something to eat, or no money from begging] and then he [a child sex exploiter] comes at that specific time when he finds you in the quietness and now he knows you are hungry and I haven't yet had it in mind to steal, that wasn't one of my ways of getting money".*<sup>92</sup>

---

<sup>92</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

He also alluded to this being the reason other children are on the street by describing the scenario in a hypothetical manner: *“Now I arrive on the street, now for me money ... I don’t know what I will eat tonight, so I am going to do it [prostitute myself].”*<sup>93</sup>

The literature consulted points to the fact that poverty, especially the lack of a basic income, lies at the heart of the major portion of harmful work (such as CP) undertaken by children, and a portion of children that face structural poverty also face circumstances that increase their vulnerability. These include being isolated from their families and from their support network in their work or living location as is the case of street children (Dawes, Long, Alexander, & Ward, 2006:253; Biersteker, 2012:53, ECPAT, 2014:72).

### **3.8.2 The adult survivors’ chemical substance abuse and addiction as a contributing factor to CSEC**

Possibly children are driven to the streets by drugs or drink, often fuelled by parental physical abuse or family homelessness, and a range of detrimental relationships and situations. Causes for these can be the remarriage of surviving parents and tension in the stepfamily relationships, verbal abuse relating to poor performance at school, or even failure to contribute to the family’s income, which is compounded by general lack of resources resulting from poverty (Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:67). If the drug or alcohol abuse of the parents, stepparents or guardians was a problem for the adult participants interviewed in this study, they did not say so. Only one participant (ZZ) alluded to problems at home with a simile: *“My mom’s died, I still have a sister. Many things happen at home, most of the time I just come to Cape Town because I don’t know what’s going on with my family because when they have money ... There was too much fighting and shouting”*,<sup>94</sup> but did not state directly that this was due to substance abuse.

However, the following information shared by Participant MM, testifies to the fact that he did use chemical substances, although it was more for recreational use, albeit sex related. *“... I started with dagga, Mandrax and this [Tik] a few years ago, not necessarily with that in mind, but I did, actually just to keep my friend happy, use Tik, and it wasn’t always. Tik is also, it makes you ... it puts a feeling in your body; it gives you ideas I’d say. “Like it always gives you a way, a plan to overcome something, like for example you’re with a woman, and you both use Tik, it will puts you on a different... um how shall I say position, you break out a*

---

<sup>93</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>94</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*different position when you are going to have sex. It's also like 'poppers', it helps you stay erect long".<sup>95</sup>*

In underscoring the sentiments Participant MM expressed regarding drug use, Ward (in Dawes et al., 2007:238) state that there are many children on the street who abuse substances which range from household items like glue, thinners, to the more hard core drugs like marijuana and heroin. With reference to 'Tik' mentioned by the Participant MM as a substance used, Häefele and Ovens (2013:27) state that this drug is a methamphetamine. It is a bitter tasting, white coloured, odourless, drug. Known as 'Tik', 'speed', 'ice', 'crank', 'crystal straw', 'chalk' or 'tjoef' in South Africa, according to the Mitchell's Plain Tik Task Team. It derives its name from the sound it makes when it is smoked through a lightbulb with its metal threading removed. Using methamphetamine has been associated with heightened sexually risky behaviour. In a Cape Town study by Plüddermann, Fisher, Mathews, Carney & Lombard (in Häefele & Overns, 2013:27) found that adolescents who had used methamphetamine the past 30 days were significantly more likely to have engaged in vaginal, oral or anal sex, and experienced a pregnancy, in comparison with a similar group who had never used methamphetamine or Tik.

Whether the use of drugs is driven by a desperate need for the drug or whether the drug use is to enable the child to perform the sex act is debatable. Participant BBB pointed to the fact that some of the children on the street prostitute themselves to get money to buy drugs. *"I think the children on the street don't worry about what age they are and how small they are, they doing it only because why they're hearing about money and the money is going to be quick you know, because they want to buy drugs and whatever".* He continues: *"... when they go skarrel [hustle drivers for money] then it's easier [to find money], quicker if they can go with someone [a sex client] and do something [perform some form of sex act]"*.

On the other hand (as discussed in Section 3.5.2), Participant CCC and her friend sometimes obtained part payment for their services ahead of time in order to be able to purchase drugs to use before performing sex acts, but after they taking drugs they did not want to engage sexually with the client. *"...but you give half [payment] now and you give the other half when we come back. As we receive the first half, we forget about home, first thing we do, we go and buy drugs, then we are in a whole different environment, our brains are no more, we don't really want to go and have sex with the man".<sup>96</sup>*

---

<sup>95</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>96</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

### **3.8.3 Engaging in sex is an easy way of making money for survival as a contributing factor to CSEC**

'Survival sex' (discussed in Section 3.4.3), is the term that is used to describe sex that is traded. It involves an individual under the age of 18 years old in a situation in which sex is traded for something of value to the person offering sex and which is done out of desperation, usually in order to meet the basic needs of survival (Sanders, O'Neill & Pitcher, 2009:53; Bigelson & Vuotto, 2013:7). In the main, the movement of children in South Africa into high tourism areas seems to be related to their need for survival, and for goods such as food, clothing, shelter, access to education and money (ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:72).

This category was borne out of the following remarks made by two of the adult survivor participants. *"I think the children on the street don't worry about what age they are and how small they are, they doing it only because why they're hearing about money and the money is going to be quick you know, because they want to buy drugs and whatever"*. (Participant BBB.)

*"It's [referring to prostituting oneself] the easiest way to get money, it's because of money, and to have money there are many ways but what you think now is this [referring to prostitution] is the easiest way, that's what you will do"*. (Participant MM.)<sup>97</sup>

### **3.8.4 The immaturity and naiveté inherent in being a child as a contributing factor to CSEC**

The biographical and psychosocial aspects of the adult victims are discussed more fully in Section 3.5, sub-theme 1.2 and their susceptibility to sexual abuse due to their naiveté is evident in the information recorded. Two of the adult survivors spoke of their own immaturity as well as the immaturity of the children they now see entering the streets for 'survival sex'.

*"...I see lots of people and all the things [referring to the sexual activity] happen here but that time I was still young I didn't know [referring to being naïve]"* (Participant BBB.)

The following remark made by Participant MM, attests to children getting more than what they bargained for when hustling for money on the street. The children, in their naiveté, go to the street to earn money, usually to only sell small items such as loose potatoes in small

---

<sup>97</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

packets, or by assisting drivers in car parks to park their cars safely (known on the street as 'skarrel'). 'Skarreling' is, however, often a thinly veiled form of soliciting. From the perpetrator's point of view, these children are vulnerable and therefore easy to approach while from the child's side, it is an easy opportunity to get money. As Participant MM explained, some of the children hear about prostitution and because this is an easy way to get money, they go to 'skarrel' but then, in some instances, finally end up prostituting themselves as this is an easier way to get money for survival.

In discussing his opinion about young children on the street, Participant MM stated that by word of mouth children were considering 'skarreling' and soliciting as a viable opportunity to make money, and said that the children gained some satisfaction from earning money. *"This is the only way to stop this [child sex tourism] because I go off the street [meaning he leaves the life on the street] after which someone finds out it has been happening and then they think they themselves are 'important', because I tell my friend, and he tells his friend, [word of mouth] so everyone thinks now that is [referring to child sex work] a way to survive, that is easy money, so they go for it, then they go to the street, not really to 'hustle' – you get what you go to the street for 'hustle'".*<sup>98</sup>

The second last sub-theme under Theme 1 presented in this chapter will focus on the suggestions forwarded by the adult survivor participants on how to deal with children's involvement with CSEC.

### **3.9 SUB-THEME 1.6: ADULT SURVIVORS' SUGGESTIONS ON HOW TO ADDRESS CSEC**

When asked their opinions on how to stop CST, two participants responded. Participant MM **suggested that** in order to address CSEC, **the children must be removed from the street.** *"I would say the only way to stop it [CP] is to get the little guys off the street ... maybe that will ... if there are no children on the street maybe it [CP and CST] won't happen".* Later in the interview he elaborated further: *"...it's just to get the children off the streets. That is the only way to stop something like this because I will go off the street and now people hear about it and they also want to be 'the big cheese' because I'm going to tell my friend, my friend is going to tell his friends, so they all think that is a way to survive, that is easy money,*

---

<sup>98</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*so they will go for it, so they go to the street for it [sex], they don't really go to 'skarrel' [hustle]".<sup>99</sup>*

This opinion would appear to agree with research conducted in 2007 by the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) (Ward & Seager, 2010:90). It focused in part on assessing the current status of homeless people in South Africa. A finding relevant to this study is that some children who had peers living on the streets thought that the children on the streets had an easier life in the big cities than they did. Moreover, what also influenced them was their impression that such a life was not only fun but would also be the means to gain material goods.

Participant ZZ **suggested that the one specific perpetrator who abused him should be put in jail for the abuse perpetrated against him and other children on the street.** *"Uh he [referring to the specific perpetrator] is a Muslim. He is always on the Parade; I really want him put in jail, why? Because he has abused me. He abuses the children, other people's children and he has hurt me many times".<sup>100</sup>*

Participant CCC did not answer the question directly but instead stated that, if she saw a child getting into a car she would approach the perpetrator and attempt to intervene to prevent the action going further. *"If I have to see here is a young girl getting into the car in front of me – I am going to stop it. Understand? I am going to approach the man and ask; 'why don't you rather take your own daughter? because you take other people's child. I am going to approach and I am going to say 'I already took your number plate'. That's the quickest he's going to drive away, understand? If it's the next girl that comes from the same circumstances as what I come from and she sees it and allows it then she's cruel, she's heartless and she thinks nothing of the next person".<sup>101</sup>*

The last sub-theme derived from Theme 1 presented in this chapter focuses on the adult survivors of CSEC's recollections of their experience of the nature of the services social service providers offered them.

---

<sup>99</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>100</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>101</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

### 3.10 SUB-THEME 1.7: THE RECOLLECTIONS OF ADULT SURVIVORS OF CSEC ON THE NATURE OF SERVICES RENDERED TO THEM BY SERVICE PROVIDERS

In the HSRC study (Ward & Seager, 2010:87), mentioned in 3.9 above, the researchers report that service providers relayed to them that children involved in prostitution are less likely to seek the services of a shelter as they were earning an income and sometimes had housing. This agrees with Parker Lewis's (2010:77) observations over the four-year period (1991–1994) when she was employed at a shelter in Cape Town. She states that, once on the street, very few children get help at shelters. The statistic she gives support her claim in that only 137 children out of the approximately 400 boys with whom the shelter interacted attended any interventions offered them, such as counselling and rehabilitation care (Parker Lewis, 2010:177).

Participant MM's account also confirms Parker Lewis' findings about street children not being interested in help offered while they are in shelters. *"Lots of genuine help came [meaning he was offered assistance by well-meaning individuals], like I say I have been to a children's home but it was not for me. I actually had no option because the only way they could have helped me was to send me back home and I didn't have one ... I didn't feel myself, shall I say I don't feel at home, and if it's not your house you are not going to be happy, I'll say it that way. There are many ways, things that happen, you take blame from other people and at that stage when people really wanted to help me I was too old, so there wasn't a place like a children's home here in Knysna that I could have gone to as I was over 18".*<sup>102</sup> However, he also continued along more positive lines when stating how he very recently found assistance that helped him at the drop-in (daytime non-residential) shelter. *"Now in my future I have ... before I met Participant II [head of the shelter], now I have changed my lifestyle a lot and I have met lots of friends, lots of people, I've learnt lots of things. When I came here I couldn't read, couldn't write properly, but I've carried on and seen a lot and learnt a lot, like I say football was one of my dreams and through [the shelter], through football my dreams have come true. So that is why I have changed and that's why I'm still trying to stay off the street today, I have a goal".*<sup>103</sup>

Institutional settings have been recognised for some time as places where child sexual abuse and exploitation occurs (Shuker in Melrose & Pearce, 2013:125). Recent media reports (Safi, 2014; Peace, 2014) coming from the United Kingdom and Australia describe

---

<sup>102</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>103</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

hundreds of reports of alleged rape, indecent assault and exploitation of minors in care homes also appear to support this statement. This abuse has usually been pre-empted by grooming<sup>104</sup> and more specifically to what McAlinden (2013:7) refers to as “institutional grooming” which refers to sex offender who “make use of the unique features organisational environment such as power, anonymity, secrecy, opportunity and trust to facilitate abuse and avoid exposure”.

**In this regard allegations of corruption and being ‘sold for sex’ by housemothers of the shelter she was placed was posed** by Participant CCC. She mentioned this as her reason for absconding from the shelter and explained the alleged abuse. *“... afterwards it was the housemother who started talking to them [street boys], but then they [the housemothers] would say to us don’t speak to them, so ‘U’ [her friend and co-runaway] and I said to each other; ‘look, the housemother is full of it [‘it’ referring to lies, trouble or nonsense], they don’t want us to talk with the street people, but they do it [talk to the street boys], why?’ Then it was always older guys that used to come, but there were girls who were a bit older there, ‘H’ and ‘E’. The housemother then used to sell you in a way. They say to the housemother in Xhosa because you don’t understand the language, then they maybe say to the housemother they like me, then the housemother says ‘you’ll have to pay up; maybe a two litre cold drink’, things like that. Then there may be one of the girls going out for the evening, then the housemother will say you can go with her... So afterwards I thought no man they are selling us to the boys because they get stuff in return. So leave before they sell you further”.*<sup>105</sup>

The same participant also alleged that **the police were of no help to her as they themselves had sex with the children in the cells when they were locked up for loitering or other trumped-up charges**. She explained as follows: *“You’re scared that the police have sex with you. If they lock you up, a woman, on a trumped-up charge then they want sex with you themselves and that’s the quickest you get out of there”.*

In describing a specific arrest for loitering and the three days she spent in the holding cells while awaiting for bail to be paid by the NGO under whose care she was at the time, she details: *“So we were in jail from the Wednesday to the Friday. Friday we go to court, Wednesday we’re still lying [languishing] there, now the police come to check the cells to do*

---

<sup>104</sup> Grooming is a process whereby a perpetrator prepares a child for sexual abuse or exploitation or sets up a situation in which abuse can take place, by paying attention to them, buying them treats and/or necessities to win their favour or showing them pornographic material in order for them to feel complicit in the abuse (McAlinden, 2013:6).

<sup>105</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

a headcount. He comes to count, say every hour, so a lot of them sell 'angies' [cigarettes] in the cells then they charge R2 or R3 for a Styvessant. Now just say you don't have [money], then say he will give me an 'angie' and then he will wink at me and say, 'I'll be back now'. So now he comes back and you're standing by the grille, all the others are sitting, or they're lying down and he'll say come with me to another cell and I'll give you a half packet of 'angies'. Lots of girls do it because maybe you're going to Pollsmoor [prison] and you have nothing, then there they will search you to see what you have brought, then ....". She also excuses the police by saying that their abuse is to be understood as they are taunted and purposely aroused by some of the female prisoners who do have sex for the cigarettes as it is unthinkable to arrive at Pollsmoor prison [in Cape Town] without anything to offer other prisoners. "Or sometimes other prisoners will come into the cells, lots of them, you can't just blame it on the police because they are also randy themselves. They pull their shirts up to here [she gestures above her breasts], so the police ... a man is going to get an erection, it doesn't matter that it's not your type or your class but they're going to get an erection because you're a man. Now the policeman takes you and you laugh as well. Normally they say the police have raped them in the cells then I'm nasty to them because they should have known better. I know them that have been in the cells, they [the police] wouldn't have done that shit or touched someone's backside. Like sometimes we stand outside the court and then you hear a girl say, 'here comes my husband!' [mockingly referring to a policeman she has slept with in the cells]"<sup>106</sup>.

Participant BBB also found **the police to be unhelpful when he reported one of the clients** who had picked him up and of whom he was fearful as the client had produced a second man with whom the client wanted the participant to have sex – a "large black man". Having managed to escape by pretending to be hungry so that the client would stop at a fast food outlet, Participant BBB, who by this time had ingested a large amount of alcohol supplied by the client, fell at a garage and a police car turned up. He called for their assistance but found none. He explained it thus, "...but I was so drunk from the wine also, so I fell by the garage. So I tell the police what happened, so the police van came and so I tell them what's going on and they just laugh at me."

Another participant (MM) said that **although the police did, from time to time, stop cars in which he was travelling with a client, they always assumed that he was in the car for a drug deal, never for sex, as he had been bust by the police for doing a drug deal before**. Even though he and the client were sometimes taken to the police station, if no

---

<sup>106</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

drugs were found, both were released with no charge. He said: *“I, in my days on the street, had my way, many ways [to make money] and I got it in mind to make lots of money if I maybe buy a little ‘dagga’ [marijuana] for myself here in the township, take it to town and go and sell it to the smokers, so I have been caught before. So whenever they [the police] found me in a car that was all they thought about”*.<sup>107</sup>

However, Participant ZZ **did find help from the police** after one particular rape incident that took place by a white man at a house in Ocean View, Cape Town - he had experienced rape many times before. *“They help yes. You just explain; there was a guy raping me just now. They asked me, ‘what does he look like?’ Then I say he looks like this and like this and then they want to take me with to show them where he stays, then I show them where he stays”*. He also stated that he now knew, as an adult, where he could go for food when he was hungry: *“I look after myself. Maybe in the mornings when I am hungry, there are places where I can go”*.<sup>108</sup>

### 3.11 CHAPTER SUMMARY

At the outset, the stated focus of this chapter was outlined as being the presentation of the accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their CSEC. In order to orientate the reader and present the content in a logical way, the demographics and characteristics of the various groups of participants were given.

A discussion about the thought behind the decision to include the adult survivors and the ethical pitfalls a researcher can face when including children then followed. The theme of the chapter set out in a table with a brief description of each of the seven sub-themes and their categories. The theme, sub-themes and categories were illuminated by an exposition of the relevant storylines taken from the transcriptions of the verbatim recordings of the adult survivors and underscored by relevant literature to confirm the findings.

The first sub-theme (Section 3.4) included an exposition of the different forms of sexual abuse and exploitation to which the adult survivors were exposed and comprised child sexual abuse, pornography, prostitution and child sex tourism. Although child sex trafficking is also part of child sexual exploitation offences this was not particularly mentioned as an issue by any of the participants and will be looked at more closely in the next chapter.

---

<sup>107</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>108</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

The second sub-theme (Section 3.5) covered the adult survivors' accounts and the biographical and psychosocial profiles of the victims of child sexual exploitation. Their psychosocial background, substance abuse of both parents and children, the ages of the children involved in child sexual exploitation, their race, gender and the naïve nature of those who fall victim to this crime, as well as their feelings and emotions were documented. In addition, the role of substances as a type of sexual exploitation was explored both from the perspective of substances as an enabler and as a cause of child prostitution.

In the third sub-theme (Section 3.6) the adult survivors' storylines provided insight into how they viewed the perpetrators of child sex tourism and a picture emerged of the characteristics of these individuals, their modus operandi and their requirements from the adult survivors in terms of CSEC and the remuneration the children received from them.

In the fourth sub-theme (Section 3.7), the adult survivors shared their perceptions about the factors contributing to CSEC and these opinions included; poverty, substance abuse, survival, as contributing factor to CSE and the immaturity and naiveté of vulnerable children on the street

The reader was then in the fifth sub-theme (Section 3.8) taken through a presentation of the adult survivors of CSECs' recollections on the nature of services rendered to them by service providers such as social workers, NGO staff and the police.

The sixth sub-theme (Section 3.9) was a presentation of the adult survivors' suggestions on how to address CSEC and made specific reference to removing children from the streets, where predators had easy access to them.

In the seventh sub-theme (Section 3.10) an exposition was provided of the recollections of adult survivors of CSEC on the nature of services rendered to them by service providers, which included allegations of being 'sold' by housemothers of shelters to street boys for sex.

This now concludes the data presentation of the adult survivors of commercial sexual exploitation as children (CSEC). The next chapter presents the themes related to the organisations providing services to the victims of child sexual exploitation.

## CHAPTER 4

### RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS OF THE SERVICE PROVIDERS ON THEIR KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE AND SUGGESTIONS TO THE PHENOMENON OF THE CSEC – PART 1

#### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

The research findings are based on the accounts of the service providers who render services to victims and perpetrators of commercial sexual exploitation of children with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism. The selected service providers are social workers, non-social workers from NGOs and members of the FCS Unit of the South African Police Services, collectively referred to as the service provider sample group. According to the ecological systems theory (Friedman & Allen, 2010:9; Bronfenbrenner in Onguegbuzie, 2013:4) there are environments, such as the arenas in which the mentioned service provider groups function, in which the child is not necessarily present (i.e. the exosystem level) but it is a level in which decisions about the child's welfare are made. It is the "larger community in which the [child] lives" and can exert a direct or indirect influence on the microsystem (i.e. the adolescent) (Muuss, 2006:305).

From the voluminous amount of data collected from this service provider sample group, eight themes (see Chapter 2, within Section 2.9.1 for the service provider group) emerged, and these are dealt with in two parts to facilitate the presentation of the research findings. This chapter, serving as Part 1, concerns the first four themes.

- **Theme 1:** The service provider groups' levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge on the legislation applicable to prohibiting CSEC, with specific reference to CST
- **Theme 2:** The service provider groups' perceptions of the extent of CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST, and their levels of exposure to victims and perpetrators of the specified types of commercial sexual exploitation
- **Theme 3:** The service provider groups' accounts of the profile of the victims of CSEC
- **Theme 4:** The service provider groups' accounts of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC

The following four themes are presented as Part 2 in the next chapter of this report and are the research findings arising from the accounts of the service providers that reflect their knowledge of and their response and suggestions to the phenomenon of CSEC:

- **Theme 5:** The service providers groups' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST
- **Theme 6:** The service providers groups' accounts of factors enabling them to respond to CSEC
- **Theme 7:** The service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST
- **Theme 8:** The suggestions from the service provider groups in response to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST

Before presenting the research findings related to the first four themes, the researcher would like to introduce the participants belonging to the respective service provider groups by disclosing some biographical particulars about them without compromising their identities.

#### **4.2 THE DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILES OF THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUP**

The researcher used various strategies<sup>109</sup> to recruit people to participate in the study. Of the 55 individuals who were purposively selected, 19 were social workers, 13 non-social workers employed by various non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and six (6) were members of the FCS Units of the South African Police Service. The demographic data of the participants included variations for each of these three groups (see Tables 4.1, 4.2 and 4.3).

---

<sup>109</sup> See Chapter 2 (section 2.6 Table 2.5) on the strategies employed for participant recruitment

**Table 4.1: The demographic profile of Group 1: Social Work participants**

<b>Participant code</b>	<b>Employment</b>	<b>Region</b>	<b>Gender (M/F)</b>	<b>Race</b>	<b>Years of service</b>
<b>A</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	Knysna	F	W	22
<b>B</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	Knysna	F	W	19
<b>C</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	Knysna	F	W	16
<b>E</b>	Social worker at a government institution focused on child protection	George	F	W	20
<b>F</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	George	F	W	26
<b>G</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	George	F	C	5
<b>J</b>	Social Worker in Private practice	Cape Town	F	W	20
<b>K</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	Plettenberg Bay	F	C	1,8
<b>N</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	Plettenberg Bay	F	B	5
<b>R</b>	Social Worker in private practice	Cape Town	F	W	20
<b>U</b>	Social worker at a government institution focused on child welfare	Cape Town	F	W	24
<b>Y</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	Cape Town	F	W	20
<b>Z</b>	Social worker at a government institution focused on child welfare	Cape Town	F	C	3
<b>AA</b>	Social worker at an NGO focused on child welfare	National	F	W	41
<b>FF</b>	Social worker at a government institution focused on child welfare	George	F	C	3
<b>KK</b>	Social worker at a government institution focused on child welfare	George	F	C	5
<b>TT</b>	Social worker at a government institution focused on child welfare	Cape Town	F	W	28
<b>UU</b>	Social Worker in private practice	Cape Town	F	C	32
<b>XX</b>	Social worker at an NGO and shelter focused on child welfare	Cape Town	F	W	30

Most of the social work participants were employed by NGOs (10) that delivered social services to children, a further six were employed in government institutions that cared for children, whilst three were engaged in private practices that focused on service delivery to abused children and perpetrators of sexual offences against children (see Table 4.1). All the participants were female and this corresponds with the trend that social work is a female orientated profession (Christie & Kurke, 1998:25; McPhail, 2004: 323; Earl, 2008:23-24; Pease, 2011:406-407).

All, but one of the social work participants come from the geographical area commonly known as the Garden Route. It is delimited for this the study (see Chapter 1, Section 1.2.2) as extending from Storms River on the southern coast of South Africa westwards to Cape Town, the main city and harbour of the Western Cape. Two of the participants were drawn from Plettenberg Bay, three from Knysna, five were from George, eight from Cape Town and one operated from another province, where she was engaged in a national responsibility organisation (see Table 4.1).

The length of service ranged from 1.8 to 41 years, so the very experienced and the newcomers to the profession are well represented. The spread shows a core of experienced social workers as the average period of service is 17.9 (18) years.

The details of the non-social work participants are given in Table 4.2 on the next page.

**Table 4.2: The demographical detail of the non-social work participants**

<b>PARTICIPANT</b>	<b>GENDER</b>	<b>RACE</b>	<b>REGION</b>	<b>EMPLOYMENT TITLE</b>
P	M	C	Cape Town	Director at NGO focused on CSEC
V	F	C	Cape Town	Co-ordinator at NGO focused on CSEC
BB	F	W	Plettenberg Bay	Co-ordinator at NGO focused on child welfare
HH	F	W	Plettenberg Bay	Co-ordinator at NGO focused on child welfare
II	M	C	Knysna	Manager at an NGO focused on the welfare and shelter of children
JJ	F	W	Cape Town	Director of NPO focused on welfare of children
NN	F	W	Plettenberg Bay	Director of an NGO focused on the welfare and shelter of children
QQ	F	W	Cape Town	Manager of an NGO focused on the welfare and shelter of CSE victims
RR	F	W	Cape Town	Manager of an NGO focused on recovery and rehabilitation of CSEC victims
SS	F	W	Cape Town	Manager of an international organisation focused on welfare of individuals (cannot be specific due to anonymity issue)
VV	F	C	Cape Town	Co-ordinator of a shelter and service delivery organisation for homeless people
YY	F	W	Knysna	Manager of rape counselling organisation
AAA	F	W	Cape Town	Former manager of NGO focused on assisting homeless children

The non-social work participants were also predominantly females, like the composition of the social work group with only two male participants. The non-social workers group comprise four coloureds and nine whites (see Table 4.2). Eight participants were from Cape Town while five were situated on the Garden Route. Job titles ranged from NGO-coordinators to managers and directors. The qualifications of the NGO participants varied widely with some formerly employed as secretaries, airhostesses, bookkeepers and psychology students. Most participants stated that it was their passion that drove them to do the work that they did with NGOs although they were not formally qualified for it. The comment of Participant VV encapsulates that passion: *“I’ve been doing this work for seven years. Prior to coming to work here I had a very boring office job and I did this voluntarily. I*

*did it after work in the evenings, and that's how I got interested. When I was sitting in that office I wanted so much to be here so it's something that I just felt I needed to do, yes".*

The demographic details of the members of the SAPS FCS Unit are presented in Table 4.3 below. To protect the identity of the participants in this category their rank and specific area of operation are excluded from the demographic table.

**Table 4.3: The demographical details of the participants from SAPS FCS unit**

<b>PARTICIPANT</b>	<b>GENDER</b>	<b>RACE</b>	<b>REGION</b>
SAPA	M	C	Garden Route
SAPB	M	W	Garden Route
SAPF	F	C	Garden Route
SAPC	M	B	Cape Town
SAPD	M	B	Cape Town
SAPE	F	B	Cape Town

Four of the SAPS FCS Unit members were male and two female, with one being white, three black and two coloured. Three participants were from the study area along the Garden Route and three were from Cape Town.

The focus of the rest of this chapter will be devoted to the presentation of the research findings related to the first four identified themes of the study (see Section 4.1).

#### **4.3 THEME 1: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' LEVELS OF COMPREHENSION OF MEANING OF THE CONCEPT 'CHILD SEX TOURISM' AND THEIR KNOWLEDGE ON THE LEGISLATION APPLICABLE CSEC (WITH SPECIFIC REFERENCE CST)**

This theme evolved from the responses that came from the service provider participant groups to the questions: *What is your understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'?*; and *What South African or international legislation covering CST are you aware of?* The responses are divided into two sub-themes. The first sub-theme focuses on their level of comprehension of the term 'child sex tourism' and the second focuses on the service provider participants' levels of knowledge in relation to the applicable legislation available to specifically prohibit CST. These two main sub-themes are further divided into categories as depicted in Table 4.4 below.

**Table 4.4: An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 1: The service provider groups' levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge on the legislation applicable to CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST**

Sub-theme	Categories
Sub-theme 1: Social workers' level of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied	<p>Some social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p> <p>Some social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p> <p>One participant had no understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p>
Sub-theme 2: Social workers' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST	<p>Some of the social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST</p> <p>Some of the social work participants possessed speculative knowledge about the legislation related to CST</p> <p>Some of the social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST</p>
Sub-theme 3: Non-social work participants' understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'	<p>Some non-social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p> <p>Some non-social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p>
Sub-theme 4: Non-social work participants' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST	<p>Some of the non-social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST</p> <p>Some of the non-social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST</p>
Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit members' understanding of the of the term 'child sex tourism'	<p>Some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p> <p>Some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p> <p>One SAPS FCS Unit member had no understanding of the meaning of the concept CST</p>
Sub-theme 6: SAPS FCS Units members' knowledge of the legislation relevant to CST	

Direct quotations from the transcriptions of the interviews conducted with the participants inform each of the sub-themes and its related categories (as depicted in Table 4.4) that either introduce or and/or confirm or contrast them to emphasise their significance.

#### **4.3.1 Sub-theme 1: Social workers' level of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied**

The responses from the social work participants in relation to their level of understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied and can be placed on a continuum. The range extended from a comprehensive to basic understanding of what CST is on the one end, to a complete lack of understanding on the other end, leaving a mistaken understanding of the concept in the middle.

This variation within the social work participant group with regard to their understanding of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism', stands to reason. One explanation comes from Melrose (2013:165-168) who points to the fact that the concepts used to describe the kind of abuse in which children are involved has evolved through time. From initially being termed "children abused through prostitution", it is currently referred to as "child sexual exploitation". Another viewpoint (Asquith & Turner, 2008:5; Melrose, 2013:160) suggests that description of this activity might have become slippery as a variety of practices are now considered 'sexually exploitative' which creates confusion in the minds of practitioners who then attach a meaning a line with their own point of view. Melrose (2013:155, 160) takes the issue further mentioning that the language associated with sexually exploited acts performed with children, and the concept 'sexual exploitation', has been "stretched" to the point where it has become vague and without meaning. A consequence of this is that practitioners may now be unsure of what sexual exploitation exactly is. She says the "elasticity of the concept appears to do little to help practitioners identify instances where a child or young person is being abused through prostitution or through the commercial exchange of sexual favours" (Melrose, 2013:160).

A storyline from one social work participant in this research illustrates this discussion about understanding the meaning of term 'child sexual exploitation'. She attempted to clarify her own understanding during her interview with the researcher: "*Yes, yes, I think it's about that initial contact on a sexual abuse side, let's make friends with you, let's you know develop a relationship, you know that grooming process, whereas I think on the sort of exploitation side of it, it's the factor of money or reward [which] is much clearer from the beginning. Ja, that would be my sense of what would make it different [from child sexual abuse]*". (Participant J.)

The categories related to this sub-theme are now presented to underscore the participants' varied understandings of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism'.

#### 4.3.1.1 Some social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

The concept 'child sex tourism' is defined as: the sexual abuse and exploitation of children by a person or persons who travel from their home district, home geographical region, or home country in order to engage in sexual contact with children (Ferran, Berardi & Sakulpitakphon, 2008:3; Abueva, 2008:177; Notene, 2013:3). The responses from some of the participants (Participants AA, R, Z, N, Y and U<sup>110</sup>) confirm their comprehensive understanding of the concept CST when comparing it to the definition provided, thereby substantiating this category.

*"Men and women who travel outside or within their country in order to access children for the purpose of sexual abuse". (Participant AA.)*

*"Child sex tourism would mean that individuals, adults, would travel to the vicinity, or long distance, or a distance, to interact with children for the purpose of sex". (Participant R.)*

*"Well for me it would be where children are ... or people who have an interest in children on a sexual level, ... would you know see South Africa as a place where children are easily accessible and are vulnerable for their sexual addictions and children are brought into this with various different promises, ... obviously they can't give consent but some children may have an idea of what they might be getting into but some children really don't and you know then are abused, sexually abused by this person whose purpose is sexual gratification and the child then may, or may not, be paid for their services. Okay if I think of an international example, then it is people who may be come from America to Africa to have sex with children, or like we also say from town to town in South Africa. What would be a good example is what I usually say is that it is usually wealthy people, that are for example highly regarded in the community, so where he or she doesn't want to do it in their own town which means he is going to another town, so it's actually like prostitution but it's with children that they do it [sex]". (Participant Z.)*

---

<sup>110</sup> Some of the participants explanations were very comprehensive, while others were brief and to the point when explaining their understanding.

*“It is whereby people from outside places like foreign people come to South Africa with the intention to sleep with young children”. (Participant N.)*

*“It’s basically children being recruited or being involved with tourists for sexual favours like we hear anecdota[ly] always of the street children offering their services in the CBD and that type of thing”. (Participant Y.)*

*“Well, basically those children are being exploited in the tourism industry for sex purposes by people that come and visit here”. (Participant U.)*

4.3.1.2 Some social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept ‘CST’

This mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST became evident when Participants K and A equated CST with child sex abuse.

Participant K simply replied: *“What I actually understand is that children are abused - sexual misconduct”*.<sup>111</sup> Participant A explained, *“Child sexual abuse and child sex tourism because I feel the two go hand-in-hand”*.

Some participants (Participants E, F, B, XX, UU and G) had an incorrect understanding of the concept ‘child sex tourism’ (as depicted in their explanations below) in that they equated it with child trafficking. Child trafficking is defined as the recruitment, sale, supply, procurement, transport, transfer, harbouring, or receipt of anyone under the age of 18 years for commercial exploitation which is, often, but not exclusively, of a sexual nature. Using threats, force or other forms of coercion is part of it as is fraud, abduction, deception, and it is often connected with the sexual exploitation of children, both internationally and within the borders of a country (Cluver, Bray & Dawes, 2007:251; Hartjen and Priyadarsini, 2012:137; TIP, 2014:29).

In response to the request to share her understanding of the concept CST, Participant E said: *“I understand that it is trafficking with children for different reasons, whether it is sexual reasons, or trafficking, which is commercially transacting to complete, sorry, satisfy their sexual desires, or it can be cheap labour or even for the sale of children”*. She then

---

<sup>111</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

continued by saying: “No, I don’t really know, what is the difference?” [Between child trafficking and CST.]

Participants F and XX also mistook CST for child trafficking.

*“Trafficking, you’re looking at trafficking, at people using children for sexual gratification, but maybe in the tourism section more attracting people from other provinces or other countries”.*  
(Participant F.)

*“...The word ‘tourism’ confuses me a little bit but I would imagine from my own experience and what I’ve seen is that children are being used for sexual activities across borders”.*  
(Participant XX.)

In the following explanation Participant UU also included the migration of the children as opposed to that of the perpetrators: *“I think it is children that are being used ... paid for sex... Kids who in terms of the law are minors and adults who are using exploitative sex, disregarding the legal sanctions that are there and where there’s an economic kind of exploitation. I imagine it’s that when we migrate kids across boundaries, geographical boundaries, so whether it’s from one village to another village or whether it’s from one region to another region”.*

Participant G also revealed her incorrect understanding of the concept CST when equating it with child trafficking. *“When I think of that I think of what we learnt in a previous course on human trafficking. I understand and read about it briefly that it is children under 18 being used for sex. I don’t really think there’s a big difference because I don’t believe that these children who are under 18 that are involved in sex tourism agree to it or that they do it willingly or that they want to do it, so I think they are also damaged in that they are part of that, so I don’t think there’s really a big difference”.*<sup>112</sup>

Participants TT and F mistook CST for prostitution. Prostitution has been defined by Farley, Cotton, Lynne, Zumbeck, Spiwak, Reyes, Alvarez & Sezgin (2004:34) as “commercial sex business, which includes street prostitution, massage brothels, escort services, outcall services, strip clubs, lap dancing, phone sex, adult and child pornography”. The Kinsey Male Report (in Esselstyn, 1968) views prostitution as “a transaction in which a woman accepts sexual relations with almost anyone who pays her money”. Another description adopts the

---

<sup>112</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

stance that prostitution is the act of making sexual favours available in exchange for money or goods (Surujlal & Dhurup, 2009:81). The difference between prostitution and CST therefore lies in the origin of the perpetrator. In this regard, in response to the question; *What is your understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'?*, Participant TT explained her understanding as follows: *"Young children being sexually abused by other people for business or money purposes or any other"*, while FF said, *"It is whereby children are used/sold for the purpose of performing sexual acts"*.

#### 4.3.1.3 One participant had no understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

Participant G, although she at first gave a mistaken understanding in that she confused CST with child trafficking (as indicated in 4.3.1.2), finally indicated that she did not know the term saying, *"I am not educated on that term"*.<sup>113</sup> (Participant G.)

#### 4.3.2 Sub-theme 2: Social workers' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST

The United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child was ratified by South Africa in 1995, the Optional Protocol on the Sale of Children; Child Prostitution and Child Pornography (OPSC) in 2003; the Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children in 2004; and the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the African Child in 2000 (see Chapter 1, Section 1.1.4.2). In addition, South African legislation, which protects the rights of children, includes the Children's Act No. 38 of 2005, the Criminal Law Act No. 32 of 2007, the Child Justice Act No. 75 of 2008 and the Trafficking in Persons Act No. 7 of 2013. Overarching all of these is the South African Constitution which contains a Bill of Human Rights and, in particular, the section (S) (28) on the rights of children (ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:73).

The social work participants' responses to the question enquiring about their knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST were divided in three categories as presented below.

##### 4.3.2.1 Some of the social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST

Five social workers had a clear understanding of the legislation pertaining to CST but two participants could immediately name the relevant legislation. Participant AA stated: *"The*

---

<sup>113</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and related Matters) Amendment Act of 2008, the Children's Act of 2005 as Amended – does not specifically mention child sex tourism but generally deals with services to all sexually abused children”.*

Participant R remarked: *“The Sexual Offences Act, but that's been amended and rewritten and ages brought up and down and what is seen to be a sexual act has also been redefined”.*

4.3.2.2 Some of the social work participants possessed speculative knowledge about the legislation related to CST

In relation to their knowledge of the legislation that pertains to CST, two social work participants' responses summarised their speculation about CST that is contained in the Children's Act.

*“It's probably the Children's Act. Ja, it will be the Children's Act”.* (Participant Y.)

*“I assume there would be something in the Children's Act, I would hope, I don't know. Surely there must be something in terms of some of the international relations and those sorts of things but no I have no idea. There should be something in the Sexual Offences Act”.* (Participant J.)

4.3.2.3 Some of the social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST

Twelve social workers did not have any knowledge of legislation relevant to CST, and three simply said: *“No, no”* (Participant G and N.), or *“No”* (Participant K.) and *“At the moment I'm not aware of it”.* (Participant Z.)

#### **4.3.3 Sub-theme 3: Non-social work participants' understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'**

The non-social work participant group, similar to the social work participant group, also reflected various levels of being informed about the term 'CST'. Some had a comprehensive understanding, whilst others had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST as depicted in the next section.

4.3.3.1 Some non-social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

Participants P, VV, NN, V and X's responses provide proof of their comprehensive understanding:

Participant P articulated his understanding along the following lines: *"Well it's a concept where tourists go to a place for the purpose of having sex with children, or they go to a place with no purpose ... but when they are at this place they find themselves in a situation where they then do engage in sexual activity with children"*.

Participant VV provided the following explanation for the concept CST: *"...my understanding would be people from other countries coming into Cape Town, for example, and abusing our kids in a sexual manner, but it's any kind of sexual manner, that's my understanding. It's people coming from other places into Cape Town and using these kids for their sick ..."*.

While these participants provided comprehensive explanatory descriptions to indicate their understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism', Participants NN, V and X were briefer.

*"I understand it's [referring to CST] the intent of people coming to a specific area or region with the desired intent to either solicit or exploit children to have sex"*. (Participant NN.)

*"... basically those children are being exploited in the tourism industry for sex purposes by people that come and visit here"*. (Participant V.)

*"Obviously children under a particular age that are being used for sex, or sexual acts, pornography, being exploited to things that children should not be exploited to and international people coming in to take advantage of I should say our lack of protection, child protection"*. (Participant X.)

The account from Participants BB points to a basic understanding of the concept. Based on hearsay from the children on the street, Participant BB articulated her understanding as *"Adults will come on holiday and from what I have heard from children, they go and stay with an uncle or aunty whilst this aunty/uncle is on holiday. They get food and clothing and money and it has only been suggested by them they have sex"*.

4.3.3.2 Some non-social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

One participant mistook CST for child prostitution. Participant II (the head of a children's shelter) explained it this way, *"It is when children (0-15 years) are being sexually abused in exchange for money or clothing"*.

In their response to share their understanding of the concept CST, Participants JJ and HH equated CST to child sex trafficking.

*"Any process by which a child is moved around geographically for the purposes of sex or where a child is made available to someone who is prepared to move geographically to where the child is for the purposes of sexual gratification"*. (Participant JJ.)

Although participant HH had an understanding of the concept CST she blurred it by referring to child sex trafficking (the sale of the child into trafficking) when stating: *"...my understanding of child sex tourism is using children against their will to perform sexual acts for money to visiting foreigners. Children who are sold by their parents for money to the sex trade also form part of this heinous industry"*.

In an attempt to communicate their understanding of the concept CST, Participants YY and SS, in essence, did not explain the concept but rather referred to the link between CST and child sex trafficking.

Participant YY explained, *"I think theoretically they [trafficking and CST] are separate and the definitions of them are different but I think in reality its overlapping"*.

Participant SS said: *"I would think that children could be trafficked for the purposes of CST, specifically for that purpose, so they could be recruited, for example, in the rural areas, transported to CT to work in that specific industry"*.

#### **4.3.4. Sub-theme 4: Non-social work participants' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST**

The non-social work participants, who generally had less formal training than the experientially trained social workers, demonstrated varying levels of knowledge about legislation pertaining to CST. Their responses fell under the two categories presented next.

#### 4.3.4.1 *Some of the non-social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST*

Six of the non-social workers testified to the fact that they were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST. In support of this the following quotations are provided as examples to substantiate this category.

*“The Children’s Act, the Sexual Offences Act and hopefully, I don’t know if the TIP, the Trafficking in Persons Bill is ever enacted. We’ve been waiting for it. It will in the sense that child sex tourism falls under CSEC, Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children, so it’s already covered by that and the TIP Bill, as far as I know, covers commercial sexual exploitation of children. So currently the Children’s Act actually speaks to CSEC and so there is protection of children under the Children’s Act ... So it [the TIP Bill] basically criminalises anyone involved from the purchasing the services of the child, to the person who is aware of it, maybe if it’s a child, a parent who knows, or people who don’t report, so basically anybody who’s involved or a landlord who does not report that their apartment is being used, or the hotel, so it criminalises anybody who would be involved in the sexual exploitation of a child, whether be it directly or indirectly, so that’s how it would protect”.* (Participant V.)

*Another said, “I believe that our criminal law does mention it [CST], but that there are no current provisions in any/few of our laws relating to same [CST]”.* (Participant JJ.)

*“The Sexual Offences Act and it will be the film publications – the pornography provisions there. The Children’s Act would cover those things. So there are quite a few. And the Migration Act”.* (Participant P.)

#### 4.3.4.2 *Some of the non-social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST*

Participants BB, HH, II and VV, AAA, VV and NN had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST. The following storylines are provided as examples to validate this category.

Participant VV said she had not studied anything but had learnt all she knew about sexual exploitation through hands-on experience: *“No, no I’ve no studied knowledge about it. All of*

*what I'm saying to you now is out of experience. I know that it's illegal, I mean it's not right, but I don't know clauses and appendices and whatever, no I don't".*

Participant YY referred to the perpetrators when asked about the legislation, commenting as follows: *"Definitely they need to be incarcerated and be in some sort of programme. I'd say the tricky thing, especially if there are foreign or international laws, I don't have enough knowledge on that but I think that's a huge thing because I think there are loopholes in that, but I do think they need to be incarcerated and in treatment"*.

Another participant spoke about the age of consent when asked about the legislation: *"Internationally I am aware that the age of consent varies. In South Africa I believe the age is 16-years old"*. (Participant HH.)

#### **4.3.5 Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit members' understanding of the of the term 'child sex tourism'**

As explained in Chapter 1, Section 1.1.6.2 in South Africa, the Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offence (FCS) Unit within the South African Police Service (SAPS) is responsible for policing sexual offences against children, and adult victims of sexual offences and violence. They evolved from the former Child Protection Units (CPU) and were reinstated in 2011, after a period of absence when specialist police were integrated into general police stations (Vetten, 2012:4). Worldwide, law enforcers struggle with law enforcement concerning the sexual exploitation of children, especially with regard to children involved in prostitution (Halter, 2010:152-160) and child sex tourism (Patterson, 2007:17). Halter (2010:17) examined factors that influence police conceptualisations of girls involved in prostitution in six US cities, seeing them as either victims or delinquents. Halter's study analysed the content of files of prostitution incidents involving juveniles. From the work done, Halter concludes that the problem of children and prostitution is in itself complex, an attribute that contributes to unravelling it difficult, as do the "conflicting conceptualisations" of young people who are involved in prostitution. A further complication is that adults engaged in the sex work industry are generally considered to be breaking the law so are arrested and dealt with through the justice system, whereas when it comes to children involved in sex work, these notions are not clearly understood, and have led to ambiguity in how they are "recognised, defined and handled" (Halter, 2010:17). In South Africa, Vetten (2012:6) states that most members of the SAPS (uniform division) based in the Client Service Centre (CSC) are still responsible for the initial reporting processes but have not been adequately trained

to deal with the either the application of the relevant sexual offences law or the proper treatment of victims.

'Child sex tourism' has become a topic of conversation amongst law enforcement agencies around the world and Patterson (2007:16) says that having a "clear, operational definition" is the necessary first step to effective investigation of cases that pose a "unique problem". It is against this background that the researcher also wanted to know how the SAPS FCS Unit members who participated in this study understood the meaning of the concept of CST.

From their responses two categories emerged.

#### 4.3.5.1 Some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

The information provided by Participants SAPB, SAPF and SAPD substantiates this category. Participants SAPB and SAPF, who were interviewed together, agreed with each other about the meaning of the term with one member explaining it. *"What I understand is that children are used by tourists or by people who come to sightsee and then use those children specifically for sexual purposes, or prostitution or whatever"* (Participant SAPB<sup>114</sup>), to which the other member said, *"I also understand it that way"*. (Participant SAPF<sup>115</sup>.)

Participant SAPD also understood and described it. *"My understanding would be children who are used for sexual means by people from outside the province, not necessarily outside of the country"*.

#### 4.3.5.2 Some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

Participant SAPE's comprehensive account of her understanding of the meaning of CST clearly testifies to a mistaken understanding of the concept and even no understanding, when stating: *"Well to say child...for me I think it will be composed of cases committed against children like sexual abuse cases, it can be rape, it can be sexual assault"*. Participant SAPE was also of the view there was no real difference between cases of CST and child sexual abuse cases: *"The term is just a term to me because to us we know that those are*

---

<sup>114</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>115</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*the cases that are involving children, you know cases of sexual molestation...". This participant, in disclosing her lack of understanding of the concept, continued by saying: "Cases [of sexual molestation] are being committed but I would say the most common ones are by the family members, there are strangers, but the most common ones are within the family".*

*Participant SAPA referred to the concept in this way: "...my understanding, whether I'm right or wrong ...child sex tourism is part of a huge ... is sometimes syndicate involvement. To be honest with you South Africa is not that well known when it comes to ... other countries are more well known when it comes to these type of sexual offences, and it starts with trafficking at the end of the day...".*

4.3.5.3 One SAPS FCS Unit member had no understanding of the meaning of the concept 'CST'

Participant SAPC had no understanding of the meaning of the concept CST which he disclosed as follows: *"I understand, if I understand correctly, is those matters that involve tourists whereby they are being sexually violated"*.

#### **4.3.6. SAPS FCS Unit members' knowledge of the legislation relevant to CST**

Participant SAPA did not know which Act was relevant, but knew that there was no Act relevant to trafficking, *"I was also aware that South Africa doesn't have an Act when it comes to trafficking, that lets you determine what type of offence has been committed when you have such a scenario"*.

Another (Participant SAPD) said: *"Not specifically, because I believe that it is covered by the Sexual Offences Amendment Act. It covers almost everything there"*.

One participant did not specifically mention the laws although she alluded to the Sexual Offences Act and the age of consent as she was distressed about media reports in the *Mail & Guardian* (Parker, 2013), *The Star*, (Thom, 2010) and *The Sowetan* (SAPA, 2013) that children as young as 12 would be able to consent to sex. However, when asked about whether prostitution was legal in South Africa she said, *"It's legal in South Africa"*. (Participant SAPE.)

From this discussion of Theme 1, that focused on the service provider group's levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism', and their knowledge of the legislation applicable to prohibiting CSEC (with specific reference to CST) attention now shifts to Theme 2. In the next section of this thesis, this theme concerns the service provider group's perceptions of the extent of commercial sexual exploitation of children (with a specific focus on CP and CST) and their levels of exposure to victims and clients of these types of commercial sexual exploitation.

#### **4.4 THEME 2: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' PERCEPTIONS OF THE EXTENT OF CSEC (WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CP AND CST) AND THEIR LEVELS OF EXPOSURE TO VICTIMS AND PERPETRATORS OF THESE TYPES OF COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION**

##### **4.4.1 Introduction**

This theme with its accompanying sub-themes and categories emerged from the responses from the various participant groups in relation to the questions focusing *inter alia* on the extent to which CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST, occur within their geographical areas of service delivery, and their exposure to these forms of CSEC.

Exposure refers to the experiencing of something, or knowledge of something, where 'knowledge' means everything that someone knows about that particular subject. For the purposes of this study, 'exposure' will mean that the participant has either seen, experienced or has knowledge of the subject (Oxford Dictionary, 1996:305; The New Choice English Dictionary, 1999:114). 'Direct exposure' in this study will mean that the participant has worked directly with victims or perpetrators of CSEC, and therefore has first-hand knowledge of the subject, whereas 'indirect exposure' will mean being informed about the forms of CSEC through their training or from their clients, colleagues and the media.

The sub-themes related to this theme are depicted in Table 4.5 on the next page.

**Table 4.5: An exposition of the sub-themes related to theme 2: The service provider groups' perceptions of the extent of CSEC, with specific reference to CP and CST, and their levels of exposure to victims and perpetrators of the specified types of commercial sexual exploitation**

<b>Sub-theme</b>
Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery
Sub-theme 2: The social work participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST
Sub-theme 3: The non-social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery
Sub-theme 4: The non-social work participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST
Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit members' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery
Sub-theme 6: SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST

#### **4.4.2 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery**

By way of introduction, and with specific reference to child prostitution as one of the forms of CSEC, Halter (2010:17) notes that professionals working at social service institutions nowadays may consider children involved in prostitution as either youth in need of protection from sexual exploitation by unscrupulous adults, or as offenders who willingly participate in illegal acts for financial gain. Historically, these professionals who specialise in rendering child welfare services are the most likely persons to recognise children involved in prostitution as “victims” and as individuals who are in need of protection, and they would “place responsibility for the juveniles' illegal activities on adults and society for failing these youth” (Halter, 2010:17).

Concerning the topic of CP, O'Connell Davidson (2005:140) emphasises the fact that children engaged in sex work do not always work in isolation and can often be found working alongside their adult counterparts. This author furthermore states that this would, on some occasions, be for the same pimp or employer, and on others, often servicing the same

clients as the adults, hence they, as children, are very rarely “uniquely abused and exploited in the sex trade”.

With reference to the **extent that CP is occurring within the social workers participant groups’ areas of service delivery**, Participants R, J, Z and E, as social workers, mention that CP indeed occurs within their area of service delivery and the following quotations provide evidence that this is true.

Participant R said that CP with children and accompanying adult prostitutes is increasingly taking place currently as she notices what is happening after hours around her office. *“So what will happen now is that, where in round about 2000 you saw prostitutes on street corners,... specifically in this area (where her office is located) interestingly enough, because it’s a smart area during the day, but it’s all [medical or counselling] practices, it’s all clean business, so during the night we all go home so and there’s fewer eyes, so what happens is there’s now your prostitute but now you have a hang-on of children. So they don’t per se move alone – we have a hang-on of children. I mean that they would – the younger girls the teen, preteen, teen girls – would now walk with, or be associated with, these adult prostitutes. As a matter of fact, they would almost be used to promote the adult sex trade”.*

Participant Z had come across CP in the area where she currently works as well as in her previous area of work. *“It doesn’t really present or is not so open in this area, I am not actually aware of it, I do know that some of the prostitutes are under 18 years of age, which classifies them as children, but what I can say is that when I previously worked in Touws River there were many Zimbabweans that stay there and little girls of 12, 13 always went to them and slept with them for money...”.* She also said: *“Touws River is half ‘famous’ for the truck drivers who come past on the N1 and the children go and stand at the garage on the N1 and the truck drivers pick them up and they also get paid. They have sex with the truck drivers for money”.*<sup>116</sup>

Another participant mentioned her knowledge of CP as follows: *“...the kids I am thinking of were from Atlantis in particular, with sort of some sense of organisation. But I was chatting to some social workers the other day with kids in the rural areas, you know, whereas at the ages of ten or eleven they are prostituting themselves and when questioned by the social workers they’re saying but what’s wrong with this. Everybody has sex so there it wasn’t about somebody organising it but ... and it wasn’t about girls selling themselves to get the*

---

<sup>116</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*money because there wasn't food at home or they felt it was an acceptable thing to do ... and this is what people do and if I can do that and have nice things then that's ok".* (Participant J.)

As far as the social workers participant groups' **perceptions of the extent of CST** were concerned, the researcher noted the following points from the participants' responses to the question: *What is the extent of child sex tourism in the geographical area your work covers, or how much do you know about?*

Participants A, E, J and F indicated that they had some knowledge of the occurrence of child sex tourism in their area.

Participant A appeared to have knowledge of CST in her area: *"Sex tourism.... um I'm not sure but I have noticed in the Plett and Harkerville area... it seems to attract very wealthy people...and it seems for them just very easy to access children. Or to work themselves into a position where they can engage children for sex. I'm not so aware of it in Knysna...there's more in that area".*

Another Participant explained that she knew about a suspected case that was not proven, *"There was suspicion of a case in Plettenberg Bay a while ago, I think two or three years ago, but they couldn't confirm that, so there wasn't enough confirmation to follow the case through".* (Participant E.)

Although Participant F was not specific; she indicated that they had had a case some while back but nothing more recently. *"The children will get referred to us if they are identified. And then we will be involved in the therapy working with them. But if I look at the caseload at the moment ... We haven't had one like that for a while".*

Asked about the extent of CST in her area, Participant J said: *"It's a very interesting question, because if you ask me how many children have I seen – very few, but I don't doubt that there's a lot more of it happening but it doesn't get dealt with because it has a different element to it. In a sense of, you know it's not a child ... you know from a reporting perspective it's not a child whose been taken and raped for instance, and the mother goes to report it, you know there might be a colluding mother, there might be ... you know there's a whole system or kind of a whole ... support system in place to try and keep it under wraps, so I think it happens a lot more than what we know but I've seen very few of these children...Five (number of children seen by participant) if that".*

Participants B, KK, Z, C, G, K, U, Y, N indicated that they **had no knowledge of the occurrence or extent of CST in work areas**. These quotations demonstrate this.

Participant Y reacted with surprise to this question, stating: *“No, I knew about other countries like Thailand but not for our country. No! I didn’t even know it was a problem”*.

*“[I have] never come across child sex tourism”*. (Participant KK.)

*“No it doesn’t occur in our area or is not yet that open here, I am not actually aware of it”*.<sup>117</sup>  
(Participant Z.)

*“No I’m not aware of any of that that’s going on”*. (Participant B.)

In addition, Participant AA added that **the occurrence of CST was very difficult to assess**. *“Very difficult to assess”*. Participant A echoed the same sentiments: *“...it’s hard to tell because it hasn’t ...the only time I’ve heard spoken about this was when the World Cup soccer was on and then there was advertising and the Department of Social Welfare did do some talks about it to the children ... but ... it’s not in the public eye”*.

Although difficult to assess, Participant UU was of the opinion that *“the problem is bigger than we would like to admit”*. Participant J’s account concurs with that of Participant UU who also explained why she felt **the problem of CST was bigger than most people knew**, and that she only saw a few of those children: *“It’s a very interesting question, because if you ask me how many children have I seen – very few, but I don’t doubt that there’s a lot more of it happening but it doesn’t get dealt with because it has a different element to it. ... you know from a reporting perspective it’s not a child whose been taken and raped for instance and the mother goes to report it, you know there might be a colluding mother, there might be ... you know there’s a whole system or kind of a whole ... support system in place to try and keep it under wraps, so I think it happens a lot more than what we know...”*.

#### 4.4.3 Sub-theme 2: The social work participants’ accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST

On reading the transcripts of the interviews the researcher conducted with the social work participant group, the researcher, the independent coder and the study supervisor noted a

---

<sup>117</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

trend that the majority of the social work participants had disregarded the request directed by the researcher to them to share their experience of being exposed to children who were sexually exploited as clients commercially. Instead they gave accounts of child sexual molestation and abuse, incest, peer sexual molestation and child sex trafficking. Some storylines demonstrate this.

Participant C stated that she recently saw a child of two exhibiting very overt sexual behaviour. *"...two, that exhibits absolute overt sexual behaviour, that just wants to touch your breasts all the time ... ja, so it's bad for us, so when we went back a little [in his history] because he's in a place of safety, so we went back to see [where this behaviour came from] it was stuff he had been exposed to. It was out and out what he had been exposed to, what he was used to, what he saw going on around him and yes I personally feel that is also a sexual offence, a sexually abused child. You know we get anything, adults that have sex with kids, rape and so on"*.

Participant C later on in the interview mentioned: *"We have a lot to do with statutory rape, a lot, a lot. These are also the difficult cases where the child does not want to make a case because they love the boyfriend or whatever – so we get a lot of statutory rape...we have also had a recent phase where we get a lot of sodomy ... and the cases we get are very young children. Very young from about six or eight, eight years old that does it [sodomy] with each other"*.<sup>118</sup>

Participant E mentioned peer sexual molestation: *"Yes, yes I have a little one now who at age seven sexually abused the neighbour's little girl and hurt her terribly, but used objects. Yes, acting out"*, and also made reference to incest, when stating: *"...many cases of incest"*.

Participant B clearly spoke about trafficking cases when asked about CST and described her direct exposure to a suspected trafficking case. *"... recently there was a case of a couple who had moved about a year ago from Johannesburg/Pretoria area and they set up like a home schooling organisation for underprivileged children, and I mean they hardly had to pay anything but there were also a lot of rewards given to the children. There were some allegations of sexual abuse by these home schoolteachers by not only parents but by some of the children who were at the school because it was like a live-in arrangement. So but that had to be referred to the Department of Social Development because it's not in our area..."*

---

<sup>118</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*oh apart from their home schooling they had one or two other side-line businesses such as photography business and various things actually....”.*

With reference to the **social workers participant groups’ direct exposure to children engaged in prostitution**, Participants J, E, and Z mentioned that they had seen children engaged in prostitution as clients.

Participant J’s account (partially replicated in 4.4.2) is testimony to this: *“...kids in the rural areas, you know, whereas at the ages of ten or eleven they are prostituting themselves and when questioned by the social workers they’re saying but what’s wrong with this. Everybody has sex ... so there it wasn’t about somebody organising it ... and it wasn’t about girls selling themselves to get the money because there wasn’t food at home or they felt it was an acceptable thing to do ... and this is what people do and if I can do that and have nice things then that’s ok. ...It was for luxuries and it wasn’t necessarily that somebody said come and do this for me, you know they, they, I don’t know if they came up with the idea themselves but they sort of put themselves out there, without there being an organised component behind them. You know a pimp or ... somebody who is trying to say “you must go stand there and bring back X amount of money. You know these girls were sort of taking on this ... you know this ... I don’t know what one calls it, but they came up with the idea themselves and it was acceptable”.*

Participant E, although she felt that it was not prostitution in the classic sense, explained the commercial nature of the transactions she had worked with: *“...yes commercial but also that there was a reward... but in a more caretaking fashion... I just care about you, I buy you shoes, it wasn’t really like prostitution like I pay you for sex, it wasn’t a deal for money although they sometimes received money to make them ‘softer’ afterwards to keep their silence”.*<sup>119</sup>

Participant Z stated her organisation mainly comes across child prostitution in the care cases. *“There are foster care children that we know about, under 18, who run away with men or with their boyfriends, then they have nowhere to go, so they stay with the boyfriends and the boyfriends kind of sell them, or kind of force them to sleep with men so that they can have an income. It is often that the girls don’t want to do that, but they have to because they love the boyfriend and they have to get money. We have lots of problems especially if they are foster children around the age of 14, say between 14 and 18 they would have already*

---

<sup>119</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*started to exhibit behaviour problems. Sometimes the boyfriends are even 20 years older than them...".*<sup>120</sup>

Participant Y was indirectly informed about the reality of CP through the reports of her husband who came across child prostitutes in the city on a daily basis. She felt that this could also be described as CST as the children could also be offering their sexual services to foreigners and out-of-towners. *My husband works in town and when he goes to the bank over lunchtime, he's told me on numerous occasions that the street [children], the boys come to him and they offer him their various prices for various sexual services while he's standing at the auto bank. So I'm sure if they're doing that to [my husband], he's quite obviously not a tourist, they will possibly go to tourists also".*

As far as the **social workers participant group's exposure to children as victims of CST** is concerned, Participant E and Participant N were the only ones who relayed an account of direct exposure to children who were victims of CST. *"I have one example that is a beautiful example - he (the perpetrator) came from overseas and got workers from Malawi with whom he eventually ended up in sexual activities. He, in turn, supported them (financially) and cared for them, but in turn they had to take part, especially the last woman he was involved with, in sexual activities with the children he was abusing, ... In this case it was all children from broken families with absent fathers; mothers were alcoholics so the children were one hundred per cent on their own. They were dependent for food".*<sup>121</sup> (Participant E.)

Participant N's exposure was through a case where the children had been trafficked to the area from another province and were then sold by the traffickers to foreign perpetrators. *"I remember now, Karen, I think it was two years back there was a case, although it was not proven at that stage that there was another women who had two children (not her own children, but children brought from elsewhere) and then she was selling (for sex) these two children to these foreign people".*

In addition, Participant K spoke of indirect exposure to child sex tourism through a case (mentioned immediately before this storyline) her colleague Participant N dealt with, which appears to be a case of trafficking and child sex tourism as the perpetrators, to whom the children were sold for sex, were foreigners. Participant K describes as follows: *"What happened there was that children came from another province, apparently they were under*

---

<sup>120</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

<sup>121</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*the impression that they were coming to visit family members but it wasn't the case, they were then used for sexual misconduct but they still went to school and by people who stayed with them, cared for them and everything but then the sex also took place... They were sold to do it [sex] by the woman they were staying with. So she made money from it".<sup>122</sup>*

#### **4.4.4 Sub-theme 3: The non-social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery**

By way of introduction of this sub-theme focusing on the non-social workers participant groups' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST, Participant P stated that his organisation had noted a rise in the number of children being identified as children involved in sexual exploitation. He stated: *"In Muizenberg there is also more and more stories about boys being prostituted in that area, some in Hout Bay too, Blouberg Strand, there was also reports last year and the year before. There was one case that we worked on, the stretch between Port Elizabeth and Knysna, George and then towards Cape Town we have now and then picked up that the beginning of last year and the year before that that is now referred to as the 'golden mile'".*

He continued: *"What we've had also, from certain people right, they also knew that on that strip [the Garden Route], you can get all sorts of foreigners right ... you can engage with foreigners basically. When we did work about four years ago in Port Elizabeth a lot of people there were saying some of the teenage girls lined up on the Garden Route. We couldn't verify exactly where in the Garden Route, what and all that and stuff, we also tried to react at the time, we interviewed one boy and one girl, who basically the way they operated was that they got to know someone who told them that there were jobs and they would go in for jobs and the jobs wouldn't turn out to be the kind of jobs, and then very soon they then went to this one place and they were asked to entertain them, the people, and in their minds it was a party. They were going to a party, and then very soon they got paid for it and that is how it went. And then the boy eventually something happened, I think he was accused of theft or something like that, but then he started to operate by himself. And then later he got to know someone else again and then he and this other person started to operate by themselves and then very soon it turned out to be a group of about seven of them and he became the pimp basically. He was then arrested and thrown in jail for theft or something like that. And then the group then broke up, I think two of them were arrested, one was a minor at the time of*

---

<sup>122</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*the arrest, he then was an adult at the time of his arrest, but he started out when he was fourteen and a half, fifteen, also a school dropout". (Participant P.)*

The presence of sexual predators in places along the Garden Route appears to be borne out by *Knysna-Plett Herald* reporter Stander (2015:8), who maintains that "the picturesque Garden Route has been tainted by a series of horrific child sex crimes over the past decade". This reporter goes on to list various incidents of paedophiles engaging in sex with children, including a local Plettenberg Bay resident who was arrested by Belgian and South African police after following an international internet trail of individuals involved in the abuse of babies in nappies.

Additional comments on this issue come from Participants P and II respectively. "[There was]... *also an increase in the identification of minors...., being available for parties and also pornography*" and Participant II also pointed to the fact that he had noted "*young and older youth living on the streets have been sexually used by... locals in exchange for money*" but he did not talk about the extent.

All thirteen of the **non-social work participants** interviewed **referred to the occurrence of CP in their geographical areas of service delivery.**

Storylines taken from the transcribed interviews of Participants VV, RR and P speak to the extent to which CP occurs in the quoted participants' areas of service delivery.

Participant VV explained this along the following lines: "*If you see a kid at the robot now, you phone Social Development, we very seldom have kids begging at the robots. You might see one or two within the CBD area but the kids I must say not so much on the street selling their bodies as they used to but it still exists, especially at night. At night they come out, so that is when we have big business men pulling up for these kids and what do they get, a shower and a meal? So I mean it's still happening and it's still escalating but it's not visible during the day, it's now just swept under the carpet*".

In explaining her opinion about the extent of child prostitution, Participant RR said: "*I couldn't tell you the extent of it but I know that there is a demand for children and children fall into the more vulnerable category because they are easily manipulated and easily tricked, easily deceived and easily controlled. If you look at human trafficking, they [sex tourism and human trafficking] are very interlinked. I don't think you would have a child in sex tourism that hasn't been trafficked. I think that any child in sex tourism would be a trafficking victim for the*

*definition of what for children trafficking is. So when you look at the definition of trafficking, traffickers go for vulnerability because vulnerability you can exploit and children fall into the most vulnerable category of people in our country”.*

Referring to his organisation’s research into child trafficking for sexual exploitation, Participant P spoke about their findings regarding child prostitution. *“...we looked at child trafficking for the purpose of sexual exploitation, which included [or] tried to look at sex tourism for that matter and at the time what we’ve identified certainly is that Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg being sort of tourist hubs ...during certain times, so when there are lots of tourists there, appears to be in increase in provision of sexual services. Within that there is also an increase in the identification of minors involved in one or other form of sexual exploitation. And there we identified then that prostitution for example, hanging out with an older man for the duration or woman for the duration of their stay, being available for parties and also pornography, those were the things that we identified and looked at.”*

The reports of the **non-social workers participant group on the incidence and extent of CST in their geographical areas of service delivery** varied. Participants, BB and QQ were **not aware of any incidences of CST** and they responded as follows:

*“There just aren’t stats yet, not any that we believe are very accurate”.* (Participant RR.)

*“This is not something I have any knowledge on to comment”.* (Participant BB.)

*“... I really don’t know”.* (Participant QQ.)

In addition, and similar to the social workers’ comments, **this participant group also struggled to estimate the extent of CST in their geographical areas of operation.**

Participants BB, VV encapsulated it as follows: *“Child sex tourism, we don’t know. I think then [at the time of their research], it was difficult, I think now also it is very difficult to say, because of the nature of operations [how sex tourism operates] ordinarily, I think that most people, most child sex tourism, whether local or foreigners for that matter, generally know that crimes against children is a problem...one never knows as it is not reported”.* (Participant BB.)

*“I don’t know to what extent because we as an organisation haven’t had any cases of child sex tourism that have been brought to our attention. This is not to say that it doesn’t exist ...”.* (Participant VV.)

Participants II, P, AAA, S, J and N’s accounts below bear witness to the degree to which CST occurred within their areas of service delivery.

Participant II said this had been going on for years: *“For years young and older youth living on the streets have been sexually used by white male and female tourists as well as locals in exchange for money”*, while another (Participant NN) felt that the problem was bigger than suspected, *“I think it’s increasing, I never considered it before”*.

Participant P could not give exact numbers but hypothesised: *“I think child sex tourism – we don’t know. I think then [at the time his company did research on child sexual exploitation in 2000], it was just difficult, I think now also it is very difficult to say, because of the nature of operations ordinarily, I think that most people, most child sex tourism, whether local or foreigners for that matter, local tourism making an income from tourism and people generally know that crimes against children is a problem”*.

Participant AAA also had the view that CST occurs on a large scale and continued by providing a reason for this observation: *“Huge. I think tourists would come here because our laws aren’t that strict and they know that children can be bought on the streets quite easily, you know there aren’t really repercussions. And there are a lot of poor children on the streets, it’s easy”*. She also stated that children, as far as she was aware, were *“... picked up by tourists all the time”*.

Participant SS postulated: *“I do get the feeling that it’s [CST] happening, it’s big, it’s organised and that’s just from my field of interaction within this field of trafficking... She added that despite her feeling she could not put her finger on it: “...because the stats aren’t there”*.

Participant JJ directly stated: *“[CST is] ...rife. I have witnessed this personally and from within my organisation”*.

Participant NN hypothesised: *“I think it’s increasing, I never considered it before; I think the John Mattison case<sup>123</sup> really opened my eyes... I think it’s increasing I think It’s happening more often than what we like to think”*.

Three of the participants in the non-social workers group also shared **that the occurrence of CP and CST relates to big events, the holiday seasons and festivals.**

Participant II stated: *“Since Knysna is a big tourist attraction, many locals see this as an opportunity to make money. For years, mainly young women were selling their bodies in exchange for drugs or money. These activities mainly take place during big events e.g. Loerie Festival and/or Oyster Festivals”*.

Participant VV also experienced this stating: *“I have a group of gay street guys that come to me almost every day. They are part of that, so they will indicate to me when it’s high season, you know when it was the World Cup it was like heaven for them, so I mean within the adult sector Green Point would be the hive. Sea Point/Green Point the hive of activity like that within Cape Town”*.

In addition, Participant P said: *“...during certain times, when there are lots of tourists there, appears to increase [their] provision of sexual services and that within that there is also an increase in the identification of minors involved in one or other form of sexual exploitation”*.

#### **4.4.5 Sub-theme 4: The non-social work participants’ accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST**

In comparison with the social work participant group who had limited exposure to child clients operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST, the non-social work participant group, from their stories and reports, had greater exposure (directly and indirectly), to all the forms of commercial sexual exploitation.

Before focusing the discussion on this participant group’s exposure to CP and CST that resorts under the umbrella of commercial sexual exploitation of children, a few accounts and reports of the participants are given which relate to the services offered to children that exploit them for pornography and child sex trafficking purposes. This is of interest as Cullen (2006:443) asserts that child pornography “is the propaganda arm of sex tourism”, and has a

---

<sup>123</sup> Knysna Regional Court Magistrate, Thembekile Anna, sentenced John Mattison to two years imprisonment, suspended for five years, and a further R12 000 fine or 12 months in prison. Mattison had pleaded not guilty in 2008 to six counts of committing indecent acts with four boys

further reach than simply the computer or television screen. In his opinion it “incites the sex tourist and paedophile” to start a process of grooming and seduction to get children to meet with them”.

With regard to her experience involving cases of pornography, Participant HH commented: “We [referring to the NGO where she was employed] *have had cases in the past where young girls in the [our] programme were involved in an ‘organised sex ring’... the girls were forced to do sexual acts in front of cameras, recorded and [these recordings were] sent overseas*”.

Participant P’s organisation, upon investigation into some allegations of child pornography, “...found out that there was another group of foreigners, also organised, who’d come in specifically [i.e. was travelling to this area] and they also used the company to produce pornography, but they also used this to invite people to certain parties. So they would invite people to a party where people are aware that they will participate in certain kind of stuff and there is an opportunity for them to take part in the production of pornography material, things like that”.

One NGO worker (Participant AAA) had close involvement in the capacity of helping children on the street (including victims of CST) with food and with practical tasks such as obtaining their legal documents (e.g. ID documents) and reporting rape and other crimes to the police. She said children had reported to her that they had been involved in pornography. On her own investigation, she found that the police knew the perpetrator as he was a prolific pornographer. “*But at his [perpetrator’s] house – the police have gone out there numerous times and if they tell you they haven’t they’re lying, they’ve raided his house numerous times, but a lot of the people weren’t willing participants in the movies. They certainly weren’t and they were underage. Definitely underage... anything from about 14, but adults as well. The awful thing about him, he’s a really sick bastard, the people he’d get he’d actually.... I don’t know how to put it... he sourced the actors by the size of their penises and they’d be Nigerians or Congolese, then the victims would be Zimbabweans, locals and things. The one girl actually miscarried; her boyfriend actually took her there. She was underage. I think she thought it was one client and she was drugged and it was five or six clients and she miscarried. They gang raped her*”. (Participant AAA.)

This participant also had information on another incident that had been related to her by one of the adult participants in a gang rape for pornographic movies, and described it as follows: “...they were adults but they’d been taken to some farm and they’d all made this porn movie

*with them but they hadn't been paid. And they are the ones that told me about a young boy that they'd picked up outside [town], kept him there for a week, had sex with him, made a movie, paid him in heroin and then dumped him on the side of the street. The one guy felt bad enough about it that he confessed to me. I think the boy was about 17... No condoms, bareback for a week, five of them had sex with him and filmed it. A little, white boy from Fish Hoek". (Participant AAA.)*

Participant VV, in her experience with working non-therapeutically with children on the streets who came to her organisation for food, schooling, shelter and assistance with reporting incidents to the police (some being victims of rape or victims of CST), recalled what some of the children involved in pornography had related to her. *"Some kids told me about a sex movie that was being made by which they were picked up regularly every day, every night, they were taken to a room within Cape Town, a sex movie was shot. They willingly did it because they were paid R50 for the week... and they were picked up every night and participated in all kinds of acts from anal sex to blow jobs to ... you name it".*

She (Participant VV) also spoke of children (who attended her organisation's school regularly) who "disappeared" from time to time and, on their return, spoke about being involved in pornographic filming. *"Somehow they always surface and when they do, we know it was that you were making a movie or you were being abused. We had three girls a few years ago. Three girls in our school that never attended school for a week and nobody was reporting them and we got kind of worried. It was two weeks later they returned to us after we did everything to find them. They were held hostage in Green Point, in a hotel room, to do and perform sexual activities under the influence of drugs, they were given drugs so that's what happens... about 12 years-old and then the others were like 10, ja from 10 to 13"... Look it's a group of people, white people, foreign people, in a room with a bed and a camera. That's how it is described. A lot of drugs".*

Child sex trafficking, which is regarded as a form of sexual exploitation, involves the recruitment, harbouring and transportation of minors, sometimes passing young people through networks between towns and cities or other geographical distances, and in which they were coerced, forced or fraudulently induced into sexual activity with one or multiple persons. They were also used to recruit others to this network, which is serious organised crime, as it constitutes the "buying and selling" of people (Dagon, 2012:36; Dept. of State, USA, 2014:11; McCoy & Keen, 2014:169). A number of participants reported that they had exposure to child clients being victims of child sexual trafficking. Three participant's accounts are provided.

Participant K reported: *“What happened there is that children came from another province and they were apparently under the impression that they were going to visit family members here, but then that wasn’t the case, instead they were used for sexual purposes but they were still going to school and the people they were staying with were still caring for them, but then the sexual misconduct was taking place”*.<sup>124</sup>

Participant JJ, who had dealt with a number of child sexual trafficking cases, confirmed that: *“Children [are] being trafficked within Mozambique to high profile, wealthy clients. Children being moved across the Zimbabwe and Maputo borders from South Africa. Children being moved between the northern and southern provinces of South Africa via Aliwal North... but Cape Town, Johannesburg and Durban are centres for this activity”*. (Participant JJ.)

Participant VV shared the following information: *“...now and then I would get a child from Zimbabwe or Congo or wherever, now and then. I would say on a scale from 1 to 10 maybe three out of ten cases would be a foreign child. How they got here? Some of them would say they offered the truck drivers sex to get a lift to Cape Town, that’s how it starts so when they come here they think, you give sex you get what you want”*.

Of the three service provider participant groups, the non-social workers participant group had more direct contact (through their service delivery), than the social workers or the SAPS FCS Unit, with children who fall prey to CST.

Participant II made mention of the fact that: *“During past years – [he dealt with] two to three cases [related to children being involved in CST]”*.

Participant J reported providing services to more clients: *“I would say at least five to ten per year...”*.

Participant VV, who is employed by an NGO providing support, shelter and feeding services to the homeless and street people] stated: *“... the ones that are connected to me, they would range from 200–300; that’s an estimation. Most of them are doing it [prostitution]... I would think ninety per cent [of it is providing sexual services tourists] because that’s easy money. It’s the easiest way to get money, if not more. I would really say ninety per cent if not more”*.

---

<sup>124</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

Participant AAA said: “Yes *they’re* [children participant worked with] *picked up by tourists all the time...*”.

Participant HH reported: “[this year]... *we have had only one report of a child sex tourism case*”.

#### **4.4.6 Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit members’ perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery**

The responses generated by the request from the researcher to the SAPS FCS Unit member participants to share their perceptions of the extent to which CP and CST exist in their geographical areas of service delivery, clearly pointed to an increase in the number of reported cases related to child sexual abuse and molestation and not CP or CST specifically. With reference to the literature, a reason for this could *inter alia*, be in accord with Patterson’s (2007:17) view that there is a reluctance to report incidents of prostitution due to the stigma attached to it. In addition, Halter’s (2010:17) findings (explained in 4.3.5) showed that when it comes to children, concepts and definitions of CSEC are not clearly understood and have caused difficulty in the identification of children involved in the sex trade.

In support of the researcher’s search for information about the extent of CP and CST amongst the members of the SAPS FCS Unit member participants, a few storylines are provided.

Participant SAPB said: “*If you take we have about 40 cases a month, the majority of which are children, rapes - I would say 25 a month. That is rapes, sexual assaults, Section 15 – that ‘consensual sex’*”.<sup>125</sup>

Participant SAPE reported: “*...for the period from January under 5 I’ve got 6. Rape cases only...The year 2013 I’ve got the stats here ... for January month’..., only rape, I’ve got 31 that involved children under the age of 18 years for the area*”. Participant SAPE referred to child-on-child, also termed peer-on-peer, sexual exploitation (Firmin in Melrose & Pearce, 2013:50), when he stated the fact that “*there is a problem in schools whereby the kids are raping each other in the toilets, in the premises, in the school hours, after school hours*”.

---

<sup>125</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

The problem identified by Participant SAPE is not farfetched, when looking at figures quoted in *The Times* (Child, 8 September 2014) on research done by Madiba and Mokgatle, of the University of Limpopo's Department of Public Health at the Medunsa campus in Pretoria, amongst about 3 000 Grade 10 to 12 pupils from 17 selected high schools — seven in Soshanguve and ten in North West's Bojanala district. It revealed the following information about teen sexual behaviour: 60 per cent of the 3 000 Grade 10, 11 and 12 pupils said they were sexually active; 40 per cent of boys said they would have sex without a condom if the opportunity arose; 40 per cent had had two or more partners in the six months preceding the survey; 42 per cent of boys said they had had sex in the past three months, as against 28.86 per cent of girls. This data appears to bear witness to the high levels of child sex reported by the SAPS participants.

Participant SAPD reported the same trend as Participant SAPE when stating: *"Then rape is more prevalent from the ages, especially from 14, between 14-17"*. After checking the book in which he lists cases he has dealt with, he provided the following additional information: *"Okay it's not hectic, we talking about child sex abuse 2011/2012 we had 18 cases that is now ages ranging from 9-13. 2012/2013 I've got 11 cases reported. And then ages 14-17 in 2011/12 got 22 cases, currently we've got 15 for this period. Ja, sexual assaults are also included here. Period starting from 1 April up until 31st March next year"* [Interview conducted in October 2012]. He added, *"Yes we get quite a few cases, but it's mostly sexual assaults where the child was touched and that would range now in ages from zero –10, mostly that would be sexual assaults not actually rape"*.

This problem of underage sex and peer rape has been widely reported in South Africa both in print and in online newspapers such as the *Independent OnLine* (Maughan, 2006), the *Weekend Post* (Blatch, 2006) and *The Times* (Khoabane, 2014). Reports indicate that children as young as five are sexually assaulting each other, and that statistics compiled by child rights groups are recording an "increase in pre- and primary schoolchildren sexually preying on each other across South Africa" (Khoabane, 2014). In her article she states that there have been 200 sexual attacks by children on children since the start of 2014 with most cases occurring when boys follow other children into school toilets".

When focusing specifically on SAPS FCS Unit members' participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery, all the participants interviewed informed the researcher that there is no single heading under which to classify all incidences of 'child sex tourism'. This means that, as a crime, it is not distinguished as a separate entity, and statistics are not collected as particularly applying to CST. The extracts

below reflect **the SAPS FCS Unit member participants' communal perception that the occurrence of CST is a rare phenomenon in their areas of operation.**

Participant SAPD said: *"That will be the strange part of it because as much as Cape Town is a tourist destination, all these cases that I've mentioned, none of it falls into that [CST] category. We have not received any case where the child was used for sexual purposes by people, or sold to people from outside the province".* He added: *"I can't say it's not happening if it is not reported, I can't say it is not happening if it is not, you get my point, but we have not received any reports of such cases in the cluster".* Later in the interview, this participant stated that a number of cases had been reported a few years before but that the cases were never verified forensically.

Participants SAPC and SAPE both said they had never come across it: *"Though in our areas we've never had those kinds of cases"* (SAPC) and SAPE said, *"We've never had any case like this"* [CST].

SAPA thought that South Africa was a poor country which he felt would not make it a target for sex tourism: *"... the other countries that are more popular there's more challenges, more money involved, more richness. South Africa is actually a poor country at the end of the day, that's why South Africa was not targeted previously, although I'm not saying it doesn't occur or might occur".* However, he did say that he had one case which he considered represented child sex tourism, where a truck driver in his 40s had sex with a hitchhiking girl aged 13.

Participant (SAPF) hypothesised: *"Say about 10 per cent<sup>126</sup> [of child rapes were child sex tourism].* Participant SAPE said that only one case he had might be relevant. *"Not at all, only one case that we had of that nature where it was the mother who was involved and who was arrested with other people who were also selling the child.... if the mother is not there, the friend of the mother, they will take the child to the road and they will sell her".*

**The responses of the SAPS FCS units members were almost unanimously negative about the presence of child prostitution in their areas** with Participant SAPA saying, *"None of these cases we detected that prostitution";* and SAPB stating: *"As I said we have not had one case to my knowledge, that I am aware of a child involved in prostitution".<sup>127</sup>*

---

<sup>126</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

<sup>127</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

#### 4.4.7 Sub-theme 6: SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST

With reference to CP and CST, these participants had very little direct exposure in service delivery to clients with specific reference to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST

Participant SAPA was the only one who mentioned a case he felt would fit into the child sex tourism definition: "...we only had one case and that was an exception. You know the truck drivers? There was an incident in [town] where a young lady went hitchhiking and the truck driver had sex with her while...". According to SAPA the 'young lady' was 13 and had consented to sex with the truck driver who was in his 40s.

Participant SAPD shared the following information about a case he was aware of although it is clear from his account that he was incorrectly classifying a case of child sexual trafficking as CST. "*I [had] heard about it [CST before receiving notice of the research], because there were two incidents in Nyanga FCS area where there was two or three girls from Beaufort West who were recruited by a certain lady under the pretence of giving them a job here in the Western Cape but once they got here they were locked in a house in Strandfontein – so I did hear about it [but not in this area] ... It was classified as that [CST] in the sense that information from the girls was that at night they would be taken out to go [have sex with people]*".

Participant SAPA's explanation here also points to an incorrect classification of CST as trafficking: "*A few months ago there's a project that was started by a church group here in [town<sup>128</sup>] and that project was in conjunction with [an international company]. I spoke to one of those guys and he said they're busy with trafficking and I said, 'In [town]? No man, [town] is too small and I can say that if there is then it is unreported because [town] is too small. You know there's a shutdown here now, the [international company] shutdown? Now there are plenty of foreigners, guys from other cities and towns, from Durban, working on the plant now. Now they've got some project where they went to the schools and just informed the girls about this sexual activity and the grooming of girls and vulnerability of the girls with these guys being around here*".

---

<sup>128</sup> The name of the town is removed to protect the identity of the participant

The phenomenon of foreign nationals working en masse in a country and seizing the opportunity to have sex with the underage children of the underprivileged local people is described at length throughout Cullen's (2006) book. This book details his on-going fight against CST perpetrated by personnel of the US Naval bases stationed in the Philippines.

Apart from this minimal direct exposure to CST two participants mentioned their involvement in investigating CP cases.

Participant SAPC shared the following information: *"There's one case that we are investigating. It happened in [town], whereby the minor children from 13 to 15 – a child pornography case. It's a 77 year old, he's passed away now, he was arrested and passed away in prison, he was alleged to have been showing these little ones porn and then afterwards he will finger penetrate some of them and some of them he will have sexual intercourse with. So we were investigating that case that was involving at least nine victims there and we are expecting to get some more"*.

Participant SAPD confirmed that: *"Yes, we've come across it [possession of child pornography] I've just got one docket that came back from court with ... yes we've come across child pornography and there's also some cases ja. Yes we do"*.

The theme relating to the service provider group's perceptions of the extent of CSEC (with a specific focus on CP and CST), and their levels of exposure to victims and clients of these types of commercial sexual exploitation has been fully discussed.

The next section deals with the third theme about the service providers group's accounts of the profile of the victims of commercial child sexual exploitation.

#### **4.5 THEME 3: THE SERVICE PROVIDERS GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF THE PROFILES OF THE VICTIMS OF CSEC**

##### **4.5.1 Introduction**

Campaigners against CSEC have a tendency to position children as individuals who are damaged by the sex trade in a unique way due to their unique vulnerability (O'Connell Davidson, 2005:142). However, Lowe and Pearce (2006:290) question this stance as they postulate that CSEC may undermine the agency and self-determination of the child. According to O'Connell Davidson (2005:142), this view of children allows campaigners to

approach commercially sexually exploited children as a separate group. Thus CSEC is treated as a “particularly disturbing” form of violating a child’s rights, rather than asking people to consider the nature, causes and meanings of the various experiences of the children who have been caught up in sexual abuse, sexual oppression and CSEC (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:142).

The presence of children in the sex trade is “complex and ambiguous” (Melrose, 2013:161). The Western World has an idea of children as innocent (Pearce, 2013:54). However, children cannot truly be seen as “innocent, asexual, naïve and dependent on adults’ wisdom, economic support and protection” if they are prostitutes who are supposed to be “dirty, rapacious, sexually knowing, instrumental and predatory upon the frailty of men” (Pearce, 2013:54). Therefore their involvement in the global sex trade is experienced as very disturbing, partially because they break the boundaries within which they are supposedly seen, namely, either ‘childhood’ or ‘commercial sex’. Many consider these events to be mutually exclusive (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:142). Children, who are defined as passive, helpless, dependent and irrational, and treated as such in a homogenous group, are not imagined as entities capable of making choices (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:52). However, the dominant discourse on the commercial sexual exploitation of children sets them up in this way (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:52; Melrose, 2013:157-160); creating a sense that good physical and emotional development is on the one side, and on the other side, is commercial sexual exploitation representing bad development. This view does not allow children to consent to sex. Pearce (2013:58) describes it as “abused consent” and asserts that it occurs in four ways, namely, coerced consent, normalised consent, survival consent and condoned consent (Pearce, 2013:58-64).

- Coerced consent refers to the grooming of children (achieved through flattery of the victim with promises and or gifts), gradual separation or isolation of the victim from friends and family, then finally the abuse
- Normalised consent occurs where sexual violence has been normalised to such an extent that rape is no longer recognised as anything other than a tool that can be used for “initiation, intimidation and retaliation between and within rival groups”
- Survival consent is the consent that is given because of the victim’s economic need that necessitates sex in exchange for money or goods necessary to survive
- Condoned consent, which is of particular interest as Pearce (2013:67) separates the concept into two categories. First, unconscious condoned consent where practitioners are poorly trained or supported to recognise child sexual exploitation or to understand the child’s capacity to consent to sexual activity; and second would be

professional negligence where practitioners turn a blind eye to the exploitation of children.

Both boy and girl children are vulnerable to sexual exploitation worldwide. International studies (Pawlak, 2012:36) indicate that levels of exploitation of boys are lower than against girls. In the same vein, Doctors for Life (ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:71) reports that one in three girls and one in five boys in South Africa would have been sexually molested by the time they turn 18 years-old. Whether some children are more vulnerable than others is a question posed by Dagon (2012:6–19), who concludes that young people and children of both genders, from any socio-ethnic background are vulnerable to sexual exploitation. A number of factors can increase vulnerability, such as disrupted or dysfunctional family lives, history of physical or sexual abuse, poor mental health, poor or problem parenting and substance abuse, as well as children living in places of care or who are runaways (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:140-141; Kent, 2012:33; Dagon, 2012:6-19).

According to ECPAT (2013:12), some child rights activists in South Africa hold forth that commercial sex is increasing in South Africa and becoming rampant. Some parents are pushing their own girls into selling their bodies. Furthermore, pimps are known to frequently ‘recruit’ children from poor areas where little or no alternative for financial income is available for the families. Control by pimps is often exercised by using drugs and alcohol (Pearce, 2013:59; ECPAT, 2013:12), and large numbers of children are moved to South Africa from other countries in the region by traffickers, while others run away from home and end up on the streets “where the easiest way to make money is to sell themselves” (ECPAT, 2013:12). Additionally, and resulting from an inquiry into sexual exploitation of children in groups and gangs conducted in the United Kingdom by the Office of the Children’s Commissioner (Berelowitz et.al., 2012:114), children who have already being sexually exploited show identifiable behaviour. Generally the signs are: “missing from home or care, physical injuries, drug or alcohol misuse, involvement in offending, repeat sexually-transmitted infections, pregnancy and terminations, absent from school, change in physical appearance, evidence of sexual bullying and/or vulnerability through the internet and/or social networking sites, estranged from their family, receipt of gifts from unknown sources, recruiting others into exploitative situations, poor mental health, self-harm and thoughts of or attempts at suicide” (Berelowitz et al., 2012:114).

With these introductory remarks as point of departure, the focus of the discussion now turns to presenting the views of the service providers concerning the profile of the victims of

commercial child sexual exploitation. The information is arranged as sub-themes of Theme 3 and presented in the order given in the table below (see Table 4.6).

**Table 4.6: An exposition of the sub-themes related to theme 3: The service providers group’s accounts of the profile of the victims of CSEC**

<b>Sub-themes</b>
Sub-theme 1: The social work participants’ profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims
Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants’ profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims
Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members’ profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims

**4.5.2 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants’ profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims**

Although no specific question in this regard was posed to the participants, some of the participants provided the following **information in relation to the gender of the victims of CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST.**

Participant XX referred to the sexual exploitation of boys as this was her area of operation, but also acknowledged girls in the sex trade. *“I think it’s worse for girls, quite honestly, even though we’re talking about boys, I do think it’s worse for girls”.*

Participant J also mentioned her awareness of both sexes being involved in child sexual exploitation as victims: *“I refer to girls because that’s only been my experience. I am very aware that it’s not girls only”.*

These observations would agree with findings of Snell (2003:509) who reviewed literature for his study on commercial sexual exploitation of the youth in South Africa in which he focused specifically on the help-seeking and risk-taking behaviours of black youth. He reports that

taxi drivers were sexually exploiting young girls (known as “taxi queens<sup>129</sup>”) and that homeless boys were falling victim to prostitution and being exploited by “rich South African or tourist men”. Similarly, ECPAT (2013:12) reports that one-fourth of the children (boys and girls) living or working on the streets of Cape Town is engaged in prostitution.

With reference to the ages of the victims of CSEC, Participants N, J and Z provide the following information:

Participant N stated: *“The children were young between 2 and 6”*.

Participant J remarked: *“They were between sort of 12 and 15. So they were kind of in the middle of adolescence”*. This participant also pointed out that: *“...the victim becomes the perpetrator at a very young age, sometimes at age seven, six, seven, eight”*.

Participant Z said it was mainly primary school children: *“it was mostly children in the primary school, so from about 12, say about 12-14, 15, but some [children] are still in primary school then they are also 14, 15 [years-old]. So I would say it [CST] is more with the primary school children that it happened in Touws River”*.<sup>130</sup>

Although statistics are unreliable, it is reported that between 28 000 and 30 000 children, half of whom are aged between 10 and 14 years of age, and the other half between 15 and 18 years of age are said to be engaged in prostitution (Barr & Noren, 2011; ECPAT, 2013:12). It takes place either on the street, through the adult entertainment industry in clubs or through organised criminal networks in South Africa (ibid.).

As far as the emotional effect of sexual exploitation on the child victims is concerned, several scholars agree that this experience manifests in the child on an emotional level in several ways (Briere & Elliot, 2003:1207; Chase & Statham, 2005:4-25; Twill, Green & Traylor, 2010:187-199; Lalor & McElvaney, 2010:159; Cody, 2010:206 Kent, 2012:33; McCoy & Keen, 2014:170-181). They include low self-esteem, feelings of anxiety, depression, anger and aggression, post-traumatic stress, dissociation, substance abuse, sexual difficulties, somatic preoccupation and disorder, self-injurious or self-destructive behaviour, as well as symptoms of borderline personality disorder. These emotional manifestations corroborated with the information provided by some of the social work participants.

---

<sup>129</sup> ‘Taxi queens’ is a term used in Cape Town to describe young girls who ride up front with the taxi driver and entertain him all day and these girls are then exploited sexually at the end of the day (Snell, 2003:509)

<sup>130</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

The following information provided by Participants R and XX pointed to the fact that the effect of being sexually exploited contributes to the **child victim becoming emotionally blunt or numb**.

Participant R explained that children, especially foreign children who may be trafficked into South Africa become emotionally blunted: *"...the child then [after sexual exploitation] again becomes blunt... and that's one of the reasons why, for instance within the broad spectrum why socio-pathology and lack of empathy is rising like it is, because of this. So I think they get despondent because the help they require from – not formal systems – but informal systems is little and it's almost downplayed. The impact on the child's life is almost downplayed, so they [the children] become despondent because they know what it means. I think secondly, it's always a question of money, organisations can't drive this type of thing and they can't drive it long enough so some children which have been identified with post-traumatic stress or post-traumatic stress disorder, they need to have long term therapy"*.

Participant XX mentioned one child she worked with who was so numb he could not speak of what had happened to him, saying: *"When he first came, he couldn't even talk he was so traumatised. He would sit on my floor crawling and whatever and he changed his name and then he went back on the streets and he came back and forward and only like two years later did he actually start talking about it"*. She later added: *"It just paralyses them in some ways and some never really recover, some do, some partially. I don't know anyone who's recovered 100 per cent, it always scars them"*.

Participant J drew attention to the fact that CSEC **confuses the victims and they continue to experience feelings of confusion**: *"I think the most difficult part of it [referring to the CSE] has been the confusion. Sexual abuse in itself is difficult to deal with, but when the reward is I don't want to say useful but when it is something tangible or something, you know that I can feed my family with or clothe myself with or buy nice things and then by implication that maybe I need to take some responsibility for it cause I got something out of it... is enormously difficult for children and they take a lot of responsibility for what happens to them and have little understanding for how manipulative and subtle their grooming was into this process. ... and I think that's the most difficult for them and I think also that parts of the experience may have been pleasurable so he did take me to a nice place and he did buy me nice clothes or my body did have a nice reaction for some parts of it. So it's not only bad, horrible, terrible you know there's these kind of elements of nice which are very confusing for kids"*. This participant later in the interview, once again referred to the confusion, but also added that some of the victims of CSE also experience feelings of self-blame and feeling

responsible for what has happened: She stated: *“So I think that the most difficult thing for them is the self-blame and the responsibility and the confusion...”*. Contrary to Participant J's viewpoint, McCoy & Keen (2014:179), postulate that self-blame is not an effect suffered by many child victims of sexual exploitation.

Participant J's experiences bear witness to the fact that child sexual exploitation occurs in deeply confusing circumstances and can result in children not knowing who perpetrated the abuse or even, in some cases, how many perpetrators were involved in the abuse (Berelowitz, et al, 2012:98). In cases where consent has been extracted by coercion, or if children have been “sold” by family members, there is an added sense of abandonment, guilt and confusion. This often results in the victim either not seeking or taking assistance when it is offered; or protecting the perpetrator and even looking for a way to contact the perpetrator even after a perpetrator or perpetrators have been sentenced to imprisonment (Pearce, 2013:59).

In confirming the opinion the sexually exploited children choose to return to the abusers. Participant XX described her experience of working therapeutically with a boy who had done this. *“...and yet he kept going back there as well, so one wonders what attracted him or was it that that's where he could ... I asked him once, you know because now he is very articulate and he's grown in confidence and he talks to me and I said why did you keep going back if it was so horrible. He said because those are the people I could talk to, they understood what was going on, so even though he went back he felt some sort of relief about being able to talk to other people about it, but then it was recurring!”*

Apart from the CSE leaving the victims confused, Participant J stated that: *“Many of them [i.e. victims of CSE] also sit with pent-up **aggression and display ‘acting out’ behaviour**”*. Participant E pointed out that CSE effect-wise may contribute to **a preoccupation with sex and engaging in various sexual activities**: *“Yes, even if they don't experience [sex as traumatic] or say it wasn't so traumatic, it has a tremendous emotional impact on their whole functioning. That dynamic of sexually abused... I am thinking now of that traumatic sexualisation ... that at an early age the sexual light is turned on, so they engage in other sexual activity, so their sexuality is no longer something expensive [valuable], it becomes cheap ...”*.

Sometimes sexually exploited children, subsequent to the abuse, suffer from sexual dysfunction or excessive sexual activity and/or act out this dysfunction by means of inappropriate sexual behaviour (Lalor & McElvaney, 2010:159; Pawlak, 2012:39; McCoy &

Keen, 2014:180-181). Participant XX commented on this sexual 'acting out' by boys she had worked with therapeutically, saying: "*The biggest [effect] is really afterwards [after CSE has occurred], if they've been abused, they might tend to abuse others and that is where we are really trying to stop the cycle, but we will sometimes find a boy who's been on the streets will come in and start trying to abuse others here [at the shelter]*".

Both Participants E and XX emphasised that **CSEC** has an **impact on the victims' self-esteem**. Participant E said: "*...obviously it affects their value. I think their self-image and their self-worth are hugely affected because you've been used even if you can't verbalise it*". Participant XX spoke about this after-effect of sexual exploitation as follows: "*Obviously [the children have] repetitive thoughts, night terrors, sometimes sexually-transmitted diseases, them becoming perpetrators themselves, just the self-disgust. That's what I've been working with particularly with this one boy this week, the absolute horror that he could have been in this and that he's dirty for the rest of his life and suicidal thoughts and actions, tendencies, stunted growth emotionally, physically, mentally*".

Participant J also referred to children feeling stigmatised, especially the child's engagement in prostitution: "*... and it's [referring to being engaged in prostitution] something that they can't just discuss with the community out there because the community would label them as prostitutes, you know you wanted this, you knew what you were getting yourself into et cetera so we have no time for you*". Stigmatisation, according to Patterson (2007:16,17) has a negative consequence for the children and also for law enforcement, as this causes children to avoid coming forward to report or testify in cases.

In addition, Participant X mentioned the following after effects of CSE: "*It affects their schooling, their concentration, their ability to function in a normal society because the normal boundaries have been so eroded. They would often have then behavioural problems; they're not going to respect rules and regulations because no-one's respected them. Drugs is a huge thing often after these things, boys will sometimes only start using drugs afterwards*".

#### **4.5.3 Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims**

With reference to the **race of the victims of CSEC**, two of the participants made mention of this, stating:

*“More black and coloured, but a number of whites as well”.* (Participant JJ.)

*“Both, black and coloured as far as I know”.* (Participant YY.)

Various sources were consulted regarding the race of children involved in CSEC. Cluver, Bray and Dawes (2007:247) observe that little reference is made to racial classification in the literature. However, Snell (2003:511) confirms the presence of black youths in commercial sexual activities in his study on the commercial sexual exploitation of youth in South Africa in which he interviewed 30 black youths who were engaged in commercial sex in Cape Town.

The non-social workers participant groups' had varying viewpoints around the **gender of the victims of CSEC** as is evidenced by the accounts of Participants HH, II, NN and VV who specifically raised this point.

*“They were all girls”.* (Participant HH.)

*“Only boys”.* (Participant II.)

*“Both male and female, but more predominantly female”.* (Participant NN.)

*“I would say it's 50/50, it's both the same, you can't say there are more boys or more girls, because the girls and the boys, they're just as bad as the other. So I would say there are more girls that want to change. The guys it's all about gangs and numbers and things like that, so it's harder for them to reform. The girls if they fall pregnant it's easy for them to be taken home or into places like St Anne's<sup>131</sup>, so the girls are more ready to change and stop [selling sex] and come off [the street] than the guys are”.* (Participant VV.)

When looking at the literature on the gender of the victims of CSEC, female children, trafficked for sexual exploitation make up the bulk (79 per cent) of child trafficking cases while a further 18 per cent involve forced labour (Beddoe et al., 2001; Holt, 2010; Kan in Hartjen & Priyadarsini, 2012:138). Pawlak (2012:36) suggests that “numerous national surveys” have delivered information to suggest that there is more sexual exploitation of girls than boys, but he adds that boys are less likely to seek help via formal services and therefore their sexual exploitation may be underreported.

---

<sup>131</sup> St. Anne's Homes is a non-government organization that provides shelter and care for destitute, abused and disadvantaged mothers and their children.

The non-social workers participant group shared information similar to that of the social workers participant group in relation to the ages of the victims involved in CSEC.

Participant YY said, *"...children were from the ages of 7-18-years old"*.

Participant VV informed the researcher: *"I've worked with boys and girls that started in this line (i.e. CP and CST) from the age of 7, 8 years old"*.

Participant II, with reference to the ages of the victims thought: *"Between the ages of 11-17 years. Most of them living on the streets"*.

Participant NN said: *"The ones I saw were 8 to 10. Definitely under 12, definitely underage"* while HH said: *"At the time of the case they were 12-14 years of age"*.

As mentioned under 4.5.2, the ages of children involved in CSEC are reported to be split about 50/50 between the age range of 10 and 14 years of age and 15 and 18 (Barr & Noren, 2011; ECPAT, 2013:12).

The participants volunteered a number of significant issues in addition to the questions asked according to the prepared interview style sheet. Participants NN and VV added to the profile by telling of their experiences with many of their client victims using chemical substances inappropriately, and even becoming addicted to them. They suggest that such behaviour is seen as an integral part of the culture of CSEC, and a way to deal with the aftermath of their involvement in CSEC.

*"... you know from our experience, from the children who come into [shelter], or have come in via the drop-in and have been interviewed, they all admit that they used drugs really to help blank them out and help them forget"*. (Participant NN.)

*"If they are not drugged they can't cope with being not drugged because it's as if they have to face this reality of what they are doing, so most of the time they are drugging to forget. They know what they are doing is not right, they know the dangers of it, all the illnesses, everything medical, your life, everything but they do drugs to forget about it, to make it okay. On the other hand they're doing it to feed the drugs and they're using the drugs to deaden the pain"*. (Participant VV.)

Perpetrators ply the child with drugs or alcohol to get the child to be dependent or addicted. Coercing consent for sex from a dependent child makes it easier for the abuser, as is the case with an addicted child who will then look to the abuser to fulfil his or her need for the drug easier. Once the child is dependent, the abuser is able to force the child into sexual acts with other abusers (Pearce, 2013:59; ECPAT, 2013:11). In addition, there is an increased risk of substance abuse (both legal and illegal) amongst children who have been sexually abused, and theories have been proffered to support the supposition that they may do so to deal with the memories of the abuse (McCoy & Keen, 2014:175).

Participant QQ, whose work focused on child sexual trafficking for the purpose of CSEC, added to the profile of the victims of CSEC saying that many victims come from drug syndicates. She commented: “...our victims they’re coming from syndicates, like rings that usually deal drugs and give [drugs to the] girls”.

In continuing with this sub-theme of profiling the victims of CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST, Participants II, VV, QQ and PP made additional points. They alluded to many of their clients becoming prey to some form of **CSEC as a result of poor social conditions at home; being in need of care and having to fight for survival; and their entry into this world of CSEC is, in many cases, violent and due to their drug addiction**<sup>132</sup>.

Many victims live on the street as a result of having run away from home for a number of reasons. As Participant II stated, “Most of them [were] living on the streets (approximately 6-7 boys)”.

*“A lot of my kids [children in her care] freely arrived in Cape Town. Some of them walked from Beaufort West or walk or hike from rural areas, coming to Cape Town with this dream that it’s a city and you’ll find work and everything bad happens here that they want to be involved in so a lot of my kids brought themselves here and a lot of them were deserted here by mothers and fathers, so they are all local kids. There are no people that ... now and then I would get a child from Zimbabwe or Congo or wherever, now and then. I would say on a scale from one to ten maybe three out of ten cases would be a foreign child. How they got here? Some of them would say they offered the truck drivers sex to get a lift to Cape Town, that’s how it starts so when they come here they think you give sex you get what you want”.* (Participant VV.)

---

<sup>132</sup> This aspect will again be dealt with when the factors contributing to CSEC with reference to CP and CST are discussed further as Theme 5 in Chapter 5 and is also addressed in Chapter 3 (3.8.2)

Regarding the migration of children from other countries to South Africa, ECPAT (2013:11) reports that recently there has been an increase in the number of migrant children from neighbouring countries, mainly Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Swaziland and Lesotho. During the 2008/9 period it was estimated that around 4 000 migrant children were living on their own separated from any close relatives and away from their countries of origin.

In terms of them being drugged and controlled, Participant QQ claimed that “...before that they have been abducted, they’ve been raped, they’ve been put on drugs so they are vulnerable”.

And regarding violence, another participant asserted that: “...part of this operation was also to take them, sort of to abduct them, and then to rape them and then to put them out on the street or prostitute them almost the same day, that is what we found”. (Participant PP.)

Sometimes their own parents introduce their children to the sex trade or to being sexually exploited (Patterson 2007:20; Barr & Noren, 2010:1; Ebbe, 2010:55; ECPAT, 2013:12).

Participant AAA, when discussing a particularly prolific child sex tourist known to her and to whom children were regularly sent by their mothers, said: “*But the mothers send their children!*”

Participant VV also found that the children’s parents were their children: “...mothers and the fathers who are selling them along the streets”.

The literature consulted echoes the point that children are rendered vulnerable due to a number of different factors that may be once-off or endemic, such as being orphaned or abandoned, or simply left behind when carers leave, which means a child loses a significant person, who may be protector and provider (Rock, Karabnow and Manion, 2012:349-350; ECPAT, 2013:10). Children can also become vulnerable as a result of family dysfunction, as is the case when their families break up during a divorce or separation or when they themselves indulge in high risk activities, like running away from home, substance abuse or criminal activity (Rock, Karabnow and Manion, 2012:349-350). This is indicative of the proximal processes taking place in the microsystem, as described by Bronfenbrenner (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:5; Ongwuegbuzie et. al., 2013:4), which may be chaotic or disorganised.

The effects of CSEC (described in 4.5.2 above) were also seen by some of the participants in this category, notably their emotional numbness. Participant VV reported a similar type of emotion manifesting in children as a result of CSEC as described by the social workers in sub-section 4.5.2: *“They become emotionless. They lack emotion. They are just cold as ice. They don’t share feelings, they just share stories. They are like they are just existing”*.

#### **4.5.4 Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members’ profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims**

In terms of the ages of children involved in CSEC one participant described a case in which a child was sold by her mother and other perpetrators to travellers. Participant SAPE said: *“I think she was 13”*.

Another participant (SAPA), referring to the incident between a young girl and a truck driver said: *“She was 14- years- old, 13-14- years old”*.

Participant SAPD also related that he had dealt with an isolated case of a Congolese boy, as well as a 15-year-old girl, who had been involved in prostitution. *“We had one case of a 14-year-old boy there was one case of a 14-year-old boy who came to lay a charge of rape here in Cape Town”*. He then remembered another case and added: *“...there was also a 15-year-old girl from Kensington here in Gardens [an area of Cape Town]. We also had that one case where the mother said she was actually prostituting herself, but when we got her she denied all that and said she was just walking up and down in Gardens Street because she was angry with the mother in Kensington”*. Later on, this participant also said: *“Thinking way back but I can’t point was it in 2007/2008 around there, there was a lady<sup>133</sup>, there was a white lady who stayed in Camps Bay who used to come with boys from 14, between 14 and 16, no, no between 12 and 16 to say that these boys were picked up by adult men, picked up in cars”*.

The age ranges the participants described in these comments reflect the literature presented in the section on social workers (see Section 4.5.2 above).

This group supplied very little information about the effect of CSEC on the victim. However, one of the FCS Unit members interviewed described his overall observation and attitude

---

<sup>133</sup> This ‘lady’ referred to by Participant SAPD turned out to be Participant AAA whose comments are included in this thesis.

towards victims of child sex crimes. *“Our victim remains the client even after the closure of the case. My experience when it comes to victims of sexual offences is like the example of Humpty Dumpty. You know Humpty Dumpty was an egg, you know what happens to an egg when they fall off. We try to bring that egg, you will never get it in that perfect form again but at least try to put it in, so that he or she, and I tell you he or she can at the end of the day we put counselling in place at the end of the day we like to bring that person’s life back to normal, although the scars could be there, there was a healing process”.* (Participant SAPA.)

Having presented (Section 4.5), the contribution of the service providers groups concerning the profile of the victims of commercial child sexual exploitation, the next section focuses on the profile of the perpetrators.

#### **4.6 THEME 4: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS’ ACCOUNTS OF THE PROFILE OF THE PERPETRATORS OF CSEC**

##### **4.6.1 Introduction**

Much is written about the perpetrators of child sexual exploitation and the buyers of child sex (Kent, 2012:33; Melrose, 2013:155-168; McCoy & Keen, 2014:156-159). However, O’Connell Davidson (2005:110) suggests that the relationship between supply and demand of purchased sex may be far more complex than at first supposed.

As explained in Chapter 1, Section 1.1.2, perpetrators of child sex vary considerably in who they are and what they do and can be defined either as paedophiles or simply as opportunistic users of child sex. Yet O’Connell Davidson’s (2005:86) opinion is that children being present in the sex trade has little to do with paedophilia. There are other forms of child sexual exploitation that are connected to paedophilia, such as pornography. Far less is known about the individual characteristics of perpetrators of child sexual exploitation than is known about their victims. However, many authors (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:110; Berelowitz et.al., 2012:98; Melrose, 2013:155-168; McCoy & Keen, 2014:157) report that the majority of buyers of sex are men who sometimes utilise elaborate grooming processes in order to gain the child’s compliance (Melrose, 2013:161; McCoy & Keen, 2014:159).

The children who work alongside adult prostitutes are often children who operate in various forms of prostitution. O’Connell Davidson (2005:116) maintains that they exist because clients are willing to pay for their services, although some perpetrators will rather travel for child sex as they fear arrest in their own countries (Patterson, 2007:20). According to

O’Connell Davidson (2005:104), children who are prepubescent (aged around 6 to 7) are not freely trading sex on the streets or in brothels in the contemporary world, and the fact that Western paedophiles travel to former so-called Third World or developing countries bears witness to this lack of supply in their home countries.

In terms of pornography, the internet has greatly enhanced the ability to record, store and retrieve large volumes of child pornography and for paedophiles to form clubs or networks through which they share their images (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:103). In addition, the internet has assisted paedophiles to create new forms of grooming (Melrose, 2013:161) and abuse, which include the instantaneous transmission of abuse in real time to a number of online viewers (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:103, Melrose, 2013:164). A recent report in The Star (Independent Online, 23 October 2014), mentions a sting operation using a computer-generated Filipino girl named “Sweetie” that drew more than 20 000 predators from 71 countries who approached the virtual 10-year-old asking for webcam sex performances over a 10-week period. This bears witness to the popularity of this method of abuse.

Social welfare structures such as adoption, fostering and institutional care of children are also channels that perpetrators sometimes use to access children for the purposes of sexual exploitation (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:106; Berelowitz et al., 2012:101; Shuker, 2013:125).

According to an inquiry by the Office of the Children’s Commissioner in the UK into Child Sexual Exploitation in Gangs and Groups, conducted in 2010-2011, perpetrators act alone or in tandem with others (Berelowitz et al, 2012:98). Although child sexual exploitation has always been thought of as a domain inhabited or at least dominated by adults, evidence shows that children are now not only victims but perpetrators as well (Melrose & Pearce, 2013:167). The responses provided by the different service provider participant groups (see Table 4.7) in relation to the perpetrators of commercial sexual exploitation with the view of presenting a profile of them are recorded under sub-themes of Theme 4.

**Table 4.7: An exposition of the sub-themes related to theme 4: The service provider groups’ accounts of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC**

Sub-theme
The social work participants’ profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi
The non-social work participants’ profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi

The SAPS FCS Unit members' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi

The focus of the presentation now turns to the first sub-theme under Theme 4, namely: the social workers participant groups' profiling of the perpetrators of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and their modus operandi.

#### 4.6.2 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi

**Many of the social work participants did not interact with perpetrators at all and could not comment on their characteristics needed for the compilation of a profile of them, as they felt this was not their area or focus of service delivery.** This observation was aptly summarised by Participant F who explained: *"It's not our focus area. I mean I know we need to look at building systems where everybody, you know a whole team, I mean in Childline we did. We had a social work who worked with the perpetrators, we had this one who worked with that aspect but in an NGO it's very difficult, it's very difficult to ... [we are] subsidised by Social Development to work only with children, so we don't get funding to work with adults... it is a problem because I don't know who works with adults apart from community safety or that department, ja and private psychologists who refer them but as ourselves we don't have anything to do with them".*

However, the ones who did respond to the questions related to the perpetrators of CSEC (with specific focus on CP and CST) based their accounts on information obtained from their child clients, while only Participants A, R, and UU referred to the fact of having had direct social work involvement with the perpetrators.

In terms of **the countries or places of origin of the perpetrators**, the social work participants disclosed that, from their clients' accounts, many of them (Participants UU and XX especially) felt that they dealt mainly with international customer perpetrators. Others mentioned only locals from different towns or cities in South Africa (Participants R and Z), and some said there was a mix of both local and international perpetrators (Participants J and Z). What is also clear is that the **perpetrators (i.e. the customers) in the context of CP and CST mostly operated as outsiders and not where they resided.** The participants' accounts support this observation.

*"... from the USA and UK".* (Participant UU.)

Another participant relayed the following information about the countries of origin of her clients' customers (the perpetrators): "[The perpetrator] *has a German accent, it might be Swiss, it might be... but this is what the boys tell us, not only and not exclusively but there definitely is a big percentage. That's what they say*". (Participant XX.)

"Well I think that they are **both local and international** and they are people who have sexual addictions and are attracted to children. I'm hesitant to use the word 'paedophile' because I think it has certain, you know, categories or requirements but really people who think it's acceptable to be sexually active with children". (Participant J.) This participant elaborated on the local (out-of-towners) as perpetrators when stating: "*People travelling through their communities, so not international you know, not that kind of thing .... So the girls have been placed at certain places where they are visible to people who are travelling through those communities, or those certain areas would be targeted for you can go there and get X. You know ... but they were kind of people, older men in the community, older men driving through ... local South Africans*".

Participant Z shared the same observation in terms of the country of origins of perpetrators being local out-of-town South Africans when stating: "*The sex tourists whom I have seen would be pretty local, well not local in terms of Paarl, but local in terms of our country...*".

In addition, describing the offenders of whom she was aware, Participant Z stated that some were **local residents** and others who were foreigners [**i.e. outside-of-towners**] delivered goods for their pop-up [and spaza] shops. "*Some stay in Worcester [town], some come here if they are maybe delivering stuff for the businesses they set up here and then they will ... the children*".

The **gender of the majority of perpetrators** involved in CSEC, from the literature consulted, is generally predominantly male and the perpetrators who engage in these acts in groups and gangs too are described as mainly males (Patterson, 2007:19; Kent, 2012:33; Pitts, 2013:25). While the social workers who referred to this aspect thought of **males being the perpetrators in most cases** but some of them also mentioned female perpetrators as well. Storylines that follow illustrate this.

According to the accounts of Participant XX's clients "... *some [referring to the gender of the perpetrators] are coloureds they tell me, but they say it's mostly white and they often say it's mostly fat, ugly men*". She also alerted the researcher to the fact that sometimes the

**children are engaged as co-perpetrators**, in the sense that they organise younger children for the perpetrators. She referred to the following case. *“It’s the older boy and then it’s the German who takes them in the car and then there’s the end user”* and she added *“...but as soon as it starts getting dark there’s an older boy who also used to live here actually but he’s an adult now and he then recruits the younger ones and pays them in drugs and sometimes in food to go and have sex with other people”*.

This practice of children grooming children for sex has been termed ‘peer-to-peer grooming’ and is recognised by Pearce (in McAlinden, 2013:6) who says that it has occurred recently in the context of “street grooming where young people may be groomed into recruiting others into sexually exploitative networks”.

Participant K commented on who the perpetrators are, especially within the context of child sexual trafficking by sharing the following observation which is worth noting: *“It was older men”*<sup>134</sup>.

Apart from the information related by the social workers about the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC, Participant UU offered an explanation that corroborates with the type of sex tourist described by O’Connell Davidson (2005:136) and Patterson (2007:20). Their description is that such sex tourists tell themselves that there are ‘cultural’ differences in prostitution and, when engaging in sex with a person from a different culture, they are not actually paying for sex but are rather lending a helping hand to the person who is less fortunate than they are. Therefore they do not think they are doing anything wrong. Participant UU confirmed this exposition. *“... the perpetrator, in my mind, in terms of what I do, would be somebody who knows you know where to find children or people that would fit the profile and where he’s going to be able to use the resources at his disposal and also where there’s going to be more impunity, less chance of being caught and also finding communities, finding geographical locations where there’s almost a justification for buying the commodity. So if I’m going to a poor rural community, the justification is this is a community that’s making a choice, they need money resources and therefore it is less harmful”*. She also said, *“... the people don’t necessarily see themselves as perpetrators, but refer to themselves as sex love addicts, people that have resources, that are able to travel and who refer to their offences as relapses and addictions...”*. (Participant UU.)

---

<sup>134</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

Another participant said: *“Perpetrators will know that if I can get help I can be in the system I can be in a therapeutic support programme, then the chances that that person will be prosecuted will be less. So it’s often a carrot in front of the donkey’s nose, but you catch those people out because their endurance for therapy is low and they want a quick fix”*. (Participant R.) This is an example of how the microsystem is influenced and the exosystem is guided by the macrosystem, if applying Bronfenbrenner’s ecological systems theory, chosen as the framework for this report (Muuss, 2006: 308).

This result of such a state of affairs, according to Participant E, is circumspect. *“They [referring to the perpetrators in CSEC-cases] often pretended as though they played a very innocent role in the child’s life”*.<sup>135</sup> This belief or impression by perpetrators that their behaviour does not victimise the child was also found by Patterson (2007:20) who speaks about evidence gathered by using investigative techniques used by the FBI’s Miami office (US) that are both proactive (sophisticated techniques, such as undercover operations) and reactive (cases where victimisation has occurred or is imminent). This FBI research found that most of the American child sex tourists the FBI interviewed in the course of their informal research admitted that they would never attempt to pay for child sex within the USA. Participant R’s remarks about the local perpetrators latch on to these viewpoints: *“...will almost always be [from the] middle and high middle class and they will offend in areas which are low middle class to cover their tracks, so it would and I can’t say a specific race or a specific language, I would just say that it’s almost always high middle class and it will always be almost, and there’s also, with more international flair – our seaboard area around Cape Town, Camps Bay, Fresnaye, with more international flair. That’s high middle class. You will see it from them, but they won’t necessarily offend there, it will be somewhere else”*.

The most prolific modus operandi of child pornography perpetrators is now presented.

Participant UU, who worked extensively with perpetrators of CSEC, pointed to the fact that the **child pornographers tend to be very possessive and territorial**. She explained: *“The sex offenders that I work with; they are really, really territorial, they’re not into sharing... for a while, they might share the pornography aspects but they’re very proud of their little domains so they’re not going to share, they will share if they’ve made a pornographic video of the victim, they’ll share that, unless the victim has outgrown them in terms of preference and age they might disseminate that but they’re not going to give up their victims, not until they’re done with the victims”*. In her experience, Participant UU also found that **there was huge**

---

<sup>135</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English.

**financial disparity between the abused and the pornographic abuser.** *“My contact has been with mainly perpetrators here, the ones that have engaged with cross-border activities are people with more resources, people with more exposure, the ones that have engaged with protracted tourist activities, like pornography, are people who are more savvy in terms of technology and so they would have forged links with the Man/Boy Love Association, for instance, and those folk would be very specific in terms of preferences. It would be your homosexual paedophile attracted to boy children or the heterosexual paedophile attracted to prepubescent girls, that were only accessing these sites and that’s with the pornographic thing”.*

The focus of the presentation now moves on to the accounts of the non-social work participants in an attempt to provide a complete profile of the perpetrators.

#### **4.6.3 Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants’ profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi**

The non-social workers participant groups’ accounts of **the countries or places of origin of the CSEC perpetrators** correspond with those of the social workers in that they also refer to the perpetrators as hailing from overseas and locally. However, they are termed ‘local’ in the sense that some stay in a different suburb and some are the so-called ‘out-of-town’ local South Africans.

The following storylines exemplify this. *“In my experience the greater majority originate from across borders... I would say the majority [are from other countries]: Zimbabwe, Maputo, Mali”.* (Participant JJ.)

Participant P described the perpetrators as follows: *“...there were foreigners involved ... setting up some form of adult entertainment business in Gordons Bay... that involved Germans and Brits and Israelis, and then the pornography one [i.e. referring to a business venture the manufacturing of pornographic material] was German, Brits and Americans and South Africans, Namibians and Tanzania. There was the one guy was from Tanzania, but I think he was living in England for a very, very long time. There were South Africans also involved there and then Zimbabweans were involved”.* He also adds that he knows of another perpetrator from Italy: *“there was another case that we also had that was a foreigner that came into South Africa, was here for three days, then basically was found with a child that was fifteen years of age ... he was from Italy”.* He (Participant P) also mentioned other purchasers of child sex as follows: *“The intermediaries and the pimps ... included [people]*

*from South East Asia, Africa and also Germany*'. The minimal reference to American tourists in the participants' accounts does not agree with Patterson's (2007:17) reported finding that 25 per cent of international child sex tourists hail from the United States.

Commenting on perpetrators she had encountered in places along the Garden Route, Participant NN said: *"they're swallows [i.e. foreigners who spend a few months in South Africa and a few months overseas], they're not permanent residents... Holland or Belgium"*.

Both Participants HH and II said that their experiences led them to believe they were mainly South Africans: *"Most of them were from South Africa"* (Participant HH) and *"...my experience is that almost of them are South Africans"*. (Participant II.)

**The majority of the non-social work participants affirmed that the bulk of the CSEC perpetrators were men.** Participant JJ stated: *"Roughly 90 per cent male – 10 per cent female"* and he reiterated: *"... the majority of cases that we have come across have been mainly male perpetrators; there have been female perpetrators in terms of being intermediaries or being the pimps"*. This agrees with the findings of Patterson (2007:19), which show that the majority of child sex tourists are male.

Participant P noted: *"And then we came across only one case, it was a group of women [that] procured the boys and then they would have this party..."*.

This phenomenon of recruiting children for adult parties is also in the literature consulted. Berelowitz et al. (2012:99), reporting for the Children's Commissioner in the United Kingdom on the inquiry into child sexual abuse by gangs or groups in the UK (2010 – 2011), find that children describe incidents such as 'parties' at several different locations. Here several men drug the children or ply them with alcohol so they will not know what is happening to them when they are being raped and sexually assaulted.

Melrose (2013:161-162) did research (between 2009-2011) for the United Kingdom's Local Safeguarding Children Boards (LSCB) and interviewed staff who were employed in statutory and voluntary roles in various aspects of service provision in the sphere of sexual exploitation of children. Some of the interviewees had encountered clients who had experienced the phenomenon of sexual exploitation in gangs, while others had not. Those practitioners who did mention 'partying' as a form of exploitation did not associate it with organised exploitation that involved gangs (Melrose, 2013:161-162). However, Melrose posits that, if men were encouraging young girls who were invited to 'recruit their peers to

parties' had the intention of passing them around amongst them, then some form of organisation must have been behind their strategy.

Another characteristic added by the non-social work participants to the profiling of the **CSEC perpetrators** was that, as individuals, they **were wealthy**.

In this regard, Participant NN said: *"I would say they're wealthy, they have the money because, you know, why fly here, so they definitely have the money... [there are] characters in town that are implausible tourists so my concern is I think it's happening more often than what we like to think ..."*

Participant YY confirmed this aspect: *"I think there are a lot of high-powered well connected wealthy people who are involved in an industry and so there's a lot of corruption and bribery to keep it under wraps"*.

Participant UU commented to the same effect when stating: *"a lot of the offenders don't represent the disadvantaged, disempowered, poor people..."* and, also that, in her opinion: *"...the offenders are well-resourced, a lot of them highly articulate, they're very suave, very charming"*.

Participant VV not only pointed to the gender of the CSEC perpetrators, but also referred to the fact that she saw them as executives when she shared the following: *"In our night street work 80 per cent [were] male white executives... I would say from 40 onwards... European, British. But over the years the foreigners, the black foreign nationals, they have also escalated over the years, but it's more, I would say white, I would say British, you can't say British really, like European countries, more that type of man that would want this sick service from a child. That's what I would say, so it's European white males, over the age of 40. You find local white males that are into the gay side of that but they would be the ones walking around or stopping in the local car, you could see its middle class but not as executive. The ones that would go for the kids are normally the ones that are wealthier; it's hard to believe ..."*

Participant VV, in addition, pointed to **the violent and sadistic nature of some of the perpetrators** when sharing the following information with the researcher: *"I know that it is so much more violent than what I make it sound like because I had a girl that was raped. She was a sex worker, 17 years-old, three years ago they broke a wine bottle and shoved it up her vagina, and somehow this guy got pleasure out of doing that to her and there's many*

*cases with violent sexual acts that makes me not want to sleep at night. You get guys that tie these kids up, you get them that want them to dress up like all kinds of characters, but for me the worst is the brutality of some of these cases and the sickness that some of these men get off on. The girl that was brutally raped like that [referring to a girl who was raped with a broken bottle], she didn't survive".*

With reference to **the modus operandi of the perpetrators**, the non-social work participants shared the following information.

Participant P confirmed the fact **male perpetrators of sexual exploitation of children travel to poor and developing countries and establish permanent or temporary residence, in order to gain access to children for sex**, as documented by O'Connell Davidson (2005:127). He said: *"...they [perpetrators] are staying in South Africa for long periods, they are not just short-term travellers or tourists, they have been staying and a very few of them have been tourists travelling in and out for short stays, and it was Europeans, German, British, Americans, African".*

Participant NN echoed the same sentiments. *"I certainly do have concerns, particularly, you know there's a classification term 'the swallows'. Swallows for me are people who are not permanent residents, they are actually foreigners, whether from Europe or from the rest of the world who come and live or stay in Plettenberg Bay for an extended summer season. Some of them arrive in October and they leave in May".* She also talked about one perpetrator she was aware of and with whom she had interacted: *"[The perpetrator] was a foreign national but he had residence here, but he hadn't been in the country for decades".*

Whilst child sexual exploitation has always been thought of as a domain inhabited or at least dominated by adults, evidence shows that children are now not only victims but are perpetrators as well (Berelowitz et al, 2012:98; Melrose & Pearce, 2013:167). The perpetrators will engage in a process of grooming by becoming part of the community or the child's environment, and this facilitates their intentions without the use of force, and without detection (McCoy & Keen, 2014:159). Participant NN confirmed this modus operandi, sharing with the researcher how the perpetrator groomed, sexually exploited the child and then used her to lure other underage children into his plot. This particular perpetrator had purchased a house in South Africa and became part of the children's environment. *"She felt very special, very protected [being and staying with him on his property], which again escalated the grooming from the male perpetrator of how special she was so she went very quickly I think as she grew up [to] over 12 years-old she was no longer attractive or*

worthwhile to the perpetrator, so her job was she had to find children; and she would tell us so openly in this interview she would look out of my window at that time it was much lower than it is now, and she would say which child would be good for business. ... no, no they'd be of good use, they will look good and it's really so what she said to be 'good on camera', and good friends. Our concern was that she was always openly soliciting, well not soliciting that's the wrong word, but openly engaging with underage children".

Another aspect of **the modus operandi of CSEC perpetrators** mentioned by the non-social work participant group is the fact that **they operate in groups and in syndicates, and are well organised**. This way of operating is also noted by the UK's Local Safeguarding Children Boards (LSCB) statutory and voluntary staff involved with service delivery to victims of CSEC as expressed in Melrose's (2013:161) study conducted in the UK.

The following storylines exemplify the way of operating referred to above:

*"... we found out that there was another group of foreigners [in Cape Town], also organised, who'd come in specifically and they also used the company [their business] to produce pornography, but they also used this to invite people to certain parties. So they would invite people to a party where people are aware that they will participate in certain kind of stuff and there is an opportunity for them to take part in the production of pornography material, things like that". (Participant P.)*

Participant VV heard accounts from her client relating to perpetrators operating in groups for producing material of a pornographic nature. She commented: *"Look it's a group of people, white people, foreign people, in a room with a bed and a camera. That's how it is described. A lot of drugs... most of those cases were Germany, Switzerland. They would say foreigners are all German... So you know its European white guys. Age groups I wouldn't know".*

The modus operandi of the traffickers as described by QQ as follows, points to the fact that they are well connected. *"The clients, I'm not sure about the clients, about how this really works, if there are clients in Cape Town then they will provide you know the demands, if this client looks for something very specific, they will make sure they find it around the country and bring it there..."*

Participant SS also believed that trafficking in South Africa is an organised activity, not handled by independent people, *"No I think that it's very organised [by] syndicates, I mean there are syndicates operating globally and in South Africa. I think there are syndicates operating locally in South Africa and I think those syndicates operate also in cahoots with*

*internationally organised crime syndicates. Just from interactions with law enforcement here, with some of the counter trafficking organisations here, it seems to be very organised. Even in local syndicates moving young boys and girls from place to place, West African syndicates, but then also you've got your East European, your Chinese, Thai".*

In 2007, the United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC) published a Situational Assessment of Human Trafficking in the SADC Region on research conducted during 2005. It is stated in the report (UNODC, 2007:3) that law enforcement found CSEC in Gauteng and other provinces of South Africa to be highly organised. It documents that traffickers "operate their own child prostitutes and are also linked to other traffickers" (UNODC, 2007:3), and that victims have reported being traded between traffickers, with Nigerian-run trafficking rings being well connected and able to trade and exchange victims. This observation would appear to be supported by the statements of at least two of the participants.

Participant QQ stated that, to her knowledge, prostitution is organised in groups and each has its own territory in which 'their children' ply their trade. *"In my opinion it's mostly organised"* and went on to explain *"We also know in the area of Wynberg, that there are local people and they, they're South African that have quarters that's not Nigerian, so the Nigerians have their quarters and the other ones I think they're Muslims by the way they mention them, the Muslims. They have a whole other area, so I think they must be South African"*.

Participant SS shared what she knew: *"...in areas of Cape Town, where children are on the streets but they have pimps behind them, watching them, so it's organised in that sense but they're by no means there of their own accord. That's from speaking with a lot of organisations that do a lot of work with sex workers whenever they approach somebody. They've said these girls look very young, but when you approach them and try to offer them [help], they're terrified, they're terrified and you know there'll be somebody lurking in the background"*.

Participant RR: *"...whether it's in a brothel or a girl working by herself on the side of the street or whether it is in human trafficking, the pimp stands on the corner and watches their every move"*.

Participant P mentioned one case he found unusual. *"The unusual thing that we have discovered, for example, was with the Andrews case; here was someone who specifically recruited young women, many of these so-called young women were also minors, some of*

*them were as young as twelve at the time, where a part of this operation was also to take them, sort of to abduct them, and then to rape them and then to put them out on the street or prostitute them almost the same day, that is what we found”.*

The focus of the discussion will now shift to the SAPS FCS Unit members’ contribution to profiling the perpetrators of CSEC.

#### **4.6.4 Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members’ profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of their physical attributes and modus operandi**

The SAPS FCS Unit members did not contribute much to this sub-theme. Participant SAPE was the only one who shared information that corresponds to the information shared by the social work and non-social work participant groups.

Participant SAPE with reference to the origins of the perpetrators stated: *“I will say most cases were strangers ... sometimes... those strangers [are] foreigners not easy to trace ... Nigerians you know”.*

With reference to the perpetrators of child trafficking for prostitution, Participant SAPE said, *“... there’s really two different types of suspects of perpetrators, the people who were selling her and then the people who were buying her... three females were selling and two males were the buyers that were identified”.* In connection with CST, he simply said: *“...the people [perpetrator] are travelling on a daily basis you see”.*

### **4.7 CHAPTER SUMMARY**

This chapter presented the second part of the research findings, following on from Chapter 3 that concerned the adult survivors. It began with the biographical profiles of three of the participant groups, the social workers, the non-social workers from NGO’s and the SAPS FCS Unit members, as recruited for this study’s sample. The first four of the eight themes that emerged from the three participant groups mentioned, with their relevant sub-themes and, where applicable, categories were discussed. Storylines from the transcribed participant data illuminated and underscored the themes, sub-themes and categories. Additionally a literature control was applied.

**Theme 1** focused on the service provider groups’ levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept ‘child sex tourism’ and their knowledge of the legislation on CSEC with specific

reference to CST. The content was divided into six sub-themes, namely; social work participants' level of comprehension of meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied; social work participants' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST; non-social work participants' understanding of the term 'child sex tourism'; non-social work participants' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST; SAPS FCS Unit members' understanding of the of the term 'child sex tourism'; and SAPS FCS Units members' knowledge of the legislation relevant to CST.

The three categories that emerged from sub-theme 1 were:

- some social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST;
- some social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST;
- one participant had no understanding of the meaning of the concept CST.

From sub-theme 2 there were a further three categories, namely:

- some of the social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST;
- some of the social work participants possessed speculative knowledge about the legislation related to CST;
- and some of the social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST.

The third sub-theme regarding data collected from the non-social work participants was presented in two categories:

- some non-social work participants had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST;
- and some non-social work participants had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST.

The fourth sub-theme regarding the non-social work participants' knowledge on legislation pertaining to CSEC had two categories:

- some of the non-social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST; and some of the non-social work participants had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST.

- The final two sub-themes for this theme were relevant to the SAPS FCS Unit participant data. The categories that emerged from sub-theme one regarding the understanding of these participants about the term 'child sex tourism' were:
  - some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST;
  - some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept CST;
  - and finally some of the SAPS FCS Unit members had no understanding of the meaning of the concept CST.

**Theme 2** focused on the service providers groups' perceptions of the extent of CSEC (with a specific focus on CP and CST), and their levels of exposure to victims and clients of these types of commercial sexual exploitation. This theme generated six sub-themes as follows:

- Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery;
- Sub-theme 2: The social work participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST;
- Sub-theme 3: The non-social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery;
- Sub-theme 4: The non-social work participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST;
- Sub-theme 5: SAPS FCS Unit member participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of service delivery
- Sub-theme 6: SAPS FCS Unit member participants' accounts of their exposure to children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST. There were no sub-categories in this theme.

The next section dealt with **Theme 3** which focused on the service providers groups' accounts of the profile of the victims of CSEC. There were three sub-themes that emerged from this data namely:

- Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims;
- Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' profiling of the child victims of sexual exploitation in terms of physical attributes and the emotional impact of the exploitation on the victims

- Sub-theme 3: SAPS FCS Unit members' perceptions of victims of sexual exploitation. There were no sub-categories related to this theme.

**Theme 4** as presented in this chapter focused on the service providers groups' accounts in terms of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC, and three sub-themes emerged with no sub-categories. The sub-themes' focus is as follows:

- Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi;
- Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi;
- Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit participant groups' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC in terms of physical attributes and modus operandi.

In the next chapter, the following four themes will be presented as Part 2 of the research findings on the accounts of the service providers' knowledge of and response and suggestions to the phenomenon of CSEC.

- Theme 5: The service provider groups' accounts of the factors contributing to the commercial sexual exploitation of children with specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism
- Theme 6: The service provider groups' accounts of factors enabling them to address the commercial sexual exploitation of children
- Theme 7: The service provider groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address the commercial sexual exploitation of children
- Theme 8: Suggestions by the service provider groups in responding to the phenomenon of the commercial sexual exploitation of children.

**CHAPTER 5**  
**RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS OF THE SERVICE PROVIDERS ON THEIR**  
**KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE AND SUGGESTIONS TO THE PHENOMENON OF**  
**THE CSEC – PART 2**

**5.1 INTRODUCTION**

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter in that the research findings of themes five to eight (out of eight themes identified) are presented. The results are based on the accounts of the service provider participant groups, that is, the social workers, non-social workers employed at NGOs and the SAPS FCS Unit members who render services to victims and perpetrators of commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC), with a specific focus on child prostitution (CP) and child sex tourism (CST). The remaining four themes are:

- **Theme 5:** The service providers groups' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST
- **Theme 6:** The service providers groups' accounts of factors enabling them to respond to CSEC
- **Theme 7:** The service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST
- **Theme 8:** The suggestions from the service provider groups in response to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST

**5.2 THEME 5: THE SERVICE PROVIDERS GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF THE FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO CSEC WITH A SPECIFIC REFERENCE TO CP AND CST**

This theme with its related sub-themes, categories (depicted in Table 5.1 on the next page) arose from the answers provided by the participants on the following question posed to them: *What do you think are the factors that contribute to the child sex tourism phenomenon?*

**Table 5.1: An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 5: The service providers groups' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST**

Sub-theme	Category
Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST	<p>Poverty and unemployment as factors contributing to CP and CST</p> <p>Poor social conditions at home as a factor contributing to CP</p> <p>The benefits inherent in sex work as contributing factor to CP</p> <p>The influx of foreigners to South Africa and this country being regarded as a destination at which children are easy to access as factors contributing to CST</p> <p>Poor policing and perpetrators not being apprehended as contributing factors to CST</p> <p>Substance abuse as a contributing factor to CST</p>
Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor social conditions within the home and the environment as a factor contributing to CP and CST</li> <li>• Tourism as a factor contributing to CST</li> <li>• Children's views on sex and the benefits inherent in engaging in CP and CST as a contributing factor to CP</li> <li>• Society's portrayal of sex and foreigners' perceptions of South Africa's children as contributing factors to CST</li> </ul>
Sub-theme 3: SAPS FCS Unit members' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST	<p>Poverty as a factor contributing to CP and CST</p> <p>The parents' chemical substance addiction as a factor contributing to CP and CST</p> <p>Peer pressure as factor contributing to CP and CST</p>

The literature consulted (Ungar, 2005:3,4; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:140; Sakulpitakphon, 2007:5; Luya 2010:95; Berelowitz et. al., 2012:51; Pawlak, 2012:37; ECPAT 2013:12; Melrose 2013:155-168; Melrose and Pearce, 2013:61-62; Rafferty, 2013:559-561; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:70) seems to be in accord with the factors this research found to contribute to the phenomenon of the CSEC. Following her engagement with the literature on the topic of this study, the researcher came to the conclusion that there are factors that proverbially 'push' the children to the street where they engage in sex work for survival and protection. In doing so, they are 'pulled in' to the child sex industry and into CST. The factors

pushing the children onto the streets where they have to engage, *inter alia*, in sex work can be attributed to primarily a dysfunctional and chaotic home life. When placing these manifestations within the level system descriptors of Bronfenbrenner's ecological system theory, it refers to chaos and dysfunction within the microsystems (Bronfenbrenner in Onwuegbuzie, Collins & Frels, 2013:4). This dysfunctional situation is due to a range of circumstances typically characterised by domestic violence, chemical substance abuse by the parents, one or both parents being mentally ill hence child insecurity, familial child abuse and child sexual molestation; child neglect and abandonment; abject poverty; and other health issues the parents have, loss of parent(s) due to death and even incarceration. Some of the manifestations within the neighbourhood too can pull children into the net of CSEC such as associations with gangs through relatives or peers, through intimate relationships and with sexually exploited children through school or residential setups (Lutya 2010:95; Berelowitz et. al., 2012:51; Melrose 2013:155-168). These associations point to the interactions between microsystems and are situated on the mesosystem level (Bronfenbrenner in Onwuegbuzie, Collins & Frels, 2013:4). This mesosystem level may be impoverished if there are no or few meaningful links in existence and if the microsystems within the mesosystem (such as those more powerful than the child) endorse poor behaviour, according to Muuss (2006:304,305). Pawlak (2012:37) documents that "sexual violence against boys and against girls and women emerges from the same array of abuses of power and the same gender hierarchies in which some men have power over other women and girls and over other men and boys". When looking through the macrosystem lens, world conflicts, involuntary migration, the expansion of tourism, globalisation and the advancements in the realm of internet communication technology can also be regarded as contributing factors feeding into and maintaining CSEC (O'Grady, 2001:134; Ungar, 2005:3-4; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:140; Sakulpitakphon, 2007:5; Pawlak 2012:37; Melrose and Pearce, 2013:61-62; ECPAT, 2013:12).

With these introductory remarks, collated from the work of scholars in the field the focus of the discussion now shifts to the research findings by presenting the views of the various participant groups on factors contributing to CP and CST as manifestations of CSEC.

### **5.2.1 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST**

Based on the participants' responses this sub-theme is divided into various categories that are now presented.

### 5.2.1.1 Poverty and unemployment as factors contributing to CP and CST

A contributing factor to the prevalence of both CP and CST identified by most of the social work participants was the link between poverty and unemployment. This was also noted in the literature consulted (O'Connell Davidson, 2005:140; Pawlak, 2012:37; Melrose and Pearce, 2013:61-62, ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:70). Contrary to this view, Muntarhorn (1995), the United Nations Special Rapporteur on the sale of children, child prostitution and child pornography until 1995, wrote that poverty was not a factor that could be used as a "pretext and justification for the exploitation of children". He felt that poverty did not explain the enormous demand worldwide "with, in many instances, customers from rich countries circumventing their national laws to exploit children in other countries".

Participants Z, F, XX, Y, E, J, N and J specifically referred to poverty and to illustrate this, five storylines are provided:

*"Here [referring to a town on the Garden Route] poverty is a major factor that contributes to it [prostitution] ... especially here in our area is a lot of unemployment. We have high unemployment figures and high poverty figures".<sup>136</sup> (Participant Z.)*

*The poverty in our area [i.e. George] is horrendous. Not if you compare it to other parts of South Africa, but other countries, it's very bad...". (Participant F.)*

*"It [referring to CP] will definitely be [because] of the economy. The children need the money to survive". (Participant Y.)*

Participant N clearly pointed to the link between unemployment and CST when stating: *"I will say you know in South Africa there is lot of unemployment and it will turn out that people will sell their children to these foreigners so they can get money to live now I will say".*

Participant G shared similar information with the researcher. *"So a contributing factor I can think of is where people do it for money, so the child is probably not a willing participant but she could have an older sister or mother who exposes her to it [prostitution] so that they can also benefit from it".<sup>137</sup>*

---

<sup>136</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

<sup>137</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

### 5.2.1.2 Poor social conditions at home as a factor contributing to CP

In support of this category the following storylines are provided:

Participant XX said that, in her opinion, children took to prostitution for relative safety from their homes where abuse and starvation prevailed. In this regard she said: *“The boys usually come in here on court orders, having been declared children in need of care and protection. The range of children that come here is quite vast, from those who have been neglected and abused and involved in all sorts of drug issues and stuff to the refugees, who tend to be a very different profile”*.

*“Often it’s when things are not going well at home, or the circumstances are very poor, then the children start doing these types of things [sex for money] because, for example, they are too poor at home or there are family things happening at home... and the child just doesn’t want that”*.<sup>138</sup> (Participant Z.)

Participant Y alerted the researcher to the fact that whilst abuse at home pushes the children to the street, this practice becomes like the norm. They become desensitised and do not mind being commercially sexually exploited and used in other ways too. She stated: *“...or they’ve run away from broken homes... probably abused themselves so they don’t mind anymore if anybody else ... they’ve been abused, run away from it and they don’t mind being abused again. You know they’ve become desensitised to what’s right and what’s wrong”*. In support of this participant’s view, the Council of Europe’s report, ‘Sexual Exploitation, Pornography and Prostitution of, and Trafficking in, Children and Young Persons’ (1993), suggests that particular attention needs to be paid to children who are categorised as “high risk”. This would refer to emotionally damaged children from broken homes, runaways, drug users and street children who easily become victims of recruiting agents and pimps (Barrett, 1998:477). This is echoed in the view of Rafferty (2013:561) who states that children fleeing their own homes due to abuse or neglect are at high risk of being drawn into prostitution.

### 5.2.1.3 The benefits inherent in sex work as contributing factor to CP

Participant XX refers to how the benefits derived from sex work, in actual fact, feed into and maintain the phenomenon of CP. *“Well from the child’s perspective, the children are vulnerable and in need of care and in need of comfort and affection and in need of being*

---

<sup>138</sup>Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*looked after and so for them it's a distorted way of getting some of that. They also get used by older boys or gangsters on the streets in order for the gangsters to get the money. In terms of the people who are doing it, well I mean, you know they've probably been abused themselves somewhere along the line".*

Participant Z's account also pointed out how for children (especially the ones in unhappy foster care situations) engaging in prostitution addresses their unmet needs and serves as a spin-off for them. *"Look we have a very large foster care system, it's very big here (town on the Garden Route), so some of the foster parents are genuine and others do it just for the money. Now what happens normally is that the child doesn't receive that love from the foster parents or the people caring for them and then that is where the older guy will come in and give her that love ...it's almost like they don't get that love that they need, so they're going to do the wrong things, they sleep with the men and they get money and some of them know it's wrong and we address it with them when they report it but then they go away and do it again even if they say to you it's wrong they go and do it again".*<sup>139</sup>

Participant J shared with the researcher how her colleagues' child clients (aged 10-11) who were actively engaged in prostitution in the rural areas of Cape Town defended this act when questioned about it. She related the following: *"[the girls] when questioned by the social workers they're saying but what's wrong with this? Everybody has sex. So there it wasn't about somebody organising it and it wasn't about girls selling themselves to get the money because there wasn't food at home or they felt it was an acceptable thing to do ... this is what people do and if I can do that and have nice things then that's okay".* She also attributed this normalisation of sex to the following: *"Some children grow up in one room shacks where they, on a regular basis know their parents are having sex, so it also normalises for them what is sex and who can have sex and so for a lot of these kids and of course perpetrators make use of that...".* In support of this, ECPAT Netherlands (2014:79) states that child exploitation cases are underreported, as the children do not report engaging in prostitution for survival and "for the acquisition of resources".

5.2.1.4 The influx of foreigners to South Africa and this country being regarded as a destination at which children are easy to access as factors contributing to CST

The following information shared by Participants F, AA and R gave rise to this category.

---

<sup>139</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*“Well, obviously we’re in an area [i.e. referring to the Garden Route] where people come and go all the time ... not just as you say from other countries but from the route that we are we’ve got the truckers going through, we’ve got people coming to visit, we’ve got coming and going, we’ve got lots of foreigners that come along here, and the poverty and I think that children or adults see it as an opportunity to sell children or if you’re looking at the older children – teenagers, they see as an opportunity for themselves, making themselves available”.* (Participant F.) [This storyline also ties in with children prostituting themselves and adults prostituting the children to tourists].

*“...I have sat in a rehabilitation centre in the UK and listened to offenders’ opinions of child protection in South Africa, those that have no motivation or insight into the impact of their behaviour. They see South Africa as a tourist destination at which they can access children”.* (Participant AA.) This view by Participant AA is supported by ECPAT Netherlands (2014:80) in their assessment of South Africa as a CSEC destination, where they state that sex with children “is available and easily accessible for tourists in Cape Town, Durban, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Nelspruit and Port Elizabeth, involving children between 10 and 18 years old”.

*“In the late ‘90s and early 2000s... in Europe there was a clamp down on sex tourism... So now individuals are looking elsewhere, they are ... going to [elsewhere] ... to the East... to Cambodia, Vietnam ..., Singapore ... to Sao Paulo, Brazil, Chile, and .... Africa and the most popular hub in Africa is South Africa”.* (Participant R). In support of this statement, ECPAT Netherlands (2014:80), states that the increasing awareness of CSE in the global tourism industry has resulted in some countries paying more attention to child protection and solutions to promote safe tourism.

#### 5.2.1.5 Poor policing and perpetrators not being apprehended as contributing factors to CST

When referring to one of the children in her care and his not wanting to report his knowledge of the perpetrator of his CSEC to the police due to their interrogation techniques, Participant XX stated: *“If he lays a charge, which is what the police want us to get him to do, they then interrogate him over and over again even if it is in a private room. He’s got to re-talk about it which re-traumatizes him over and over again”.*

Participant AA mentioned this as a contributing factor to CST: *“Poor policing including a lack of surveillance and the fact that offenders are not usually apprehended”.*

In support of these statements, ECPAT Netherlands (2014:79) report that one of the reasons children do not disclose their sexual exploitation is because they generally have little confidence in the police due to a perceived “lack of sensitivity to children” they display. The police themselves are thought to be afraid of the trafficking syndicates. Furthermore there are perceived problems regarding police protection for the owners of brothels as well as the prevalence of a perception that police sexually exploit children (ibid.).

#### 5.2.1.6 Substance abuse as a contributing factor to CST

When asked what factors she thought contributed to child sex tourism, Participant TT said: *“Drug and alcohol abuse are a contributing factors”*.

Referring to one of the children under her care XX stated: *“... the boy that I’m talking about now who came recently, he eventually said that he left this because the other boy (the intermediary in the CSEC) had stopped giving him food and was only giving him drugs and he wasn’t eating and he was hungry...”*.

### 5.2.2 Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants’ views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST

The views of the non-social work participant group agree largely with the views shared by the social work participant group in this regard. Their contribution is presented as four categories.

#### 5.2.2.1 Poor social conditions within the home and the environment as a factor contributing to CP and CST

The literature referred to in the introduction to this theme about this particular aspect, especially the work of Sakulpitakphon (2007:5); Luya (2010:95); and ECPAT Netherlands (2014:70), supports this category. The corroborating views of the social work participants that point to poverty, unemployment and poor social conditions at home and in the neighbourhood do this too. Most of the non-social work participants also refer to this as a factor contributing to CP and CST. Five storylines illuminate this category.

*“Poverty, I think poverty is the big push factor, family dysfunction, and community dysfunction, substance abuse, poor parenting, and lack of support services. What we found then and we find now is that a vast majority of the children that lined up have been abused*

*before, in one way or another... many of them ... have also experienced sexual violence before...poverty. Obviously it's one of the main things; I should imagine...I don't think it [prostitution] would survive really if there weren't a need for those rewards that are given...".* (Participant P.) Referring to particular case in which girls had prostituted themselves, this participant specifically points out: *"[It was] clearly identified that they were engaging this activity for income to help the family... when you looked at it they also experienced one form of abuse or exploitation prior to deciding to go with the other girls you know and try it out".* (Participant P.) In the literature (Lutya, 2010:95) explains that the situation of children, in informal settlements that are "famous for being overcrowded, with limited space, inadequate resources", is precarious. Often a culture of violence also prevails and children who reside in places like and under such conditions are at risk of being exposed to domestic violence and child abuse (ibid).

*"Poverty plays a major part. Children are lured into promises of money for them as well as their family. In the case which we dealt with, the children were rewarded with bags of groceries for them and their families".* (Participant HH.)

*"...but they [CSEC victims with whom the participant had dealt] were all addicted to drugs, they were all coming from a very vulnerable, broken background, no support at home, runaways, they were all not educated, dropped out of school, just already had an awful background, so it's just all brokenness, plus the trauma, plus the exploitation, all pieces everywhere, to be honest".* (Participant QQ.)

*"Then you look at what makes children more vulnerable is HIV/AIDS, child headed households, parents who can't get work, parents who are addicted or on drugs or alcoholics, which puts more pressure on children to then go and find work, which makes them more vulnerable because they are looking for an income because they are easily tricked and exploited. So that's the trend that we're finding with children who are getting caught into prostitution and slavery where there is pressure from mommy and daddy or I have six brothers to feed or I hate my life and I want to get out to a city and then they're easily tricked into prostitution".* (Participant RR.)

*"Lack of education, there not being any family values left or family units are falling apart, poverty, television/media and lack of services for these children or actually people in general in South Africa".* (Participant BB.)

*“Child begging – school drop outs, child labour, dysfunctional homes, child abuse by parents/significant others [are contributors to child sexual exploitation]”. (Participant II.)*

#### 5.2.2.2 Tourism as a factor contributing to CST

In the context of CST, sex is widely thought to be a part of many people’s travel experience and such travel is associated with sex and the seeking of sex with an “exotic” and different person (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:125; George & Panko, 2011:134). This is an aspect with which Participant P agrees when he stated: *“Tourism is based on selling sex, they try to sell you that ticket in the travel agent, or the airline trying to sell tickets, or the tour operator, uses sex to sell the package. From already more than ten years ago at the time ECPAT (End Child Prostitution, Exploitation and Trafficking organisation) had the sex tourism conference, that they presented stuff [marketing brochures] from the industry examining them for messages of sex and ... basically more than seventy percent of these messages alluded to some sort of sexual tone ... I think the nature of tourism is such that sex is part of that package, whether we like it or not. ... When people also are in another space they don’t ordinarily respond and [behave] the way they do at home. The idea of travel is to relax, to enjoy and to explore and experience new stuff, right so sex is very much part of that and where you have adult sex, you also, if you scratch hard enough, you will find child sex. In South Africa... is a formal market and then there’s a sort of [informal] network. Through the network; I think it’s in that layer that you’ll find more evidence of sex tourism...So a tour operator knows a tour operator who does tours to the Kruger Park, but they then also stay at a nice guest house, where you know there’s ‘nice’ entertainment happening. You know things like that, or I’ve got clients, and say listen here my clients want to also come to Cape Town, they also want to have a ‘nice’ weekend in Cape Town, what can you offer them? What kind of night-life do you have there what kind of sex clubs do you have there, strip clubs et cetera? So the kind of very formal public advertisement is very different to the informal network and that’s actually quite big because that’s where a lot of organised tours or individual tours [are] happening”. (Participant P.)*

Participant SS agreed that tourism was a driver: *“It’s the tourism element that creates the demand ... I think it’s the demand from people seeking those services”.*

Apart from tourism being a contributing factor to CP and CST the participants also point out that the prevalence of these phenomena is higher in the popular South African tourist destinations and during festivals and big sporting events. Two storylines confirm this:

*“... at the time when we did our first research, we looked at child trafficking for the purpose of sexual exploitation, which included sex tourism.... what we identified is that Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg are sort of tourist hubs and those provinces....during certain times, when there are lots of tourists there, appears to increase [their] provision of sexual services and that within that there is also an increase in the identification of minors involved in one or other form of sexual exploitation, for example in prostitution... hanging out with an older man or woman for the duration of the stay, being available for parties and also pornography”.* (Participant P.)

*“...Cape Town, Johannesburg and Durban are centres for this activity”.* (Participant JJ.) This viewpoint is confirmed by ECPAT Netherlands (2014:80) in their report of their assessment of CSEC in South Africa where they confirm the major centres of South Africa are destinations for CSEC.

#### 5.2.2.3 Children’s views on sex and the benefits inherent in engaging in CP and CST as a contributing factor to CP

When analysing Participant BB’s contribution to the research topic during the interview, the research raised this issue as definite stand-alone category, as this participant shared the following point of view which is endorsed in the literature. *“I believe that the children do not see anything wrong with it as most of them are sexually active at a very young age. They enjoy the attention and staying in a nice house with all the good food and things that are bought for them and money given to them. Some of them actually feel it is a form of ‘love’”.* George & Panko (2011:137) are also convinced that social pressure experienced by children in third world countries is an important factor in them becoming prostitutes as they see their peers who are engaged in sex work earning money, enabling them to contribute to supporting their families, which often receives approval from their elders.

#### 5.2.2.4 Society’s portrayal of sex and foreigners’ perceptions of South Africa’s children as contributing factors to CST

Societal tolerance for sex including sex acts and activities, formerly considered taboo, has resulted in their normalisation via the media and this is a contributing factor to CSEC. Participant RR alluded to this when she said: *“You know when you portray sex as something that’s so on demand or so easily accessible or so desirable, I think that that’s already creating a tolerance within society”.*

Participant P also spoke of the attitudes of foreigners and their beliefs about local children. *“Attitudes...some perceptions about child sexuality...foreign men in these clubs in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban, basically said; no, but the African children mature earlier, they look bigger ... and also they do have sex earlier than other children”.*

This bears witness to comments about international sex tourists who create fantasies about the ‘exotic’ people at their holiday destination when they see these people drinking, dancing and kissing strangers in bars. Perpetrators reframe their holiday sex not as prostitution, but as proof that different meanings are attached to sexual behaviour in the host country, reinforcing their ideas that sex is more open and natural in that country (O’Connell Davidson, 2005:136, George & Panko, 2011:134; Patterson 2007:20-21).

### **5.2.3 Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members’ views on factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST**

The SAPS FCS Unit members’ views on the factors contributing to the phenomena of CP and CST are presented as categories below:

#### **5.2.3.1 Poverty as a factor contributing to CP and CST**

Similar to the other participant groups, the South African Police Service FCS Unit members also itemised poverty and the parents’ chemical substance abuse as major factors contributing to CSEC. In confirmation of this, the following storylines are provided:

*“... they [referring to the parents] need money for substance abuse, perhaps that influences the parents who are poor to use the children for those [sexual] purposes to get money”.*<sup>140</sup>  
(Participant SAPB.)

*“... child sex tourism, I would say poverty, yes, that would be the main contributing factor because now the children would resort to selling their bodies to whatever strangers, and the means could be to get money, which is the same as prostitution. Also if now there is an adult person selling that child to somebody else for money, so poverty would be the main [reason]”.* (Participant SAPD.)

---

<sup>140</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

### 5.2.3.2 The parents' chemical substance addiction as a factor contributing to CP and CST

In confirming this category, Participant SAPE stated: *"I think also this issue of using alcohol because we found that the mother is an alcoholic so she is getting money and buying alcohol that is another issue, this drug issue is contributing a lot as well. They want the money, there's not always a way to get what they want"*.

### 5.2.3.3 Peer pressure as factor contributing to CP and CST

In terms of the ecological systems theory, the theoretical framework which underpins this study, peer pressure would indicate problems that have arisen in the mesosystem (i.e. an "impoverished mesosystem") (Muuss, 2006:304). This Muuss says can result in danger when the microsystems that make up the "peer group may glamourize, encourage, and reward drinking (or smoking, drug use, early sexual behaviour)" and conflicts with what their parents or other microsystems may be encouraging.

Although SAPD himself had mentioned poverty as a factor, he also said: *"Poverty is used as an excuse most of the time [for children entering prostitution] but it is not always poverty, sometimes its peer pressure, children, young girls among themselves decide 'come let's go clubbing' and there they start drinking and one thing leads to another"*.

This corresponds to comments made by Participant BB and substantiated with reference to George and Panko (2011:137) as mentioned as a category in this theme (See Section 5.2.2). The reference speaks of the social pressure experienced by children in third world countries who become prostitutes as they see their peers who are engaged in sex work earning money and contributing to supporting their families with their elders often sanctioning their activities.

In this discussion the service providers groups' views on the accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST were presented. The focus now shifts to the service providers groups' accounts of the factors enabling them to address CSEC (Theme 6).

## **5.3 THEME 6: THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF FACTORS ENABLING THEM TO ADDRESS THE CSEC**

### **5.3.1 Introduction**

The five themes presented thus far, in the previous chapter and in this chapter, focused on the aspect of the state of knowledge of the various service providers on the topic of CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST, the core aim of this report. Themes 6, 7 and 8 to be presented in the ensuing part of this chapter focus on a multi-perspective response to the phenomenon under investigation in this study, by *inter alia*, focusing on the factors enabling and hindering service providers to respond to the CSEC, especially CP and CST, and to forward some suggestions for responding to it. The method of dealing with CSEC largely represents decisions made in the exosystem of Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory, where the child is not necessarily represent but decision regarding the child and his or her circumstances are made (Bronfenbrenner in Ongwuegbuzie et al., 2013:4).

Theme 6 and its related sub-themes and categories depicted in Table 5.2 on the next page, originate from the responses of the sampled participants in the different groups when they were asked following question: *What enables you to render services to the victims and perpetrators of child sex tourism?*

**Table 5.2: An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 6: The service providers groups' accounts of factors enabling them to respond to CSEC**

Sub-theme	Categories
<p>Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST</p>	<p><u>The internal enabling resources</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Passion for their work and the capability to engage with the child on his/her level and the fact that service rendering to children is part of their service delivery mandate</i></li> <li>• <i>Support of their supervisors, family and spiritual networks</i></li> </ul> <p><i>Working in a conducive and supportive environment</i></p> <p><u>The external enabling factors</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multi-disciplinary service</i></li> <li>• <i>Effective intervention programmes as an enabling factor</i></li> <li>• <i>Amended and more effective legislation as enabling factors</i></li> <li>• <i>Formal and informal training as enabling factors</i></li> </ul>
<p>Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST</p>	<p><i>Training and education</i></p> <p><i>Involvement of volunteers to provide a multidisciplinary service and practice experience as enabling factors</i></p> <p><i>Experience</i></p>
<p>Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST</p>	<p><i>Effective legislation as an enabling factor</i></p> <p><i>Effective protocols in dealing with child sexual abuse and exploitation cases as an enabling factor</i></p> <p><i>Well-resourced units and training and education as enabling factors</i></p> <p><i>Links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service</i></p>

The sub-themes and their related categories as indicated in the table (see Table 5.2) now become the focus of the discussion.

### 5.3.2 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST

After studying the responses of the social work participants to the question about what enables them to respond, through service rendering, to the victims and perpetrators of CSEC, especially in terms of CP and CST, the researcher observed that very few of the social work participants were actively engaged with client systems resorting under the phenomena mentioned. Therefore not all the participants' accounts focused specifically on CSEC, but some spoke generally in an all-encompassing fashion about the factors that enabled them to render services to children who were victims of sexual exploitation. However, the few who did respond indicated that their services were mostly aimed at the victims who were children involved in commercial sexual exploitation and very few were involved in service delivery to the perpetrators of CSEC.

On closer scrutiny of the information the social work participants provided on this theme, the researcher noticed that the enabling factors could be divided into internal and external resources. The internal aspects relate to capabilities within the social worker, but also within their organisations, whilst the external resources relate to the means outside the person and the organisation enabling them to deliver service.

The **internal enabling resources**, as categories identified, are now presented:

5.3.2.1 Passion for their work and the capability to engage with the child on his/her level and the fact that service rendering to children is part of their service delivery mandate

Participants E, J F, N and K mentioned the passion for their work as an enabling factor:

*"No I think specifically in this regard I really have a passion to work with children...What helps me a lot is that fact that I can move on the level of the child. I can sit on the floor and play with them, you know, get to their level".* (Participant E.)

*"What enables me? My passion, obviously I've got knowledge, I've got skills, I've got all of those things, but I have this kind of burning passion to work in this field and I feel that I can make a difference and that's what keeps me going".* (Participant J.)

From a managerial perspective, Participant F also mentioned her staff members' passion as enablers "...well trained staff is vital and to have staff who have a passion for it".

*"As we are Child Welfare and our main core here is to work with children and to protect them in whatever kind of a harmful situation that they are it is our duty to make sure that they are protected and they are safe. Our main core at Child Welfare is to protect the children – from whatever kind of abuse".* (Participant N.)

*"Because it is actually a part of my work that I do, so I work with children so it is easy for me to communicate with them...I discuss with my colleagues how I can handle it and then I take it from there".* (Participant K.)

In 2002 the South African National Association of Social Workers (NASW) launched a study with 716 of their Child Welfare Specialty Practice section members to ascertain social workers' views on various aspects of their work in child welfare, and to this end asked 52 open-ended and closed questions. The following key findings emerged: first, the most challenging part of their work was related to issues confronting children and their families, not the workplace issues; and second, the most satisfying aspect of their job was "successes with children and families". In particular one response appeared to ring true throughout the responses, "When you're right for the job, it's the best job in the world" indicating that internal resources and *fit* with the profession were most valued resources (NASW, 2004:14 -16).

### 5.3.2.2 Support of their supervisors, family and spiritual networks

In substantiating this category, Participant G explained that she drew courage and strength from her supervisor, her family and her faith. *"So without the support of the supervisor this office would be in chaos, so she has a great deal to do with this office being manageable...Leadership of my manager and lots of courage ... but it takes a lot of courage and high energy because it is draining to work with a child like that because it is not just one interview, it is a few interviews that you have to do with that child, it takes a lot out of a person".* She added, *"I cry with my supervisor and we have supervision sessions that we use to debrief because we also need to talk about these things [and] I have a family that helps me to forget".* In terms of drawing strength from her spiritual resources, Participant G said: *"The Lord, we pray, on Mondays we have a session where we pray".*<sup>141</sup>

---

<sup>141</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

### 5.3.2.3 Working in a conducive and supportive environment

Participant F who heads up a service delivery NGO felt that their greatest enabling factor was the environment they were privileged to work in, stating: *“We’re in an advantage as a NGO in that we have good financial backing ... we’ve got good facilities we’ve got computers we’ve got vehicles that we can go out but often the NGOs don’t have that and it just kills the spirit completely if you’re battling from when you get to work in the morning just to find a car to go out and see a child eventually you just lie down and give up sadly...”*. She continued explaining: *“And it’s all got to do with those kind of situations where it’s a nice place to come to your phone’s working, your fax machine, the basic things that you need to carry out your services are there, the team spirit is good, the support as far as trauma debriefing is there, the opportunity is there, so they don’t want to go and leave for somewhere else where they may not get the support ... we’ve got a dedicated office space for [play therapy], a play therapy room, the environment; it’s more child-friendly, it’s not a harsh hospital or where we were before was just as bad, so the whole environment that you have to work in how you are seen by the broader community is just as important because if you, don’t have any success or people haven’t had any you know satisfaction with your services, if they ‘re referred to you they not going to bring their children at the end of the day – so that kind of thing is for me vital. So to have an environment where everybody gets on and there’s support not just from management or from me but a team support”*.

The **external enabling factors** category-wise comprise the following aspects:

### 5.3.2.4 Links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service

Participants Z, E and F spoke about the links and relationships with other service providers especially the support they found in Thuthuzela centres enabling them to provide a multidisciplinary service to all victims of sexual abuse and molestation. The centres being referred to by these participants are called ‘Thuthuzela’ which is a Xhosa word meaning ‘comfort’. These are rape care centres that offer the following services: explanation of the medical examination procedure and what clothing might be taken for evidence; the provision of a consent form which allows the doctor to conduct the medical examination; a nurse who stays in the examination room with the survivor and assists with a bath or shower after the examination; an investigation officer who will interview the survivor and take a statement; and a social worker or nurse will offer counselling. Follow-up visits, treatment and medication for sexually transmitted infections (STIs), HIV and AIDS are arranged and a referral letter

and appointment will be made for long-term counselling after which the survivor is offered transportation home by ambulance/investigating officer or arrangements made for a place of safety. Consultations with a specialist prosecutor before the case goes to court, and an explanation of the outcome of the trial process completes the offering (Madingwane, [sa]).

*“We have now in [a town on the Garden Route not identified to protect identity of participant], I think it’s the only one around here; a Thuthuzela centre that has been built – I think in Cape Town is also one – and now we have also been lucky to get one. So when we can’t take a case then they will usually go to the Thuthuzela centre”.* (Participant Z.)

*“It [Thuthuzela centre] is actually a care centre for sexual abuse, for all sexual abuse cases, so there is a co-ordinator at the hospital and a victim empowerment officer or something like that, two that work at Thuthuzela, so they are in control of the trauma room at the at the hospital...they unfortunately only work the day shift. Let’s say an investigating officer arrives, they [referring to the aforementioned persons] will go and draw the file, they will organise the doctor, they see that everything is done, the documents are photostatted and returned, so it makes the police job much easier and speeds up the procedure at the hospital so that people don’t have to wait so long. They organise for the tablets to be supplied quicker so where victims used to wait about four hours sometimes for the whole process to be completed, it’s much quicker now. They also organise for FAMSA to come to do a debriefing or a social worker who works with the children, but after hours they are not available. They will also do follow-ups and make sure the children are taking their ARVs, the victims. Then there is [name] the public prosecutor, who used to be in sexual offences prosecution before and she is now managing the cases, so although she no longer does prosecutions she manages the cases and checks the dockets and will advise on what else needs to be done for example obtain that report, send for DNA tests et cetera”.* (Participant E.)

*“Thuthuzela is ... a one-stop destination for people who have been sexually abused or raped or ... physical[ly abused]... Obviously all the things down to the bottom, from the medical, to the social ... it’s all linked together and we all work together in a team ... starting off ... with the statements from the children, the reporting. How we render services has an effect on eventually the prosecution rate that they get at the end of the day, ... multidisciplinary team, ... from the police investigating officers, the FCS, ... the hospitals, the doctors as far as the medical examinations are concerned, social workers who are manning the afterhours line, who do the initial contact with the children, [and]... the social workers who are requested to do the trauma reports ... and the therapy that the child gets ... to put them back on the road to healing ...”.* (Participant F.)

### 5.3.2.5 Effective intervention programmes as an enabling factor

Two participants (AA and R), both of whom work with perpetrators of CST and other sexual exploitation, stated that the success lay in the programming: *“We have developed appropriate programmes and manuals – however, funding remains an enormous problem – it is important to note that we do not discriminate between types of offenders – if they have abused children and are referred to us – we work with them”*. (Participant AA.)

Participant R also referred to programming when citing enabling factors: *“Well the justice structure in terms of sentencing. Also because I think from middle ‘90s the prosecutors can plea bargain, so now the perpetrators will know that if I can get help I can be in the system I can be in a therapeutic support programme, then the chances that that person will be prosecuted will be less”*.

### 5.3.2.6 Amended and more effective legislation as enabling factors

In terms of the improved reporting one participant stated the following: *“The Sexual Offences Act... that’s been amended and rewritten and ages brought up and down and what is seen to be a sexual act has also been redefined. So that was very good and also helped to align district surgeons and also there was the social workers’ reporting. That was a big problem, the reporting. In the previous Act it was almost left to the discretion of the social worker or whoever and now it’s compulsory and you can be on the carpet and there can be charges brought against you if you don’t report, which is wonderful”*. (Participant R.)

### 5.3.2.7 Formal and informal training as enabling factors

With regard to training and education as an enabling factor in addressing child sexual exploitation, Participant E said: *“[I have] an ordinary social work degree but we have had other training, which is specifically focused on forensic assessment, so that helps a lot, that training and I read a lot about it [child sexual exploitation] and I have 20 years’ experience with children, that that helps”*.

In this regard Participant Z said: *“...we go to typical trainings that are offered by the Department of Social Development (DSD) ... they give us the type of training of how to handle this kind of stuff and how to handle these situations [child sexual exploitation]”*<sup>142</sup>.

---

<sup>142</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

### 5.3.3 Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST

Training and education, involvement of volunteers to provide a multidisciplinary service, and practice experience were referred to as enabling factors by three participants in this group, who responded to the question posed to them in this regard and these are indicated as categories:

With specific reference to **training and education**, Participant HH mentioned: *"All our mentors [lay people who mentor children] have received extensive training from various organisations specialising in child trauma, abuse et cetera"*.

Participant JJ referred to **the involvement of volunteers to provide a multidisciplinary service** as an enabling factor when stating: *"By the use of volunteers from all sectors of legal and medical practice who provide their services via networking with our organisations"*.

Participant P referred to **experience** as an enabling factor: *"I think what helped us is the experience that we gained helped us, and also that the insight that we gained through that, to have your eyes and ears on the ground, and often things don't seem like it is, right, and a very simple thing can possibly turn out to be quite a major thing... So it is about being able to be open to any possibility and also once you have identified a possible victim, don't assume that it can be like that, because it can turn out to be completely something else, right?"*

### 5.3.4 Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST

The SAPS FCS Unit members' account on factors enabling them to respond to victims and perpetrators sexual crimes committed against children can also (just as with the case of the social worker participant group) be divided into internal and external resources.

Factors enabling them internally (within their organisation) to respond to incidences of child sexual abuse and exploitation, inclusive of CSEC are effective legislation, effective protocols and a well-functioning unit.

#### 5.3.4.1 Effective legislation as an enabling factor

Participant SAPD mentioned the amended Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, No. 32 of 2007 as an enabling factor, saying: *“I believe that...the Sexual Offences Amendment Act...covers almost everything there”*.

#### 5.3.4.2 Effective protocols in dealing with child sexual abuse and exploitation cases as an enabling factor

Participant SAPD and SAPE referred to this as an enabling factor when stating: *“We have a national instruction about what should be done – so it gives you guidelines. So if a case is reported, the first responder cannot grill the person with questions, they must leave it for the FCS Unit but they must make sure that person is taken aside from the general public and put into the trauma room where a counsellor will be called out – it doesn’t matter what time of the night – there are always counsellors on standby, who must now counsel that victim until the FCS member arrives and takes over, to your medical examination, interviews and statement and also explain to her rights for victims. She can have the perpetrator tested for HIV, should she be interested and the investigating officer can assist her in doing that”*. (Participant SAPD.)

*“... the moment that a complainant comes in they take the complainant to our trauma room where there are people who are going to look after the complainant and after [that] a member [of our team] will be taking the statement and there will be counselling from there we are involved to take her for a medical [examination] and after that [if] we see people are too traumatised [we request the court] to refer them for counselling and they arrange counselling until they can get the report that she is now fit she can stand for trial”*. (Participant SAPE.)

#### 5.3.4.3 Well-resourced units and training and education as enabling factors

Most unit members said their units were well resourced, although some acknowledged that they were aware of other units that were not as fortunate. Participant SAPD shared: *“I can’t complain about personnel, I’ve got personnel, I’ve got vehicles, I’ve got the resources, so I don’t know how I would say. I know some other units are at a disadvantage with resources, for me - not”*. In addition Participant SAPB explained: *“I think our outside role players help us a lot I mean out-facilities, we have a Thuthuzela, we have social workers in place, we have*

*investigating officers, we have everything in place, so that helps us. It's not that we struggle, they are always there, and they are available*<sup>143</sup>.

Another enabling factor internally as well as externally, is the training and education they receive to respond appropriately to and intervene in incidences of sexual exploitation of children. Participants SAPE and SAPC spoke about this along the following lines:

*"I will say the training; it's where you get guidance, of how to deal with this sexual assault that makes things on our side easy, just to help that kind of a person and also to know that during the court procedures those people they need to be monitored".* (Participant SAPE.)

*"We've gone on training and started a child protection course, an FCS course that helped us a lot".* (Participant SAPC.)

#### 5.3.4.4 Links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service

In confirming this category, Participant SAPD said: *"It's a multidisciplinary approach, you've got the search side, you've got your NGOs, your safe line, all working together and also visible policing who are the first responders, knowing exactly if there's such a crime reported they know what steps to take, take the victim to the trauma room, not go deep into the interviews until they let us because my members are specially trained to do such interviews and we also when we deal with a child we involve our forensic social worker as well and refer the child for counselling to the NGOs like Department of Social Development. There's help from RAPCAN [Resources Aimed at the Prevention of Child Abuse and Neglect], when the case goes to court for preparations, it's a multidisciplinary approach".*

Another aspect of the multidisciplinary approach mentioned by Participant SAPD, was quarterly meetings with other role players: *"We've got meetings, we've got our quarterly meetings where we've got our NGOs, the prosecutor, visible policing, the FCS, so in those meetings we engage on the problems that we encounter maybe with each other or in general just to try and improve on our service delivery, so those are actually fruitful meetings because we always try to come up with some resolution as to what we must do and when and how".*

---

<sup>143</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

In this section (Section 5.3 on Theme 6) the service providers groups' accounts of factors enabling them to address the commercial sexual exploitation of children with reference to CP and CST as related to this research endeavour. The focus of the discussion shifts to the presentation of the theme on the service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address the commercial sexual exploitation of children with reference to CP and CST (Theme 7).

#### **5.4 THEME 7: THE SERVICE PROVIDERS GROUPS' ACCOUNTS OF FACTORS HINDERING AND CHALLENGING THEM TO ADDRESS CSEC WITH REFERENCE TO CP AND CST**

##### **5.4.1 Introduction**

This theme came into being as a result of the answers provided by the various service provider participants to this question during the data collection phase: *What obstacles do you believe prevent you from working effectively with victims/perpetrators of CSEC with particular reference to CP and CST?*

On scrutiny of the participants' responses, it appeared that they spoke in a general and in an all-encompassing way, not so much about CP and CST, but more about the aspects that hinder them in social work service delivery to victims and perpetrators of child sexual abuse and molestation. This trend, as stated earlier (see Section 5.3.2), could be attributed to the fact that in most cases, and within their places of employ (social work organisations and the SAPS), they are not involved in direct service delivery to victims and perpetrators of CP and CST (see Section 4.4.7 Sub-theme 6). This confirms the fact that they do not necessarily render services to these client systems. Some of them were not even knowledgeable about the phenomenon of CST as a particular aspect of CSEC. The various participant groups' responses are grouped as sub-themes and categories and these are depicted in Table 5.3 on the next page.

**Table 5.3: An exposition of the sub-themes and categories related to theme 7: The service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

Sub-theme 1	Categories
<p>Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST</p>	<p><u>Hindrances inherent in the client systems (microsystem)</u></p> <p><i>Individuals' lack of reporting incidences of child sexual abuse and molestation</i></p> <p><i>Parents do not see the value of involving their children who were victims of child sexual abuse and molestation in therapy</i></p> <p><i>The general public's ignorance about what social workers do as a hindrance</i></p> <p><i>Children do not understand their rights as a hindrance</i></p> <p><i>The child as a witness is a hindrance</i></p> <p><u>Hindrances related to the social workers themselves (microsystem) and their working conditions</u></p> <p><i>The social workers themselves lacking an awareness of the phenomenon of CST, and not being trained to deal with the phenomenon; and being slack in reporting cases inherent in CST</i></p> <p><i>Lack of funding as a hindrance</i></p> <p><i>Poor salaries earned by social workers as a hindrance</i></p> <p><i>The high caseloads, shortage of social workers, high turnover of staff, lack of resources and the nature of social work service delivery hampering therapeutic interventions as hindrances</i></p> <p><u>Hindrances within the meso- and macrosystems</u></p> <p><i>The uncoordinated and ineffective child protection and legal systems</i></p> <p><i>The large number of role players with whom children must engage during investigations of sexual abuse and molestation incidences</i></p> <p><i>The inefficiency of the justice systems causing secondary traumatising for children</i></p>
<p>Sub-theme 2: The non-social work</p>	<p>Social workers not being committed to service delivery to the client systems</p>

<p>participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST</p>	<p>Social workers' non-rendering of services and their ineffective service delivery  High caseloads hindering social work service delivery  Lack of understanding of the forms of CSEC  The lack of the community's involvement in reporting cases of CST and lack of assistance when reporting cases</p>
<p>Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST</p>	<p>The ineffective child justice system failing the children  The low arrest and conviction rates on reported cases  Challenges during court proceedings  Lack of resources and manpower within the SAPS as a hindering factor  Social workers delaying the delivering of reports hindering effective service delivery</p>

The respective, sub-themes and categories (see Table 5.4) are the focus of the following sub-section.

#### **5.4.2. Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

In relation to the perpetrating of sexual offences against children, and by way of introduction to this sub-theme, Barnes-September et al. (2000) unequivocally state that rendering services to children who have become victims CSEC in South Africa is poor. Van Niekerk (2003:13) concurs and postulates that sexual offenders act with impunity in the face of inadequate service delivery from all sectors directed at the child victims. The message that is conveyed to both the children and their parents is that children are not protected. According to this author, this inadequacy in terms of service delivery can, *inter alia*, be attributed to a lack of adequate training, resources and personnel, and motivation (van Niekerk, 2003:13). In confirmation of what van Niekerk already alluded to in 2003, Paulsen and Wilson (2013:64), report a similar state of affairs when indicating that social workers in the child welfare sector have low status, high caseloads and “disempowering working conditions”, which may contribute to statutory social workers not attending to their cases efficiently.

The information from the social worker participants in this study aligns with these documented aspects in terms of factors challenging or hindering their response to sexual abuse and exploitation of children in general with the exception of some remarks specifically directed to CP and CST.

The hindrances are presented in three categories as identified from the accounts of the participants in relation to the factors that concern them when responding to child sexual abuse and molestation as associated with CP and CST: namely:

- Hindrances inherent in the client systems (microsystem)
- Hindrances related to the social workers themselves (microsystem) and their working conditions
- Hindrances within the meso- and macrosystems.

##### **5.4.2.1 Hindrances inherent in the client systems (microsystem)**

Hindrances in the client familial system have significant impact on the development of the child according to Bronfenbrenner (2000:132) who states that “the greater the

developmental impact of proximal processes on children growing up in disadvantaged or disorganized environments is to be expected, mainly for outcomes reflecting developmental dysfunction” (as explained in Chapter 1, Section 1.3). Much of the behaviour of families of the abused molested and victims of CSEC speak to dysfunctional familial and community systems as reported below:

Participants K, C, N and R were of the view that **individuals’ lack of reporting incidences of child sexual abuse and molestation and CSEC hinder social workers to respond and intervene.**

Participant K’s response aptly summarised the accounts of all three of these participants by saying: *“many of the people do not want to talk if something [sexual abuse or exploitation] has happened because they are afraid something will happen to the children, where will we [social workers] go with the child, that’s why they rather keep it to themselves. At the end of the day it disadvantages the child”*.<sup>144</sup>

*“I believe this kind of behaviour is there outside nê, but it’s just that people are not coming forward with it and as far as we are social workers that are supposed to protect the children it’s hard for us to protect them if this case is not being reported. So that’s a bit difficult for us”*. (Participant N.)

In the context of this trend of victims of CSEC not reporting an incident can be attributed to the fact that some children find it difficult to verbalise what has happened to them as they felt threatened or intimidated (ECPAT, 2009:12).

Another hindrance, mentioned by Participants F and E, is that **parents do not see the value of involving their children who were victims of child sexual abuse and molestation in therapy.** They spoke out along the following lines:

*“... the parents’ sense of urgency as to whether their children need follow-up or not ... it’s impossible to go out into the community and do therapy in the community. If you want to render an effective therapeutic service, they have to come here. Um, so it’s to motivate the parents to actually get to the point - especially the younger children - of bringing them”... The family often is a stumbling block. I think if we look at how a lot of them [i.e. referring to the families of victims] live; they live with it day in and day out, and the*

---

<sup>144</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

*traumas that they go through from when they're tiny they just learn to cope with them".*  
(Participant F.)

Participant E articulated the lack of parental motivation for therapy in this way: *"I think there are a lot of hiccups with the fact that many parents don't bring the children regularly [to counselling], they don't follow the therapy through and the family should also have therapy".*<sup>145</sup>

Cody (2010:207) expresses similar sentiments as she asserts that, although most support is directed to the child, it is more than likely that the whole family is affected too.

In addition to hindrances already highlighted, Participants Z, K and G were of the view that **the general public's ignorance about what social workers do hinders them from servicing child victims and perpetrators effectively.** They stated:

*"So many of them [referring to the public] are not enlightened about what we actually do. So we have to focus a little more do that we can tell them what it is that we do"*<sup>146</sup>.  
(Participant Z.)

*"There are many people who are uninformed about what we really do".* (Participant K.)

*"There are many people who do not even know about us [social workers]"*<sup>147</sup>. (Participant G.)

The last two **hindrances** inherent in the client system, according to Participant E is, in the first instance, the fact that **children do not understand their rights.** Participant E explained: *"... many times they are so emotionally blunt and they are not tuned into their rights".* Secondly, **the child as a witness is a hindrance.** *"... many of the children [cases] will be thrown out of court because there are so many contradicting statements, especially a young child, it is part of her developmental phase to keep changing answers, it's that thing where if they get asked the same question more than once they think they are wrong and change their answer, or will say what they think the adult wants to hear....for example, in the cross-examination in court; that's what they do to discredit the child's*

---

<sup>145</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

<sup>146</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

<sup>147</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

witness. So many times they ask the same question just with a 'swing' over and over and it confuses the children. They are so tense in any case...".

#### 5.4.2.2 Hindrances related to the social workers themselves (microsystem) and their working conditions

When considering Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory (Bronfenbrenner, 1999:3-6), hindrances related to the social workers themselves can be seen on the microsystem level (i.e. a lack of training relating to adequate reporting and training on the phenomenon of CSEC as a whole).

In respect of hindrances related to the social workers themselves are issues about **a lack of alertness about CST as a phenomenon, a lack of training about it and being slack in reporting cases**. Participants AA, Z, J and R referred to this:

*"I think that they [referring to the social workers] are not very alert to the problem [of CST] – this could be due to overloaded caseloads on other forms of abuse and neglect, lack of education that has sensitised them to the problem". (Participant AA.)*

*"... in the rural areas we are not informed, but in the cities they are informed [about CST]. We are not aware of the legislation or about what to do when it happens".<sup>148</sup> (Participant Z.)*

*"I think also that a big one is that our child protection workers don't have the necessary training and skills and that's due to no fault of their own but they are put into situations and positions. If I think of social workers, there are these young social workers who have just finished varsity and they need to go and deal with the most hectic cases. They don't know where to begin, they don't get adequate supervision, you know and they just have to sink or swim and it just doesn't work". (Participant J.)*

Participant R felt that social workers themselves were also partially an obstacle, as they did not report cases that came to their attention. *"That was a big problem, the reporting. In the previous Act it was almost left to the discretion of the social worker or whoever and now its compulsory and you can be on the...carpet and there can be charges brought against you if you don't report, which is wonderful".*

---

<sup>148</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*“...in the child protection forum meeting in December, they [Department of Social Development] all of a sudden come forward with cases of child trafficking that were reported in the last quarter of last year that we were not informed about and ... I mean 36 cases and we still question and say, ‘so what happened to that’? And then social workers come and sit in training and they don’t know about trafficking, so how were those cases identified? How were they assessed? What happened to those children? Were they repatriated? How did that happen, was there any follow-up, was there any after care? Because also for stats purposes it would be also good to trace those children, keep on tracing them to see what actually happens. So we wouldn’t know maybe cases of sex tourism are reported to DSD [Department of Social Welfare]”. (Participant U.)*

The social worker participants were very vocal and spoke at length how their **working conditions hinder and challenge them to respond to victims and perpetrators for child sexual abuse and molestation**. This speaks to a perceived disturbance or ‘lack’ in Bronfenbrenner’s exosystem where the social work working environment would be placed in his ecological systems theory (Berk & Roberts, 2009:28). In this regard they referred to a number of issues now discussed.

### ***Lack of funding as a hindrance***

Commenting on her work with offenders, Participant AA stated: *“We have developed appropriate programmes and manuals – however, funding remains an enormous problem – it is important to note that we do not discriminate between types of offenders – if they have abused children and are referred to us – we work with them”.*

Participants J and C expressed similar sentiments:

*“The fact that there are so many children who need the services and there are just not enough hands to go around and that there’s just not enough money to provide all the services”. (Participant J.)*

*“...finances don’t always allow one to do what you really want to do or what you may see the child needs, that is really a stressor for us at this stage, our finances...”.<sup>149</sup> (Participant C.)*

---

<sup>149</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

Participant F pointed out that her organisation was in a position to remunerate the social workers well enough to retain them. *“We’re in an advantage as an NGO in that we have good financial backing ... we’ve got good facilities, we’ve got computers, we’ve got vehicles that we can go out in but often the NGOs don’t have that and it just kills the spirit completely if you’re battling from when you get to work just to find a car to go out and see a child – eventually you just lie down and give up sadly...”*

The comment made by Participant F points to the poor salaries earned by social workers as a further hindrance.

### ***Poor salaries earned by social workers as a hindrance***

Participant G conveyed a common view amongst the participants that *“our salary is very small”*.<sup>150</sup>

### ***The high caseloads, shortage of social workers, high turnover of staff, lack of resources and the nature of social work service delivery hampering therapeutic interventions as hindrances***

Seven of the social worker participants specified these challenges experienced by social workers collectively and five storylines are presented to exemplify the common view.

*“Well I think the reality of prevention work is a myth, we just don’t have enough social workers to go around, number one, and number two, if we do have social workers they are put in the situation of sorting out the problem once it’s happened, so there isn’t preventative work happening, or if it is it’s just sort of an add on here, or an add on there, but there’s no dedicated prevention work happening here in this country”.* (Participant J.)

In confirming Participant J’s comment about stopping CSEC from not happening at grassroots level, Lutya (2012:18) concurs that, especially in relation human trafficking of women and girls for commercial sexual exploitation in South Africa, prevention work was not occurring on the ground despite lip service being paid to it.

*“Also the working conditions of social workers... cause there’s a high turnover of social workers... and that also impacts their work because children are forgotten and fall through the cracks... [Social workers] don’t engage in therapy and they don’t refer. Because*

---

<sup>150</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*they're too busy with a large caseload, they just sort of deal with the immediate requirements and then they don't... The depth of the intervention is very shallow. It's not therapeutic. Maybe they'll take the child to the hospital and then see that the medical is done but it's not a therapeutic intervention... I think they are generally feeling overwhelmed. ... Because of the high case loads and the poor management and the poor support of social workers and inadequate supervision and support". (Participant A.)*

*"... like I say we don't get a lot of time to actually do therapy". (Participant B.)*

*"The high volume of work that we have to deal with, you can't render a service, you're putting on plasters ... you just can't do what you want ... and the high caseloads just... it's going through the motions, making sure that everything's on your file and just to cover you, but that care for the actual children at the end of the day that seems to be getting less and less and I think it's to do with the fact that especially in the NGOs the volume, you can't actually achieve what you want to achieve". (Participant F.)*

*"The social workers who work at NGOs are absolutely overloaded...we have many logistical problems like transport, because it is a very wide area [we serve], we don't have interview rooms in all the areas ...". (Participant E.)*

The participants refer to their challenging working conditions as social workers. Paulsen and Wilson (2013:64) document similar findings from their study that focuses on the experiences of caregivers with the South African judicial system after reporting child sexual abuse (2013). They conclude that statutory social workers work under taxing conditions, especially with staff shortages due to high staff turnover and high caseloads that disempower them. Additionally, in confirmation of the above, Alpaslan and Schenck (2012:400-419), in their research project, which aimed at revisiting and exploring the working condition-related challenges experienced by social workers practising in rural areas, found a range of unsatisfactory working conditions were "hampering social work service delivery". The social workers in their study experienced high caseloads, poor salaries, lack of resources and infrastructure, vast areas in which to provide service, lack of understanding of the role of social workers by the community, lack of supervisory support and clients' cultural/traditional customs and practices. High staff turnover in the social service and/or welfare sector affects service delivery negatively because communities do not benefit when there is no continuity (Paulsen & Wilson, 2013:61).

#### 5.4.2.3 Hindrances within the meso- and macrosystems

The uncoordinated and ineffective child protection and legal systems; the large number of role players with whom children must engage during the investigation of the sexual abuse and molestation incidences; and the inefficiency of the justice systems causing secondary traumatisation for children, are hindrances challenging interventions with the client systems under discussion.

In confirmation of the aspect of **the uncoordinated and ineffective child protection and legal systems**, Participants J and E said:

*“...the system, the child protection system, is shocking. The left hand doesn't know what the right hand is doing, there's no co-ordination, there's no multidisciplinary teamwork... the justice system isn't child-friendly. I mean, even the social workers in the police system aren't child-friendly – so that for me is a huge obstacle. We've got beautiful laws, but on the ground we've got a shocking system. The fact that there are so many children that need the services and there are just not enough hands to go around and that there's just not enough money to provide all the services because there's enough money for other things”.* (Participant J.)

*“ ... the lack of support for children when they have to go to court and I feel that it traumatises the children further and the court case is often drawn out for years and I believe it does more damage than it does good”.* (Participant E.)

In looking for literature to confirm the accounts given in this section, the researcher came across a study by Paulsen and Wilson (2013:60) focusing on the aspect of caregivers' experiences of the justice system after reporting child sexual abuse. The caregiver participants' experiences of the South African police service were both positive and negative. On the positive side, the majority of their participants had perceived the SAPS officers' communication with victimised children as caring and easy to understand whilst on the negative side these participants mentioned that the officers' unavailability and poor follow-up regarding cases inconvenienced them. They were also of the view that the SAPS officials lacked skills in dealing with child sex abuse cases. Vetten (2012:6) echoes this and indicates that most uniformed SAPS members at the client service centres lacked in the skills of taking statements and were not adequately trained to deal with sexual offences. She further mentions that, despite the resurrection of the SAPS' Family

Violence, Child protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) Units in April 2011, response to sexual offences remains disorganised (Vetten, 2012:6).

**The large number of role players with whom children must engage during investigations of sexual abuse and molestation incidences** was also highlighted as a meso- and macrosystem level hindrance. Cody (2010:210) points to the fact that, for an abused child (once identified) to engage with multiple role players (i.e. social services, the police, the courts, doctors), and “keeping a multitude of appointments and negotiating the different systems can be daunting”.

Participant E concurred with Cody: *“a big problem is all these role players that the child has to go through that must be reduced”*.<sup>151</sup>

Participant B, in supporting this category also stated: *“... they [referring to the children] just don't talk, they might gesture or nod their head but they don't ... when they have to make a statement to the FCS person there's usually the mother present or some other family member and the social worker and the FCS detective, so there's three people now, and the hospital and nursing staff, they ask them as well. The procedures are... you have to see someone, a social worker ...then you've got to get FCS that has to be involved and then they have a social worker as well, so you've got initially a police officer, then you've got the FCS investigator then you've got the FCS social worker then you've got us, social workers...”*.

In confirming the category titled **the inefficiency of the justice systems causing secondary traumatisation for children**, Participant J remarked: *“...the court system as well ... they often prolong and extend the court dates which is very upsetting for the child, it's traumatic, a lot of secondary victimisation happens and that just makes it all the more harder for the child and then often the cases are dropped, so to follow through and get a result ... it's very difficult”*.

Paulsen and Wilson (2013:65) investigated caregivers' experiences of the justice system after reporting child sexual abuse. Participants in their study also point to the fact that, in general, they were met with delays and postponements within the court system, which not only frustrated them, but also affected the victims and their families emotionally, frustrating them like-wise.

---

<sup>151</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans to English

The focus of the discussion now shifts from accounts given by social workers to those of the non-social worker participants that look at factors hindering and challenging them to CSEC with reference to CP and CST.

#### **5.4.3 Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

The accounts of the non-social work participants on the factors hindering and challenging a response to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST was contrary to that of the social work participants. The non-social work group indicated that their view was that the social workers' are not committed nor do they render effective services, which they attribute to high caseloads and being uninformed about CST and sexual trafficking of children.

With reference to the **social workers not being committed to service delivery to the client systems**, Participant BB's opinion displayed concern: *"I believe that social workers' views are this is just a job for money. They do not seem to be equipped or committed. I was on Child Welfare's committee for a short period and all the social workers do is complain; Oh the money it's not enough... Oh I am tired. I only ever heard about their complaints regarding their own issues. Most people are very disillusioned with social workers and the actual system itself. When it came to taking the [emergency after hours] phone, after hours, their attitude was that they don't get extra for that so they won't take it or they simply turn it off. Social workers are not rendering effective services".*

With reference to the aspect of **social workers' non-rendering of services and their ineffective service delivery**, the non-social worker participants highlight several points especially that social workers do not provide any prevention work in the realm of CST. Participant YY's remark confirmed this. *"Nothing specifically focused on CST maybe on sexual abuse in school and life orientation and some social workers that maybe run community programmes, maybe that, but not specifically at sex tourism".*

Participant Q also spoke about the lack of prevention work on CST when stating: *"I don't hear of a lot of prevention in schools or they don't really talk about it".*

Social workers do not provide any counselling as Participant II aptly stated: *"Social workers currently intervene only when cases are reported. [However, she also mentioned that...] I have found in many instances that counselling even didn't take place during times*

when cases were reported”, while HH said: “*I am currently not really sure what role they [social workers] are playing. What I do know is that the victim does not receive adequate counselling and the perpetrator walks around freely*”.

Participant NN remarked: “*I think they’re involved really with the victims when victims are reported*”.

Participants HH, QQ and P attributed the social workers’ ineffective response to service delivery to the child victims and perpetrators in the cases of CP and CST to “**the high caseloads they have to manage**”. They spoke about this along the following lines:

“*The first thing that comes to mind is that social workers are inundated with cases. There are too many cases and too few social workers around to help. We honestly don’t have much faith in the system*”. (Participant HH.)

“*What I know about social workers, especially from Department of Social Development (DSD) is that they are so busy, completely overwhelmed, massive needs that they can’t even get to every case*”. (Participant QQ.)

“*I think a lot of them sit with such a work load and they are unable to respond immediately and to be consistent in that response*”. (Participant P.)

Participants SS and P were also of the view that the *social workers* do not render services and ineffective service delivery on the basis that they “**do not have an understanding of these forms of CSEC**”. It is clear from the following information shared:

“*I think there’s a real lack of understanding about what child trafficking, child sex tourism is ... The majority of social workers had never really understood what trafficking was, couldn’t define it, couldn’t identify people who had been trafficked, wouldn’t know how to identify, wouldn’t know how to assist and through the training [offered by her organisation] they were able to identify cases they had had and said well actually that’s what it was, but they couldn’t identify it at the time*”. (Participant SS.)

In addressing this lack of knowledge on CST, Patterson (2007:16) says that having a “clear, operational definition” is the necessary first step to effective investigation of these cases that pose a ‘unique problem’. “Underreporting is due to stigmatisation and its association with prostitution”.

*There is no such category [child sex tourism] in the Police code, so that's also part of the problem, therefore you won't have it and also with regard to the reporting for Department Social Development, there's no such category". (Participant P.)*

Another hindering factor not directed at social workers but mentioned by Participants YY and SS is **the lack of the community's involvement in reporting cases of CST and lack of assistance when reporting cases.**

Participant YY's experience is that the community's reluctance to report cases is to be seen both in the context of the community and police involvement in CST. Describing a case she had been involved with, she explained further: *"This is a man from the Eastern Cape who's travelled here and he was sexually abusing children as well as adults. He was apparently also a taxi driver and so that's often how he got people was he'd give them a lift and then he'd drive them out somewhere and he'd rape them that way. With him, he had a business connection with a Sangoma [witch doctor] in the Eastern Cape and so with his victims he would draw blood from them with needles and things like that. This the community heard of, so the community was aware of what he was doing but they feared him because of what he was doing. They felt like he had some sort of spiritual powers and so they were very reluctant to actually do anything about it. He was friends with some of the policemen who were even involved in some of the cases that were eventually reported and they dropped the charges".*

In relation to reporting, Participant SS felt the channels were not adequate: *"No [the reporting channels are inadequate] because there have been also cases where I've heard that victims have said that they've gone to the Police to seek help and they haven't been assisted".*

The focus of the next section is on the SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of factors hindering and challenging responses to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST.

#### **5.4.4 Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

The SAPS FCS Unit members who spoke about the factors hindering a response to address the phenomena under investigation, highlighted the ineffective child justice system, the low arrest and conviction rates on reported cases, challenges during court proceedings, lack of internal resources and social workers being ineffective and other

challenging factors again indicating disturbances within the mesosystem and the exosystem.

Participant SAPA spoke along the following lines about **the ineffective child justice system failing the children**: *“I wouldn’t say a lot but there are reporting phases, you understand there are cases pending on the court, where my concern is our courts are not supportive, because our prosecutors are not trained to lead their witnesses ...Now our justice system is actually failing the children. Sorry to say that”*.

**The low arrest and conviction rates on reported cases** in the area of sexual exploitation are a hindrance. According to Participant SAPD: *“I’d say 70% of [reported cases] those go to court...Okay now the conviction part is a bit of a problem, most of the cases reported we run after the perpetrator and arrest them, put them on the court role and it goes on and then in the long run our complainants have a tendency of disappearing or when disappeared we find them, they are not interested in proceeding and the case is withdrawn...Probably one of the contributing factors is that when you speak to them they are getting tired of attending court, coming and sitting at court, the case takes too long or just lost interest, they want to just go on with their lives. ‘I don’t want to think about this case again”*.

With reference to **challenges during court proceedings** Participant SAPE shared the following: *“Wow! It’s not easy...because sometimes you think that things will go right at court and then you find okay the child managed to give the statement. The docket is taken to court, the trial is on-going there but you find at the end of the day the docket will come back to say the child is not fit to stand trial, counselling, counselling, counselling and you find it’s not easy because it does affect us because really at the end of the day we want to see the justice system [work] but because of those problems being encountered by court because sometimes before they enrol the cases now, this is the procedure now the prosecutor must give us a consultation date, he must consult. Sometimes during the consultation they will pick it up no ways - counselling must be done”*. (Participant SAPE)

In confirming the **lack of resources and manpower within SAPS as a hindering factor**, Participants SAPD and SAPB commented: *“I know some other units are at a disadvantage with resources”*. (Participant SAPD.)

*“Manpower and the transport, cars... everyone doesn’t have the passion to be able to investigate this kind of case. The language, there’s a language barrier because most of*

*the people speak Xhosa in this area ... Especially the availability of black language speaking people at the police stations because there are translators to use. We've had cases where people had to drive to a filling station to an Ultra City to ask if anyone there could speak Sotho to take a statement from a raped woman. It's a communication gap*<sup>152</sup>. (Participant SAPB.)

Participants SAPB, SAPD and SAPE echoed the opinions of some of the social work and non-social work participants when mentioning **social workers delaying the delivering of reports hindering effective service delivery**:

*"... we sometimes wait very long for reports, really in some places"*<sup>153</sup>. (Participant SAPB)

*" ... but with DSD it's a different scenario, they are also involved in assessing, giving counselling, now when it comes to getting a report for the court it takes long. It takes very long, If the court requires their [referring to the social workers'] reports as an input in the case, yes it does delay cases [when they don't give their reports] because the case will have to be postponed. Otherwise the case will be struck off the role until the report is finalised. It must start now from scratch again and we place it back on the role send summons to the accused and so on, yes so it does delay the case".* (Participant SAPD.)

*"Well because it is their [referring to the social workers] field [referring to investigating the allegations], but I will say although the report they take long".* (Participant SAPE)

The preceding discussion dealt with the service providers groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST. In the next section, the suggestions from the service provider groups in response to the phenomenon of the commercial sexual exploitation of children with reference to CP and CST are reported.

## **5.5 THEME 8: THE SUGGESTIONS FROM THE SERVICE PROVIDER GROUPS IN RESPONSE TO THE PHENOMENON OF CSEC WITH REFERENCE TO CP AND CST**

This theme and its related sub-themes and categories (where applicable) as depicted in the Table 5.4 arose from the following question posed to participants from the various

---

<sup>152</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

<sup>153</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

participant groups: *What in your point of view can be done to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST?*

**Table: 5.4: An exposition of the subthemes and categories related to theme 8: The suggestions from the service provider groups in response to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

Sub-theme	Category
Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	<p>A suggestion to improve the state of the social work profession as enabler to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC</p> <p>Social workers should be made aware and educated about CSEC</p> <p>Suggestions related to the treatment and treatment modalities of victims and perpetrators of CSEC as enablers to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC</p> <p>Suggestions on the prevention of CST</p>
Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	<p>Preventative suggestion: education, raising awareness and prevention</p> <p>Suggestions directed at social workers and social work service delivery</p> <p>Suggestions with reference to treatment modalities for intervening with both victims and perpetrators</p> <p>A more effective policing and court system suggested as a response</p> <p>Suggestions directed to the hospitality and tourism industry regarding responding to CSEC</p> <p>Prioritisation of child protection as a response to address the occurrence of CSEC</p>
Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST	

The respective, sub-themes and categories as portrayed in Table 5.4 will now become the focus of the discussion starting with the social workers participant group's suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST.

### 5.5.1 Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST

A variety of suggestions were forwarded by the social worker participant group and these will now be presented as categories.

#### 5.5.1.1 A suggestion to improve the state of the social work profession as enabler to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC

While both the social worker and the non-social worker participants highlighted the working conditions of social workers as a hindrance in the previous theme, Participant A is of the view that improving the state of the social work profession would enable social workers to respond to the phenomenon being investigated. She stated: *"I think the whole structure and the way social work is done, needs to be looked at. There is a shortage of social workers ... I think a lot of work can be given to social auxiliary workers so that social workers can focus more on the therapeutic side. I think that would help. Also the working conditions of social workers... cause there's a high turnover of social workers... and that also impacts their work because children are forgotten and fall through the cracks. I think the social work profession as a whole needs to be ... how can you say...more attention needs to be given to the working conditions of social workers, salaries and...especially Child Welfare. Child welfare is in the forefront of the ... and I just feel they are not actually coping. And the whole structure needs to change"*. She went on to say, *"Well supervision, quality supervision, regular supervision is very important and their working conditions could be better, like longer leave to prevent burnout and smaller caseloads"*. (Participant A)

#### 5.5.1.2 Social workers should be made aware and educated about CSEC

Participants A, R, E, F, N and Z suggested that social workers themselves should be made aware and be educated about CSEC, confessing that they themselves are especially uninformed about CST. Such knowledge will empower them to raise awareness amongst others and the communities they are servicing. They articulated their suggestions along the following lines:

*"...they [social workers] first need to be informed themselves, before they can increase awareness. So they need information and then to disseminate that information through forums"*. (Participant A.)

*“For starters I think that we should be educated more, as social workers in the pre-grad level, we should be educated more”. (Participant R.) This participant also elaborated on the aspects in which education is required, when stating: “[We should be educated] regarding how to report, where to report and what the Act stipulates, that you must report...so our reporting level can increase, our knowledge about the field can increase. Our advocacy about the field can increase”. (Participant R.)*

*“I think social workers must first gain knowledge and training and supplement their own knowledge through courses and workshops”<sup>154</sup>. (Participant E.)*

*“I think that’s [development of awareness amongst social workers themselves specifically about child sex tourism] vital because I think social workers have blinkers on – they only focus on what’s in front of them they don’t look further than what’s in front of them...we need to teach them...”. (Participant F.)*

*“... [social workers need to be informed about CST] ... so that we can tell more of our clients and the community about that”. (Participant N.)*

*“We must be made more aware of this [referring to CST]. If we can just get that necessary training we can do awareness at schools or with the parents, or where we do lots of group work especially in child protection”<sup>155</sup>. (Participant Z.)*

#### 5.5.1.3 Suggestions related to the treatment and treatment modalities of victims and perpetrators of CSEC as enablers to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC

Participants J and A stated the obvious when suggesting that **children who were victims of CSEC should have access to therapeutic services**. The following utterances point to this suggestion:

*“You see what it should be is that children should have access to therapeutic services a place where they can engage in some kind of healing process but in reality you know most children never get there ... because it [referring to the services] are just isn’t available”. (Participant J.)*

---

<sup>154</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

<sup>155</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

*"I think it's extremely important even if the social worker can't do it [referring to providing therapeutic services] themselves and then they need to refer to a professional that can do it. ... they need to find a resource that can do it because I think that is the big shortfall, that social workers don't do that and then children, a child does not receive therapeutic help". (Participant A.)*

Participant B suggested that **social workers should be involved in the rehabilitation of perpetrators**: *"I definitely think it would be wonderful if there would be social workers involved in what you could say rehabilitation or healing of perpetrators... I'm assuming that this occurs either through FCS or the prisons for those who are convicted. ... if we could have social workers, but I don't think that would fall under our agency's domain, like you know ... I think there's probably a lot of perpetrators out there who want help before they even do anything, possible perpetrators".*

Participant J suggested that **treatment modalities directed at the victims and their families should be culturally sensitive**: *"... we also need to have a look at the community in which the child lives and what their understanding is of healing and therapy and you know and us kind of coming in with our Westernised ideas of you know you need to come and see the counsellor once a week you know is not necessarily seen as an appropriate healing practice for that community and that family and that child so that's also an important thing to consider".*

This view agrees with Ochieng (2003:28-29) who suggests that trying to apply Western psychological perspectives in an African setting is to completely "miss the understanding of different individuals and may be taken to mean that African cultures cannot be understood in their own right" and must therefore be viewed through the Western lens. Ochieng states that attempting to understand an individual without knowledge of their culture is to "dismiss their cultural heritage".

For **social workers to form part of a multidisciplinary team in responding to the phenomenon of CSEC was the suggestion** made by Participant A, who stated: *"I think it's very important that social workers work as a team. That they work on a kind of a task team, like with Child Welfare, because it is such stressful work, it's important to work as a team or in a team and I think it would be particularly helpful to have a social worker, a psychologist, a social auxiliary worker and maybe a home based care worker and I think that will be very effective because we need to support each other, because the people*

*that do that have resources at their disposal, so I think unity is important and I think it will help. And the community, one needs support from the community”.*

The need for a multidisciplinary approach is confirmed and firmly recommended in the literature. “To minimise the potential trauma that child victims may face in their first contact with police authorities, another tactic that states should adopt is establishing appropriately trained police units that can respond to crimes against children in a child-friendly manner. These units should be gender-sensitive, be present all over the national territory and ideally, cooperate with a national child welfare system comprised of multidisciplinary professionals who can give guidance on appropriate housing and follow-up care” (ECPAT International, 2009). In addition, Cody (2010:210) posits that the needs of sexually exploited and victimised children cannot be met by one service provider as they and their families require a range of services from different providers that would include social services, the police, the courts, medical services and educational providers.

#### 5.5.1.4 Suggestions on the prevention of CST

In relation to the aspect of the prevention of CST, various suggestions were proposed with some being very specific, such as that social workers should do more prevention work and well directing it to the community at large, to the children, the hotel industry and to the social workers.

Participants F, P, J, II and N all suggested that **social workers should focus more on the prevention of the various forms of CSEC.**

*“Prevention is one of the most important aspects of our job especially when you look at what’s going on in our communities out there, we have to focus on prevention for anything, I mean that’s just as vital and we have to change our mind-set. We’ve got these cases to work with, this is your caseload, we have to somehow change our mind-set because if we don’t start preventing what is happening out there we are never going to cope with it because the caseloads are going to get higher and higher”.* (Participant F.)

*“I think social work has got to do more prevention work. Our programmes – we need to invest more in prevention work so direct support services to children and young people of that age”.* (Participant P.)

*“We have to start looking at strengthening our families and strengthening relationships in families, helping teenage moms when their babies are born, helping them with that*

*attachment process right at the beginning... about creating a sense of relationship and belonging for children. These children are vulnerable to sex tourism when they're 12 or 13 or you know you're talking about babyhood but that's really where it needs to start and have some kind of support structure for those moms and children who continue to be at risk... how can we support if you're stuck. It needs to speak to the core of children being at risk and at risk means feeling like you don't belong like you are vulnerable you know all of those vulnerabilities taking over. That's really where it should be". (Participant J.)*

*"More should be done with regard to early intervention in the communities but more so within the schools. Our schooling system should make provision for counselling or guidance by social workers during school hours". (Participant II.)*

*"I think what they [social workers] should be doing is more prevention to really be the professional voice. I think there should be diversion programmes [for perpetrators]". (Participant NN.)*

The literature confirms the need for rehabilitation and deterrents. Internationally three areas of focus have arisen for working against CSEC which are: reducing the supply of children; deterring perpetrators through legal processes; and providing rehabilitation services to children who have experienced or are experiencing CSEC (Cluver, Bray & Dawes, 2007:259).

**Raising the awareness amongst the potential victims - the children - as a preventative measure** was endorsed by Participants G and Y:

*"I think it must start with schools. Children must be educated from a young age and it mustn't be a once-off thing – it must be a regular thing. When we do national days then CST must also have a slot, where it is addressed ... it is important to get in people who are in high positions, well educated, like magistrates, to speak directly to the people so that they can hear. They don't always want to listen to just us [referring to them as social workers]".<sup>156</sup> (Participant G.)*

*"Yes, definitely speak to children, have campaigns...". (Participant Y.)*

---

<sup>156</sup> Storyline literally translated from Afrikaans into English

In addition, Participant Y had another suggestion to the community at large on prevention occurrence of CST, namely: “... *get those street children off the street so that the supply is not there*”.

Thus in addition to preventative measures being directed at the children as potential victims, several other participants (F, K, A and J) **too spoke about raising awareness amongst communities at large, as way of prevention of CST**. They worded their suggestions along the following lines:

*“... we need to do it [increase awareness of CST ] but we need to do it with smaller, more focused, and not just getting it out there, it's more a long term thing”*. (Participant F.)

*“I personally feel that we must do more awareness ... because many people are not educated about this [CST]”*. (Participant K.)

*“I feel that there should be dedicated advocates of children's rights ... not necessarily a legal advocate but someone who will advocate and will create awareness about the issue and what can be done”*. (Participant A.)

*“I think we need to be working with the people who work with children. We need to be working with the schools and the community church leaders and you know the soccer coaches as well as parents to highlight the reality of the situation. ... so we need to look at the grown-ups around children who need to be taking care of children”*. (Participant J.)

Participant XX mentioned *the responsibility of the hospitality industry in preventing the occurrence of CST* stating: *“I think everybody's got to do what they can from whatever perspective. I think domestic workers in hotels and bed and breakfasts should be trained to watch out for this sort of thing and be shown what to do when they find out. I think generally people in society should be educated as to what you can do. In terms of investigating the foreigners coming into the country, that's a hard one”*.

The views of the participants in this study are in line with trends in international thinking. ECPAT Netherlands (2014:82-3), in their assessment of on CSEC related to tourism in five African countries, which included South Africa, recommends that the tourism industry needs a national campaign to raise awareness about CSEC specific to CST. It goes further and says that this awareness raising should extend to communities to include parents, community leaders, traditional and religious leaders.

The focus of the presentation of will now shift to the non-social workers participant groups' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST.

### **5.5.2 Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

The non-social workers participant groups' suggestions for responding to these phenomena were mostly centred on both victims and perpetrators. Suggestions forwarded related to education, raising awareness and prevention; the social workers and social work service delivery and treatment modalities for intervening, and a more effective court system. In addition suggestions directed at the hotel industry and a suggestion around prioritising the protection of children were made. The sub-theme is presented as categories.

#### 5.5.2.1 Preventative suggestion: education, raising awareness and prevention

Participants' suggestions (JJ, II, HH, and V) focused on education, raising awareness and prevention in responding to CSEC. They worded the suggestions along the following lines:

*"Education is key - not only of the children themselves, but their caregivers, parents, siblings and extended family members. The problem should be attacked from grassroots level all the way up to Parliament and beyond. Visit places of learning from playschools all the way up to varsity level and educate, educate, educate. Visit communities. Hold workshops ...". (Participant JJ.)*

*"... Awareness programmes in the community e.g. schools, pre-schools, churches, parent meetings". (Participant II.)*

*"Empowering the community to make citizen arrests with compensation should spur people on to become more involved. Huge billboards advocating children's rights should be visible. Night watchmen walking the streets ensuring the safety of all individuals should be rife as well as patrolling of 'shebeens' and taverns where many vulnerable children and perpetrators hang out". Later in the interview the participant suggested: "...more public meetings with information for the public. People need to feel comfortable that should they go to their community social worker with an incident, it will be dealt with swiftly". (Participant HH.)*

*“...from a preventative kind of space because ideally we’d want to move away from responding to issues, we kind of want to avoid them actually ever taking place. If that’s going to happen there needs to be lots more public awareness, public knowledge, generally all round, around the various issues”.* (Participant V.)

In this regard, and to support of the participants’ statements, ECPAT Netherlands (82-83) advocates that awareness should be raised through the media by encouraging them to highlight sexual exploitation of children in South Africa “in a responsible way in order to raise public awareness of the zero-tolerance approach and to encourage heightened reporting”. In addition, they assert that role players working in child protection need training on the initiatives available in the tourism industry to protect children and a co-ordinated sharing of resources between the tourism and child protection sectors would utilise available funding more effectively (ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:83).

#### 5.5.2.2 Suggestions directed at social workers and social work service delivery

Participant P’s suggestion was that social work services should be two-pronged: *“I think the role is to provide more and immediate response. I think a lot of them sit with such a work load and they are unable to respond immediately and to be consistent in that response. You often find that clients don’t get seen for after a month, after two months, sometimes three, four months. I think the role [of social workers] is to provide more and immediate response ... and then also to be consistent with that”.* This participant also suggested that social workers should engage in more prevention work: *“I think social work has got to do more prevention work. Our programmes – we need to invest more in prevention work - so direct support services to children and young people of that age”.*

Participant HH suggested a larger social work presence that could be felt by communities and spoke about this as follows: *“Well, I personally feel that each community should have an office where at least four social workers are employed full time by the government. They should be very visible to the community in the sense that they organise many talks on social issues for the community, hosted by them where people can come forward and speak about their problems. The community should be able to trust the social workers. Apparently there are many officials currently working in communities and people mention that you can’t trust them as they gossip. Each social worker needs to handle new cases swiftly and let the law take action”.*

Participant NN had various, but specific suggestions with regard to social workers' involvement in the prevention of child sex tourism: *"I think what they should be doing is more prevention to really be the professional voice. I think there should be diversion programmes; there should be healthy intent, and really educating the café owners, the accommodation management people of what's healthy. We're not saying we don't care what sex gender is your preference; it's just hands off the kids. That's what we want healthy society again through that, so I think they could be the voice, because they are the professionals, they're the ones that are equipped, but I do think we need specialists"*.

#### 5.5.2.3 Suggestions with reference to treatment modalities for intervening with both victims and perpetrators

Some of the non-social worker participants recommended specific action.

*"The victim needs to receive counselling immediately to work through the traumatic experience. With the incident still fresh in the mind it becomes easier to work through. [There's] nothing worse than a counsellor discussing an issue which occurred 6 months previously. The victim cannot continue with his or her life until the incident has been debriefed".* (Participant HH.)

Participant II suggested: *"On-going support to the victim and the family is a must"*.

With reference to the treatment of the perpetrators, Participant HH suggested: *"Perpetrators should follow the course of the law and in prison they should receive assistance from the appointed social worker if deemed fit"*. (Participant HH.)

Participant NN made various suggestions related to the treatment of victims and perpetrators: *"So I would like specialists to be developed and I think if there could be a centralised assessment centre whether social worker, Child Welfare, or Department of Social Development or private practice, that specialist could be retained and a therapeutic plan put together to say what needs to be done [i.e. for the victim] and the plan for the perpetrator"*. She also felt that social workers should head up teams of professionals, saying: *"They should be the catalysts, the drivers. I think it needs a multidisciplinary approach; of the police, I mean it's a criminal behaviour, we need them, we need tourism, to uncover it and say look sleepy hollow let's get the health back into what we all want to live here for. The social workers really to spearhead that and have a campaign working up to pre-season [holiday season] and to monitor that during the season of any unhealthy*

*behaviour. I think make it uncomfortable; for the perpetrators to move on. To have a 'not in this town' touch, if that's possible and to educate the kids, you know the school social workers, that it's out there that you will get people". (Participant NN.)*

#### 5.5.2.4 A more effective policing and court system suggested as a response

Participant HH forwarded a suggestion in this regard: *"Cases need to be prosecuted as soon as possible. When cases are dragged out people lose faith in the system. At the end of the day the victim is viewed as the perpetrator". (Participant HH.)*

Participant YY suggested the following especially regarding policing in the rural areas: *"I think it's not just that it's understaffed and the lack of funding, it's not only that, but also the system needs to be updated properly. I know in a lot of the more rural areas, they're still on a paper and book system and it's not well connected so some sort of system that works across the internet; I think that would be very important. I think also not just locally and nationally but internationally. There needs to be more open communication".*

#### 5.5.2.5 Suggestions directed to the hospitality and tourism industry regarding responding to CSEC

With respect to what he thought about the tourism industry's role in prevention, Participant P proposed: *"I think they can do a lot by making that Code<sup>157</sup> a policy, right? They just put in mechanisms to monitor it from time to time, both a self-regulatory monitoring process, but also an independent monitoring process. It's just good for good clean businesses, I think". (Participant P.)*

Participant NN's suggestion was: *"I think they should be educating all of the establishments and all of the staff and I think if we stop this ignorance, and make people aware that it's actually illegal, we're not saying don't have sex, but [do] not [have sex] with children. ... have [policies] as an education flyer and pamphlet, that we are supporters of a healthy code of conduct. We're not saying be celibate, we're saying your sex life is your business but keep it adult – adult. Don't violate the kids".*

In explaining her frustration about the current sex offenders register, Participant YY also suggested a possible international link for international registers through tourism and

---

<sup>157</sup> The "Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism" is known as 'The Code'.

stated: *“I mean for example the Sexual Offenders Register that they’re working on now; I think the last report at the end of last year was that they had 2500 names on the list. The rapes that were reported last year was over 50 000, not even considering the ones that weren’t reported, so they are way behind, they are way, way behind, but the general public doesn’t have access to it. You have to apply to get permission to see who is on the register and that’s only your local register for South African perpetrators, so I don’t know if it would be good for tourism to have access to those registers internationally, meaning they have to check their guests. It’s looking at Customs and people coming in and out. It’s your travel agencies, but most people are booking online now and even if you do have a record you can create a different name – this thing is huge, it’s huge”.*

#### 5.5.2.6 Prioritisation of child protection as a response to address the occurrence of CSEC

In substantiating the validity of this category, Participant P suggested the following: *“We need to prioritise child protection in South Africa. In South Africa we’ve got a very diverse society so there seem to be different styles for different folks, right. But what I think we need to do is we need to prioritise child protection across the board and I think government needs to lead the way and business should follow. Every public space should have a child protection policy in place. Look with the World Cup we had to fight so hard for government to put a child protection policy in the World Cup thing. This should be automatic. It should be automatic as things develop and change. Kids love the malls - every (shopping) mall should have a child protection policy in place. Every community development process should have a child protection programme and development policy and frameworks in place”.*

The desired approach is a multidisciplinary team approach (see Section 5.5.1). ECPAT Netherlands (2014:80) elaborates on this in their country assessment report: *“...collaborative partnerships, it will be possible to strengthen reporting mechanisms and send a strong message to the world declaring that South Africa does not look away when children are at risk of sexual exploitation in the tourism sector, but instead takes positive action to report situations where children are at risk of commercial sexual exploitation”.*

The focus of the presentation of will now shift to the SAPS FCS Unit members’ suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST.

### **5.5.3 Sub-theme 3: The SAPS FCS Unit members' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST**

Only one participant (Participant SAPD) had a suggestion as a response to the phenomenon of CSEC. He recommended that social workers needed to speed up their report writing and counselling service as cases became delayed due to their tardiness. He spoke about this along the following lines: *“Outside social workers if they can engage more with the victim and also shorten the sessions period to speed up the report because it is actually the sessions that are scheduled by them that prolongs you know the submission of the report because those sessions are spread too far apart then it prolongs the completion of the sessions and which will also contribute to the prolonging of the submission of the report”*.

## **5.6 CHAPTER SUMMARY**

The third part of the research findings was presented in this chapter, which followed on from Chapter 4. These findings relating to the last four themes relevant to the data collected from the service provider participant groups, namely, the social workers, the non-social work NGO workers and the SAPS Unit members. It included sub-themes and categories (where applicable). Where appropriate, storylines from the transcribed participant data highlighted the themes, sub-themes and categories (where applicable). Additionally, as per the previous two chapters, a literature control was applied.

The first theme presented was Theme 5 that focused on the service provider groups' views on the accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST. It was divided into three sub-themes, the first of which was: The social work participants' views on factors contributing the phenomenon of CST. The following categories applied: poverty and unemployment as factor contributing towards CP and CST; poor social conditions at home as contributing factor to CP; the benefits inherent in sex work as contributing factor to CP; the influx of foreigners to South Africa and South Africa being regarded as destination at which children are easy to access as factors contributing to CST and the poor policing and perpetrators not being apprehended as contributing factor to CST.

The second sub-theme focused on the non-social worker participants' views on factors contributing the phenomenon of CP and CST and had four categories, namely, poor social conditions within the home and the environment as factor contributing to CP and CST;

tourism contributes to CST; children's views on sex and the benefits inherent in engaging in CP and CST as a contributing factor to the former and society's portrayal of sex and foreigners perception about South Africa's children as contributing factors towards CST.

The third and final sub-theme under this theme was the SAPS FCS Unit members' views on factors contributing the phenomenon of CP and CST. Three categories arose which were: poverty as a factor contributing to CP and CST; the parents' chemical substance addiction as a factor contributing factor to CP and CST and peer pressure as a factor contributing to CP and CST.

Next the researcher focused on the presentation of Theme 6 titled: The service provider groups' accounts of factors enabling them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST, which had three sub-themes and each sub-theme contained various categories.

The first sub-theme focused on the social work participant's accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to the CSEC with reference to CP and CST. These were mentioned under the categories: the internal enabling resources, passion for their work and the capability to engage with the child on his/her level and the fact that service rendering to children is part of their service delivery mandate; working in a conducive and supportive environment; support of their supervisors, family and spiritual networks, the external enabling factors; links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service; effective intervention programmes as enabling factor; amended and more effective legislation as enabling factor and formal and informal training as enabling factor.

Sub-theme 2 focused on the non-social work participant's accounts of the factors enabling them to respond to the CSEC with reference to CP and CST training and education, involvement of volunteers to provide a multidisciplinary service and practice experience as enabling factors.

The final sub-theme, under this theme, Sub-theme 3 titled SAPS FCS Unit members' perceptions of enabling factors in addressing sexual exploitation of children had four categories. These were; effective legislation as enabling factor; effective protocols in dealing with child sexual abuse and exploitation cases as enabling factor; well-resourced units and training and education as enabling factors; and links and relationships with other service providers to provide a multidisciplinary service.

Theme 7, the penultimate theme related to the service providers, focused on the service provider groups' accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST and there were three sub-themes. The first sub-theme was titled: The social work participant's accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST. It had the following categories: hindrances inherent in the client systems which included the individuals' lack of reporting incidences of child sexual, abuse and molestation; parents not seeing the value in terms of involving their children who were victims of child sexual abuse and molestation into therapy; the general public's ignorance about what social workers do as hindrance; children not understanding their rights as a hindrance; the child as a witness as a hindrance. Furthermore, there were hindrances related to the social workers' themselves and their working conditions which also included a lack of alertness about the phenomenon of CST and a lack of training on the phenomenon; and being slack in reporting cases inherent in the social workers themselves such as lack of funding, poor salaries earned by social workers and the high caseloads, as well as the shortage of social workers, high turnover of staff, lack of resources and the nature of social work service delivery hampering therapeutic interventions as hindrance.

Hindrances within the meso- and macrosystems included the uncoordinated and ineffective child protection and legal systems and the high number of role players children must engage with during the investigation of the sexual abuse and molestation incidences as well as the inefficiency of the justice systems causing secondary traumatising for children.

Sub-theme 2 was focused on the non-social work participant's accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST and included categories which looked at social workers not being committed to service delivery, the non-rendering of services and ineffective service delivery by social workers, the high case loads, a lack of understanding of the phenomenon on CSEC and the lack of the community's involvement in reporting cases of CST and lack of assistance when reporting cases.

Sub-theme 3: SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST had five categories. These were: the ineffective child justice system failing the children; the low arrest and conviction rates on reported cases; challenges during court proceedings; lack of resources and

manpower within the SAPS and Social workers delaying the delivering of reports as a reason hindering effective service delivery.

The final theme, Theme 8 focused on the suggestions by the service provider groups in responding to phenomenon of the CSEC with reference to CP and CST and contained three sub-themes. Sub-theme 1: The social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST. Sub-theme 2: The non-social work participant's suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST. Sub-theme 3: SAPS FCS Unit members' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST of which only sub-themes 1 and 2 had categories.

The categories that emerged from sub-theme 1 included suggestions to improve the state of the social work profession as enabler to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC, secondly that social workers should be made aware and educated about CSEC, the third category related to suggestion related to the treatment and treatment modalities of victims and perpetrators of CSEC as enablers to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC and the last category contained suggestions on the prevention of CST.

In the second sub-theme, there were six categories which were focused on preventative suggestions related to education, raising awareness and prevention, suggestions directed at social workers and social work service delivery, suggestions with reference to treatment modalities for intervening with both victims and perpetrators, suggestions related to a more effective police and court system for CSEC crimes, suggestions related to the tourism industry and their response and finally the prioritisation of child protection in a response to address the occurrence of CSEC.

This then concludes the presentation of the findings relating to the data obtained from the interviews with participants in the service providers groups. The following chapter will turn the attention to the findings drawn from the data obtained from the hospitality industry.

## CHAPTER 6

### RESEARCH FINDINGS: THE ACCOUNTS OF THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY SERVICE PROVIDERS' KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE TO THE PHENOMENON OF CP AND CST

#### 6.1 INTRODUCTION

As mentioned in Chapter 1 (Section 1.1), there are different forms of commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC) and various authors (Muntarbhorn, 1995; Beddoe, 2003:199; Lalor & McElvaney, 2010:159-160; Pimonsaengsuriya, 2012:30) assert that these different manifestations of CSEC exist in most countries around the world in varying degrees of development. By way of example, Pimonsaengsuriya (2012:30) points out that, while child pornography seems less prevalent in countries in Africa and South Asia than in other parts of the world, child sex tourism (CST) features more predominantly in countries that are regarded as popular tourist destinations such as Thailand. This is occurring in spite of the fact that CSEC is considered a gross human rights violation in the countries that have a flourishing commercial sex sector and is “contrary to the purpose of tourism” (Berardi, 2010:303).

While individuals in the hospitality and tourism industry act as hosts for tourists visiting a country, it is thought that some of these same individuals are actively taking part in facilitating contacts and making arrangements for their guests to have sex with children (Hall & Ryan, 2001:11; Beddoe, 2003:199; Abueva, 2006:177; Chetty, 2007:6; Shared Hope International, 2007:4; Berardi, 2010:305; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:72).

In view of this state of affairs, Berardi (2010:304) emphasises that, with the tourism industry being a concourse and one of the catalysts fuelling the phenomenon of the CSEC, this sector should be informed, and empowered, to become proactively involved in initiatives for the prevention of CSEC. An aim of the study is to provide a multi-perspective report, from a Social Work angle, on the status of the knowledge on and response to the CSEC with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism. In the light of these introductory remarks, based largely on recent literature the researcher decided it would be most appropriate to include an interest group of key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry as part of the investigation.

When considering the position of the hospitality and tourism industry through Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory lens (Berk & Roberts, 2009:28) (as depicted in Figure 1 in Chapter 1, Section 1.3) it is evident that this industry fits into the exosystem, a space in which two or more microsystems converge, and is governed by rules and laws made in the macrosystem.

Before the accounts of hospitality and tourism industry sampled group are presented, the researcher deems it necessary to provide an overview of the response of the tourism industry to the phenomenon of the CSEC. This aspect will be discussed by looking at it first from an international point of view and then the response from the South African tourism industry.

## **6.2 THE RESPONSE OF THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY TO THE PHENOMENON OF CST**

In the early 1990s, when it was found that men from industrialised countries, the so-called Western men, were either travelling to or taking up temporary residence in foreign countries in order to have sex with children, it hugely impacted the media and gave rise to many "lurid" stories about this phenomenon (O'Grady, 1996:10; O'Connell Davidson, 2005:127; Montgomery, 2008:903). Subsequently more attention began to be paid to tourists and international travellers who sexually exploit children (Ireland, 1993:263).

The growth of the tourism industry, and the growing awareness of the phenomena of sex tourism and child sex tourism dating back to the early 1990s, have led to various measures, described below, being taken to fight the child sex trade (The Code.org, n.d; Ireland, 1993:263). In 1995, in Cairo, the General Assembly of the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO) adopted "The Statement on the Prevention of Organised Sex Tourism". It supported the tenets of Article 34 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child (CRC) (George & Panko, 2011:135), as explained in Chapter 1, Section 1.1.5.1. This statement defines the responsibilities of governments, both tourist sending and receiving countries, and of the tourism industry *per se*, all of which are recommended to adopt preventative policy measures and corrective norms, such as self-regulation and professional codes of conduct (UNICEF, 2012:v). In particular, the World Tourism Organisation (WTO), as explained in Mowforth, Charlton and Munt (2008:217), appealed to the travel trade to:

- Combine efforts with NGOs to eradicate organised sex tourism at both origins and destinations by concentrating efforts on critical points where this activity can take place
- Educate their staff about sex tourism and its consequences in order to gain their assistance to remove these offers from tourist options
- Develop and strengthen codes of conduct and mechanisms against sex tourism
- Adopt practical, promotional and commercial measures which are aimed at identifying business as those which do not encourage or condone sex tourism and in particular child sex tourism
- Focus on warning tourists about the criminal nature of the practice of child sex tourism or engaging in sex with children
- Encourage the media to come to the aid of the tourism industry to “uncover, isolate, condemn and prevent all organised forms of sex tourism”.

Also in 1995, the International Union of Food, Agriculture, Hotel, Restaurant, Catering, Tobacco and Allied Worker's Associations (IUF/UITA/IUL) adopted 'The Resolution on Prostitution Tourism and Standard Agreement of the International Union of Food, Agricultural, Hotel, Restaurant, Catering, Tobacco and Allied Workers' Association' (IUF/UITA/IUL) in Budapest (UNWTO Global Code of Ethics, n.d.:1). These documents basically called on members to agree to refuse to conduct business with tour operators or any organisation which perpetrates crimes such as sex tourism, or as they termed it “prostitution tourism” (UNWTO Global code of Ethics, n.d.:1).

This was followed by the adoption of 'The Child and Travel Agents' Charter' by the Universal Federation of Travel Agents' Associations (UFTAA) which was signed by 22 countries on 27 June 1997 (UNWTO Global Code of Ethics, n.d.:1). This Charter calls upon members and affiliates of UFTAA who are signatories to the Charter to fight against the prostitution of children as related to sex tourism and to protect the child victims of such tourists by supporting the child protection steps of their governments. In addition, they undertook to tell colleagues in other countries when tourists have been found guilty of such offences (UNWTO Global Code of Ethics, n.d.:1).

The International tourism service organisation furthermore signed various resolutions and agreements on behalf of their members, including the following:

- 'The Resolution against the Sexual Exploitation of Children' signed by the International Hotel and Restaurants Association (IH&RA) – November 1996

- 'The Declaration against Child Sex Tourism' signed by the Group of National Tour Operators' Associations within the European Union (ECTAA) – November 1996
- 'The Declaration against the Sexual Exploitation of Children' signed by the Confederation of the National Associations of Hotels, Restaurants, Cafés and Similar Establishments of the European Union and the European Economic Area (HOTREC) which has 43 members from 26 European countries - April 1997 (UNICEF, 2005:8).

The global tourism industry has also responded by focusing on the prevention of CST through training, raising awareness and public campaigning (UNICEF, 2012:v; [www.thecode.org](http://www.thecode.org)). At the 1996 Stockholm Congress against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children, the UNWTO assisted in the creation of an international Task Force against Child Sex Tourism, with representatives from governments, NGOs and the tourism industry (UNICEF, 2012:v). In its first meeting held in Berlin in March 1997, the Task Force agreed to adopt and use a uniform logo for the international campaign and activities against child sex tourism. The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism is known as 'The Code' and was established in 1998 by ECPAT Sweden with the assistance of the UNWTO. It received funding from UNICEF since 2004 and operated as an independent, non-profit organisation with its secretariat in New York and representation in various countries ([www.thecode.org](http://www.thecode.org); UNICEF, 2012:v). The international tourism industry is called upon to voluntarily sign up and implement instruments such as The Code and they have had some measure of buy-in with over 1 000 companies signing up in the last ten years (FTTSA Brochure, 2010a.).

According to The Code's website ([www.thecode.org](http://www.thecode.org)) the following steps are recommended for signatories:

- Hotel policies must be up-front about their attitude and with regard to the child sex. The hotel must train staff on how to handle problems should they arise.
- Hotel management must give its personnel and guests information about the national laws and penalties imposed for the sexual abuse of children.
- Hotel's security staff must be trained to deal with guests or personnel who sexually abuse a child, particularly on the hotel's premises.
- They must co-operate with the relevant labour unions.
- Staff must stop children from coming into the hotel via bars, restaurants, lobby or reception.
- They must work actively and as a precautionary measure, build up links with police, social authorities and other organisations.

- Staff members, who see anything that points to the commercial sexual exploitation of children, must report immediately to the police or other child protection authorities.

The Code's support in the fight against CST marks an important step ahead in the campaign against sexual exploitation of children, as hotels and other accommodation facilities are often the place where children are sexually abused. Hotel owners around the world are in a unique position where they can effectively and in a very visible way, support the campaign ([www.thecode.org](http://www.thecode.org); Berardi, 2010:305). O'Grady (2001:134) and Berardi (2010:303) are of the opinion that, in the past, tour guides, hotel keepers and airline staff, as well as other tourism related workers, have purposely ignored child sex tourism but he postulates that, if those employed in the tourism industry were to understand the negative impact of this type of tourism has on their own culture and children, they would be more active in reporting to the authorities.

More recently, in December 2014, Swedish police launched an internet site called *Reusekurance.se*, which means 'travel courage', aimed at raising awareness of a two-year jail term attached to tourists paying for sex with underage children. It encourages Swedish tourists to report to police if they observe anything relating to tourists sexually exploiting children (*Cape Argus*, Dec 17, 2014; *Cape Times*: 17 Dec. 2014).

There have also been other incentives such as campaigns and national call centres in various destinations around the world, most notably, South America. In recent years global cooperation has shown an increase especially in terms of law enforcement (FTTSA Brochure, 2010a.).

### **6.3 THE RESPONSE OF THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY IN SOUTH AFRICA**

Recognising that South Africa is both a sending and receiving country for trafficking for sexual purposes (ECPAT, 2007:8; ECPAT, 2014a:18), as well as a sex tourist destination, the first real coordinated, tourism-led initiative to combat child sex tourism in South Africa was launched in June 2010 by Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA). It is a non-governmental tourism organisation (NGO), which announced the roll out of The Code (explained in 6.2 above) in South Africa during May of that year. FTTSA was appointed by The Code International as the Local Code Representative (LCR) for South Africa and spearheaded the initiative in a partnership with the United Nations Children's Fund

(UNICEF) and the International Labour Organisation (ILO) as funding and advisory partners (FTTSA, 2010b:1). At the time of the launch, local spokesperson for UNICEF, Girma (*UN News*, 9 June 2010) said that effective protection of children is made possible when all sectors of society are mobilised, and that the contribution of the travel and tourism industry is critical. Furthermore, there could be no innocent bystanders in any situation where children were subject to sexual exploitation.

Local stakeholders such as the National Departments of Social Development and Tourism, South African Tourism, the Tourism Business Council of South Africa are all included as supporters of the FTTSA in its efforts to implement The Code as widely as possible in South Africa. FTTSA states that 30 signatories are already on board (FTSSA Press Release, 2010b:1). Tourism businesses that choose to sign up to The Code commit to establishing an ethical and corporate policy detailing their approach to CSEC, training personnel about combatting CST in the country of origin and in destinations (as detailed in 6.2 above). It involves a range of activities, such as introducing clauses in contracts with suppliers, stating a common repudiation of sexual exploitation of children, providing information regarding the illegality of engaging in child sex to travellers (e.g. brochures, posters, in-flight videos, ticket slips home pages, etc.), providing information about CST to local “key persons” at tourism destinations, and reporting about the steps being taken by their organisation in the fight against child sex tourism on an annual basis (FTSSA Press Release, 2010b:1).

The research findings related to the accounts of hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ knowledge of and response to the phenomenon of CP and CST will now become the focus of next section. The sampled individuals from this industry are introduced by means of a biographical profile. The researcher interviewed them and their responses to the questions posed to them are presented thematically. Direct quotations as extracted from the transcriptions of the interviews underscore their significance.

#### **6.4 A DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE ON THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY SERVICE PROVIDER PARTICIPANT GROUP**

As per the original plan for the research (see Chapter 1, Section 1.6.1) the researcher proposed to obtain a sample of service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry in the Western Cape along the Garden Route comprising:

- Hotel staff that interact with guests of five star, four star and three star as well as unrated hotels or inns.

- Taxi drivers who interact with guests at various collection points e.g. hotels, airports or shopping centres.
- Owners/managers of guest houses or bed and breakfasts in Cape Town and along the Garden Route both rated (stars) or unrated.
- Tour operators who work in the Western Cape inbound for destinations in the target areas.

When the actual participant recruitment commenced with this interest group the researcher found that taxi drivers were not open to being interviewed and although she approached a number of random taxi drivers (those who convey tourists from hotels to sightseeing venues), they did not want to participate in the study, mainly because time is their industry means money and they did not want to spend an hour being interviewed, nor did they want to meet up after hours with the researcher. The study thus included hotel staff, bed and breakfast (B&B) or guest house owners and managers, safe tourism advocacy organisations, travel agents and human resource managers of hotels, hotel groups or tour operators.

In the table (see Table 6.1) below the biographical information of the sampled group of hospitality/ tourism workers is presented.

**Table 6. 1: Participants demographics: Service providers in the hospitality and tourism industry**

<b>PARTICIPANT</b>	<b>GENDER</b>	<b>RACE</b>	<b>EMPLOYMENT TITLE/ ROLE</b>	<b>LOCATION OF PARTICIPANT</b>
Participant I	F	W	Guest house owner	Cape Town
Participant L	F	C	General manager at 3-star hotel	Garden Route
Participant M	F	W	Tour operator	Garden Route
Participant O	M	C	HR <sup>158</sup> manager at 5-star hotel	Cape Town
Participant S	F	W	Guest house owner	Cape Town
Participant T	F	C	Guest house manager	Cape Town
Participant W	F	W	HR manager at international tour operator for inbound travel	Cape Town
Participant X	F	C	HR manager at 5-star hotel	Cape Town

<sup>158</sup> Human Resource

Participant CC	F	C	Tourism manager at town on Garden Route	Garden Route
Participant EE	F	W	Tour operator for township tours	Garden Route
Participant GG	F	W	Manager of tourism industry trade organisation with national responsibility	Johannesburg
Participant LL	F	W	General manager of a nationwide hotel group	Johannesburg
Participant OO	F	W	General manager of a 3* hotel	Garden Route

From the table above it becomes clear that the majority of the participants interviewed were female. Only one male from this industry participated in the study. Eight of the participants were white and five coloured. Five participants were from towns along the Garden Route (Plettenberg Bay, Knysna, George and Hermanus), while six were from Cape Town and two had national responsibilities that included the Garden Route and Western Cape, and they were based in Johannesburg, Gauteng. Job titles varied from human resource manager to tour operator and guest house or hotel manager with responsibilities ranging from front office to staffing and corporate social responsibility tasks.

In Table 6.2 below an exposition is provided on the methods of data collection employed and also the settings where the interviews took place.

**Table 6.2: Summary of method of interview and interview setting of the hospitality and tourism industry service provider participants**

Participant	Method of data collection			Interview setting
	Face-to-face	Tele-phone	E-mail	
Participant I	√			Participant's place of work
Participant L	√			Participant's place of work
Participant M	√			Participant's place of work
Participant O	√			Participant's place of work
Participant S	√			Participant's place of work
Participant T	√			Participant's place of work
Participant W	√			Participant's place of work

Participant X	√			Participant's place of work
Participant CC	√			Participant's place of work
Participant EE	√			FAMSA office in participant's town
Participant GG		√		N/A
Participant LL			√	N/A
Participant OO	√			Participant's place of work
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	

Data collected (see Table 6.2) from this participant group is from face-to-face interviewing. Only one participant was interviewed telephonically and another responded to the questions via e-communication. The questions posed to the hospitality and tourism industry participants are in the interview guide in Chapter 1, Section 1.8.

As per the contract with, and permission from the participants, the face-to-face interviews as well as the telephone interview conducted were digitally recorded, and afterwards transcribed word-for-word. The researcher and an independent coder, separately from each other, thematically analysed the transcriptions and then engaged in a consensus discussion facilitated by the study's supervisor.

In the next section of this chapter the themes that emerged from these processes are presented.

### **6.5 A THEMATIC PRESENTATION OF THE ACCOUNTS OF THE HOSPITALITY AND TOURISM INDUSTRY SERVICE PROVIDERS' KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE TO THE PHENOMENA OF CHILD PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM**

Eight themes with some themes further divided into sub-themes emerged and these are depicted in Table 6.3 on the next page.

**Table 6.3: An exposition of the themes and sub-themes on the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' knowledge of and response to the phenomena of child prostitution and child sex tourism**

Theme	Sub-theme
Theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST	<p>The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied</p> <p>The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of knowledge on legislation pertaining to CST was limited or non-existent</p>
Theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of and exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business	<p>The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of business</p> <p>The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business</p>
Theme 3: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC	
Theme 4: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC	
Theme 5: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST	
Theme 6: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' suggestions for addressing CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST	<p>Educate and increase awareness about CSEC among the individuals engaged with the hospitality and tourism industry and the public in general</p> <p>Implementation of The Code to address the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CST</p> <p>Training staff on how to deal with incidences of CST</p> <p>A suggestion on how social workers can assist the hospitality and tourism industry in the prevention of CST</p>

Each of the themes and its related sub-themes (where applicable) depicted in the table above (Table 6.3) are now be presented and illuminated by direct quotations from the transcriptions of the interviews conducted with the participants. Literature references are used to either introduce a theme and/or sub-theme and/or to verify the findings in a confirmatory and/or contrasting fashion.

#### **6.5.1 Theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST**

The effective combatting of commercial sexual exploitation of children in the travel and tourism industry requires that the key role players in this industry have at least a general understanding of the phenomenon (Berardi, 2010:305). However, according to the ECPAT Training Toolkit (Ferran, Berardi & Sakulpitakphon, 2008:17), which is an instrument utilised to train the hospitality and tourism industry about CST, many who attend the training courses are not familiar with the term, although some feel they have a rudimentary understanding of it.

This theme, with its related two sub-themes, comes from analysis of the answers the participants gave in response to the following questions posed to them during their interviews:

- *What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?*
- *Are you aware of South African or international legislation covering child sex tourism? Please specify.*

##### **6.5.1.1 Sub-theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' varied**

The responses from the participants to the first question vary in their level of comprehension about the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism'. There were those who had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept; some had limited understanding, while a few had a mistaken or no understanding of the concept at all. The storylines provided testify to this variance in their levels of understanding of the meaning of the concept CST.

Participants LL (general manager of a nationwide hotel group), O (the HR manager at a hotel on the Garden Route, and GG (the manager of a nationwide tourism industry trade

organisation) **demonstrated a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the concept CST:**

“CST [‘takes place] *when an adult uses an underage person for the purposes of sexual gratification whilst travelling, either domestically or abroad*”. (Participant LL.)

“...people travell[ing] that would go to places and find children to have sex with, or with minors”. (Participant O.)

“I think to some extent it’s a bit of a misnomer because it embraces not only sex tourism but pornography, trafficking et cetera, so I think CST is a subset of a larger problem... So it’s about offenders who travel, that’s the definition of the tourism element, it’s people who travel specifically to abuse children and that’s why I’m saying it’s a bit of a misnomer because you have this kind of concept of this creepy paedophile from Germany who travels to Thailand or India or South Africa and I think we need to embrace more the concept of domestic offenders, and I think often what I’ve learnt is it’s people who don’t realise they’re offending. Yeah, so the offender that’s the push and then the pull you have very vulnerable members of society, who are affected by poverty, HIV AIDS and inequality and whatever having to meet this demand. There’s a demand and a supply element”. (Participant GG.)

Five of the participants **had a limited understanding of the meaning of the concept CST** and this became noticeable from their vague responses to the question posed.

Participant CC, a tourism manager in a town on the Garden Route, explained her understanding along the following lines: “*Exactly what it says because in many communities, especially in disadvantaged communities, our children are the most vulnerable and we perceive tourism as this pie in the sky, but it actually has a negative and CST is one of it*”.

Participant S, a guest house owner in Cape Town, worded her understanding of the meaning of the concept CST as follows: “*What comes into my mind is that people go to certain places where they think they can get these special services and of course first thing is that you think of Thailand or some of these areas, ja*”. (Participant S.)

Participant T, guest house manager in Cape Town verbalised her understanding: *“Well I understand that if people are travelling to South Africa and they use children to do funny things with”*.

Participant W, a HR manager at an international tour operator for inbound travel in Cape Town, explained her understanding of the meaning of the concept CST to the researcher along the following lines: *“My opinion of it is that there are underage children who in my view, under the age of 18, children involved in a trade, where sexual acts are either performed, whether it is the actual act, orally or so forth, against their will and with no consent from any adult”*.

Participant X, a manager at a large hotel in Cape Town remarked: *“Obviously children under a particular age that are being used for sex, or sexual acts, pornography, being exploited to things that children should not be exploited to and international people coming in to take advantage of I should say our lack of protection, child protection. That’s my understanding”*.

In **explaining the concept CST** Participant I (who owns a guest house in Cape Town) based her answer on what she saw on television, heard on the radio and read in the media or books. The result indicate she is **mistakenly confused CST about child sexual trafficking**. She remarked: *“Obviously I’ve seen TV programmes and I’ve heard things on the news so it’s really that children are being taken or being put up by their families or taken away from their families they’re lured into the sex trade business and they’re taken from rural areas, out of other countries, they brought into South Africa and then they are promised modelling or better lives or whatever and then they come and end up going into sex, and they get drugged and go into that kind of market. So that’s my understanding of it”*.

Participant M, a tour operator on the Garden Route, mistook CST for human trafficking as she commented: *“I understand it is like human trafficking – it is where either people come in from another country and bring children in and have sex in this country or they take children from this country to other countries”*.

Participants O (an HR manager at a 5-star hotel in Cape Town) and L (a general manager at a 3-star Garden Route hotel) openly admitted that they **had no understanding of the meaning of the concept CST**. In admitting to not knowing, Participant O also stated that his level of ignorance would also apply to that of his staff and he referred to this it as

follows: *“Yes and I’m sure if I had to ask any of my 230 staff they might all be clueless ... And I include the executive management team in that, I include the general manager in that. We all might not think of it [child sex tourism]”.*

Participant L stated: *“...child sex tourism... I don’t know because I have never heard of it, never experienced it, so ... I don’t know what to make of it because and as long as I work here I’ve never, ever seen it or experience it or ...”.*

While the participants’ understanding on the meaning of the concept CST varied, **their knowledge of and implementation of The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism known as ‘The Code’,** an instrument informing them about this phenomenon and how to prevent it, also **varied**.

As mentioned under Section 6.2 in this chapter, and with specific reference to ‘The Code’, the tourism industry has been called upon to voluntarily sign up and implement instruments like the code of conduct, and they have had some measure of success with over 1 000 companies signing up over the last ten years (FTTSA Brochure, 2010a.).

At The Code’s Annual General Meeting held in Berlin in March 2012, stronger implementation of The Code in countries such as Brazil, Colombia, Mexico, India, Cambodia, Philippines, Kenya and South Africa was reported. An additional 39 new companies signed The Code in eleven countries, which means that the total membership of The Code is now 1 067 companies (The Code.org, 2012).

The first real coordinated, tourism-led initiative in South Africa was launched in June 2010 by Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA), a non-governmental tourism organisation (NGO), which announced the roll out of The Code in South Africa during May of that year.

Responses from the participant group to the questions: *What do you know about The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism known as ‘The Code’?* and *Are travellers/hotel guests etc. aware that child sexual exploitation is illegal? If so, how are they being informed?* revealed to the researcher that **the sample group’s level of understanding and implementation of The Code varied greatly, even among those who were themselves signatories to it** and that few organisations informed their guests of the illegality of child sex.

Participant O, who admitted to his lack of understanding of the meaning of concept 'child sex tourism' with reference to The Code, simply said, "No we *don't* [referring to being signatories to The Code]... *I haven't seen that it is written somewhere ...* [referring to the fact that being a signatory to The Code need to be publically displayed and mentioned in information made available to the guests]."

Participant EE's response was similar: "*I may have heard about it* [referring to The Code] *but I can't say that I know what it is*".

Participant S, a guest house owner in Cape Town, mentions that she was a signatory to The Code she does not publicise this in her business. She referred to this along the following lines: "*I am a member, but I must admit that I am mainly a member because one of my former interns worked there in Johannesburg and she asked me if I don't want to be a member. I must admit I am a member of The Code but on the other hand as I said you can only win from the more information you get, the better. Although I don't consider my house [guest house] to be one of the places where CST takes place. I haven't been confronted with that matter in the past ... Ninety per cent [of my clientele] are couples or families and the few single travellers I can't imagine that they come for that reason. Thinking about it since I've never been confronted with it I think I wouldn't do it. If I imagine me travelling to a country and seeing like a brochure or something in the room that would probably worry me more than to raise awareness, so I think it should be ... I don't know how it should be dealt with but ... I don't know*".

Participant X, the HR manager at a large hotel in Cape Town, admitted that while they are signatories to The Code, the way in which they implement this Code of Conduct in relation to their clientele is with great sensitivity. She spoke about this as follows: "*No up until two years ago we had a committee that works on our social corporate investment and all the other little projects so that was our PR manager or executive who signed the agreement with The Code and it's been on-going since then. With reference to how they operationalise The Code, she explained: "No we're very sensitive to various people's emotions and what would kind of trigger guests, so we're very understated in how we do things, but also very thorough in how we would kind of keep an eye on what's happening. I mean across the board, we're very understated in many things, we don't tell people what we're involved in unless they ask us, so with regard to that [CST] there's never really been a need for us to have to let people know because we keep a close eye on what the activities are. You might even find a father abusing their own children, and I mean we have all the documentation to prove that this is the parent of that child, but we would*

*never know what's happening in the walls of their bedroom. We don't kind of make note of it, no".*

The accounts of Participants LL (general manager of a hotel group with nationwide interests), T (guest house manager – Cape Town) and W (HR manager at an international tour operator for inbound travel) testify to **their employers being signatories to The Code and actively implementing it in their respective hospitality and tourism industries.**

Participant LL stated: *"I learnt about The Code from attending overseas conventions hosted by IFWTO (International Federation of Women's Tourism Organisations). Several talks were given on this subject, and I became quite passionate about it. Since 1999, I have been trying to get [the hotel group] to acknowledge and sign The Code, and was only successful in 2009 when there was more information arriving in South Africa, because of the World Cup 2010. The [hotel] group have adopted 'The Code' and have exposed all their staff to the situations [possible CST scenarios], and preventions".*

Participant T commented that the owner of the guest house (a foreigner) was involved with the fight against child sex tourism in his country of origin and therefore shared all the information he gleaned as well as implementing initiatives (such as The Code) with her. She said: *"I mean there are other things that you can do as well like go to schools and that kind of thing it's just that I don't have the time unfortunately we have the guest house and then we also have a travel agency and I run both so that's why my days are so hectic, but I always speak to the owner and he always comes up with ideas because he works, I'm not sure if he still does, but he worked with [organisation name] in Sweden, it's also like a children's organisation and then there's ECPAT, which he knows the owner very well. So he does these things on Sweden's side as well and if he hears of something, he always tells me and we see if we can do to create awareness on our side".*

Participant W commented as follows: *"We signed it in 2009. It was signed initially by our former chairman. We became involved in it because our company was starting. We were then a small enterprise, moving up to the medium entities. As part of the corporate social responsibility projects that we had at the time we focused quite a lot on children and their development and further to that, also their protection. So it was a question of researching who protects these kids, especially if they are underprivileged, or if they are knowledgeable but they don't have the knowledge to say no, who helps them? That's how*

*we got to The Code and smack bang that year at WTM [World Trade Market] they represented there and it was just the one thing led to the other to get involved with them”.*

Participant W also provided an explanation on how they within their tour operating enterprise create awareness among both employees and customers about The Code, when stating: *“I think if we talk about my profession specifically it is more of an engaging with staff; to coach our guides when the guides have their guide meetings. It is also important that we attend, and also ask that this [information re CST] is reiterated even from the guide chairperson, or from our company themselves, and on a more and a different level in the HR sector whenever we engage with the South African Board of Professional People. It’s again similar to the substance abuse, that it is again reiterating that this is a problem in this sector, and for an HR person it does make a difference if a guide comes to you and tells you, because you do have an obligation to report it, so I think it’s also just a question of being honest with yourself”.*

The account Participant T (a guest house manager in Cape Town) served as testimony on how awareness about CST can be created. *“We got certified with Fair Trade [that implies they became a signatory to The Code] and you know we got awareness through them, you know sending all these things [information re CST] out [that is, to their prospective guests] and when you mention it to other people then they ask, ‘what is that?’”* When asked via which channels the information was disseminated, she added: *“well mostly in our marketing, when we send out newsletters and stuff, then we always have that information in there”.* She also stated that verbal communication takes place with their guests: *“we normally talk to them about it, we have a brochure in our room information file, we talk to them about it because normally they ask about it; you’re Fair Trade certified what is that about, what do you do? Then we mention all the avenues that we are working with”.*

The focus of the discussion now shifts to the presentation of the sub-theme focusing on the fact that the hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ levels of knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST are limited or non-existent.

#### 6.5.1.2 Sub-theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ level of knowledge on legislation pertaining to CST was limited or non-existent

In response to probing into this sample group’s level of knowledge on the legislation pertaining to CST, five of the participants directly admitted to having no knowledge about

this. Excerpts from the transcribed interviews attest to this: “None” (Participant I), “I must admit – no” (Participant S), “Legislation, no” (Participant T) and “No, not at all” (Participant OO).

One of the participants was not *au fait* with the specific legislation but made a general statement that “to engage in sex with a minor in most countries of the world is against the law, and is punishable”. (Participant LL.)

Two participants acknowledged the Children’s Act (Act No. 38 of 2005).

*“Well the Child Protection Act is first and foremost I think in our country and it spills over from what I know from the travel laws that we’ve seen in Germany and in The Netherlands that they have a similar Act in place, however, contravention of that Act is not frowned upon so harshly as in our country, but primarily that’s the Act I know about, and then also if you know general common law and your rights because you have the right to say no”.* (Participant W.)

*“I mean we have what is called the Child Act or the Children’s Act implemented I don’t know, about 3 years ago now, which is meant to be very comprehensive. When I speak with some of my colleagues who work on this topic they feel it’s inadequate”.* (Participant GG.)

In the next section of this chapter the theme focusing on the hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ perceptions of the extent of and exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business is presented.

### **6.5.2 Theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ perceptions of the extent of and exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business**

In addressing CSEC, one of the greatest challenges is the dearth of data available on the phenomenon and, with specific reference to CST, the fact that solid data is not available and that the figures used are unsubstantiated estimates (Fraley, 2005:482; George and Panko, 2011:141-142; ECPAT, 2013:12) leaves much to be desired.

This theme too was deduced from the responses provided by the participants to the following questions:

- *What is the extent of child sex tourism in your area, in other words, do you see children trying to engage with your guests on a sexual level or do you get reports of this from guests?*
- *What kind of interaction or requests, if any, have you had with your guests around the availability of children for sexual purposes? Please describe as fully as possible.*

The answers to these questions are grouped under two sub-themes presented next.

#### 6.5.2.1 Sub-theme 1: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST in their geographical areas of business

**The service provider participant group from the hospitality and tourism industry, just as is the case of the social worker, the non-social worker and the SAPS FCS-unit participant groups, generally had no idea of the extent of CSEC with specific reference to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business.**

In connection with the extent of CST, Participant GG vaguely responded and quoted global figures, *“There is a figure that ECPAT [End Child Prostitution, Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes] floats around which are 2 million victims of child sex tourism annually”*. This figure is not provided by ECPAT, but by UNICEF (in Ferran, Berardi & Sakulpitakphon, 2008:31) that does report the figure around two million children being sexually exploited every year worldwide. This organisation further states that majority of children affected are girls, although more and more boys are being affected. According to ECPAT (2013:12), *“there are no updated studies or reliable statistics on prostitution of children in South Africa”*, although various unconfirmed figures ranging from 28 000 to 30 000 are in circulation”.

Participant W also provided a ballpark figure pointing out that a large proportion of local tourism is linked to child sex tourism: *“I think it would be in the region of about 45% [of all tourism in the Garden Route area is linked to CST]”*.

The responses from Participants S, X, I, OO, GG and V about the extent of CSEC varied from not expecting South Africa to have a problem with child sex tourism to not having experienced this, and therefore not being able to assess the extent.

Participant S' view was: *"I don't know whether South Africa is a destination to be considered one of the target countries"*.

Participant X could not estimate the extent: *"Because we are not as exposed to that, I wouldn't be able to give you a percentage, or a ratio of where I think it is. The tourism sector, I won't say that it's [child sex tourism] a huge focus, it's not a huge focus and I think the, I would say from where I come from, the hotel industry, where its [child sex tourism] most dominant would be in the cheaper hotels. It would be in a hotel like a Formula 1 or a one star, two star type of thing, because people need to pay to get there where here it's a lot more expensive, so nobody's going to go and pay R6 000 to spend one or two hours with a child, but also we kind of look at what the situation is whereas you'd find in a smaller hotel or a lower star rating cheaper and all they're interested in is making the money, and are they really concerned about the welfare of the child or the individual um it might even be a teenage girl who's on the street, or a boy but those organisations are interested in making money and they don't have the right calibre of staff to be able to make the right decision. So my boss says I need to sell the room, I sell the room and I don't analyse whether it's the right thing or the wrong thing"*.

In confirmation of Participant X's points of view, Berardi (2010:305) postulates the tourism industry is uniquely positioned to contribute towards the battle against CST as their initiatives have a range of purposes which include raising awareness among "mainstream travellers and tourists". The latter can take place at the booking stage at a travel agent's office or online, at various stages of their travels including at airports, railway stations and harbours, and also at the establishment they have selected for their accommodation (Fraley, 2005:468 – 469; Berardi, 2010:305).

Participant I, was also not able to elaborate on the extent of CP and CST but, contrary to what Participant X mentioned about CST not happening at hotels at the upper end of the hotel price range, she stated: *"I thought it skipped the middle market instead happening in the high end and low end establishments"*, and expressed it in the following way: *"... this is just my assumption, I would say that obviously this sort of things happens more in the city centre in those kind of hotels or establishments ... You can't even say it would be the lower end market that would condone it or allow it cause I'm sure you get high class as well, maybe ... it misses out that middle market – it's low and it's at the top end – I'm not sure"*.

Participant OO's response also pointed to the fact of not being aware of the occurrence of CST in South Africa: *"I did hear you know of Philippines, Thailand – I heard it there but that it's in South Africa, I was not really aware of that, that it's happening. I know about abuse in families' et cetera, but sex tourism, first time that I hear that"*. However, on reflecting back, she shared the following: *"With children I can't say that I have seen it, uh it's all of course assumption but when you see, for example, a late 'walk in'; 'walk in' means you know when people just walk in and didn't book, and you see an elderly gentleman and he tells you well my daughter is in the car and we are travelling through and we are really tired and have you got a room available and don't worry about breakfast we are leaving early, then you normally think okay daughter? Normally what I'm doing; I send one of my ladies down to the car just to check how the daughter looks. ...normally I ask him the daughter has to come up [to reception] as well and then I ask for IDs, so and then I see okay could it be the daughter because I think you can make it up, if or if not. And if I feel not safe enough with it then I say no I'm sorry. What I can't do, I can't phone the police and say listen I suspect, because maybe I'm wrong and I don't want to do that but then I rather prefer not having these people here"*. She went on to explain that she did not allow them at the hotel: *"...and in that case I can remember it was a white elderly man with a coloured youngster. I don't know how old, it's very difficult today to say how old they are but I would have guessed between sixteen and eighteen. And when I have seen them together, I said immediately, 'no, sorry'"*.

Although Participant GG quoted global statistics initially, she admitted to not being able to do an estimation of the extent of CST in South Africa. *"Anecdotally we know where the hotspots are; they're Cape Town, PE, Durban and Johannesburg ...there's a sense that it's just anecdotal; a case here, a case there ... I expected hoteliers and tour operators to tell me oh [name] this is not a problem, but they were actually ...of course it's a problem, we don't know how big it is, we don't know the extent it is, we don't know where ... we don't have research. I mean this is part of the problem; this is an illicit kind of activity so we don't know"*.

In responding to this question on the extent, Participant W remarked: *"To be quite honest I think it [CST] is a business that is making a lot of profit. If you had to ask me of examples I would not be able to give those to you because it is more a word of mouth kind of information that I would have to give. The extent, I think, is similar to substance abuse and where it's being avoided rather than spoken about, but I think it is far-reaching. I almost want to say if I think about the Garden Route, because people tend to think it's a bit more away from the hound dogs of the police and so forth"*.

#### 6.5.2.2 Sub-theme 2: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business

**With the exception of four of the participants** (Participants CC, WW, OO and X), who had direct exposure or confrontations with CP and CST as employers/employees in their respective hospitality and tourist industries, **the rest reported to having no direct exposure**. One participant got to know about CST through information shared with her around this phenomenon.

Participant CC shared how a member of her family had become involved in child sex tourism when her mother owned a guest house: *"I remember a time when my mother - when we had a guest house - when we started off, we were very poor at that stage and I had a little adopted sister about 10, 12 years old. My mother encouraged her to massage people's feet, you know so that's how I know and you know so quickly something can turn to the wrong side, it can turn sexual. You know there are tourists that actually come to South Africa to do that kind of thing [i.e. referring to sex with children]. That's how I know about it and I asked her to stop doing that kind of thing because obviously, you know she's kind of naïve, she didn't know that it could actually lead to something... I think it was probably just opportunistic and he obviously enjoyed it because he came back again and you know that's the power of money. I mean it's nothing for him, it's like buying a bus ticket to come back here and you as a young girl, you think, 'agh he loves me so much', but I mean he would probably go to Malaysia and do the same thing and to some other third world country and do the same thing to entertain his needs and desires. You know what, she was a problem child to begin with and I think, up to today, we're probably sorry that we introduced her to doing that. One of the guests that stayed there, he asked her to come and show him Knysna and that's how it started. She kept it [the fact of selling herself to this man] away from us in a way and at the moment she roams the street as a twenty-one-year-old, but that's how it started actually. He lured her away with money and with gifts and ...".*

Participant W shared one incident: *"As far as I can tell you we've had one incident. It was at a very upmarket 5-star hospitality centre, it wasn't a particular hotel, it wasn't a hotel it was a centre, and therefore it means there was a spa/gym area and so forth. The particular person had stood on the balcony. I think he was intoxicated and so did the tourist guide [think so] at the time. The police report though wasn't revealed to us at the end, the person had gotten undressed from the balcony, standing there and then screaming down to the guide he wants someone for pleasure. He was advised that we*

*don't do this kind of thing, we don't provide and we don't encourage it at all. The request was then further that he wants to speak to someone who can provide it to him and at that stage we already ... because the request was that it must not be an experienced person that must be brought to him, so it was also then said that the person had ... the indication was it had to be a younger person. It was in my opinion a dominance role that this person would have so for the reason that the request".*

Two further participants (Participant OO and X) mentioned incidents that made them suspicious, although they stated that they had not connected these incidents to CST at the time of their occurrence, but rather on later reflection.

Participant OO's reference to late 'walk-ins' as related above (see Section 6.5.2.1) pointed to the fact that although she did not know about CST she might have been exposed to it.

Participant X's contribution: *"No, not of late, [referring to incidences of CST or CP]. As I said 12 years ago when I worked in the industry, I would see things happening, not understanding what it was, even though we were quite strict on our policies and processes, but you'd never ever think of anything like that happening. I've had an incident at a hotel where I worked, where a 15 year old boy was kind of hanging around the hotel and sold himself off as a girl and then later, me realising that it was actually a boy, but obviously having a more senior role, I was a lot more focused on that, whereas you find the staff working on the ground level, they don't kind of look for those things".*

With reference to Participant OO's comments about her suspicions which she felt she could not report as she was uncertain, it is interesting to note that in the United Kingdom, The Children's Society & NWG Network, National Campaign - Tackling Child Sexual Exploitation (Children's Society and NWG, n.d:8-10) incorporated a series of advertisements to encourage the hotel industry to report their suspicions regarding individuals who try to check in with underage children as they were most concerned about this practice. Their assumption is that "a man who refuses to leave a credit card imprint and insists on paying cash" could be concealing an ulterior motive, in this case, child sexual exploitation. (See reference to this also in Theme 4, Section 6.5.4).

Both of the above incidents reported by Participants OO and X appear to be incidents of direct exposure to CP or CST, but were not recognised as such at the time and therefore not reported to child protection authorities.

**Most participants had had no exposure to CSEC or CST** and the following responses from three of the participants, are offered as examples to verify this:

*“We as a hotel very seldom ... exposed to that type of thing, so I wouldn’t be able to tell you”.* (Participant X.)

*“In my experience I have never seen it in any of our hotels”.* (Participant LL).

*“I asked the other twelve guest houses [in her guest house network] if they had any problems or had had any guests bringing girls into the bedrooms etc. and none of them had”.* (Participant I.)

Participant CC got to know about CST from people with whom she engaged. *“I’ve heard about people going up into the townships and there was one case that I know definitely, that they [township dwellers] say that foreign people would go on a township tour and befriend people and then go to the taverns and there’s lots of young girls at the taverns, but ... I don’t know of a case where it’s specific other than my own [her adopted sister’s case]. I’ve seen it in Cape Town as well”.* She mentioned further that, during the time of the World Cup in 2010, she had done a number of training exercises with car guards and street people and these people reported to her, as she remembered, thus: *“Madam, do you know the tourists go up there to the township and get themselves a little coloured girl’. You know they inform, they tell you probably just thinking you would pay them for the information”.*

The focus of the discussion now moves to the presentation of information about the profile of the victims of commercial child exploitation, and the hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ viewpoints in this regard.

### **6.5.3 Theme 3: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ accounts in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC**

Since the participants from this industry had very limited exposure to the children who were engaged in sex work or involved in CST, only one participant provided some information about the profile of the children as victims of CP and CST as forms of CSEC which she offered in response to the question: *What kind of children engage in sex with tourists?*

Participant OO (a HR manager at a hotel on the Garden Route) noted: “...it’s [referring specifically to children engaging in sex work] *always about money. If it is an adult child between sixteen and eighteen for sure it is about the money, so maybe they would come out with it, maybe not, I don’t know*”. She also commented on the race of the children saying; “*The one I’m sure it was a coloured girl and the other one I’m not sure if it was a black girl or also coloured? But the one was 100% [sure she was] coloured*”.

In the next section of this chapter the information that describes the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC according to these hospitality and tourism participants is presented as Theme 4.

#### **6.5.4 Theme 4: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers’ accounts of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC**

This theme was born from the following question posed to the participants: *What kind of tourists do you believe have sex with children?* As already stated under Theme 3, the individuals from the hotel and tourism industry recruited and who agreed to participate in this study had limited exposure to both children as victims of CSEC and their perpetrators. Nonetheless, a few contributed some information to this theme. With reference to **the countries of places of origin of the perpetrators of the CSEC**, Participants CC and GG noted:

*“Statistically valid information then most of the perpetrators are South Africans or people from our neighbouring countries”.* (Participant GG – a manager of a tourism trade organisation with a national responsibility.)

The following storyline, partially replicated in Section 6.5.2.2 indicated Participant CC’s views on the perpetrator in the case she is familiar with: *“He [a client who had requested a child for sex] was from Germany... I promise you nearly 60 years old. I think it was probably just opportunistic, and he obviously enjoyed it because he came back again and you know that’s the power of money. I mean it’s nothing for him, it’s like buying a bus ticket to come back here ... but I mean he would probably go to Malaysia and do the same thing and to some other third world country and do the same thing to entertain his needs and desires”.* (Participant CC – tourism manager in a town on the Garden Route.)

This participant (CC) also voiced her perception that the perpetrators were opportunistic and not organised, *“No they’re definitely not organised for sex tourism, but it’s probably*

*you know, I think it's probably more like you know people look out for ... you come as a tourist and you look for a bit of somebody local you know and ...".*

In Participant OO's storyline referred to the race of the perpetrators and also to their modus operandi to use the hotel facilities: *"both white men"*. She also commented on their willingness to pay any rate for the hotel room without arguing or negotiating a lower rate, a strategy she attributed to their unwillingness to draw attention to themselves. She stated: *"and funny enough the prices, it doesn't matter. ... I mean you give them a rate and normally when you have got walk-ins they negotiate with you, ok its R1 500. No, it's fine, I pay cash. That's also – there is no credit card payment. It's always a cash payment"*.

This practice of paying in cash (see partial replication of this storyline and reference to paying in cash in Section 6.5.2.2) is highlighted by in The Children's Society and NWG Network (UK), campaign tackling child sexual exploitation, which points to the arrangement where perpetrators of commercial child sex often are 'walk in' customers who insist on paying for hotel accommodation in cash. It warns hotel staff to be on the lookout for this behaviour (The Children's Society & NWG Network, [sa]:21).

The focus of the chapter now shifts to Theme 5 highlighting the viewpoints of the participants from the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' on the factors contributing to the commercial sexual exploitation of children with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism.

#### **6.5.5 Theme 5: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST**

Countries that receive individuals who engage in the commercial sexual exploitation of children are generally underdeveloped countries that tend to have certain characteristics. They have poor and marginalised people who are disempowered and corruption and avarice are present, along with poor application and enforcement of laws, low moral values and an insensitivity to children's rights, which is widespread (Patterson, 2007:20; Song, 2007:2; George & Panko, 2011:134). According to George and Panko (2011:134), all these factors provide a fertile environment for the underage sex trade. This theme arose from participants being asked the question: *What do you believe are the contributing factors to commercial sexual exploitation of children with specific reference to child prostitution and child sex tourism?*

Participants GG, CC and W were the only participants in the hospitality and tourism group shedding light on what they consider to be factors that contribute to CSEC and, significantly they mainly relate to societal factors such as poverty, HIV and AIDS, inequality, a lack of proper law enforcement and a lack of awareness of the phenomenon.

Participant GG had strong ideas about what contributes to CST, stating: *"We have very vulnerable members of society, who are affected by poverty, HIV AIDS and inequality"*. She elaborated further: *"...there's a demand and a supply element. I think it's partly demand, I think there are more supply-orientated kind of factors playing a kind of 'pull'. So it is poverty, inequality, HIV AIDS, lack of other means to survive. So I think it's the fact that we have children living on the street that we have children-headed households, that we have huge inequality in this country and like this is ... it's a means to survive I think for the victims, this kind of activity"*.

This participant's statement appears to affirm the literature (ECPAT, 2013:11) which states that there is increasing poverty in South Africa, especially among those families and communities that are vulnerable and affected by HIV/AIDS, as the disease results in high adult mortality rates leaving children in positions in which they are vulnerable to sexual exploitation. According to Song (2007:3), these conditions present fertile ground for a burgeoning sex trade.

Participant CC spoke about poor policing and people turning a blind eye to CST, and a lack of awareness of the phenomenon of CSEC as contributing factors: *"it's because it's not an industry that is policed, so it makes it so much easier. I mean people turn a blind eye, they don't care or they're not aware of it. Awareness is probably the biggest. They're not aware of it – that it can happen. Tourism is still regarded as a clean industry"*. (Participant CC.)

Participant W, also referred to a lack of awareness, stating: *"I think awareness is the problem or rather the lack of awareness is the problem because if we made, everybody in the industry, which includes the hospitality trade, I think from your smaller guest houses to your very big upmarket hotel groups, if they were more involved it would raise a flag if a child is being escorted by a much older person, or comes in frequently with different people, it would raise the question is this child safe and what is being done and you know, what goes on"*.

In the next section, the last theme deduced from the data collected from hospitality and tourism industry service providers will be presented focusing on the suggestions forwarded by them for addressing the CSEC with specific focus on CP and CST.

#### **6.5.6 Theme 6: The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' suggestions for addressing CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST**

In a speech made at the Human Rights Council's Side Session on 'Transnational cooperation and corporate social responsibility: enablers for protection of children from sexual exploitation in travel and tourism' in Geneva in March 2013, Noten (2013:15) mentions the following recommendations in terms of the combatting of CST:

Tourist sending and receiving countries should have adequate legislation and law enforcement in place to combat sexual exploitation of children

When tourism is developing in countries, governments should “require companies to address child protection, especially from sexual exploitation” and this should include child protection in their business principles and the implementation of the Tourism Child Protection Code or similar mechanisms in their operations.

These recommendations tie in with some of the recommendations forwarded by the hospitality and tourism industry participants involved in this study. These suggestions generate from the responses to two questions in the interview guide and put to the participants like this: *What role, if any, should your sector play in the prevention of child sex tourism?* And: *What should the tourism sector do in South Africa to increase awareness of child sex tourism?* The suggestions are grouped as sub-themes presented below.

##### **6.5.6.1 Sub-theme 1: Educate and increase awareness about CSEC among the individuals engaged with the hospitality and tourism industry and the public in general**

Educating the hospitality and tourism industries to the pitfalls of CST is critically important. The education of further education and training, undergraduate and postgraduate students who specialise and major in these and related disciplines deserves particular attention, so that this group understands CST well and will be in a position to make a significant contribution in this field of preventing and responding to CSEC once they enter the workforce (Berardi, 2010:305; George & Panko, 2011:140).

In adding to this suggestion, Participant CC (a tourism manager in one of the towns along the Garden Route) suggested that this awareness-raising initiative: *“... should be a joint initiative, government first of all because you know it’s not policed, as I mentioned and in addition, it should be on the onus of a particular guest house if they want to raise awareness about it, or have a certain icon to say that they are aware of child sex tourism, but to be informed and to create awareness, that’s the most important thing that needs to be done at the moment because very few people are...I think that industry organisations like Federated Hospitality Association of Southern Africa (FEDHASA), and the tourism information office, Western Cape Destination Marketing, Investment and Trade Promotion Agency (WESGROW) they should actually consult and see what we can do about it [CST] ... industry organisations should make a noise about it, they should create awareness campaigns about it. The onus should be on them”*.

This view also agrees with both Berardi (2010:305) and George and Panko’s (2011:140) opinions that self-regulation by the tourism industry can be more effective than efforts by the government on its own.

A few of the participants were concerned about the fact that the general public were not knowledgeable about the phenomenon of child sex tourism and felt that they too had to be educated to be aware of and look out for signs of its occurrence. In this regard, Participant OO said: *“It should be media for sure and then I mean you have got so many courses, where you attend working in the hospitality industry. You can’t of course have it like the indabas because then you scare your tourists away so you can’t do that either, but it should be in the media that the whole surrounding – not actually only us, the hotel industry – but actually everyone should be aware of checking if you see that”*.

Participant X was of the same mind, stating; *“I think generally people in society should be educated as to what you can do. In terms of investigating the foreigners coming into the country, that’s a hard one”*.

Participant S (a guest house owner in Cape Town) also suggested the creating awareness about this phenomenon when she said: *“... just make it public, just make it public, and as soon as you make it public maybe that’s the first step and from there on you can raise awareness, I think...”*.

The comments of one of the guest house owners in Cape Town (Participant I), illustrated this sub-theme: *“... I think again awareness campaigns would be good and if those kind of establishments are having problems like this, then surely they should put cameras in ...”*.

Participant T also referred to raising public awareness around the phenomenon of CST and shared that she received information from the owner of the guest house where she worked who was a Swedish resident. She said, *“I mean there’s other things that you can do as well like go to schools and that kind of thing it’s just that I don’t have the time...”*. She continued: *“So he [referring to the owner of the guest house] does these things on Sweden’s side as well and if he hears of something, he always tells me and we see if we can do to create awareness on our side”*.

On how awareness could be raised within the hotel and tourism industries in particular, Participant W (HR manager at an international tour operator for inbound travel) forwarded the following suggestion: *“If one remembers that we are the wholesaler selling off to operators overseas, our documents hardly ever cover any of it [referring to information about CST], however in the ... ‘travel wallet’ that’s compiled for the traveller overseas that comes to the country – upon landing in this country, the travel wallet already includes The Code’s brochure. That brochure is explained by the travel agent, operator or wholesaler overseas as well as that this entails ... it’s almost a prevention tool. To say this is what is [termed] a no-go in this country, so the awareness starts with the agent overseas already and therefore we take a lot of effort with the Indabas the ITPs (travel trade shows), the WTM trade shows for our industry, that when The Code is there and all their representatives take a time to also go and sign the new initiatives they have and get new promotional brochures from them”*.

#### 6.5.6.2 Sub-theme 2: Implementation of The Code to address the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CST

Participant GG’s (manager of a tourism industry trade organisation with a national responsibility) advice was for this industry to implement The Code: *“I mean I think implementing The Code is a good step and some of the companies that we’ve worked with over the past few years have done amazing things. I can highlight [hotel group] as exemplary... they have taken on The Code internally as part of their staff induction”*.

### 6.5.6.3 Sub-theme 3: Training staff on how to deal with incidences of CST

Participants OO and X suggested the aspect of training. Participant OO (hotel manager on the Garden Route) voiced her opinion as follows: *“Well, I mean firstly of course, business or not, every hotel should train their staff so that they are aware of it, what is happening and of course inform supervisor, manager, whatever, when they suspect something is not right. And as I said it’s difficult to, you know to keep the people and then maybe inform the police because if you are wrong, it is not right if you do that so it is difficult because of course you want to catch these people, but how can you? But people in the hotel industry, reception staff mainly of course, they have to be aware of it and have to inform management, if things like this are happening”*.

This agrees with Berardi’s (2010:305) view that part of the tourism industry’s responsibility includes informing and training tourism staff, in particular those who have frequent contact with customers and who are, therefore, in a unique position “to witness suspicious situations”.

Participant X agreed with the fact that the industry is in a unique position to observe guests and their behaviour and felt that policing should be done by the industry for this reason. She said; *“I think it [policing] should be [done by] the tourism industry, because they’d have a better understanding of what they need to look for with the softness of hospitality and dealing with tourists, whereas with the police they would kind of box in a situation and not be able to look at it holistically, because that’s their job, you know it’s either black or white. You know where we would be able to, if a tourist ... from a tourism side you’d be able to analyse it a lot easier and make the most correct decision based on what you’ve seen, because there are times when parents are travelling together, you know a dad and a child and we can kind of see the behaviours, how they would interact with each other, then we’d know that is the parent of the child”*.

She furthermore said that her hotel group did training on one aspect of CSEC; trafficking and commented in the following way: *“Yes, you make them very aware of it, we also did a whole road show of human trafficking where I do training with the staff and kind of explaining the types of things that people are exposed to and not just talking about human trafficking with regard to sex workers or with regards to sex but also slavery and all of those types of things, so just kind of like exposing them to it”*. (Participant X.)

#### 6.5.6.4 Sub-theme 4: A suggestion on how social workers can assist the hospitality and tourism industry in the prevention of CST

Commenting on the child sex tourism she had experienced within her family group, Participant CC (tourism manager at a Garden Route hotel) shared her experience of the social workers with whom she had engagements with. She offered some suggestions on how they can assist the individuals in the hotel and tourism industry in terms of addressing the phenomenon of CST. *“You know they came in and they talked to her and they actually told my mother she’s a naughty child and that’s that. I thought you know something would happen that they would be able to give her advice or give us advice to be able to rehabilitate her back to put her back into school, so that she can complete school. That was my expectation but I think they were not properly equipped with the knowledge of how to deal with it. You know in terms of advocacy and being aware of it and probably working with tourism information offices. Maybe if each child welfare organisation gets one of their officers to be trained in that kind of thing, or being made aware of that, that would already make a difference”.*

In addition in this regard, Participant X said the following: *“I think with regards to ... it’s really hard because obviously I’m quite familiar with the situation that street children are in or children across the board that come from underprivileged backgrounds. I would say that the homes or the havens or the shelters that are being provided need to be more child-friendly. They need to equip them in such a way that these children will understand that what is happening is not right and that there’s hope to be able to become an individual and a well-rounded person within the community whether you’ve done the wrong things or not.*

## 6.6 CHAPTER SUMMARY

In this chapter the findings in relation to the views and perceptions of the hospitality and tourism industry workers interviewed for this study were presented. The chapter started with an introduction to the phenomenon of CST and the way in which it is inextricably bound to the hospitality and tourism industry. A discussion on the measures the hospitality industry has implemented in an attempt to combat CSEC with a specific focus on child sex tourism followed. It focused on a global initiative (also adopted in South Africa) called The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism known as ‘The Code’ and an outline of the objectives of The Code was presented.

The next section then focused on the biographical details of the hospitality and tourism industry participant group. The participants ranged from hotel staff who interact with guests of five star, four star and three star as well as unrated hotels or inns; owners/managers of guest houses or bed and breakfasts in Cape Town and along the Garden Route, both rated (stars) or unrated; and tour operators who work in the Western Cape inbound for destinations in the target area. An explanation of the various methods utilised to interview the participants and a table showing the various interview settings was also provided.

The section that followed focused on a thematic presentation of the accounts of hospitality and tourism industry service providers' knowledge of and response to the phenomena of CP and CST. The first of the six themes presented the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the concept 'child sex tourism', and their knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST. It showed that they were informed to a varying degree about the meaning of the term 'child sex tourism', with many participants having never heard the term before. Similarly they had widely varying opinions about the extent of the problem in South Africa, and their exposure ranged from being a very close, personal, familial experience to having never come across this in their careers, even indirectly.

The next theme (Theme 2) concerned the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST and their exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business. Participants in this group reported various levels of exposure to child sex tourism, whether direct or indirect. They had little to offer with regard to the characteristics of victims of child sex tourism but commented on the perpetrators within their sphere of experience, offering their thoughts on who perpetrated these crimes.

The participants had no or very little experience of working with social workers, victims or perpetrators and could offer little information on these issues.

This chapter then covered a report on Theme 3 which entailed the accounts of the participants' in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC with Theme 4 dealing with that of the perpetrators.

In the next theme (Theme 5) the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the factors contributing to the commercial sexual exploitation of children with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism was presented. Their opinions

on the contributing factors ranged from poverty and poor policing to HIV/AIDS and turning a blind eye to child sex tourism.

Finally in Theme 6, the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' suggestions for addressing CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST was presented.

This chapter now concludes the presentation of the findings and in the final chapter to follow the conclusions and recommendations are presented.

## **CHAPTER 7**

### **SUMMARIES AND CONCLUSIONS, LIMITATIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

#### **7.1 INTRODUCTION**

The aim of this research endeavour was to report on the status of the knowledge on and response to the commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC) with particular reference to child prostitution (CP) and child sex tourism (CST) viewing it from a multi-perspective lens. This was done by gaining understanding from samples of social workers, non-social workers, adult survivors of CSEC, SAPS FCS Unit members and service providers within the hospitality and tourism industry. The members of these groups were prompted during interviews to give their perspectives and offer their solutions to address these phenomena in order to develop recommendations for Social Work Practice guidelines which would result in a better understanding of the phenomena and consequently in social workers being better able to respond to the requirements of the victims. In Chapter 1 of this research the research topic was introduced; the research problem that provided a rationale for the study was framed, and research approach, design and methods proposed for the study were introduced. Chapter 2 dealt with how the research plan introduced in Chapter 1 of the research panned out in practice. The findings together with a literature control extend over Chapters 3–6.

This chapter commences with conclusive summaries of Chapter 1 and Chapter 2. Thereafter the research findings, fully documented in Chapters 3–6, are summarised and the conclusions drawn from these findings are discussed. The limitations, as related to the execution of the research project, will be indicated prior to presenting recommendations that are directed towards training and education, policy and legislation, Social Work practice, and towards the non-social workers, SAPS FCS Units and the hospitality and tourism industry, along with suggestions for further research. These recommendations are the findings gleaned from these groups of participants who took part in this research, as well as the solutions proposed by them. Finally a brief summary ends-off the report.

#### **7.2 SUMMARY OF CHAPTER 1**

Chapter 1, titled 'Introduction and background, problem formulation and motivation for the study', aimed at orientating the reader towards the study by providing a backdrop for the subject under study. In addition, the chapter offered the formulated research problem, and

the researcher's motivation for undertaking the study. A theoretical framework that served as reference point for the study was introduced.

Bronfenbrenner's (Duerden & Witt, 2010:109) ecological systems theory, introduced in Chapter 1, Section 1.3 and selected as theoretical framework for the study, operates from the premise that there are relationships between humans (microsystems) and other microsystems in their environment with these microsystems being situated on different levels (i.e. microsystem, mesosystem, exosystem and macrosystem). All the mentioned microsystems on the different levels are interlinked. In adopting this stance, it became apparent to the researcher that, when changes occur on one level it has a reverberating effect on and a resultant change in the systems on other levels (Friedman & Allen, 2010:11-13). For example, when government legislation (i.e. change on the macrosystem level) changed the legal age for children to consent to sex, confusion arose about the age of consent among individuals (or microsystems), and those who work with sexually exploited children, such as NGOs, social workers and the SAPS, (exosystem level). This resulted in service delivery challenges. Developments in technology (i.e. World Wide Web and Internet Communication Technology), which constitutes a development on the macrosystem level, resulted in perpetrators morphing their behaviour into different types of child abuse practices, such as online child sex tourism, which constitutes a change or adaptation at the microsystem level of the perpetrator. In developing this understanding the researcher consulted the literature (O'Grady, 2001:134; Smith, Mcleod & Robertson, 2010:153; Taylor in Cole & Morgan, 2010:64; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:74) about the influence of tourism on socio-economic systems within a country. She found that increasing tourist numbers and a relaxation of influx control (at macrosystem level), especially in third world countries such as South Africa, while positive in terms of income for the country and service providers for those tourists, can have negative effects on the social fabric of a country (macrosystem) and on the individuals (microsystems) within that country. Significant changes are:

- Changes in the exchange rate and relaxation of border controls have resulted in increased traveller numbers to South Africa, particularly in the post-apartheid era. Here travellers with disposable income collide with a local population that, in many cases, has no or a low income (Brennan & Allen, 2001:204; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:70). However, Montgomery (2001:200) notes that tourism is just one variable of several that combine to contribute to CST and is not in itself a sole promoter.
- The advent of the internet has increased the ability of child sexual exploitation predators to make contact with vulnerable children, other predators and

intermediaries, to share their sexual encounters with other predators in other countries online (Cullen, 2006:443; Shared Hope International, 2007:4; O'Connell Davidson in Cole & Morgan, 2010:53, The Star, 18 May 2012).

- The changing roles of males and females are reflected in the advertisements for sex tourism which indicate that a sex tourist is generally a man who has tired of women's liberation and feminism is no longer enjoying life and needs to exercise his alternative sexual preferences without the constraints of political correctness (Montgomery, 2001:192; Rao, 2003:155).
- Sexual morality in the West has changed and, as a result behaviours formerly frowned upon by society, and thought of as issues to be dealt with by the state, such as homosexuality and adultery, are now viewed as private matters. With the relaxation of the tight control over these issues, so too has control over others loosened morals, in particular, child sexuality and prostitution (Montgomery, 2001:192).
- An increase in the deaths of parents from AIDS- or HIV-related illnesses has resulted in more and more child-headed households, a situation that is likely to leave children vulnerable to CSEC (Chetty, 2007:9).

These changes at macrosystem level with the accompanying change at meso-and microsystem levels have led to a change being observed in some of South Africa's social problems. One notable area is the contribution to an increase in CSEC, with specific reference to both CP and CST (Montgomery, 2001:192; Rao, 2003:155; Cullen, 2006:443; Shared Hope International, 2007:4; O'Connell Davidson in Cole & Morgan, 2010:53, The Star, 18 May 2012; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:70).

Chapter 1 continued to discuss the international and local legislative response to the phenomenon of CP and CST as manifestations of CSEC. It included a review of the relevant international legislation such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child (Chetty, 2007:26; Muntarbhorn, 2007:1) and the development of the term 'commercial sexual exploitation of children', as well as the birth of ECPAT (Muntarbhorn, 2007:8; ECPAT, 2012). A review of the South African legislation followed, with a closer look at the Children's Act No 38 of 2005, the Criminal Law Act No 32 of 2007, the Child Justice Act No 75 of 2008 and the Trafficking in Persons Act No 7 of 2013. All these constitute some form of change at the macrosystem level that would ultimately result in changes in the exosystem due to the linkages between two or more settings. Change in legislation would

require new training and a different, more integrative and a collaborative, response from the social workers, non-social workers, the SAPS FCS Units and the hospitality and tourism industry (as parts of the exosystem). The researcher discovered that the lines between some manifestations of CSEC such as CST, CP and pornography are blurred, making identification difficult. Pornography is sometimes intertwined with CST and Cullen (2006:443) refers to it as the “propaganda arm of sex tourism”.

A discussion of the emergence of the phenomenon of child sex tourism followed. The researcher consulted literature on CST to understand what a child sex tourist might look like and found that a tight description is elusive, although many misconceptions point to overweight, old men who are losing their hair and who turn to foreign children for sex because they are unattractive to girls in their own countries (Montgomery, 2001:192).

The researcher next looked at the steps the hospitality and tourism industry took, internationally and locally, to combat child abuse and CSEC particularly CST, looking at The Code for safety in tourism and other mechanisms. Finally, the researcher turned her attention to the response of the international community of child helping services that came from social workers, the police and NGO based non-social workers to ascertain what steps their organisations had taken in the international and local arenas to combat CSEC, with particular attention paid to CP and CST. Evidence from various authors (Chetty, 2007:7; Beilacqua, in Johnson, 2011:55; Pawlak, 2012:38) suggests that the impact of CSEC is profoundly detrimental and violence is an ever-present danger.

It became evident, while consulting various literature sources (detailed throughout Chapter 1), that although CST is often linked to sex trafficking and pornography, little research has been done in South Africa on CSEC specifically relating to CST. This has resulted in data that is based on estimates and guesswork. The paucity of data on this phenomenon related to its occurrence, the perpetrators, the victims, the remedies, the treatment modalities and the prevention initiatives is problematic. A gap in accurate knowledge about CST has appeared (ECPAT Global Monitoring Report on South Africa, 2006:31; Tepelus (2008:111; Cody, 2010:204; ECPAT Netherlands, 2014:71). According to Tepelus (2008:110), there should be linkages drawn from research published in law, the social sciences, criminology and many others, and they should be joined to other research in the tourism industry. The purpose of social work that has at its core the individual's human rights and the principles of social justice are, in part, about bringing about social change and the empowerment of people to work towards the enhancement of their own well-being. This occurs best when utilising the theories of human behaviour and

social systems at the point where individuals interact with their environments (Blewett, Lewis and Tunstill, 2007:7).

Based on this evident paucity of data (as the identified research problem) and the purpose of social work, the goals formulated for the study were:

- *To report on the status of the knowledge of and response to CP and CST from the perspectives of social workers, non-social workers, SAPS FCS Unit members, key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry, and adult survivors of CSEC along the Garden Route and in Cape Town.*
- *To forward recommendation-wise solutions to address the phenomenon of CP and CST from the perspectives of social workers, non-social workers, SAPS FCS Unit members, key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry, and adult survivors of CSEC of along the Garden Route and in Cape Town.*

In Chapter 1 (Section 1.5) it was explained that the aim as formulated would be explored by utilising a qualitative methodology. This means that the aims and objectives, which were set in order to answer the problem, were explored by utilising the case study and phenomenological research designs that were coupled with explorative, descriptive and contextual strategies of inquiry. To this end, the researcher identified five population groups, namely, social workers, non-social work employees of NGOs, adult survivors of CSEC, members of the SAPS FCS Units and members of the hospitality and tourism industry. Samples were drawn in order to gain perspectives on the phenomenon of CP and CST. Purposive sampling techniques introduced in Chapter 1 (Section 1.8.1) and detailed in Chapter 2 (Section 2.3) were used.

The study's geographical boundary was set as the city of Cape Town and the area known as the Garden Route in the Western Cape, as the researcher felt that both town and city settings would be represented and a multi-perspective result could be achieved. The recruitment of the participants drawn from these areas was done in a number of different ways. The tourism boards of various towns were consulted to obtain contact details for hospitality establishments and tourism organisations. An article in an e-mailed newsletter (see Addendum G) was sent out via one of the towns on the Garden Route, reaching all its hospitality and tourism members. In terms of the social workers, professional social work associations were contacted for email addresses of social workers in the demarcated area in order to ascertain the suitability of social workers for selection. A list of delegates who had attended a CST workshop in Cape Town was obtained, from an organisation concerned with combatting CST, in order to reach out to both social workers

and non-social workers at NGOs who had attended that workshop as they were considered likely to have an interest in CSEC and in particular CST. In addition a list of SAPS FCS Unit members was obtained along with formal permission for the research from the Provincial Directorate of Research of the SAPS.

Finally Chapter 1 outlined the way in which the data collection was envisaged, as well as how the data analysis would be executed by using Tesch's eight steps (Creswell, 2009:186), and the process of ensuring trustworthiness by applying Guba's model (as explained in Krefting (1991) and expanded on in Shenton (2004:63-75) was detailed.

The next part of this chapter will summarise the application of the methodology and the conclusions and recommendations arrived at as a result of its application.

### **7.3 SUMMARY, CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON THE APPLIED METHODOLOGY UTILISED IN THIS STUDY AND EXPLAINED IN CHAPTER 2**

As summarised above, Chapter 1 provided an introduction and background to the study and problem formulation, and also pointed to the theoretical framework chosen for the study. In addition, the research plan followed by the researcher was also introduced.

The second chapter of this report focused on providing a more complete description of the selected qualitative methodology and its application in this study. The concept 'methodology' in the context of research can also be referred to as "the science of finding out" and qualitative research approach is by its very nature explorative and delivers rich meaning (Babbie, 2010:4). One of the attractive characteristics of qualitative research is that it accommodates an emergent design, which means that, during the fieldwork stage of the research project the plan as proposed originally, may be adjusted as the incoming information informs the researcher of changes required. This could include changes to the research sites, the number of participants interviewed, the data collection methods and the number of interviews conducted (Hurworth, 2005:125; Morgan, 2008:245; Creswell, 2009:176; Marshall & Rossman, 2011:2; Welman et.al., 2012:192).

Exploration and contextual description of the phenomena, CP and CST, was central to this study. The researcher was able to gain first-hand information and acquire knowledge of the context itself and the experiences and opinions of the various participants from the different participant groups and for this reason opted for the inclusion of the collective case study design as one of the strategies of inquiry. In addition, the phenomenological

research design was incorporated as strategy for inquiry with the adult survivors of CSEC, as this was found to be appropriate for this group only. This was incorporated as the researcher wanted to meet her objective of wanting to identify the “essence” of a human experience (i.e. *What was it like... How was it for you to be commercially sexually exploited as a child?*) (Creswell, 2009:12).

In reviewing the selection and application of the research approach adopted, the researcher concluded that it befitted that study and served to answer the research question. The addition of the phenomenological design was the result of the adjustment of the participant groups (explained more fully in the next paragraph and Chapter 2, Section 2.4). The phenomenological research design pays close attention to the life experiences of those involved in the study and entails the identification of the essence of the human experience (Hammersley in Lewis-Beck, Bryman & Liao, 2004:815; Creswell, 2009:12). This strategy of inquiry was appropriate as it was used in conjunction with the explorative, descriptive and contextual research design, in that it allowed the researcher to ask the adult survivors openly what it was like for them to have been commercially sexually exploited as children. Thus the researcher could, in this way, explore and try to gain insight into the life experiences of the sampled adult survivors of sexual exploitation through their own personal frame of reference.

The researcher had to make some adjustments to the original plan designed for the actual implementation of the research methodology as she added three participant groups to the original two. During the interviewing of the first participants from the social work sampled group, the researcher realised that they, as well as the participants from the hospitality and tourism industry, were not as information-rich as was originally assumed. On the suggestion of the social work participants interviewed and in consultation with her supervisor, the researcher decided to draw samples from the populations of non-social workers, SAPS FCS Units and from the adult survivors who were victims of CSEC. In view of these additions the researcher also had to develop interview-schedules with questions to facilitate the process of interviewing the participants on the topic being investigated. Details of the addition of further population and sample groups that were employed in this study are provided in Chapter 2, Section 2.6.

Another amendment to the original plan was to the interview methods. At the outset of the project all interviews with the participants were intended to take place face-to-face as it was thought that this method would elicit the richest data. However, constraints caused by the geographical location of the some of the participants (being situated outside of the

Western Cape) and lack of financial resources prohibited this from taking place in all instances. The face-to-face interviews were therefore supplemented by electronic mail communication and telephone interviews. More information regarding this amendment was described in Chapter 2 section 2.7.1.1.

In terms of the analysis of the data collected, the original plan was to utilise the eight steps as proposed by Tesch (in Creswell, 2009:186), and from this there was no deviation. An independent coder was utilised for an independent analysis of the data in order to enhance the trustworthiness of the study. In addition, in order to ensure the trustworthiness of the study Guba's model (in Krefting, 1991:214-222; Shenton, 2004:63-75), which has the characteristics of truth value, neutrality, consistency and applicability (as described in Chapter 2 section 2.10, Table 2.9), was proposed and applied. The researcher concluded that the use of Tesch's method of analysis was well-suited for tackling the mammoth task of analysing the data in a systematic and manageable fashion, and the application of Guba's model was important for the establishment of trustworthiness of the study.

In view of the above, and related to the conclusions drawn from the application of the research methodology and the subsequent changes made, the researcher proposes these recommendations:

- A theoretical framework such as the one from Bronfenbrenner (Duerden & Witt, 2010:109; Friedman & Allen, 2010:9-14) used in this study served, not only as a spotlight to illuminate the researcher's understanding of the phenomena under investigation, but it also pointed out how all systems at different levels are interlinked and that changes in one system directly and/or indirectly exerts an influence on the other systems.
- The work of Babbie (2010:92-93) and Neuman (2012:25) are recommended as background for the selection of the qualitative methodology which this research recommends for exploration and description. It is appropriate for research in cases where the subject matter is sensitive, and especially where there is a paucity of extant research, and where the emergent nature of such a research method is a desirable characteristic.
- Due to the emergent nature of qualitative research methodology the researcher was able to adjust the participant populations to enable the inclusion of those individuals

who were deemed to be more information-rich by their peers. Having additional participant groups led to more relevant data. This researcher therefore recommends the qualitative research approach in research where exploration and description is the aim and flexibility is required to obtain information-rich participants.

- The researcher and her transcriber transcribed the interviews as soon as possible after they were done instead of waiting to the end of the data collection period before transcribing. This was beneficial for two reasons and is therefore recommended. First, the transcribed interviews began to inform the research about the need for additional population groups; and second, helped the researcher to manage the incoming data in an efficient way which avoided being overwhelmed with the volume of interviews to be transcribed and evaluated.
- The systematic steps proposed by Tesch (in Creswell, 2009:186) for analysing the qualitative generated data enabled the researcher to reduce the large volume of data into manageable portions. The services of an independent coder also helped the researcher to gain wider perspective of the information received from the participants and prevented the development of a myopic view of the data - this method of analysis and the utilisation of the services of an independent coder are therefore recommended.

#### **7.4 SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION-WISE DISCUSSION OF CHAPTERS 3, 4, 5 & 6**

The findings gleaned from the data were covered over four chapters (3, 4, 5 and 6) in this report. Chapter 3 dealt with the presentation of the research findings which focused on the adult survivors' accounts and recollections of their CSEC and these findings were complemented by a literature control. In Chapters 4 and 5 the research findings which resulted from the interviews with the service providers were presented. The themes, sub-themes and categories that emerged from the accounts of the social workers, the non-social workers, and members of the SAPS FCS Units (as service providers) in relation to the questions posed to them were substantiated through quoting their direct words with a literature control where appropriate. Chapter 6 followed and focused on the hospitality and tourism industry represented by selected participants who gave their views, perceptions and experiences based on the questions posed to them related to the topic under investigation. The summaries and conclusions drawn from these chapters are now presented.

#### 7.4.1 Findings in relation to the adult survivors of CSEC (see Chapter 3)

One central theme emerged, namely: The accounts and recollections of adult survivors in relation to their commercial sexual exploitation in childhood. The responses related to this theme led the researcher and the independent coder to break it down into sub-themes (see Chapter 3).

The conclusions of the researcher are based on the personal experiences and the input received from the **adults in this study** (age range of 22–25 years), **who survived sexual exploitation as children** and who were all children on, in or of the street (as defined by Ward & Seager, 2010:85) at the time of their sexual exploitation. They are listed as the following:

- The adult survivors arrived on the street at a very young age, mostly due to poor circumstances at their homes (indicative of disorganisation in the family as microsystem).
- They were sexually assaulted, raped or exploited at ages between 9–11 years of age very shortly after their arrival on the street, which corroborates with what is reported in the media McCoy & Keen (2014:161) consulted. The researcher did not establish whether these individuals had experienced sexual assault before their arrival on the street.
- Children of all races were commercially sexually exploited and the adult survivors specifically mentioned black, white and coloured children. This agrees with Delanny's (2005:7) work.
- Both male and female children were commercially sexually exploited.
- The effects of the CSEC is well documented (Areola, 2008:246-252; Coren & Hutchfield, 2009; Cody, 2010:26; Kent, 2012:33), and the researcher concluded that the adult survivors in this study also experienced feelings of depression, sadness, confusion, guilt, shame and embarrassment along with feeling responsible for the exploitation.
- The adult survivors as children were paid between R50–R1 500 with additional 'gifts' sometimes totalling more than R3 000.
- The adult survivors as children entered the sex 'industry' for various reasons including poverty and a lack of other means to survive, which led to so-called 'survival sex', addiction to drugs and/or alcohol, the presence of naiveté and lack of knowledge that comes with the natural immaturity of young children.

In terms of the ***observations and perceptions of the adult survivors regarding the perpetrators*** of CSEC from the perspective of the adult survivors of CSEC specifically relating to CST, the following was noted:

- The perpetrators of CSEC were both locals and foreigners. Local perpetrators were from areas other than those they perpetrated in, and foreigners were mentioned as being from the United Kingdom, the United States, Germany, France, Nigeria and Somalia. Nigerians were specifically mentioned as intermediaries and pimps. German men were singled out as 'end users' – those who had sex with the children - and sometimes acted as intermediaries.
- Perpetrators were mainly men but a lower number of female perpetrators were involved as well.
- Perpetrators were mainly white but also coloured and black. The adult survivor participants viewed black clients with suspicion as their behaviour was deemed unpredictable.
- The perpetrators engaged sexually with the children at various localities including streets, both upmarket and low-end hotels, apartments and private homes.
- The perpetrators' sexual orientation was labelled by the adult survivors as 'homosexual' or 'heterosexual' and 'married heterosexual men' seeking sex with rent boys who may have been heterosexual or homosexual.
- There were women who commercially exploit children sexually but their behaviour differed from that of men in that some of them took the children to their homes and fed them and also allowed them to shower either before or after the sex act. These women were generally seen as being wealthy. Some female perpetrators were lesbians. Female perpetrators were also implicated as pimps and intermediaries. Some female pimps were family members such as mothers of the children being pimped.
- Perpetrators used various substances such as drugs or alcohol when perpetrating with the children and often encouraged the children to do the same (i.e. utilise drugs or alcohol) either prior to or during sex.
- Perpetrators were sometimes violent or threatened violence towards the children they used for sexual encounters. Violence included being thrown out of a moving vehicle or being threatened with a firearm.
- Perpetrators sometimes required the children to perform unusual sexual acts.
- Perpetrators sometimes exposed children to pornography or involved them in the production of pornography.
- Perpetrators were generally perceived to be aged between 50 – 70 years of age.

- Perpetrators were more prolific during special events which attracted tourists to towns/cities.
- Sometimes children were accessed directly off the street, and sometimes through the use of intermediaries.

In terms of **services provided to the children**, the following was found:

- The adult survivors had different opinions about the effectiveness of police services, ranging from that they were helpful when asked to assist when victims had been raped, to the fact that they themselves were perpetrators, where the police officers themselves had sex with the children in the cells in exchange for cigarettes.
- Adult survivors felt the police were not aware and uninformed about the occurrence of CST and if a child was seen with a foreigner – the child was suspected of selling drugs not sex.
- Aid organisations were underutilised by the child victims for two apparent reasons: because the adult victims felt these institutions tended to cage the children in, especially the residential institutions, and partially because they regarded this not to be a remedy that suited them.

#### **7.4.2 Findings in relation to the service provider participants: the social workers, the non-social workers and the SAPS FCS Unit members (Chapters 4 and 5)**

The accounts of the service provider participants were grouped under 8 themes and the findings are summarised below according to the themes.

Theme 1: The service providers' levels of comprehension of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge of the legislation applicable to prohibiting CSEC (with specific reference to CST)

- In relation to their **understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'**, the comments from the **social worker** participants varied considerably. They ranged from a comprehensive to a basic understanding of what CST is on the one end, to a complete lack of understanding of the meaning on the other end, with a mistaken understanding of the concept in the middle of this continuum, some believing it to be CP (without any tourism element) or trafficking. The majority of the social workers did not understand or had mistaken understanding of CST.

- Social workers' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST varied in that some of the social work participants were knowledgeable about the legislation pertaining to CST, while others had speculative knowledge. The overwhelming majority of social workers had no knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST.
- The ***non-social work participants (similar to the social work participants) were variously informed about the term 'child sex tourism'***. Some had a comprehensive understanding, while others had a mistaken understanding of the meaning of the concept 'child sex tourism'. CST was often mistaken for trafficking.
- With regard to the non-social work participants' knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST, some of the non-social work participants were knowledgeable about this legislation and others had no knowledge of it at all.
- Similar to the social work and non-social work participants, each member of the ***SAPS FCS Unit group had a different idea of the meaning of 'child sex tourism'***. Some of them had a comprehensive understanding of the meaning of the term while others were quite mistaken or really did not know exactly what it was; in fact, this was so for the majority.

Theme 2: The service providers' perceptions of the extent of CSEC (with a specific focus on CP and CST) and their levels of exposure to victims and clients of the mentioned types of CSE

The ***social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST*** (Chapter 4 section 4.4.2) in their geographical areas of service delivery indicated that four of them noted that both phenomena occur in some of their areas of operation. Some suggested that it was probably more prevalent than they thought. Most of the social workers did not know about CST and expressed surprise that it occurs in South Africa. In the main the social work participants were not able to assess the extent of the CST problem in their area of operation.

In terms of the ***social work participants' accounts of their exposure*** to clients (i.e. children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST) (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.3), it is evident that their knowledge of child abuse and molestation (not specifically CP and CST) dominated their responses. They frequently reverted to commenting on cases they were dealing with which were unrelated to CP or CST but more related to child

sexual molestation and abuse, incest, peer sexual molestation and child sex trafficking. In some instances social workers described trafficking occurrences as CST cases; however, a number of social workers had exposure to either CP or CST. In many cases of child sexual abuse, due to the fact that social workers focus on therapy for victims, they were not able to say who the perpetrators were and therefore could not tell if the case qualified as a CST case or not. They did not probe the client for information about the perpetrator. A few of the social workers had direct interaction with children who were involved in sex work.

The ***non-social work participants' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST*** (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.4.) in their geographical areas of service delivery differed from the responses provided by the social workers. All participants in this group acknowledged that they had observed CP in their areas of service delivery, although the extent could not be accurately reported. Regarding CST and its extent in their service delivery areas, the majority of the non-social work participants reported that they either knew or suspected it was happening but could not estimate the extent.

In terms of the ***non-social work participants' exposure to the child victims of CP or CST*** (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.5), it was far greater and more varied than that of the social work participants as they had been involved in interventions which concerned organised sex rings, child pornography combined with child sexual exploitation in the form of parties, gang rape of children (by foreigners) and on-going interaction with child victims of CP and CST. These participants also described 'well-known' perpetrators, meaning that the perpetrators were well known to the children who engaged with them sexually, or they knew friends who were associated with the perpetrator sexually. The non-social work NGO participants as a group had a far higher level of direct and indirect exposure than any other group.

The ***SAPS FCS Unit member participants' perceptions on the extent of CP and CST*** in their geographical areas of service delivery (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.6) were based on real situations, by checking and citing rape and sexual assault figures. Although the participants were almost unanimous in their negative response to the question of child prostitution in their areas, they were aware of isolated cases but these were high profile cases that were also reported in the media. Only one confirmed case of CST was mentioned and participants stated that there was no classification for CST as a category under which this crime was classified. One participant did mention a number of unverified reports brought to his attention a few years prior to the time of the interview.

**SAPS FCS Unit member participants' accounts of their exposure to children** connected to CSEC as clients (i.e. children operating as sex workers and children as victims of CST) (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.7) delivered an almost entirely negative response. This meant that they did not encounter such clients, aside from one participant who cited being involved with a case where a 40 year old truck driver from another part of the country had picked up a 13-year-old on the side of the road and had sex with her. Two participants also described incidences of CST as trafficking in which they had had some involvement.

From the evidence given the researcher concluded that the extent of both CP and CST was very difficult to estimate for any one of the service provider participant groups. This, in terms of CST, was partially due to a lack of training and knowledge of the phenomenon which rendered identification difficult, and partially because there was no classification system to accommodate this specific type of crime (in the case of the SAPS FCS Unit's system). In addition, the origin of the perpetrator was not necessarily explored. There seemed to be high level of conceptual confusion in the identification of CST and apparent difficulty in distinguishing the difference between trafficking and CST. Furthermore, the service provider group with the most knowledge, experience and interaction with children involved in the commercial sex trade was the non-social work NGO group, despite the fact that this group was the group with the least formal training for the work that they do.

Theme 3: The service provider groups' accounts in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC

This theme explored the knowledge and perceptions of the service provider participants regarding the profile of the children who were involved in the child sex trade in terms of CP and CST.

The **profile of the children who had been subjected to sexual exploitation according to the social workers** (see Chapter 4 section 4.5.2) were both boys and girls, aged 2–15 years. These children typically displayed post exploitation characteristics which concur with those mentioned in the literature (Briere & Elliot, 2003:1207; Berelowitz, et al., 2012:98; McCoy & Keen, 2014:179) and are described as emotional bluntness, confusion, self-blame, low self-esteem, repetitive thoughts, self-disgust, night terrors, stigmatisation, responsibility for the abuse and abuse of others by the abused child.

The **non-social work participants** (see Chapter 4 section 4.5.3) added to this the facts that: children were mainly from three different race groups; black, coloured and white; aged between 7–18 years old; and split 50/50 between the sexes. They sometimes hailed from different countries in Africa and were often drug users. These children were all children living on the streets although the children were sometimes sold by their own parents. This group also noted the emotional numbness mentioned by the social workers.

The members of the **FCS Units of the SAPS** (see Chapter 4 section 4.5.4) did not have much comment about the children themselves, but one participant noted that the long-term effect of this abuse is that the scars remain although the immediate emotional wounds may heal.

From the above the researcher concluded that children from the ages of 2 – 17 were subject to commercial sexual exploitation in South Africa. These children were sometimes foreign but mostly local, were predominantly from three race groups; white, coloured and black and were often drug users, which was driven either by the need to dull the emotional impact of the abuse or they exposed themselves to the sexual exploitation because of their need for drugs. Furthermore the researcher concluded that most 'coalface' knowledge of the children and their circumstances was obtained from the non-social work participants and first hand interaction with these children happened mostly through the NGOs where the non-social work participants were involved. The SAPS FCS Unit members interviewed had limited contact with child victims of CSEC on any level other than to take statements from them.

Theme 4: The service provider groups' accounts in terms of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC

This theme explored the knowledge and perceptions of the service provider group participants of the perpetrators, that is, the buyers of child sex and facilitators of the CSEC.

The **social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC** in terms of their physical attributes and modus operandi (see Chapter 4 section 4.6.2) was lacking as many of the social work participants had in actual fact never interacted with the perpetrators directly. Hence most could not comment on their characteristics as a contribution to the compilation of a profile of them as they felt this was not their area of

focus. However, those who did respond based their information on what they obtained from their child victim clients. Only three mentioned direct contact with perpetrators.

While it is clear from their responses that there was a mix of local and international perpetrators, including some from Africa, Europe, the United Kingdom and the United States, it was also evident that the local perpetrators tend to choose areas away from their own places of residence. Although coloured and black perpetrators were specifically named, the majority of perpetrators mentioned were white, predominantly, but not only male, and usually, but not always, alone. One participant made reference to a partnership between an older child who is now an adult, and a perpetrating adult who worked as a team to attract and pick up younger children for sex. The adult partner then engaged in sex with the children either with the older child or with other adults. The perception of at least two of these participants was that the perpetrators were in the upper and middle class social strata and had resources. In addition one participant who had extensive therapeutic interaction with perpetrators in Cape Town mentioned that they had poor insight to their own dysfunction and were often motivated to seek counselling to avoid heavier sentences not as a result of truly seeking help.

The ***non-social work participants' profiling of the perpetrators of CSEC*** (see Chapter 4 section 4.6.3) with reference to the countries or places of origin of the CSEC perpetrators, corresponded with those from the social workers. This group also stated that perpetrators originated from overseas and locally, that some stayed in a different suburb, but that most were local South Africans who only perpetrated in towns different to those in which they resided. In terms of their gender, this group had more experience with female perpetrators who organised parties in order to have sex with underage children. This group of participants also added the opinion that the perpetrators appeared to be wealthy and that many were 'executive' types. The group pointed out that CSEC often involved a high level of violence. Another practice, known as being 'swallows', was the long stay perpetrators arranged when they took up residence in a country for 6–9 months of the year and return to their own countries for 3–6 months of the year. A further observation from this group was that they operated in groups and in syndicates and were well organised.

In terms of CP specifically, these participants asserted that the activity was well organised and that even if a child appeared to be standing on their own by the road, it was likely that there was a pimp watching them. They also mentioned the presence of a number of different international syndicates originating in Thailand, Eastern Europe, China and

Nigeria as well as local syndicates. They were aware of a system of abduction of girl children who were first drugged and then almost immediately put on the street as prostitutes.

Little information came from the **SAPS FCS Unit member participant group about the general profile of perpetrators of CSEC** regarding their physical attributes and modus operandi (see Chapter 4 section 4.6.4). Only one participant commented that perpetrators were readily identified as foreigners, especially Nigerians, which largely corresponded with the other two groups. This participant group was of the view that there were two groups of offenders, namely, those who sold children into prostitution and those who purchased children for sex.

From the accounts of the three groups of service providers groups the researcher concluded that perpetrators of CSEC were:

- Mainly white, but also black and coloured
- Mainly male but also female
- Mainly wealthy, upper and middle class and 'executive' types
- Locals, but mainly 'out of towners'
- Foreigners from Africa (particularly Nigeria), the United States, Europe (particularly Germanic looking) and the UK
- Sometimes long-stay (3–9 months) visitors to South Africa (known as 'swallows')
- Prone to employ a high level of violence
- Perpetrators who sometimes acted alone and sometimes in tandem with others
- Perpetrators who sometimes employed older children to assist them in recruiting younger children
- Perpetrators who operated on two levels, the sellers of the children and the purchasers of child sex; and the sellers were often part of syndicates from Eastern Europe, Africa, China and Thailand
- Well organised
- People who sometimes 'employed' the children to take part in the production of pornography concurrently with their being used for sex

Theme 5: The service provider groups' views on the accounts of the factors contributing to the CSEC with a specific focus on CP and CST

The ***social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomenon of CP and CST*** (see Chapter 5 section 5.2.1) included a number of factors:

- poverty and unemployment
- poor social conditions at home
- benefits inherent in sex work including a distorted way of getting care and attention; getting their needs met; and using as a means to obtain luxury items for themselves
- the influx of foreign tourists into South Africa
- poor policing and low arrest and conviction rate of perpetrators
- substance abuse

The ***non-social work participants' views on factors contributing to the phenomenon of CP and CST*** (see Chapter 5 section 5.2.2) corroborated, to a large extent with the views shared by the social work participants with regard to mentioning poverty, poor conditions in the home, substance addiction, influx of tourists, children's views on sex and the benefits of prostitution. In addition, they referred to society's portrayal of sex and foreigner's perceptions of South African children as being more mature, and therefore more sexually advanced at a younger age.

Similar to the other two groups, the ***SAPS FCS Unit members' views on factors contributing the phenomenon of CP and CST*** (see Chapter 5 section 5.2.3) were focused on poverty, the parents' chemical addictions leading to a lack of care and a poor home situation for the children that led to prostitution as a means of escape. In addition to this, the SAPS FCS Unit members mentioned peer pressure, where children observed their friends engaging in these activities and did the same, a factor that is also backed up by literature in the work of George and Panko (2011:137).

The researcher concluded from this input that the factors contributing to the presence of CSEC were many and sometimes intertwined. They ranged from the child's environment and home circumstances to the mindset of the perpetrators, making this an extremely complex crime. A list of the contributing factors which is a combination of the comments from the participants of all three service provider groups follows.

- Poverty and unemployment of the parents of children involved in CSEC

- Poor social conditions at home including parental substance abuse, domestic violence, lack of parental care and hunger
- Benefits inherent in sex work including a distorted way of getting care and attention; getting their needs met; and as a means to obtain luxury items for themselves
- Peer pressure
- Foreigners' perception and attitude towards children in South Africa as being more mature and sexually more aware
- The influx of foreign tourists to South Africa
- Poor policing and low arrest and conviction rate of perpetrators
- Substance abuse of children involved in CSEC

The above is underscored by Bronfenbrenner's (Duerden & Witt, 2010:109) ecological systems theory. As the researcher reflects on the findings thus far it is evident that the children (or in this case adult survivors) are representative of a disturbed microsystem level where circumstances (i.e. the dysfunction of the family as microsystem) push children to the street where they fall prey to CP and CST by perpetrators (who themselves display disturbances on the microsystem). This takes place in an environment marked by poor policing, low arrest and conviction rate of perpetrators, pointing to the inadequate functioning or malfunctions of systems on the exo- and macrosystems levels.

The focus of the next theme shifts from the state of the knowledge of the various service providers, the main thrust of the findings from the service provider participants as Themes 1 to 5, to a multi-perspective response to the phenomena under investigation. It specifically looks at the factors enabling and hindering service providers in their response to CSEC, especially CP and CST, forwarding some suggestions for the former.

Theme 6: The service provider groups' accounts of the factors enabling them to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST (see Chapter 5, Section 5.3.2).

From the **social work participants' accounts on factors enabling them to respond to CP and CST** as facets of CSEC the researcher concluded that very few of the social work participants were actively engaged with client systems that could be classified as CP or victims of CST. The participants' accounts therefore were not all specifically focussed on CSEC, but some spoke generally in an all-encompassing fashion about the factors that enabled them to render services to children who were victims of sexual exploitation. The very few who had rendered direct services indicated that their services were mostly

directed to the victims, i.e. the children involved in CSEC, rather than to perpetrators or the prevention of CSEC. The researcher noted further that the information from the social workers on enabling factors could be divided into internal capabilities and resources within the individual and external resources, outside of the individual.

The internal resources enabling the social workers were their passion for their work and their own ability to engage with the children on their level, as well as the fact that rendering services to children was part of their service delivery mandate. In addition to this, they stated clearly that working in a conducive and supportive environment and family and spiritual support networks were vitally important to them in the type of work they do. On the other hand, external factors were equally important, such as links and relationships with other service providers that enabled them to provide a multidisciplinary service, the existence of effective intervention programmes, amendments to legislation and effective training whether achieved through formal or informal channels.

The ***non-social work participant group's accounts on the factors enabling*** them to respond to CSEC with reference to CP and CST (see Chapter 5 section 5.3.3) is the next area of focus. Enabling this group to respond to the phenomena under discussion, was both their training and the experience they gained from doing the work they do, that is, hands-on training. In addition, keeping an open mind was regarded as the key to doing their work successfully. Furthermore, as per the social work group, they rated the multidisciplinary approach highly as an enabler for effective service delivery in their particular field of social work.

In terms of addressing the sexual exploitation of children, (see Chapter 5 section 5.3.4), the ***SAPS FCS Unit members' perceptions of enabling factors*** that emerged from their responses, in some ways, mirrored those of the social worker group also being internal and external. The participants recognised internal organisational (microsystem) resources as assisting them to do their job to combat CSEC through effective legislation (promulgated at macrosystem level) and effective protocols (at microsystem level) enabled them to deal with child sexual abuse and exploitation cases. In addition, some of the FCS Unit members described their units as being well resourced with vehicles and manpower, and that their training was effective. Furthermore their quarterly communication meetings with other role-players enabled them to provide an effective service. This points to the interaction of microsystems at a mesosystem level (Chapter 1, Section 1.3).

From the discussion on the findings related to Theme 6, the researcher concluded that there were certain internal and external resources that assisted with effective service delivery in the task of combatting CSEC. An individual's internal resources such as a passion for the work they did, motivated certain individuals from all three of the participant groups. Effective training was a common thread mentioned throughout that served as an enabling factor. In addition, a multidisciplinary approach where communication played a key role, pointing to the interaction between different microsystems at mesosystem level, too appeared to be very important, along with the availability of resources from the external environment.

Theme 7: The service provider groups' accounts on factors hindering and challenging them to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST

In assessing the ***social work participant group's accounts of factors hindering and challenging them to address CSEC with reference to CP and CST*** (see Chapter 5, Section 5.4.2); the researcher found that their responses rather reflected their knowledge of child abuse than their knowledge of CP or CST. This may be linked to the fact that in the main their experience of CSEC is limited. The researcher conclusion-wise identified three categories or types of hindrances or challenges the social workers recognised as obstacles in their work with child abuse or child sexual exploitation.

- Hindrances inherent in the client systems (as microsystems) entailed the non-reporting of these kinds of crimes and a failure in counselling support for the child victim. This could be due to parental neglect or resistance from the child. According to one social worker this could also be attributed to a community-wide ignorance of the availability of social work services, or the purpose of therapy. Another social worker noted that children were ignorant of their rights and the court system had an adversarial attitude to child witnesses which also created resistance.
- From the researcher's scrutiny of the hindrances related to the social workers themselves (as microsystems) and their working conditions, she concluded that a general lack of awareness of CSEC existed in the social work community, especially around CST, probably due to a lack of training. Another factor that came to the fore was the lack of supervised practice in Social Work especially for recently qualified social workers. One social worker who worked with sex tourists whom the court referred to her for therapy was concerned that social workers did

not report, even though legally they were obliged to do so. From this, the researcher concluded that there was inadequate oversight on the part of the authorities and, due to the lack of training on CST; there was a failure to recognise it when it occurred or to report it when it happened. These occurrences indicated inadequate functioning in the microsystem (in terms of the individual social worker's non-reporting) and in the macrosystems level (in terms of law makers who fail to monitor the operationalisation of these laws on the micro- and mesosystems levels).

- Specific to the microsystem level (within which falls social workers' working conditions), seven social workers mentioned the following aspects as contributing to service delivery failure: lack of funding, poor salaries for social workers, the attitude of members of the Social Work profession, high caseloads, a shortage of social workers, rapid staff turnover, poor management and poor support for Social Work staff in their organisations.
- Hindrances observed in the contact with other microsystems on mesosystem level included the fact that the profession viewed child protection and associated legal systems as uncoordinated and ineffective, in part, because of the large number of role players children encounter during an investigation of a sexual abuse and molestation incident which caused secondary traumatisation for the child.

From the social work participants' comments, the researcher concluded that the hindrances and challenges at the various system levels played a significant role in the individual social worker's decision to report a crime associated with CSEC, CP and CST.

The researcher noted that the views of the ***non-social work participants' accounts of factors hindering and challenging*** a response to address the CSEC with reference to CP and CST (see Chapter 5, Section 5.4.3,) revolved somewhat around the failure of the social workers to deliver effective services and their poor commitment to their work. Two of the non-social work participants expressed the opinion that this lack of commitment may be due to the fact that social workers did not understand the phenomenon of CSEC. This reflected an awareness problem within the microsystem. Moreover, in addition to this, a lack of community involvement in reporting CST cases and inadequate reporting structures was also cited by the non-social work participants, which again led the researcher to conclude that a lack of complete understanding of the subject (CSEC) in a broad context was prevalent within the local communities.

In terms of the **SAPS FCS Unit members' accounts of factors hindering and challenging a response to the CSEC with reference to CP and CST** (see Chapter 5, Section 5.4.4); they too highlighted a range of challenging factors. Participants in this group referred to the ineffective child justice system, the low arrest and conviction rates on reported cases, challenges concerning court proceedings and a lack of internal resources. They also cited the failings of the social workers to do their duty as a major stumbling block to addressing CSEC as an occurrence to address and eliminate. Specifically they mentioned the inefficiency of the social workers, and at least three of the FCS Unit members stated that the length of time it took for social workers to produce reports for court purposes that delayed getting the cases onto the court roll. In reflecting on their own failings, they cited a lack of resources and manpower i.e. staff, vehicles and interpreters within the SAPS as a factor, which interestingly was also mentioned by some of these participants as a strength in their profession (see Theme 6 above).

From this analysis, the researcher concluded that the interplay between these three microsystems, namely, the three service provider groups interfacing at a mesosystem level, was fraught with perceptions that social workers and the SAPS were inadequate. There was a lack of cooperation between them and poor inter-communication, albeit with some exceptions. Moreover, there was little collaboration between these microsystems which certainly inhibits the adoption of a multidisciplinary approach to a solution to the problem as envisaged in this report with regard to CSEC, CP and CST.

Theme 8: Suggestions by the service provider groups in responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST

This theme for the service provider groups entailed eliciting and documenting these participants' views on how to remedy respond to CSEC.

The **social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST** (see Chapter 5 Section 5.5), encompassed a number of ideas to improve the state of the Social Work profession as an enabler to respond to the overall phenomenon of CSEC. The focus of one social worker's suggestions was on reducing the workload of social workers by making more use of social auxiliary workers and better quality and more regular supervision to enable social workers to better manage their demanding workload.

The education of social workers about CSEC, with a particular accent on CP and CST, was a suggestion that came from six of the social work participants. They maintained that a better informed social work service would be better able to inform and educate the public, including those whom they educate at schools on open days, and those to whom they render services.

Other suggestions related to the treatment and treatment modalities of victims and perpetrators of CSEC as enablers to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC (i.e. CP and CST). Cultural awareness should be the basis on which treatment is tailored to meet the needs of diverse cultural groups. In addition, a multidisciplinary approach that should include a psychologist, social worker, a social auxiliary worker and a home-based care worker, would serve as a remedy in two ways. First, as an improvement to service delivery and second, to support individuals involved in delivering social work services.

The dominant concern among the social workers related to preventing the occurrence of CP and CST with initiatives targeting the children themselves, the community at large and the hotel and tourism industry. Specific suggestions focussed on the child in the family, family intervention and family strengthening as well as direct services aimed at the children of a vulnerable age for sexual exploitation. The participants pointed out the need for more intervention programmes at schools where social workers should provide counselling and guidance during school hours. There was consensus that this area of prevention work was a very important obligation of members of the social work community. Another suggestion was that the children should be taken off the streets. The social worker who made this contribution felt that this would remove the supply of children from the clutches of the exploiters.

A further suggestion included raising awareness amongst people who work with children e.g. doctors, teachers, church leaders and sports coaches which was a suggestion many of the participants in this group raised. Another suggestion was that employees in the hospitality and tourism industry need to be informed and trained on how to act when they observe something suspicious in and on their premises.

The ***non-social work participants' suggestions for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST*** (see Chapter 5 section 5.5.2) were similar as they echoed much of what the social workers said. Top of their list too was prevention, which they related to education and raising awareness. Other suggestions pointed to the efficacy of social workers and social work service delivery and to treatment modalities for

intervention for both victims and perpetrator which it was suggested should have a multidisciplinary approach. In addition, a more effective court system and treating victims with dignity was called for, and the hotel industry too has to address this phenomenon. Social workers agreed that educating those engaged in work with children was important and they extended the range to pre-schools, churches, parents' meetings and right up to Parliamentary level.

Other suggestions included that the presence of social work activity in communities should be more visible and service delivery speedier and that specialists in the field of CST should be educated and trained. In addition, one non-social work participant suggested that the tourism industry respond to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CST by adopting The Code for Tourism and that they monitor it effectively. There should also be education of hotel staff, according to another participant. This group specified that role players include the police, the hotel industry and social workers. For these participants the prioritisation of child protection was a useful response to address the occurrence of CSEC and it should include education of people across the board such as people like the staff at shopping malls, and every public space should have child protection advocacy in place.

The researcher shared the sentiments expressed in this group and on the whole concluded that education, information and awareness raising were at the forefront of the social workers' suggestions, whether it be awareness amongst the children, the general public, the hospitality industry or with those who work with children.

The **SAPS FCS Unit members' had only one suggestion for responding to the phenomenon of CSEC with reference to CP and CST** (see Chapter 5, Section 5.5.3). This related to the Social Work profession and concerned the speedier delivery of their reports for court purposes in order to move cases along faster.

From this discussion of the findings of Theme 8, the researcher concluded that awareness raising and education on the phenomenon of CST as a subset of CSEC was the greatest need. Both the social work and the non-social work NGO participants suggested this as a remedy to curtail CSEC. The non-social work and the SAPS FCS Unit members expressed concern about the service delivery of social workers. Two of these groups, the social workers and the non-social work NGO participants, mooted the value of applying a multidisciplinary approach when dealing with CSEC and CST.

### 7.4.3 Findings in relation to the hospitality and tourism industry (Chapter 6)

This section deals with the conclusions drawn from the responses of the participants from the hospitality and tourism industry. These findings are presented in eight themes.

Theme 1 focussed on the ***hospitality and tourism industry service providers' level of comprehension of the concept 'child sex tourism' and their knowledge of the legislation pertaining to CST*** (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.1)

From the responses of the participants to the question of their understanding of the term 'child sex tourism', the researcher concluded that the majority of the participants had not heard of the term before, did not understand it or had a mistaken understanding of it, often confusing it with trafficking. A few of the participants did know the term and could accurately explain its meaning.

While two participants mentioned The Children's Act (Act No. 38 of 2005), this group's knowledge of legislation pertaining to CST was limited, and five participants admitted to having no knowledge at all and others only had a vague idea about laws relevant to CSEC.

From this the researcher concluded that the knowledge the participants in this study had of CST and the relevant laws pertaining to this crime was limited.

Theme 2 related to the ***hospitality and tourism industry service providers' perceptions of the extent of CP and CST*** in their geographical areas of business (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.1) Upon scrutiny of their responses, it became apparent to the researcher that their responses indicated that they mostly had no idea of the extent of this crime in their areas of operation. This was also the case with the service provider groups.

Despite admitting that they did not know, two or three participants gave various figures based on their own estimates or on international estimates obtained from the internet and were not based on any solid figures.

The hospitality and tourism industry service providers' exposure to CP and CST in their geographical areas of business (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.2), was also very limited and they freely admitted to not having come across these phenomena before. Only four participants had either direct or indirect experience of these phenomena, which led the

researcher to believe that the hoteliers either did not recognise CST when it happened or it had not occurred at their establishments.

Theme 3 concerned the ***perceptions of the hospitality and tourism industry service providers' in terms of the profile of the victims of CSEC*** (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.3) and did not deliver a great deal of information, other than the race of those victims the participants had seen (and surmised about) and the fact that the children were motivated by money. The low level of information was to be expected due to their low level of interaction with victims of CST and the researcher concluded from this that the participants had no real idea about the children who became victims of CST.

Theme 4 relating to the ***hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts in terms of the profile of the perpetrators of CSEC*** (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.4) was, similar to the analysis of the previous theme, low on input. Nevertheless the information from those who did comment allowed the researcher to draw these conclusions about the perpetrators:

- They were South African and from other African countries and also Europeans especially of Germanic descent
- They were more often opportunistic than organised
- They were mostly white
- They paid in cash when approaching hotels without having procured rooms with advance bookings.

Theme 5 which focused on the ***hospitality and tourism industry service providers' accounts of the factors contributing to CSEC*** with specific focus on CP and CST (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.5), as expressed by this group. Based on their accounts, the researcher concluded that the following factors contributed to CSEC:

- Hotel management was reluctant to warn guests about CST as they felt this left a bad taste in the mouth of the client who had come to enjoy a holiday
- Lack of awareness of CST across the hospitality and tourism industry
- People in the industry turned a blind eye to the activities associated with CST
- Poor policing
- Vulnerability of members of society who were affected by HIV and AIDS which had resulted in some children living in child-headed households or on the street and who were forced to engage in survival sex.

This indicated to the researcher that occurrences in the society have a knock-on effect on the microsystem levels of the children and the perpetrators who notice more available children.

Theme 6 related to the ***hospitality and tourism industry service providers' suggestions for addressing CSEC*** with specific focus on CP and CST (see Chapter 6, Section 6.5.6), resulted in the researcher concluding that the industry role players who participated in the study offer these recommendations:

- Educate and train the personnel in the tourism and hospitality industry to recognise the signs which indicate CST is occurring and how to respond to it
- Self-regulation by the tourism industry combined with government regulations
- Education of the general public to signs that CST is taking place via the media
- Camera surveillance of common areas in guest houses and hotels to pick up if children who are not booked in with guests are taken into rooms
- Information to be placed in guests' travel wallets and given to guests on arrival in hotels, guest houses, lodges and B & Bs
- Training of specialist social workers who can assist the tourism industry when incidents take place.

## 7.5 GOAL ATTAINMENT

At the outset of this study, a goal was defined as an “object of ambition or effort” (Oxford English Dictionary, 1996:374) and the following table reflects the objectives or ambitions of this study, that is, the research goals and whether and how they have been met.

**Table 7.1: Research goals and how they have been met**

Research goal	How research goals were met
To report on the status of the knowledge and response about CST and CP from the perspective of social workers and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry along the Garden Route and in Cape Town, Western Cape	In addition to the samples of social workers and hospitality and tourism industry service providers initially targeted, further understanding came from the perspectives of a sample of the adult survivors of child sex tourism, as well as from non-social work participants and members of the SAPS FCS Units, whose work it is to assist these survivors and children caught up in CSEC.

	Participants in these groups were interviewed and probed about their knowledge of and response to CP and CST. A word-picture portraying their experiences was provided in Chapter 3. The service providers groups' (i.e. the social workers, the non-social workers and the SAPS FCS Unit member) accounts on their knowledge of and response to the phenomena under investigation were documented in Chapters 4 and 5, and those from the hospitality and tourism participant group in Chapter 6.
To forward recommendation-wise solutions to address the phenomenon of CST and CP from the perspectives of social workers and key persons in the hospitality and tourism industry along the Garden Route and in Cape Town, Western Cape.	Solutions were sought from all the participant groups and suggestions put forward by these participants were reported in Chapters 3-6. In addition the recommendations which further fulfil this goal are reported in Chapter 7 section 7.5 later in this report

The researcher concludes from the record above that the research goals as set out in Chapter 1 Section 1.4.1 have been met.

## 7.6 LIMITATIONS OF THE STUDY

Limitations in respect of this study included the availability of literature in the local context and also the accessibility of adult children who were survivors of CST or CP. These are now discussed.

### 7.6.1 Limitations related to literature and empirically founded indigenous literature on the topic

In searching the literature for relevant material to be used in this thesis the researcher decided to include and limit the material to information from 1985 to date for the following reasons:

- The history of the problem is important since child sex tourism appears to evolve in countries and it is important to understand this evolution.

- The recent historical trends in combatting the problem, and the birth and evolution of the various helping agencies, are important to understand in order to ask appropriate questions in the research phase.

This researcher's process involved internet searches of non-governmental organisations (NGOs) who work in the field of child abuse, child sex tourism and the commercial sexual exploitation of children (CSEC), searches of empirical literature and South African and international government departments.

Internet searches also included the UNISA library for e-resources such as newspaper articles, professional tourism and social work journals, theses and dissertations. In addition, two literature searches by the University of South Africa subject librarians, based on child abuse and child sex tourism, delivered results that included resources on tourism as it relates to child sex tourism in South Africa. Google books and Google Scholar were also searched using the same search terms, and bibliographies of articles of relevance were scanned for further authors on the subject of child sex tourism.

This researcher established direct contact with organisations, such as The Code South Africa and Childline, by e-mail and telephonically. The purpose was to canvas them for unpublished documents, brochures and other information that might be relevant to the research topic. Great cooperation was received from The Code South Africa.

Many of the searches delivered a wide range of relevant material, however, in the South African context, very little and extremely limited information exists. Most available information is not based on empirical research, but rather on estimates made by international professionals and the local arms of international organisations.

#### **7.6.2 Limitations in respect of the adult survivors of CSEC**

In order to meet with adult survivors of CSEC the researcher found that she had to engage with NGOs as 'gatekeepers'. Although they were willing to help this was often a hit and miss exercise as the contact persons at the NGOs had to be constantly prompted to ask the adult survivors when they came to the shelters (which they often did not do unless constantly called by the researcher). The researcher would have liked to engage with the adult survivors directly on their own in the interviews as that may have elicited more information (or not) but the protective stance of the NGO participants who introduced the survivors was accepted as a limitation.

Although the researcher's request for adult survivors (those who had engaged in CST as children) was for representatives of all races, the only adult survivors interviewed for this study were black and coloured, therefore the perspectives of adult survivors of other races are not included.

The qualitative research approach followed provided context-bound information and does not aim for the generalisation of the findings to broader contexts. This must also be noted as a limitation.

## **7.7 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SOCIAL WORK PRACTICE, TRAINING AND EDUCATION AND AN AGENDA FOR FURTHER RESEARCH**

Filtered through the lens of the best interests and protection of children, as well as for their practical applicability, the recommendations that follow are presented in sections that focus on the contribution of the service provider participants in the service delivery and hospitality and tourism groups.

### **7.7.1 Recommendations for Social Work**

These recommendations are split into three categories: social work policy, social work education and training and future research.

#### **7.7.1.1 Recommendations for social work policy**

It is recommended that social work policy and practice guidelines for social work practitioners be formulated to render social work services to children involved in CSEC and to communities (i.e. changes at the macrosystem level must be rolled out by microsystems interfacing on mesosystem level). These recommendations are based on prioritising the protection of children:

- Child care social workers must focus on more preventative actions that should include:
  - Raising awareness by running programmes and speaking to parents and teachers at schools, churches and community centres on recognising the signs of CSEC in general and in particular CST and providing a safe number for whistle-blowers to call if they suspect CP or CST activity.

- Raising awareness by running programmes and speaking to children on CSEC in general including information about CP and CST, and providing children with the existing toll free Childline number to enable children to report freely.
  - With particular emphasis on street children and their involvement with CSEC, social workers can initiate and support and become involved with programmes such as Streetsmart<sup>159</sup> in their towns. Streetsmart aims at discouraging people from giving money to street children so that children are encouraged to report to drop-in day shelters, thereby removing them from the street and making them less accessible to perpetrators.
- Although the reporting of cases is mandatory, it is not rigorously applied, hence protocol and rules relating to this procedure should be highlighted (change required on the macrosystems level). In addition the social work statutory body, the SACSSP<sup>160</sup>, should inform and remind all social workers regularly of their obligation. Benefits would be to obtain better statistical information about hotspots and data could be used for the appropriate deployment of resources.
  - Set up multidisciplinary teams or take part in existing multidisciplinary structures.
  - Social workers should receive incentives to engage in community based educational and awareness programmes such as receiving continuing professional development (CPD) points and be encouraged to set up or participate in multidisciplinary teamwork that focuses on CSEC in their area.

#### 7.7.1.2 Recommendations for training and education of social workers

There are three aspects to this recommendation for social workers. The first focuses on those who are already practising, the second on those who are engaged in obtaining their qualifications and the third is on the role social workers can play in training other sectors.

---

<sup>159</sup> Streetsmart is an NGO under the patronage of Archbishop Desmond Tutu that works with restaurants to encourage responsible giving by diners. Subscribing restaurants add a voluntary R5 donation to each table's bill and on a monthly basis the collected sum of all the donations is paid over to Streetsmart. Annually the collected monies are paid to an approved beneficiary working with street children in the town in which it was collected.

<sup>160</sup> The South African Council for Social Service Professions (SACSSP) is a statutory regulating body, which has the primary focus of developing as well protecting the integrity of the social service professions as well as the interest of the public at large ([www.sacssp.co.za](http://www.sacssp.co.za))

The aim is to raise awareness of these aspects of child abuse of which the Social Work sector seems to be currently largely unaware.

- The SACSSP should allocate a part of the mandated continuing professional development (CPD) programme for practising social workers to CSEC, meaning that all practising social workers would be compelled to attending training at least once a year on an aspect of CSEC
- In the curriculum for the training of social workers and social auxiliary workers a focus area on CSEC in general and CP in the context of CST in particular should be included.
- Training as a specialist in CSEC must be an optional route for social workers to take either when already qualified or while qualifying. This would have to be run by someone with the ability to set up a multidisciplinary team to offer the programme that would focus on CSEC
- Training in CSEC with specific focus on CST must be offered, in other Government sectors, such as Tourism, and the SAPS FCS Units.

#### 7.7.1.3 Recommendations in terms of an agenda for further Social Work research

Further nationwide research into CSEC is needed to ascertain the nature and extent of this crime in more detail and to obtain data relating to the following:

- A more complete profile of the children<sup>161</sup> who are most at risk for falling prey to this type of abuse.
- A more complete profile of the perpetrators and their various tiers (intermediaries and buyers) who commit these offences.
- The modus operandi of the perpetrators and the intermediaries.

---

<sup>161</sup> With regard to all research that focuses on the plight of children, it is recommended that children and adult survivors should not be disregarded as sources of information and advisors on the state of CSEC, as they are rich in information and can provide details about the profile of victims, the profile of the perpetrators and their modi operandi.

- The hotspots in South Africa in order in order to deploy the correct resources to the correct areas.
- The role of gangs in abduction and engagement of children in CSEC in South Africa.
- The role of organised crime in abduction and engagement of children in CSEC in South Africa.

#### **7.7.2 Recommendations in respect of the non-social workers**

Awareness and education as well as a multidisciplinary approach with shared resources are the focus of these recommendations for non-social worker role players of NGOs. The concept of a multidisciplinary approach can also be interpreted as a meso-level approach as is the case in this work.

- The training of specialists in CSEC and in particular CST for those NGO personnel who work with street children in areas attracting large numbers of tourists is recommended. This does not mean that other children living at home are disregarded, but merely that street children in popular tourism areas are particularly at risk.
- NGO workers are to be included in multidisciplinary teams as they, very often, are richer in information and hands-on experience than social workers.

#### **7.7.3 Recommendations in respect of the SAPS FCS Units**

As mentioned under the recommendations for the social workers and the non-social workers, the overarching recommendation for this group is based in awareness.

- It is recommended that all the members of the SAPS and especially the FCS Units receive training in and information about CSEC as a whole, and CST in particular, in order to be able to recognise this crime when they see it. Training should include knowing about procedures to follow when such a case is reported. The Social Work profession could offer this service once the training of social work CSEC specialists has taken place.

- The SAPS should be represented on multidisciplinary teams that meet regularly in order to clarify their protocol to social workers and to open lines of communication on a regular basis (inter-communication on the mesosystems level).
- The SAPS should create a category for classifying this crime to facilitate the collection of statistics as this will drive the allocation of resources appropriately. The CSEC category should form part of the protocol. In this way repeat offenders and hotspots could be clearly identified.
- There should be an emphasis on arresting the perpetrators and not on treating the children involved in these cases as criminals, but rather to establish and use resource contacts who are trained to assist with victims of CSEC and in particular CST. The SAPS must recognise the vulnerability of street children regarding this crime and be conscious of their position as victims of crime, even if they are engaged in prostitution or drug use. They should not be acknowledged as perpetrators but as victims and treated accordingly, offered assistance via their social work colleagues, and not arrested. A protocol in this regard must be applied vigorously.

#### **7.7.4 Recommendations in respect of the hospitality and tourism industry**

Some of the recommendations for the hospitality and tourism industry mirror those recommended for the other groups. However, this group is uniquely positioned for rendering assistance in specific ways due to their position within the location of the offence.

- Awareness must be raised in the hospitality and tourism industry and this must start with The South African Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (on the macrosystems level) and should be applied to all facets of the industry throughout the country. This can occur in a number of ways:
  - All tourism businesses should have child protection policies and reporting policies in place that are made clear to staff during the initiation and integration phases of their training, ranging from small guest houses and B&Bs to large hotels, airlines, travel agents and tour operators.
  - Representatives of the tourism trade should be part of the teams that focus on CSEC in a multidisciplinary way.

- Travel wallets for inbound visitors must include a leaflet/brochure which informs visitors to South Africa of the illegality of engaging in sex with underage children. This should be reinforced by handing out information in the aircraft prior to landing, possibly along with landing cards, in which a zero tolerance for child sex is made explicit.
- Staff within the tourism industry must be made aware of the illegality of non-reporting and know what the reporting processes are and how to report both confirmed and suspected cases of CSEC.
- The services of the social work specialists can be utilised to conduct training sessions with management and staff of tourism organisations and the hospitality industry in terms of CSEC and CST.
- Utilising the free online training offered by ECPAT International [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ECPAT\\_CST\\_Code\\_Toolkit.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ECPAT_CST_Code_Toolkit.pdf) and incentivising staff who do take the training or mandating staff to do the training or adaptation of programmes from the UK's Operation Makesafe and the "Say Something if you See Something" campaign.
- Signing up to support The Code and making the commitment to abide by and apply the six tenets of The Code in their organisations and actively deploying The Code's recommendations within organisations.

## **7.8 FINAL SUMMARY**

In this final chapter, an overview of Chapters 1 and 2 was given along with conclusions which the researcher drew from the application of the qualitative methodology. The limitations experienced during the execution of the project were noted. In a systematic fashion, the research findings were summarised and the researcher's conclusions from these findings (as reported in Chapters 3 to 6) were presented. This led to the researcher's recommendations with regard to policy, education and training. Finally an agenda for further research for social workers and recommendations for NGOs, the SAPS FCS Units and the hospitality and tourism industry were recorded.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Abrahams, K. & Matthews, T. 2011. *Child Rights Manual: Handbook for Parliamentarians*. Cape Town: Parliament of the Republic of South Africa.

Abrams, L.S. 2010. Sampling 'hard to reach' populations in qualitative research'. **Qualitative Social Work**, 9(4):536-550.

Abueva, A.V. 2006. Challenges and successes in addressing child sex tourism in Southeast Asia. [Online] Available: [https://www.eda.admin.ch/content/dam/eda/en/documents/topics/347\\_19%20abueva.pdf](https://www.eda.admin.ch/content/dam/eda/en/documents/topics/347_19%20abueva.pdf) (Accessed 10 April 2012).

Accor Hotel Group. 2010. South Africa: Accor reaffirms its commitment to the fight against sex tourism. News website: 13/6/2010. [Online] Available: <http://www.accor.com/en/news/south-africa-accor-reaffirms-its-commitment-to-the-fight-against-sex-tourism.pdf> (Accessed 25 May 2012).

Ackerman, A. 2011. Sex offenders, female, in *encyclopedia of women in today's world*, edited by M Stange, C Oyster, & J. Sloan. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications.

Alpaslan, N. & Schenck, C. 2012. Challenges related to working conditions experienced by social workers practising in rural areas. **Social Work**, 48(4):400-419.

Alston, M. & Bowles, W. 2003. *Research for social workers*. 2nd Edition. London: Routledge Publishers.

Alvesson, M. & Svensson, P. 2008. Interviews, in *The SAGE dictionary of qualitative management research*, edited by R Thorpe & R Holt. London, United Kingdom: SAGE Publications Ltd.

American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language. 2003. Sv "hearsay". Fourth Edition. [Online] Available: from <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/hearsay> (Accessed 11 April 2014).

Andrews, S. 2004. U.S. Domestic prosecution of the American International Sex Tourist: Efforts to protect children from sexual exploitation, **Criminal Law & Criminology**, 94(2):415-454.

Areola, S., Neilands, T., Pollack, L., Paul J. & Catania, J. 2008. Childhood sexual experiences and adult health sequelae among gay and bisexual men: defining childhood sexual abuse. **Journal of Sex Research**, 45(3):246 – 252.

Asquith, S. & Turner, E. 2008. Recovery and reintegration of children from the effects of sexual exploitation and related trafficking. Geneva: Oak Foundation.

Atkinson, R. & Flint, J. 2003. Sampling, snowball: accessing hidden and hard-to-reach, in *The A-Z of social research*, edited by RL Miller & JD. Brewer. London, England: SAGE Publications, Ltd.

Augustin, L.M. 1988. *Sex at the margins: Migration, labour, markets and the rescue industry*. London: Zed Books.

Ayres, L. 2008. Thematic coding and analysis, in *The SAGE encyclopaedia of qualitative research methods*, edited by LM Given. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications.

Babbie, E. 2007. *The practice of social research*. 11th edition. Belmont, CA: Thomson/Wadsworth.

Babbie, E. 2010. *The practice of social research*. Twelfth Edition. Wadsworth: CA, USA.

Bamford, H. 2000. South Africa key link in children's exploitation. Cape Argus. 25 September 2000. [Online] Available: <http://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/sa-key-link-in-children-s-sexual-exploitation-1.48672#.VCpD0PmSxqU> (Accessed 30 September 2014).

Barker, R. 1995. *The social work dictionary*. Washington, DC: NASW Press.

Barker, J. & Hodes, D. 2004. *The child in mind: A child protection handbook*. London: Routledge.

Barnes-September, R., Bown-Adam, I., Mayne, A., Kowen, D. & Dyason, G. 2000. Child victims of prostitution in the Western Cape. Cape Town: Institute for Child and Family Development, University of the Western Cape.

Barr, J. & Noren, N. 2010. Concerns raised about illegal sex trade: World cup in South Africa heightens awareness about human trafficking. ESP.com: OTL (Outside the lines). [Online] Available: <http://espn.go.com/espn/print?id=5251940&type=story> (Accessed 28 October 2014).

Barrett, D. 1998. Young people and prostitution: Perpetrators in our midst. **International Review of Law, Computers & Technology**, 12(3):475-486.

Baškarada, S. 2014. Qualitative case study guidelines. **The Qualitative Report**, 19(24):1-18.

Beddoe, C. 2003. Ending child sex tourism: A vision for the future, in *Sex and tourism: Journeys of romance, love and lust*, edited by KS Chon, T Bauer & B Mckercher. New York: The Hayworth Hospitality Press.

Beddoe, C., Hall, C.M. & Ryan, C. 2001. Sexual exploitation of children in tourism: a report commissioned by the World Tourism Organisation. Madrid, Spain: WTO.

Beech, I. 1999. Bracketing in phenomenological research. **Nurse Researcher**, 6(3):35-51.

Benaquisto, L. 2008. Codes and Coding, in *The SAGE encyclopedia of qualitative research methods*, edited by LM Given. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc.

Berardi, G. 2010. Engaging the travel and tourism sector in protecting children from sexual exploitation. In *Council of Europe - Building a Europe for and with children (Program)*. Council of Europe Publishing: Strasbourg.

Berelowitz, S., Firmin, C., Edwards, G. & Gulyurtlu, S. 2012. "I thought I was the only one. The only one in the world". Interim Report on The Office of the Children's Commissioner's Inquiry into Child Sexual Exploitation in Gangs and Groups. [Online] Available: [www.childrenscommissioner.gov.uk](http://www.childrenscommissioner.gov.uk) (Accessed 30 September 2014).

Berk, L. & Roberts, W. 2009. Child development. Third Canadian Edition. Toronto, ON: Pearson Allyn and Bacon.

Berliner, L. & Elliot, D.M. 2002. Sexual abuse of children in In The APSAC handbook on child maltreatment, edited by JEB Myers, L Berliner, J Briere, CT Hendrix, C Jenny & TA Reid. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage

Berry, L., Biersteker, L., Dawes, A., Lake, L. & Smith, C. 2013. South African child gauge 2013. Cape Town: Children's Institute, University of Cape Town. [Online] Available: In <http://www.ci.org.za/depts/ci/pubs/pdf/general/gauge2013/SouthAfricanChildGauge2013.pdf> (Accessed 28 October 2014)

Bhatnagar, N. 2010. Multiple sources of evidence, in Encyclopedia of case study research, edited by A Mills, G Durepos & E. Wiebe. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc. [Online] Available: <http://0-dx.doi.org.oasis.unisa.ac.za/10.4135/9781412957397.n218> (Accessed 26 February 2015).

Bhavna, S. 2007. Children as young as 8 active in sex tourism trade. Pretoria News [South Africa] 22 August 2007: Page 2. Custom Newspapers South Africa. [Online] Available: [http://0-infotrac.galegroup.com.oasis.unisa.ac.za/itweb/usa\\_itw?db=SP03](http://0-infotrac.galegroup.com.oasis.unisa.ac.za/itweb/usa_itw?db=SP03) (Accessed 7 April 2012).

Biersteker, L. 2012. Early childhood development services: Increasing access to benefit the most vulnerable children, in South African child gauge 2012, edited by K Hall, I Woolard, L Lake & C Smith. Cape Town: Children's Institute, University of Cape Town

Bigelson, J. & Vuotto, S. 2013. Homelessness, survival sex and human trafficking as experienced by the youth of Covenant House New York. Covenant House: New York

Blatch, N. 2006. "Alarm over increase in child-on-child sexual abuse. Trend blamed on poor role models, exposure to gangsters' way of living and television." Weekend Post (Port Elizabeth, South Africa) 3 June. 2006. [Online] Available: <http://infoweb.newsbank.com/resources/doc/nb/news/132F702DD7D3ABA0?p=ASANB> (Accessed 24 October 2014).

Bless, C., Higson-Smith, C. & Kagee, A. 2011. Fundamentals of social research methods – An African perspective. Cape Town, South Africa: Juta.

Blewett, J., Lewis, J. & Tunstill, J. 2007. The changing roles and tasks of social work: a literature informed discussion paper. [Online] Available: <http://www.scie.org.uk/news/files/roles.pdf> (Accessed 5 June 2012).

Bloor, M. & Wood, F. 2006. Keywords in Qualitative Methods. London, England: SAGE Publications Ltd.

Bowman, B. 2010. Children, pathology and politics: a genealogy of the paedophile in South Africa between 1944 and 2004. **South African Journal of Psychology**, 40(4), 443-464.

Brandell, J. 2010. Theory and Practice in Clinical Social Work. Second Edition. London England: SAGE.

Brennan, F. & Allen, G. 2001. Community based ecotourism, social exclusion and the changing political economy of KwaZulu Natal, South Africa, in *Tourism and the less developed world: issues and case studies*, edited by D Harrison. New York: CABI Publishing.

Briere, J. & Elliott, D. 2003. Prevalence and psychological sequelae of self-reported childhood physical and sexual abuse in a general population sample of men and women. **Child Abuse & Neglect** Vol. 27 1205–1222. Atlanta, USA: Elsevier.

Brown, K. 2006. Participation and young people involved in prostitution. **Child Abuse Review**, 15: 294 – 312.

Bronfenbrenner, U. 1994. Ecological models of human development. In **International Encyclopaedia of Education**, 3(2):1643-1647.

Bronfenbrenner, U. 1999. Environments in developmental perspective: Theoretical and operational models, in *Measuring environment across the life span: Emerging methods and concepts*, edited by SL. Friedman & TD Wachs. Washington, DC, US: American Psychological Association.

Bronfenbrenner, U. & Morris, P. A. 1998. The ecology of developmental processes, in Handbook of child psychology, edited by W Damon & R Lerner. Fifth Edition. New York: Wiley.

Bronfenbrenner, U. 2000. Ecological Systems Theory, in Encyclopedia of Psychology, edited by A Kadzin. New York: Oxford Press.

Burns, N & Grove, S. 2003. Understanding nursing research. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Company.

Capaldi, M. 2013. Visible yet unseen: The vulnerability of street children to sexual exploitation in ECPAT International Journal Issue N<sup>o</sup> 8, October 2013. ECPAT International, Bangkok, Thailand. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/Journal\\_Oct2013.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/Journal_Oct2013.pdf) (Accessed 28 October 2014).

Cape Argus [South Africa]. 2014, 17 December: 14. "Site launched to fight child sex tourism." Custom Newspapers South Africa. Web. [Online] Available: [http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA393893935&v=2.1&u=usa\\_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=d2f870663b6387ee6b36e28c1c6a6d85](http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA393893935&v=2.1&u=usa_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=d2f870663b6387ee6b36e28c1c6a6d85) (Accessed 26 January 2015).

Cape Times [South Africa]. 2014, 17 December: 8. "Sweden to 'Net' sex offenders." Custom Newspaper. Web. [Online] Available: [http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA393893549&v=2.1&u=usa\\_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=644adf8c4b2807ce0ce19868b40bc8ba](http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA393893549&v=2.1&u=usa_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=644adf8c4b2807ce0ce19868b40bc8ba) (Accessed 26 January 2015).

Cape Town Tourism. 2011. Cape Town official visitor's guide. Media Nova: Cape Town, South Africa.

Castleman, M. 2010. "Rimming: The curious couple's guide to oral-anal play". **Psychology Today**. [Online] Available: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/all-about-sex/201004/rimming-the-curious-couples-guide-oral-anal-play> (Accessed 30 September 2014).

Chase, E. & Statham, J. 2005. Commercial sexual exploitation of children and young people in the UK – A review. **Child Abuse Review**, 14:4 – 25.

Chettiar, J., Shannon, K., Wood, E., Zhang, R. & Kerr, T. 2010. Survival sex work involvement among street-involved youth who use drugs in a Canadian setting. **Journal of Public Health**, 32(3):322–327.

Chetty, K. 2007. Child sex tourism in South African Law. Unpublished M-Dissertation. Port Elizabeth: Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Child Justice Act. Act 75 of 2008 [Online] Available:

[http://www.justice.gov.za/legislation/acts/2008-075\\_childjustice.pdf](http://www.justice.gov.za/legislation/acts/2008-075_childjustice.pdf) (Accessed: 18 January 2011).

Child, K. 2014. "Teens want HIV tests." Times Live (Johannesburg, South Africa) 8 Sep. 2014, Education. [Online] Available:

<http://www.timeslive.co.za/thetimes/2014/09/08/teens-want-hiv-tests>

(Accessed 24 October 2014).

Children's Society & NWG Network (The). Say Something if you see something National Campaign - Tackling Child Sexual Exploitation [Online] Available: [https://www.redcar-cleveland.gov.uk/safeguarding.nsf/80aab7a791100a29802576dd005412c4/\\$File/say%20something%20if%20you%20see%20something.pdf](https://www.redcar-cleveland.gov.uk/safeguarding.nsf/80aab7a791100a29802576dd005412c4/$File/say%20something%20if%20you%20see%20something.pdf)

(Accessed 20 February 2015).

Christie, A. & Kurke, E. 1998. Choosing to become a social worker: motives, incentives, concerns and disincentives. **Social Work Education**, 17(1):21-33.

Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children World Congress. 2001. The Yokohama Global Commitment. [Online] Available:

[http://www.csecworldcongress.org/PDF/en/Yokohama/Outcome\\_documents/YOKOHAMA%20GLOBAL%20COMMITMENT%202001\\_EN.pdf](http://www.csecworldcongress.org/PDF/en/Yokohama/Outcome_documents/YOKOHAMA%20GLOBAL%20COMMITMENT%202001_EN.pdf)

(Accessed 29 June 2012).

Cluver, L., Bray, R. & Dawes, A. 2007. Monitoring the worst forms of child labour, trafficking and child commercial sexual exploitation, in Monitoring child well-being: A South African rights-based approach, edited by A Dawes, R Bray, & A van der Merwe. Cape Town, South Africa: HSCR Press.

Cody, C. 2010. Recovery services for child victims of sexual violence and their families – What can be offered? in *Protecting children from sexual violence: A comprehensive approach*, by Council of Europe (Author). [Online] Available:

<https://book.coe.int/eur/en/children-s-rights-and-family-law/4729-protecting-children-from-sexual-violence-a-comprehensive-approach.html> (Accessed 25 April 2014)

Cole, J and Gardner, K (1979) Topic work with first-year secondary pupils. In: Lunzer, E and Gardner, K (eds) *The Effective Use of Reading*. London: Heinemann.

Cole, S. & Morgan, N. 2010. *Tourism and inequality: problems and prospects*. New York: Cabi Publishing.

Collins English Dictionary – Complete and Unabridged. 2003. Sv “hearsay”. (n.d.) [Online] Available: <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/hearsay> (Accessed 11 April 2014).

Corbin, J. & Strauss, A. 2008. *Basics of Qualitative Research. Third Edition. Techniques and Procedures for Developing Grounded Theory*. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE

Coren, E. & Hutchfield, J. 2009. Development of a study to collect views on service delivery from children & young people affected by child sexual abuse: management of ethical issues. Conference on methodological considerations in researching child sexual abuse. NSPCC, London, UK. [Online] Available: <http://create.canterbury.ac.uk/5091/> (Accessed 24 October 2014).

Creswell, J.W. 2007. *Qualitative inquiry and research design. Choosing amongst five approaches*. 2nd Edition, Thousand Oakes, CA: SAGE.

Creswell, J.W. 2009. *Research design: qualitative, quantitative and mixed methods approaches*. London: SAGE.

Creswell, J.W. 2013. *Qualitative inquiry & research design, choosing among five approaches*. London: SAGE.

Creswell, J.W., Hanson W.E., Clark Plano, W.L. & Morales, A. 2007. Qualitative research designs: selection and implementation. **The Counselling Psychologist**, 35(2):236-264.

Criminal Law Sexual Offences and Related Matters Amendment Act of 2007 (Act No 32 of 2007). The Green Gazette. [Online] Available:

[http://www.greengazette.co.za/notices/criminal-law-sexual-offences-and-related-matters-amendment-act-no-32-of-2007-the-national-policy-framework-on-management-of-sexual-offences-section-62-1\\_20130906-GGN-36804-00649](http://www.greengazette.co.za/notices/criminal-law-sexual-offences-and-related-matters-amendment-act-no-32-of-2007-the-national-policy-framework-on-management-of-sexual-offences-section-62-1_20130906-GGN-36804-00649) (Accessed: 10 January 2015)

Cullen, S. 2006. *Passion and Power: An Irish Missionary's fight against child sex slavery*. Ireland: Killynon House Books.

Dagon, D. 2012. Preventing sexual exploitation. **Children & Young People Now**, 6 – 19 March :36.

Davis, J. 2002. Voyeurism: A criminal precursor and diagnostic indicator to a much larger sexual predatory problem in our community, in *Current perspectives on sex crimes*, edited by R Holmes & S Holmes. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications.

Dawes, A., Long, W., Alexander, L. & Ward, C.L. 2006. *A situation analysis of children affected by maltreatment and violence in the Western Cape. A Report for the Research Directorate, Department of Social Services & Poverty Alleviation: Provincial Government of the Western Cape*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council.

D'Cruz, H. & Jones, M. 2014. *Social work research in practice: ethical and political contexts*. Second Edition. London: SAGE.

DeForge, B. 2010. Research Design Principles. In Neil J. Salkind (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of Research Design*. (pp. 1253-1260). Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc.

Delanny, A. 2005. *Child sexual abuse and exploitation in South Africa*. Researched for Save the Children Sweden by the Community Agency for Social Enquiry. CASE: Braamfontein, South Africa. [Online] Available:  
[http://www.case.org.za/images/docs/child\\_sexual\\_abuse.pdf](http://www.case.org.za/images/docs/child_sexual_abuse.pdf)  
(Accessed 15 April 2014).

Denzin, N. 1989. *Interpretive biography*. *Qualitative Research Methodology*, Vol. 17. Newbury Park, CA: Sage.

Department for Education in England. 2011. Tackling child sexual exploitation; action plan. London: Department of Education.

Department of Environment and Tourism. 2008. Tourism Enterprise Programme: Tourism channel toolkit. Version one: January 2008. Pretoria: Department of Environment and Tourism.

Department of Environment and Tourism. Republic of South Africa. 2013. Annual Report 2012/2013. Pretoria: Department of Environment and Tourism.

Department of Social Development of South Africa (DSD). 2010a. Strategic plan 2010 – 2015. Pretoria: Department of Social Development.

Department of Social Development. 2010b. Annual Report. 31 March 2010. Pretoria: Government Printer.

Department of Social Development of South Africa (DSD). 2011. Children Services Directory, Western Cape, 2011: A Guide to Provincial Non-Profit Organisations and Government Resources for Vulnerable Children. Pretoria: USAID [Online] Available: [file:///C:/Users/Karen/Downloads/DSD%20Annual%20Report%202011%20\(1\).pdf](file:///C:/Users/Karen/Downloads/DSD%20Annual%20Report%202011%20(1).pdf) (Accessed November 2013).

de Sas Kropiwnicki, Z. 2012. The Politics of Child Prostitution in South Africa, **Journal of Contemporary African Studies**, 30(2): 235-265.

Detrick, S. 1999. A Commentary on the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child. [Online] Available: [https://books.google.co.za/books/about/A\\_Commentary\\_on\\_the\\_United\\_Nations\\_Conve.html?id=QB6UB1SCxbsC&hl=en](https://books.google.co.za/books/about/A_Commentary_on_the_United_Nations_Conve.html?id=QB6UB1SCxbsC&hl=en) (Accessed 21 March 2012)

De Vos, A. S. & Schulze, S. 2005. The sciences and professions, in Research at grass roots for the social sciences and human service professions, edited by AS de Vos, H Strydom, CB Fouché & CSL Delpont. Third Edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Doody, O. & Noonan, M. 2013. Preparing and conducting interviews to collect data. **Nurse Researcher**. 20(5): 28-32.

Duerden, M.D. & Witt, P.A. 2010. An ecological systems theory perspective on youth programming. **Journal of Park and Recreation Administration**, 28(2):108-120.

Earle, N. 2008. Department of Labour. Research Commissioned by Department of Labour South Africa: Social Work as a scarce and critical profession. [Online] Available: [http://www.labour.gov.za/DOL/downloads/documents/researchdocuments/Social%20work\\_Dol\\_Report.pdf](http://www.labour.gov.za/DOL/downloads/documents/researchdocuments/Social%20work_Dol_Report.pdf)

(Accessed 20 January 2012).

Ebbe, O. 2010. The Scope and Causes of criminal abuse of children. In *Criminal Abuse of Women and Children* edited by O Ebbe, & D Das. [Online] Available:

<https://www.crcpress.com/product/isbn/9781420088038> (Accessed 21 March 2012)

Ebrahim, H. 2010. "Situated ethics: Possibilities for young children as research participants in the South African context". **Early Child Development & Care**, 180, 289-298.

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2006. ECPAT Global Monitoring Report on the status of action against commercial sexual exploitation of children. [Online] Available:

[http://www.ecpat.net/A4A\\_2005/PDF/AF/Global\\_Monitoring\\_Report-SOUTH-AFRICA.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/A4A_2005/PDF/AF/Global_Monitoring_Report-SOUTH-AFRICA.pdf)

(Accessed 3 March 2012).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2007. *Confronting the Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children in Africa*. ECPAT International: Bangkok, Thailand. [Online] Available:

[http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/confronting\\_csec\\_eng\\_0.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/confronting_csec_eng_0.pdf)

(Accessed 13 July 2014).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2007(a). *Global Monitoring Report on the Status of Action against commercial sexual exploitation of children: South Africa*. [Online] Available:

[http://resources.ecpat.net/A4A\\_2005/PDF/AF/Global\\_Monitoring\\_Report-SOUTH-AFRICA.pdf](http://resources.ecpat.net/A4A_2005/PDF/AF/Global_Monitoring_Report-SOUTH-AFRICA.pdf)

(Accessed 3 March 2012).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2008. Combatting child sex tourism: Questions and Answers. ECPAT International. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/cst\\_faq\\_eng.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/cst_faq_eng.pdf) (Accessed 9 August 2014).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2009. Their protection is in our hands. The State of Global Child Trafficking for Sexual Purposes. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/EI/Publications/Trafficking/Full\\_Report\\_Global\\_Child\\_Trafficking\\_for\\_Sexual\\_Purposes.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/EI/Publications/Trafficking/Full_Report_Global_Child_Trafficking_for_Sexual_Purposes.pdf) (Accessed 12 January 2012).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes International (ECPAT) International. 2010. South Africa country progress card. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/TBS/PDF/2010\\_South\\_Africa\\_Progress\\_Card.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/TBS/PDF/2010_South_Africa_Progress_Card.pdf) (Accessed 21 May 2012).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2011. A network for children: End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes (Introductory brochure). ECPAT International: Thailand. Available: [http://resources.ecpat.net/EI/Publications/ECPAT/ECPAT%20brochure\\_2011\\_Final.pdf](http://resources.ecpat.net/EI/Publications/ECPAT/ECPAT%20brochure_2011_Final.pdf) (Accessed 14 February 2015).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International. 2011(a). Country Monitoring Report on the Status of Action against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children: Thailand, ECPAT International, Bangkok [Online] Available: [http://resources.ecpat.net/A4A\\_2005/PDF/EAP/A4A2011\\_EAP\\_Thailand\\_FINAL.pdf](http://resources.ecpat.net/A4A_2005/PDF/EAP/A4A2011_EAP_Thailand_FINAL.pdf) (Accessed 15 July 2013).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) International, 2011(b), Country Monitoring Report on the Status of Action against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children: Philippines, ECPAT International, Bangkok [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/global\\_monitoring\\_report-philippines.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/global_monitoring_report-philippines.pdf) (Accessed 11 January 2014).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT) 2012. Compendium of articles: Rights in practice in combating sexual exploitation of children. ECPAT International; Bangkok, Thailand [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ecpat\\_journal\\_july2012\\_0.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ecpat_journal_july2012_0.pdf) (Accessed 19 December 2014).

End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes (ECPAT). 2013. Global monitoring Report on the Status of Action against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children: South Africa (2nd Ed). ECPAT International: Bangkok, Thailand [Online] Available: [http://resources.ecpat.net/EI/Pdf/A4A\\_II/A4A\\_V2\\_AF\\_S.Africa.pdf](http://resources.ecpat.net/EI/Pdf/A4A_II/A4A_V2_AF_S.Africa.pdf) (Accessed 7 August 2014).

ECPAT Netherlands (End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes). 2014. Overall report – Don't look away. Assessment 5 African countries: Assessment on sexual exploitation of children related to tourism and reporting mechanisms in Gambia, Kenya, Madagascar, Senegal and South Africa. July to November 2013. ECPAT Netherlands. [Online] Available: [www.ecpat.nl](http://www.ecpat.nl) (Accessed 30 September 2014).

ECPAT (End Child Prostitution Child Pornography and Trafficking of children for Sexual Purposes). 2014(a). The commercial sexual exploitation of children in Africa: Developments, progress, challenges and recommended strategies. November 2014. ECPAT International: Thailand. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/Regional%20CSEC%20Overview\\_Africa.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/Regional%20CSEC%20Overview_Africa.pdf) (20 January 2015).

Edelson, D. 2001. The Prosecution of Persons Who Sexually Exploit Children in Countries Other Than Their Own: A Model for Amending Existing Legislation, **Fordham International Law Journal**, 25: 483-488-88.

Edmonds, E. 2006. Child labor and schooling responses to anticipated income in South Africa. **Journal of Development Economics**, 81(2):386–414.

Edleson, J. 2008. Internet, crimes against children, in Encyclopedia of interpersonal violence, edited by C Renzetti & J Edleson. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Egan, J. 2008. Email Interview, in The SAGE encyclopaedia of qualitative research methods edited LM Given. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Eldridge, H. & Saradjian, J. 2000. Replacing the function of abusive behaviors for the offender: Remaking relapse prevention in working with women who sexually abuse children, in Remaking relapse prevention with sex offenders: A sourcebook, edited by D Laws, S Hudson & T Ward. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Fair Trade in Tourism in South Africa (FTTSA) Brochure. 2010(a). The Tourism Child Protection Code of Conduct: information sheet. FTTSA: Pretoria. [Online] Available: [http://www.fairtrade.travel/thecode/resources/downloads/Code\\_Info\\_Brochure\\_%20A5\\_siz.pdf](http://www.fairtrade.travel/thecode/resources/downloads/Code_Info_Brochure_%20A5_siz.pdf) (Accessed 15 January 2012).

Fair Trade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA). 2010(b). Child sex tourism: SA travel and tourism industry takes a stance. 23 November 2010. [Online] Available: <http://www.fairtourismsa.org.za/thecode/resources/media/Industry%20Fights%20Child%20Sex%20Tourism.pdf> (Accessed 10 April 2012).

Farber, T. 2008. IOL News; 'Unga' joins tik as Cape drug of choice. 16 July 2008 at 12:24pm. [Online] Available: <http://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/unga-joins-tik-as-cape-drug-of-choice-1.408575> (Accessed 15 April 2014).

Farley, M., Cotton A., Lynne, J., Zumbek, S., Spiwak, F., Reyes, M.E, Alvarez, D. & Sezgin, U. 2004. Prostitution and trafficking in nine countries: an update on violence and posttraumatic stress disorder. **Journal of Trauma Practice**, 2(3) 33-74.

Ferran, L., Berardi, G. & Sakulpitakphon, P. 2008(a). Combating child sex tourism: questions and answers. Burnett, A. (Ed). ECPAT International. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/cst\\_faq\\_eng.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/cst_faq_eng.pdf) (Accessed 24 October 2014).

Ferran, L., Berardi, G. & Sakulpitakphon, P. 2008 (b). Protecting children from sexual exploitation in tourism: An ECPAT training toolkit. ECPAT International (End Child Prostitution, Child Pornography and Trafficking of Children for Sexual Purposes). [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ECPAT\\_CST\\_Code\\_Toolkit.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ECPAT_CST_Code_Toolkit.pdf) (Accessed 24 October 2014).

Fergusson, D.M. & Mullen, P.E. 1999. Childhood sexual abuse: An evidence based perspective. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Flowers, R.B. 2006. Sex Crimes: Perpetrators, Predators, Prostitutes, and Victims. Second Edition. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas.

Fraley, A. 2005. "Child Sex Tourism Legislation Under the PROTECT Act: Does It Really Protect?" St. John's Law Review, 79(2):445-484. [Online] Available at:

<http://scholarship.law.stjohns.edu/lawreview/vol79/iss2/7>

(Accessed 20 January 2015).

Friedman, B. & Allen, K. 2010. Systems Theory, in Theory and practice in clinical social work, edited by J Brandell. Second Edition. New York: SAGE.

Gaiser, T. & Schreiner, A. 2009. A guide to conducting online research. London, England: SAGE.

George, B. & Panko, T. 2011. Child sex tourism: facilitating conditions, legal remedies, and other interventions. **Vulnerable Children and Youth Studies**, 6(2):134-143.

Glatthorn, A. A. & Joyner, R. L. 2005. Writing the winning thesis or dissertation: a step by step guide. California, USA: Corwin Press.

Given, L.M. 2008. The SAGE Encyclopaedia of Qualitative Research Methods. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Goicoechea, P. H. 2010. Training professionals – an essential strategy for eradicating child sexual abuse, in Protecting children from sexual violence: A comprehensive approach, by Council of Europe (Author). [Online] Available:

<https://book.coe.int/eur/en/children-s-rights-and-family-law/4729-protecting-children-from-sexual-violence-a-comprehensive-approach.html> (Accessed 25 April 2014)

Golden-Biddle, K. & Locke, K. 2007. Composing qualitative research. Second Edition, Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Gray, M., Midgley, J., & Webb, S.A. 2012. *The SAGE handbook of social work*. London, United Kingdom: SAGE.

Greener, I. 2011. *Designing social research: A guide for the bewildered*. London: SAGE.

Gregorian, R., Hura-Tudor, E. & Feeny, T. 2003. Street children and juvenile justice in Romania.: Consortium for Street Children in association with Asociatia Sprijinirea Integrarii Sociale. [Online] Available:

[http://www.violencestudy.org/europe-ca/PDF/Romania\\_ASIS\\_04.pdf](http://www.violencestudy.org/europe-ca/PDF/Romania_ASIS_04.pdf)

(Accessed 24 October 2014).

Grinnell, R.M. & Unrau, Y.A. 2008. *Social work research and evaluation: foundations of evidence-based practice*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Grove, S.K., Burns, N. & Gray, J.R. 2013. *The practice of nursing research*. Missouri. Elsevier.

Guzder, D. 2009. A Move to Register Sex Offenders Globally, TIME.COM, Sept. 7, 2009.

[Online] Available: <http://www.time.com/time/world/article/0,8599,1920911,00.html>

(Accessed 27 January 2015).

Guest, G., Namey, E. & Mitchell, M. 2013. *Collecting qualitative data: a field manual for applied research*. London: SAGE.

Häefele, B. & Ovens, M. 2013. Effect of the substance related disorder on family dynamics and subsequent child abuse. **Child Abuse research in South Africa**, 14(2): 26–36.

Hall, J.A. 2011. Sex offenders and child sex tourism passport revocation. **Virginia Journal of Social Policy & the Law**, 18(2):153-202.

Hall, C. & Ryan, C: 2001. *Sex Tourism: Marginal People and Liminalities*. Routledge: London.

Halter, S. 2010. Factors That Influence Police Conceptualizations of Girls Involved in Prostitution in Six U.S. Cities: Child Sexual Exploitation Victims or Delinquents? **Journal of Child Maltreatment**, 15(2):152-160.

Hamilton, S. & Luster, T. 2005. Bronfenbrenner, Urie, in Encyclopedia of applied developmental science, edited by C Fisher & R Lerner. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Hammersley, M. 2004. Phenomenology, in The SAGE encyclopaedia of social science research methods, edited by MS Lewis-Beck, A Bryman & TF Liao. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Harrison, D. 2001. Tourism & the less developed world: issues and case studies. Cambridge, MA: CABI Publishing.

Hartjen, C. & Priyadarsini, S. 2012. The Global Victimization of Children: problems and solutions. NY, USA:Springer.

Hayes, S. 2012. Trafficked: my story. Hammersmith, London: Harper Collins

Helm, M., Mason, L.C., Stoddart, J. & Campa III, H. 2010. Plan your work & work your Plan: Essential Competencies for PhDs. Michigan: Michigan State University Board of Trustees.

Hennink, M., Hutter, I. & Bailey, A. 2011. Qualitative research methods. Los Angeles: SAGE.

Higginbottom, G. 2004. "Sampling Issues in Qualitative Research". **Nurse Researcher**, 12(1): 7-19.

Holt, A. 2010. Using the telephone for narrative interviewing: a research note. **Qualitative Research**, 10(1):113–121.

Hospitality. net. n.d. [Online] Available:

<http://www.hospitalitynet.org/organization/17000749.html>

(Accessed 9 May 2012).

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC). 2012. Informed consent guidelines re minors including orphans and vulnerable children (OVC) and parental substitutes: Notice prepared by the Human Sciences Research Council Research Ethics Committee (REC) to clarify its current pragmatic response to the provisions of Section 71 of the National Health

Act, which came into effect in March 2012. [Online] Available:

<http://www.hsrc.ac.za/uploads/pageContent/182/Guidelines%20for%20research%20with%20minors%202012.pdf>

(Accessed 17 September 2014).

Hubermann, M. & Miles, M.B. 2002. The qualitative researcher's companion. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Hurworth, R. 2005. Emergent Design. In Encyclopedia of evaluation, edited by S Mathison. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Hynes, P. 2013. Trafficking of Children and Young People: 'Community' Knowledge and Understandings, in Critical perspectives on child sexual exploitation and related trafficking, edited by M Melrose & J Pearce. Hampshire, UK: Palgrave Macmillan.

Ibbotson, P. 2008. The hidden offenders. The Guardian. [Online] Available:

<http://www.guardian.co.uk/society/2008/sep/03/childprotection>

(Accessed: 10 April 2012).

International Labour Organisation (ILO). n.d. Worst forms of child labour. [Online]

Available: <http://www.ilo.org/ipec/facts/WorstFormsofChildLabour/lang--en/index.htm>

(Accessed 29 June 2012).

International Centre for Missing & Exploited Children (ICMEC). 2010. Child Pornography: Model Legislation & Global review. 6th Edition. [Online] Available:

[http://www.icmec.org/en\\_X1/icmec\\_publications/English\\_6th\\_Edition\\_FINAL\\_.pdf](http://www.icmec.org/en_X1/icmec_publications/English_6th_Edition_FINAL_.pdf)

(Accessed 10 April 2012).

Independent Online. 2014. Aussie jailed after global virtual sex trap. (2014, October 23).

Star [South Africa], p. 15. [Online] Available:

[http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA386960707&v=2.1&u=usa\\_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=369edd1f6efa9f6224c43e68407c2a8e](http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA386960707&v=2.1&u=usa_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=369edd1f6efa9f6224c43e68407c2a8e)

(Accessed 20 December 2014).

Ireland, K. 1993. Sexual exploitation of children and international travel and tourism. **Child Abuse Review**, 2:263-270.

Irvine, A., Drew, P. & Sainsbury, R. 2012. 'Am I not answering your questions properly?' Clarification, adequacy and responsiveness in semi-structures telephone and face-to-face interviews. **Qualitative Research**, 13(1):87-106.

Iqbal, M.W. 2008. Street children an overlooked issue in Pakistan. **Child Abuse Review**, 17: 201-209.

Jamieson, L., Bray, R., Viviers, A., Lake, L., Pendlebury, S. & Smith, S. 2011. South African Child Gauge 2010/2011. Cape Town: Children's Institute, University of Cape Town. [Online] Available: [http://www.ci.org.za/index.php?option=com\\_content&view=article&id=868&Itemid=224](http://www.ci.org.za/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=868&Itemid=224) (Accessed 17 September 2014).

Johnson, A. 2011. International child sex tourism: Enhancing the legal response in South East Asia. **International Journal of Children's Rights**, 19: 55-79.

Kalaian, S. 2008. Research Design, in Encyclopedia of survey research methods, edited by PJ Lavrakas. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Keenan, P. 2006. The New Deterrence: Crime and Policy in the Age of Globalization, **Iowa Law Review**, 91: 505, 513.

Kendall, V. & Funk, T. 2012. Child exploitation and trafficking; examining the global challenges and US responses. Plymouth, UK: Rowman & Littlefield Publishers.

Kent, H. 2012. Sexual exploitation by gangs. In **Children and Young People Now Journal**, Issue: 11 December 2012-7 January 2013:33. [Online] Available: <http://www.cypnow.co.uk/cyp/feature/1075679/legal-update-sexual-exploitation-gangs> (Accessed 7 February 2014).

Khoabane, R. 2014."Child-on-child sex crimes surge." Times Live (Johannesburg, South Africa) 14 Jul. 2014, Crime, Law & Justice: NewsBank. Web. [Online] Available: <http://www.timeslive.co.za/thetimes/2014/07/14/child-on-child-sex-crimes-surge> (Accessed 24 October 2015).

Klain, E. 1999. Prostitution of Children and Child-Sex Tourism: An Analysis of Domestic and International Responses. American Bar Association Centre on Children and the Law for the National Centre for Missing & Exploited Children® [Online] Available:

<http://www.hawaii.edu/hivandaids/Prostitution%20of%20Children%20and%20Child%20Sex%20Tourism.pdf>

(Accessed 18 February 2015).

Krefting, L. 1991. Rigour in Qualitative Research: The assessment of trustworthiness. **The American Journal of Occupational Therapy**, 45(3), 214-222.

Kukartz, U. 2014. Qualitative text analysis: A guide to methods, practice & using software. London: SAGE.

Kumar, V. 2013. 101 design methods, a structured approach to drive innovation in your organisation. New Jersey: Willey.

Kuper, A., Lingard, L. & Levinson, W. 2008. Critically appraising qualitative research. [Online] Available:

[http://www.vhpharmsci.com/decisionmaking/Therapeutic\\_Decision\\_Making/Advanced\\_files/Critical%20appraising%20qualitative%20research-BMJ.pdf](http://www.vhpharmsci.com/decisionmaking/Therapeutic_Decision_Making/Advanced_files/Critical%20appraising%20qualitative%20research-BMJ.pdf)

(Accessed 15 September 2014).

Lalor, K. & McElvaney, R. 2010. Child sexual abuse, links to later sexual exploitation/high-risk sexual behaviour and prevention/treatment programs. **Trauma, Violence & Abuse** 11(4):159-177.

Larson, S. 2009. A pluralist view of generalization in qualitative research. **International Journal of Research & Method in Education**, 32(1):25-38.

Leedy, P.D. and Ormrod, J.E. 2005. Practical research: planning and designing. Eighth Edition. New Jersey: Pearson Education Ltd.

Lewis-Beck, M.S., Bryman, A., & Liao, T. F. 2004. The SAGE encyclopedia of social science research methods. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Lim, L L (ed.). 1998. The Sex Sector: the Economic and Social Bases of Prostitution in Southeast Asia (Geneva: International Labour Organization).

Lincoln, Y. S. 1995. Emerging criteria for quality in qualitative and interpretive research. **Qualitative inquiry**, 1(3): 275-289.

Lowe, K. & Pearce, J. 2006. **Child Abuse Review**, 15:289-293.

Lutya, T. 2009. Epi-criminological responses to human trafficking of young women and girls for involuntary prostitution in South Africa, **Journal of Scandinavian studies in Criminology and Crime Prevention**, 10(1):59-78.

Lutya, T. 2010. Lifestyles and routine activities of South African teenagers at risk of being trafficked for involuntary prostitution, **Journal of Child & Adolescent Mental Health**, 22(2): 91-110.

Lutya, T. 2012. Human Trafficking of Young Women and Girls for Sexual Exploitation in South Africa. In *Child Abuse and Neglect - A Multidimensional Approach* edited by Dr. A M Aparicio [Online] Available: <http://www.intechopen.com/books/child-abuse-and-neglect-a-multidimensional-approach/human-trafficking-of-young-women-and-girls-for-sexual-exploitation-in-south-africa> (Accessed 15 November 2014)

Mack, N. Woodsong, C., MacQueen, K., Guest, G. & Namey, E. 2005. *Qualitative research methods: A data collector's field guide*. USAID: Family Health International.

Madingwane, J. [Sa]. UNICEF South Africa: Thuthuzela Care Centres. [Online] Available: [http://www.unicef.org/southafrica/hiv\\_aids\\_998.html](http://www.unicef.org/southafrica/hiv_aids_998.html) (Accessed 18 October 2014).

Maddex, R. L. 2006. *Encyclopedia of sexual behaviour and the law*. Washington DC: CQ Press

Makofane, M.D.M. 2014. A conceptual analysis of the label "street children": Challenges for the helping professions. **Social Work**, 50(1):134-145.

Marshall, C & Rossman, G. 2011. *Designing qualitative research*. Fifth Edition. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Marshionini, G & Teague, J. 1987. Elementary students' use of electronic information services: an exploratory study. **Journal of Research on Computing in Education**, vol. 20: 139-155.

- Maughan, K. 2006. Why children are raping each other. IOL. [Online]. Available: <http://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/why-children-are-raping-other-children-1.299727#.VEkGSvmUeoM> (Accessed 23 October 2014).
- Maxwell, J.A. 2013. Qualitative research design: An interpretive approach. London: SAGE.
- May, T. 2011. Social research: Issues methods and process. Fourth Edition. London: McGraw Hill.
- McAlinden, A. 2013. 'Grooming' and the Sexual Abuse of Children: Implications for Sex Offender Assessment, Treatment and Management. **Sexual Offender Treatment**. 8(1). [Online] Available: [http://pure.qub.ac.uk/portal/en/publications/grooming-and-the-sexual-abuse-of-children-implications-for-sex-offender-assessment-treatment-and-management\(71b11b88-3bde-4d51-9c53-89afcd5bd5a3\).html](http://pure.qub.ac.uk/portal/en/publications/grooming-and-the-sexual-abuse-of-children-implications-for-sex-offender-assessment-treatment-and-management(71b11b88-3bde-4d51-9c53-89afcd5bd5a3).html) (Accessed 25 April 2015)
- McBrien, B. 2008. Evidence-based care: enhancing the rigour of a qualitative study. **British Journal of Nursing**, 17(20):1286-1289.
- McCoy, M., & Keen, S. 2014. Child abuse and neglect. Second Edition. New York: Psychology Press.
- McCoyd, J., & Kerson, T. 2006. Conducting Intensive Interviews Using Email: A serendipitous comparative opportunity. **Qualitative Social Work** 5(3): 389-406
- McPhail, B.A. 2004. Setting the record straight: social work is not a female orientated profession. **Social Work**, 49(2):323–326.
- Meintjies, H. & Hall, K. 2013. Demography of South Africa's children. In South African child gauge 2013. Berry, L., Biersteker, L., Dawes, A., Lake, L. & Smith, C.(Eds) Cape Town: Children's Institute, University of Cape Town. [Online] Available: In <http://www.ci.org.za/depts/ci/pubs/pdf/general/gauge2013/SouthAfricanChildGauge2013.pdf> (Accessed 28 October 2014)
- Melrose, M. 2013. Twenty-First Century Party People: Young People and Sexual Exploitation in the New Millenium. **Child Abuse Review**, 22:155-168.

- Melrose, M & Pearce, J. 2013. *Critical Perspectives on Child Sexual Exploitation and Related Trafficking*. Hampshire, UK: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Mikėnė, S., Gaižauskaitė, I. & Valavičienė, N. 2013. Qualitative interviewing: field-work realities. **Socialinis Darbas/Social Work**, 12(1):49–62.
- Miller, R. 2003. Sampling, probability, in *The A-Z of social research*, edited by RL Miller & JD Brewer. London: SAGE.
- Miller, R & Brewer, J. 2003. Sampling, snowball: accessing hidden and hard-to-reach, in *The A-Z of social research*, edited by London, England: SAGE Publications, Ltd.
- Miller, D. & Salkind, N.J. 2002. *Handbook of research design & social measurement*. Sixth Edition. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.
- Mitchell's Plain TIK TASK TEAM. [Online] Available: <http://www.blaauwberg.net/cic/articles/drugs/tik.asp>. (Accessed 17 September 2014).
- Moeng, K. 2013. Nyaope to be officially classified. *The Sowetan LIVE* (online) February 29, 2013. No page number. Available: <http://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/2013/02/28/nyaope-to-be-officially-classified> (Accessed 23 September 2014).
- Montgomery, H. 2001. Child sex tourism in Thailand, in *Tourism and the less developed world: issues and case studies*, edited by D Harrison. New York: CABI Publishing.
- Montgomery, H. 2008. Buying Innocence: child-sex tourists in Thailand. *Third World Quarterly*, 29(5): 903-917.
- Moore, D. S., Kosek, J. & Panadian, A. 2003. Race, nature and the politics of difference. [Online] Available: <http://o-site.ebrary.com.oasis.unisa.ac.za/lib/unisa1/Doc?id=10198285> (Accessed 29 March 2012).
- Morgan, D. 2008. Emergent Design, in *The SAGE encyclopedia of qualitative research methods*, edited by LM Given. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc.

Moustakas, C. (1994). Phenomenological research methods. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc.

Mowforth, M., Charlton, C. & Munt, I. 2008. Tourism and Responsibility: Perspectives from Latin America and the Caribbean. Burlington, MA: Taylor & Francis Group.

Muntarhorn, V. 1995. UN Background Note. [Online] Available:

<http://www.un.org/rights/dpi1765e.htm>

(Accessed 29 March 2012).

Muntarhorn, V. 2007. Article 34. Sexual exploitation and sexual abuse of children. A commentary on the United Nations Convention on the rights of the child. Leiden, Netherlands: Martinus Nijhoff Publishers.

Murthy, D. 2008. Digital ethnography: An examination of the use of new technologies for social research, in SAGE internet research methods, edited by J Hughes. London: SAGE.

Muuss, R.E. 2006. Theories of adolescence. Fifth Edition New York: McGraw-Hill Publishers.

National Centre for Missing and Exploited Children (NCMEC). 2012. [Online] Available:

[http://www.icmec.org/missingkids//PageServlet?LanguageCountry=en\\_X1&PageId=1742](http://www.icmec.org/missingkids//PageServlet?LanguageCountry=en_X1&PageId=1742)

(Accessed 10 March 2012).

National Association of Social Workers (NASW). 2004. "If You're Right for the Job, It's the Best Job in the World". The National Association of Social Workers' Child Welfare Specialty Practice Section Members Describe their Experiences In Child Welfare. New York: National Association of Social Workers.

Neuman, W.L. 1997. Social Research methods: qualitative and quantitative approaches. Third Edition. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.

Neuman, W.L. 2012. Basics of social research: qualitative and quantitative approaches. Third edition. Pearson Inc.: USA.

News 24. 2012. Cops bust child-sex ring, 16 girls rescued. [Online] Available:

<http://www.news24.com/SouthAfrica/News/Cops-bust-child-sex-ring-16-girls-rescued-20120217> (Accessed 15 June 2012)

Nicholls, D. 2009. Qualitative research: part one – philosophies. **International Journal of Therapy and Rehabilitation**, 16(10):526-533.

Notene, T. 2013. Combating the sexual exploitation of children in travel and tourism: achievements and challenges. Speaker Notes from Human Rights Council's Side Session on 'Transnational cooperation and corporate social responsibility: enablers for protection of children from sexual exploitation in travel and tourism', held in Geneva, Switzerland in March 2013. [Online] Available: [http://www.ohchr.org/Documents/Issues/Children/Childrenexplotation/TheoNOTENECPAT\\_presentation.pdf](http://www.ohchr.org/Documents/Issues/Children/Childrenexplotation/TheoNOTENECPAT_presentation.pdf) (Accessed 12 September 2014).

Noy, C. 2008. Sampling knowledge: the hermeneutics of snowball sampling in qualitative research. **International Journal of Social Research Methodology**, 11(4):327-344.

O'Briain, M., Grillo, M. & Barbosa, H. 2008. Sexual exploitation of children and adolescents in tourism: a contribution of ECPAT International to the World Congress III against sexual exploitation of children and adolescents, Rio de Janeiro. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/worldcongressIII/PDF/Publications/CST/Thematic\\_Paper\\_CST\\_ENG.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/worldcongressIII/PDF/Publications/CST/Thematic_Paper_CST_ENG.pdf) (Accessed 17 July 2012).

O'Connell Davidson, J. 2005. Children in the global sex trade. Cornwall, UK: Polity Press, MPG Books

Ochieng, S. 2003. Working with an African perspective in counselling practice. In working inter-culturally in counselling settings. New York: Routledge.

O'Donnell, D & Seymour D. 2004. UNICEF. 2004. Child protection: A handbook for parliamentarians N° 7. Inter-Parliamentary Union and UNICEF. SRO Kundig: Switzerland [Online] Available: [http://www.ipu.org/pdf/publications/childprotection\\_en.pdf](http://www.ipu.org/pdf/publications/childprotection_en.pdf) (Accessed 15 April 2013).

Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Human Rights (OHCHR). Convention on the Rights of the Child [Online] Available: <http://www.ohchr.org/en/professionalinterest/pages/crc.aspx> (Accessed 1 May 2012).

O'Grady, R. 1996. The ECPAT Story: A personal account of the first six years in the life of ECPAT. Bangkok: End Child Prostitution in Asian Tourism.

O'Grady, R. 2001. Eradicating pedophilia: toward the humanisation of society. **Journal of International Affairs**, 55(1):123-140.

Ongwuegbuzie, A.J., Collins, K.T.M. & Frels, R.K. 2013. Foreword: Using Bronfenbrenner's ecological systems theory to frame quantitative, qualitative, and mixed method research. **International Journal of Multiple Research Approaches**, 7(1):2-8.

Oxford English Dictionary. 1996. Suffolk, UK: Oxford University Press.

Parker, F. 2013. Green light for Sexual Offences Act development. In Mail & Guardian 16 January 2013. [Online] Available: <http://mg.co.za/article/2013-01-16-green-light-for-healthy-sexual-development> (Accessed 22 October 2014).

Parker Lewis, H. 2010. Also God's Children. Tenth Edition. Cape Town: Inhilili Press.

Patterson, T. 2007. Child sex tourism a dark journey. FBI Law Enforcement Bulletin January 2007. [Online] Available: <http://leb.fbi.gov/2007-pdfs/leb-january-2007> (Accessed 10 January 2012).

Paulsen, N. & Wilson, L. 2013. Caregivers' experiences of the South African judicial system after the reporting of child sexual abuse in **Child Abuse Research Journal** 2013, 14(2):56- 67.

Pavlichev, A. 2004. Population, in The SAGE encyclopaedia of social science research methods, edited by MS Lewis-Beck, A Bryman & TF Liao. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Pawlak, P. 2012. Hidden violence: Preventing and responding to sexual exploitation and sexual abuse of adolescent boys. In Compendium of Articles: rights in practice in combating sexual exploitation of children. ECPAT International: Bangkok, Thailand. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ecpat\\_journal\\_july2012\\_0.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ecpat_journal_july2012_0.pdf) (Accessed 23 February 2013).

Peace, L. 2014. South Yorkshire's police chief 'vows to stay on' despite resignation calls. South Yorkshire Times. [Online] Available: <http://www.southyorkshiretimes.co.uk/news/local/south-yorkshire-s-police-chief-vows-to-stay-on-despite-resignation-calls-1-6805868> (Accessed 1 October 2014).

Pearce, J. 2013. A social model of abused consent, in *Critical perspectives on child sexual exploitation and related trafficking*, edited by M Melrose & J Pearce. Hampshire, UK: Palgrave Macmillan.

Pease, B. 2011. Men in social work: challenging or reproducing an unequal gender regime? **Journal of Women and Social Work**, 26(4):406-418.

Pimonsaengsuriya, K. 2012. Challenges in protecting children from commercial sexual exploitation: the example of Thailand. In *Compendium of Articles: rights in practice in combating sexual exploitation of children*. ECPAT International: Bangkok, Thailand. [Online] Available: [http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ecpat\\_journal\\_july2012\\_0.pdf](http://www.ecpat.net/sites/default/files/ecpat_journal_july2012_0.pdf) (Accessed 23 February 2012)

Pitts, J. 2013. Drifting into Trouble, in *Critical perspectives on child sexual exploitation and related trafficking*, edited by M Melrose & J Pearce. Hampshire, UK: Palgrave Macmillan.

Powell, A. 2007. Child sex tourism alarm. *Mercury* [South Africa], 15 Aug: 5. *Custom Newspapers South Africa*. [Online] Available: [http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA167649151&v=2.1&u=usa\\_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=65544cb00221e5d7959d6883efefe221](http://go.galegroup.com/ps/i.do?id=GALE%7CA167649151&v=2.1&u=usa_itw&it=r&p=SPN.SP03&sw=w&asid=65544cb00221e5d7959d6883efefe221) (Accessed 8 April 2012).

Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act No. 7 of 2013). [Online] Available: [http://www.acts.co.za/prevention-and-combating-of-trafficking-in-persons-act-2013/index.html?4\\_trafficking\\_in\\_persons.php](http://www.acts.co.za/prevention-and-combating-of-trafficking-in-persons-act-2013/index.html?4_trafficking_in_persons.php) Accessed: 20 February 2015.

Quayle, E. 2010. Child pornography and sexual exploitation, *The encyclopedia of victimology and crime prevention*, edited by B Fisher & S Lab. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Rafferty, Y. 2013. Child trafficking and commercial sexual exploitation: A review of promising prevention policies and programs. **American Journal of Orthopsychiatry**, 83(4): 559-575.

Rao, N. 2003. The Dark side of Tourism and sexuality, in *Sex and tourism: Journeys of romance, love and lust*, edited by KS Chon, T Bauer & B Mckercher. New York: The Hayworth Hospitality Press.

Rebirth Africa Life on the Continent. June 2014. Child abuse and Exploitation in Africa. [Online] Available: [http://www.rebirth.co.za/Child\\_abuse\\_and\\_sexual\\_exploitation\\_in\\_Africa.htm](http://www.rebirth.co.za/Child_abuse_and_sexual_exploitation_in_Africa.htm) (Accessed 22 June 2014).

Reeves, C.L. 2010. A difficult negotiation: fieldwork relations with gatekeepers. **Qualitative Research**, 10(3):315-331.

Renzetti, C. & Edleson, J. 2008. Encyclopedia of interpersonal violence. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Report of the Special Rapporteur on the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography, United Nations Economic and Social Council, Commission on Human Rights, 52d Sess., Agenda Item 20, 35, U.N. Doc. E/CN.4/1996/100 (1996) [Online] Available: [http://search.ohchr.org/search?site=default\\_collection&client=default\\_frontend&output=xml\\_no\\_dtd&ie=UTF-8&oe=UTF-8&Entqr=0&ud=1&sort=date%3AD%3A%3Ad1&proxystylesheet=en\\_frontend&q=Agenda%20Item%2020%2C%2035%2C%20U.N.%20Doc.%20E%2FCN.4%2F1996%2F100%20\(1996](http://search.ohchr.org/search?site=default_collection&client=default_frontend&output=xml_no_dtd&ie=UTF-8&oe=UTF-8&Entqr=0&ud=1&sort=date%3AD%3A%3Ad1&proxystylesheet=en_frontend&q=Agenda%20Item%2020%2C%2035%2C%20U.N.%20Doc.%20E%2FCN.4%2F1996%2F100%20(1996) (Accessed 25 March 2012)

Resources Aimed at the Prevention of Child Abuse and Neglect (RAPCAN). N.d. RAPCAN hosts a Round Table discussion on Prevention and Early Intervention: Recommendations for Practice. [Online] Available: <http://www.rapcan.org.za/home/> (Accessed 4 November 2014).

Richter, L.M. 1991. Street children in South Africa: street children in poor and rich countries. **The Child Care Worker**, 9(9):5-7.

Rock, L., Karabanow, J. & Manion, K. 2012. Childhood and youth in international context: Life-course perspectives, in The SAGE handbook of international social work, edited by K Lyons, K, T Hokenstad, M Pawar, N Huegler N & N Hall. London: SAGE.

Rolfe, G. 2006. Validity, trustworthiness and rigour: Quality and the idea of qualitative research. **Journal of Advanced Nursing**, 53(3):304-310.

Rowan, E.L. 2006. Understanding Child Sexual Abuse. Jackson, USA: University Press of Mississippi.

RSA Government Gazette. 2006. Vol. 492 No 28958 [Online] Available:  
[http://www.energy.gov.za/files/policies/regulations\\_petroleumproducts\\_specifications\\_2006.pdf](http://www.energy.gov.za/files/policies/regulations_petroleumproducts_specifications_2006.pdf) (Accessed 12 July 2012).

Rurevo, R. & Bourdillon, M. 2003. *Girls on the Street*. Harare, Zimbabwe: Weaver Press.

Russell, D., & Purcell, N. 2008. Exposure to pornography as a cause of child sexual victimization in *The handbook of children, culture, and violence*, edited by N Dowd, D Singer & R Wilson. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Saayman, M. & Smallberger, R. 1996. *Sex tourism in South Africa: a case of four cities*. Potchefstroom: Institute for Tourism and Leisure Studies, Potchefstroom University for Christian Higher Education

Safi, M. 2014. Sexual abuse of children in state care 'endemic' in Victoria. *The Guardian* online 4 July 2014 09h43 [Online] Available:  
<http://www.theguardian.com/world/2014/jul/04/sexual-abuse-children-state-care-endemic-victoria> (Accessed 1 October 2014).

Sandelowski, M. (2002). Re-embodying Qualitative Inquiry, in *SAGE qualitative research methods*, edited by P Atkinson & S Delamont. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Sanders, T., O'Neill, M., & Pitcher, J. 2009. Children, young people and commercial sexual exploitation (CSEC), in *Prostitution: Sex work, policy and politics*, edited by T Sanders, M O'Neill & J Pitcher. London: SAGE Publications Ltd.

SANTAC. 2010. *SANTAC Tourism Conference. 2010*. [Online] Available:  
<http://www.santac.org/eng/Conferences/2010-Child-friendly-Tourism-Conference>  
(Accessed 3 February 2012).

Sakulpitakphon, P. 2007. *Confronting the commercial sexual exploitation of children in Africa*. ECPAT: Bangkok, Thailand.

Salkind, N. (ed). 2010. *Research Design Principles*. In Neil J. Salkind (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of Research Design*. (pp. 1253-1260). Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc.

Schroeder, F. 2013. Parents in court for selling teenage daughter to be raped. Weekend Argus. July 6, 2013, page 6. Cape Town, South Africa: Independent Newspapers

Sex Workers Education and Advocacy Taskforce (SWEAT) [Online] Available <http://www.sweat.org.za/> (Accessed 10 July 2014).

Shared Hope International (SHI). 2007. Demand. Shared Hope International: Vancouver, Canada. [Online] Available: <http://www.sharedhope.org/Resources/DEMAND.aspx> (Accessed 5 April 2012).

Shaw, I., Briar-Lawson, K., Orme, J., & Ruckdeschel, R. 2010. The SAGE handbook of social work research. London: SAGE.

Shenton, A.K. 2004. Strategies for ensuring trustworthiness in qualitative research projects. **Education for information**, 22:63-75.

Shuker, L. 2013. Constructs of safety for children in care affected by sexual exploitation, in Critical perspectives on child sexual exploitation and related trafficking, edited by M Melrose & J Pearce. Hampshire, UK: Palgrave Macmillan.

Silverman, D. 2001. Interpreting qualitative data: Methods for analysing talk, text and interaction. Second Edition. London: SAGE.

Silverman, D. 2013. Doing qualitative research. Fourth Edition. London: SAGE.

Smith, M., MacLeod, N. & Robertson, M. H. 2010. Key concepts in tourist studies. London: SAGE.

Snell, C.L. 2003. Commercial sexual exploitation of the youth of South Africa. **Journal of Negro Education**, 72(4):506-514.

Snow, M.S., Wolff, L. Hudspeth, E.F. & Etheridge, L. 2009. The practitioner as researcher: Qualitative case studies in play therapy. **International Journal of Play Therapy**, 18(4):240-250.

Song, S. 2003. Global child sex tourism: Children as tourist attractions. [Online] Available: [http://www.researchgate.net/publication/242482401\\_Children\\_as\\_Tourist\\_Attractions\\_Global\\_Child\\_Sex\\_Tourism](http://www.researchgate.net/publication/242482401_Children_as_Tourist_Attractions_Global_Child_Sex_Tourism) (Accessed 5 March 2012).

South Africa. 1996. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa as adopted by the Constitutional Assembly on 8 May 1996 and as amended on 11 October 1996. Pretoria: Government Printer (B34B-96).

South African Department of Tourism. 2010. International Colloquium on mega event sustainability, Sandton Convention Centre, Johannesburg, South Africa, 24 February 2010 [Online] Available: <http://www.tourism.gov.za:8001/TSME/2010-mar03/Colloquiumreport.pdf> (Accessed 10 March 2012).

South African Press Association (SAPA). 2012. Child sex workers rescued - Parents asked to come fetch them. Sowetan. [Online] Available: <http://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/2012/02/20/child-sex-workers-rescued---parents-asked-to-come-fetch-them> (Accessed 21 May 2012).

South African Press Association (SAPA). 2013. Kissing is not a crime: Innocent: Teenagers will not be criminalized for French kissing. Sowetan [Online] Available: <http://www.sowetanlive.co.za/news/2013/01/16/kissing-is-not-a-crime> (Accessed 22 October 2014).

Springer, P. 2010. Sv. "Voyeurism", in The encyclopedia of identity, edited by R Jackson & M Hogg. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Stander, Y. 2015. Paedophiles in the Garden Route. **Knysna-Plett Herald** 22 January: 8.

Sullivan, L. 2009. Sv. "Voyeur/voyeurism" The SAGE glossary of the social and behavioral sciences. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Surujlal, J & Shurup, M. 2009. Legalising sex workers during the 2010 FIFA Soccer World Cup in South Africa. **African Journal for Physical, Health Education, Recreation and Dance** (AJPHERD), September 2009 (Supplement):79-97.

Sowetan. 2012. See South African Press Association (SAPA).

Sowetan. 2013. See South African Press Association (SAPA).

Taylor, M. & Quayle, E. 2003. Child Pornography: An internet crime. New York: Brunner-Routledge.

Tepelus, C.M. (2008). Social responsibility and innovation on trafficking and child sex tourism: Morphing of practice into sustainable tourism policies? **Tourism and Hospitality Research**, 8(2):98-115.

thecode.org. [Sa]. The Code Annual General Meeting: Agenda and background papers. 2012. Annex 2 Narrative and financial report to UNICEF. Page 1 – 4. [Online] Available: <http://www.thecode.org/about/> (Accessed 9 May 2012; 22 April 2015).

The Star. 2012. Real-time child sex ordered and streamed online. [Online] Available: <http://www.iol.co.za/the-star/real-time-child-sex-ordered-and-streamed-online-1.1299381> (Accessed 20 November 2012)

Thom, A. 2010. 12 the new 'age of consent' in The Star 27 July 2010. IOL [Online] Available: <http://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/12-the-new-age-of-consent-1.671013#.VEihbfmUeoM> (Accessed 22 October 2014).

Thomas, E. & Magilvy, J.K. 2011. Qualitative rigor research validity in qualitative research. **Journal for Specialists in Paediatric Nursing**, 16:151-155.

Thorpe, R. & Holt, R. 2008, The SAGE Dictionary of qualitative management research, London: SAGE.

TIP Report 2011: See US Department of State

TIP Report 2014: See US Department of State

Todres, J. 1999. Prosecuting sex tour operators in US courts in an effort to reduce the sexual exploitation of children globally. **Public Interest Law Journal**, 9:2-3.

Turner, D.W. 2010. Qualitative interview design: a practical guide for novice investigators. **The Qualitative Report**, 15(3):754-760.

Twill, S., Green, D. & Traylor, A. 2010. A Descriptive Study on Sexually Exploited Children in Residential Treatment. **Child and Youth Care Forum**, 39(3):187-199. [Online] Available: <http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007%2Fs10566-010-9098-2#page-2> (Accessed 5 January 2015).

Ungar, M. 2005. Handbook for working with children and youth: Pathways to resilience across cultures and contexts. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

UK Government. 2003. Every child matters: Presented to Parliament by the Chief Secretary to the Treasury by Command of Her Majesty September 2003. [Online] Available: <https://www.education.gov.uk/consultations/downloadableDocs/EveryChildMatters.pdf> (Accessed 12 July 2013).

UK Department of Children, Schools and Families (DCSF). 2009. Safeguarding children and Young People from Sexual Exploitation: Supplementary guidance to working together to safeguard children. London: DCSF

UK Department for Children, Schools and Families. 2010. Working Together to Safeguard Children: a guide to inter-agency working to safeguard and promote the welfare of children. Nottingham, UK: DCSF publications: [Online] Available: <http://publications.dcsf.gov.uk/default.aspx?PageFunction=productdetails&PageMode=publications&ProductId=DCSF-00305-20> (Accessed 15 July 2012).

UK Department for Education. 2011. Tackling child sexual exploitation: Action plan. London, UK: Department for Education.

United Federation of Travel Agent's Associations (UFTAA). 1997. Ethics and social dimensions of tourism. [Online] Available: <http://ethics.unwto.org/en/content/protect-children-campaign-partner-uftaa> (Accessed 5 July 2012).

United Nations Cyberschoolbus. N.d. Declaration of the rights of the child: Adopted by UN General Assembly Resolution 1386 (XIV) of 10 December 1959. [Online] Available: <http://www.un.org/cyberschoolbus/humanrights/resources/child.asp> (Accessed 2 May 2012).

United Nations General Assembly. 2002. Resolution adopted by the General Assembly [on the report of the Ad Hoc Committee of the Whole (A/S-27/19/Rev.1 and Corr.1 and 2)] S-27/2. A world fit for children. 11 October 2002. [Online] Available: [http://www.unicef.org/specialsession/docs\\_new/documents/A-RES-S27-2E.pdf](http://www.unicef.org/specialsession/docs_new/documents/A-RES-S27-2E.pdf) (Accessed 2 May 2012).

United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF). 2005. Prevention of commercial sexual exploitation of children and adolescents: Contributing to a sustainable tourism in Central America. Republic of Panama: UNICEF.

UNICEF. 2006. Guidelines on the protection of child victims of trafficking: UNICEF Technical Notes. New York: UNICEF.

United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF). 2009. Handbook on the optional protocol on the sale of children, child prostitution and child pornography. Innocenti Research Centre: Italy.

UNICEF. 2010. Social Worker skills development. Pretoria: UNICEF.

United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF). 2012. Assessing the code of conduct for the protection of children from sexual exploitation in travel and tourism: Discussion paper. Florence, Italy: UNICEF Innocenti Research Centre.

United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF). 2014. United Nations Children's Fund - Hidden in plain sight: A statistical analysis of violence against children. New York, USA. [Online] Available: [http://files.unicef.org/publications/files/Hidden\\_in\\_plain\\_sight\\_statistical\\_analysis\\_EN\\_3\\_Sept\\_2014.pdf](http://files.unicef.org/publications/files/Hidden_in_plain_sight_statistical_analysis_EN_3_Sept_2014.pdf) (Accessed 19 September 2014).

United Nations Cyberschoolbus. n.d. Declaration of the rights of the child: Adopted by UN General Assembly Resolution 1386 (XIV) of 10 December 1959. [Online] Available: <http://www.un.org/cyberschoolbus/humanrights/resources/child.asp>

(Accessed 2 May 2012).

United States Department of State. 2011. Trafficking in Persons Report 2011 [Online] Available: <http://www.state.gov/j/tip/rls/tiprpt/> (Accessed 8 April 2012).

United States Department of State. 2014. Trafficking in Persons Report 2104. [Online] Available: <http://www.state.gov/j/tip/rls/tiprpt/2014/index.htm> (Accessed 12 July 2014).

United Nations. 2010. International recommendations for tourism statistics (2008). Department of Economic and Social Affairs Statistics Division. Series M No. 83/Rev.1. UN: New York, USA [Online] Available: [http://unstats.un.org/unsd/publication/Seriesm/SeriesM\\_83rev1e.pdf#page=21](http://unstats.un.org/unsd/publication/Seriesm/SeriesM_83rev1e.pdf#page=21) (Accessed 3 March 2015).

United Nations Organisation on Drugs and Crime (UNODC). 2007. Situational assessment of human trafficking in the SADC region: A survey of South Africa, Zimbabwe and Mozambique. Pretoria: United Nations.

United Nations General Assembly. 2002. Resolution adopted by the General Assembly on the report of the Ad Hoc Committee of the Whole (A/S-27/19/Rev.1 and Corr.1 and 2) S-27/2. A world fit for children. 11 October 2002. [Online] Available: [http://www.unicef.org/specialsession/docs\\_new/documents/A-RES-S27-2E.pdf](http://www.unicef.org/specialsession/docs_new/documents/A-RES-S27-2E.pdf) (Accessed 2 May 2012).

United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO). 1995. Resolutions adopted by the general assembly at its eleventh session Cairo, Egypt, 17-22 October 1995 Page 32 – 35. [Online] Available: <http://www.unwto.org/conferences/ga/en/pdf/11res+corr.pdf> (Accessed 2 May 2012).

United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO). 2010. Annual Report 2010: A year of recovery. Madrid: Spain [Online] Available: [https://s3-eu-west-1.amazonaws.com/storageapi/sites/all/files/pdf/final\\_annual\\_report\\_pdf\\_3.pdf](https://s3-eu-west-1.amazonaws.com/storageapi/sites/all/files/pdf/final_annual_report_pdf_3.pdf) (Accessed 7 April 2012).

United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO). 2011. UNWTO tourism highlights 2011 Edition. [Online] Available: [http://mkt.unwto.org/sites/all/files/docpdf/unwtohighlights11enlr\\_3.pdf](http://mkt.unwto.org/sites/all/files/docpdf/unwtohighlights11enlr_3.pdf)

(Accessed 7 April 2012).

United Nations World Tourism Organisation. 2014. International tourism shows continued strength. Press release number PR14071. 30 October 2014. Madrid. [Online] Available: <http://media.unwto.org/press-release/2014-10-30/international-tourism-shows-continued-strength> (Accessed 3 November 2014).

United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO) Global code of ethics. n.d. UNWTO Ethics and social dimensions of tourism. Global code of ethics. [Online] Available: <http://ethics.unwto.org/en/content/global-code-ethics-tourism> (Accessed 7 April 2012).

Vallance, D. 2011. Child abuse, perpetrators of, in in encyclopedia of women in today's world, edited by M Stange, C Oyster, & J. Sloan. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE.

Van Niekerk, J. 1999. Children and survival sex in Kwazulu-Natal. Paper presented at the National Consultative Conference against the Sexual Exploitation of Children, Cape Town: The Institute for Child and Family Development, University of the Western Cape.

Van Niekerk, J. 2003. Failing our Future: Responding to the sexual abuse of children. **SA Crime Quarterly**, 3:11-16.

Van Schalkwyk, S. 2007. Sex tourism takes hold in South Africa. 31 October 2007. Mail & Guardian. [Online] Available: <http://mg.co.za/article/2007-10-31-sex--takes-hold-in-south-africa> (Accessed 21 May 2012).

Vetten, L. 2012. Will any police officer do? The organization of the South African Police Services (SAPS) response to sexual offences. Tswaranang Legal Advocacy Centre to end violence against women. [Online] Available: [http://www.tlac.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2012/01/TLAC-Policy-Brief-4.SAPS\\_response\\_to\\_sexual\\_offences.pdf](http://www.tlac.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2012/01/TLAC-Policy-Brief-4.SAPS_response_to_sexual_offences.pdf) (Accessed 25 April 2014).

Vrancken, P. & Chetty K. 2009. International child sex tourism: A South African perspective. *Journal of African Law*: Volume 53: PP 111 – 141. [Online] Available: <http://0->

[journals.cambridge.org.oasis.unisa.ac.za/action/displayAbstract?fromPage=online&aid=5089024&ulltextType=RA&fileId=S0021855309000059](http://journals.cambridge.org.oasis.unisa.ac.za/action/displayAbstract?fromPage=online&aid=5089024&ulltextType=RA&fileId=S0021855309000059) (Accessed 21 March 2012).

Walkerdine, V. 1990. *Schoolgirl Fictions*. London: Verso.

Ward, C L. 2007. Monitoring the wellbeing of street children from a rights perspective, in *Monitoring child wellbeing: A South African rights-based approach*, edited by A Dawes, R Bray & AVan Der Merwe. Cape Town: HSRC Press

Ward, C. & Seager, J. 2010. South African street children: a survey and recommendations for services. **Development Southern Africa**, 27(1):85-100.

Welman, J. C., Kruger, S.J. & Mitchell, B.C. 2012. *Research methodology*. Third Edition Cape Town, South Africa: Oxford University Press.

Wernham, M. 2001. *Street Children and Violence*, Based on a Presentation at UN Commission on Human Rights, 57th Session - Mon 9 April, 2009. London, UK: Consortium for Street Children.

Wilcockson, M. 2006. Working with internet paedophiles. **Mental Health Practice Journal**, 9(9):34-37.

Williams, M. 2003. *Making Sense of Social Research*. London, England: SAGE

Wilkinson, K & Chiumia, S. 2013. The Daily Maverick: Africa Check: Human trafficking – sensationalist and unsubstantiated reporting. [Online] Available: <http://www.dailymaverick.co.za/article/2013-10-18-human-trafficking-sensationalist-and-unsubstantiated-reporting/#.U52poPmSxqU> (Accessed 18 October 2013).

Yegidis, B. & Weinbach, R. 2002. *Research methods for social workers*. Fourth Edition: Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

Yin, R K. 2011. *Qualitative research from start to finish*. New York: Guildford Press.

PREAMBLE TO AN INFORMATION AND INFORMED CONSENT DOCUMENT FOR  
**SOCIAL WORKERS**

Dear social work colleague

I Karen Spurrier, the undersigned, am a social worker in private practice in Plettenberg Bay, Western Cape and also a part-time doctorate student in the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (UNISA). In fulfilment of the requirements for the doctoral degree, I have to undertake a research project and have consequently decided to focus on the following research topic: **A MULTI-PERSPECTIVE REPORT ON THE STATUS OF THE KNOWLEDGE ON AND RESPONSE TO COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION OF CHILDREN WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CHILD PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM: A SOCIAL WORK PERSPECTIVE**

In view of the fact that you are well-informed about the topic, I hereby approach you with the request to participate in the study. For you to decide whether or not to participate in this research project, I am going to give you information that will help you to understand the study (i.e. what the aims of the study are and why there is a need for this particular study). Furthermore, you will be informed about what your involvement in this study will entail (i.e. what you will be asked/or what you will be requested to do during the study, the risks and benefits involved by participating in this research project, and your rights as a participant in this study).

This research project originated as a result of my reading up a great deal on the subject and becoming very interested in the fact that there is little information based on research available about the South African situation. The aim is to add to the local and international body of knowledge on the subject while obtaining a picture about what is happening in our country. The information gathered from this study will help to obtain a more accurate picture about what is happening in South Africa in terms of child sex tourism and may possibly help to protect children from this problem if we can understand it better.

Should you agree to participate you would be requested to participate in an interview with me personally. The interview will be conducted at your work place at a time that is

convenient to you and your employer. It is estimated that the interview(s) will last approximately 1 hour. During the interview(s)<sup>162</sup> the following questions will be directed to you:

#### Biographical Questions

- In what type of organisation are you employed?
- Are you registered with any organisational bodies and if so, what are they?
- What geographical area does your work cover?
- How many years have you been practising as a social worker?

#### Topical Questions

- What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?
- What is the extent of child sex tourism in your area?
- What do you think are the factors that contribute to the child sex tourism phenomenon?
- What experience have you had in relation to working with victims of child sex tourism?
- What experience have you had in relation to working with perpetrators of child sex abuse?
- What enables you to render services to the victims and/or perpetrators of child sex tourism?
- What obstacles do you believe prevent you from working effectively with victims/perpetrators of CSEC with particular reference to CST and CP?
- What South African or international legislation covering child sex tourism are you aware of?
- What in your point of view can be done to respond to the phenomenon of CSEC with specific reference to CST and CP?
- Do you know of anyone else I can speak with in this regard?

With your permission, the interview will be audiotaped. The recorded interviews will be transcribed word-for-word. Your responses to the interview (both the recorded and transcribed versions) will be kept strictly confidential.

---

<sup>162</sup> Any other expectations required from participants need to be clearly spelled out, for example: filling in questionnaires, completing schedules focusing on biographical information, reading through the verbatim transcriptions compiled from the interviews conducted with them, follow-up interviews, etc.]

The digital audio recordings will be coded to disguise any identifying information. The CDs will be stored in a locked office at 7 Jane Street in Plettenberg Bay and only I will have access to them. The transcripts (without any identifying information) will be made available to my research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), and possibly an independent coder<sup>163</sup> with the sole purpose of assisting and guiding me with this research undertaking. My research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), the translator and the independent coder will each sign an undertaking to treat the information shared by you in a confidential manner. The audio recordings and the transcripts of the interviews will be destroyed upon the completion of the study. Identifying information will be deleted or disguised in any subsequent publication and/or presentation of the research findings.

Please note that participation in the research is completely voluntary. You are not obliged to take part in the research. Your decision to participate, or not to participate, will not affect you in any way now or in the future and you will incur no penalty and/or loss to which you may otherwise be entitled. Should you agree to participate and sign the information and informed consent document herewith, as proof of your willingness to participate, please note that you are not signing your rights away. Please be aware that if information regarding the abuse of a child or children should come to light the researcher is obliged to report same abuse to the authorities.

If you agree to take part, you have the right to change your mind at any time during the study. You are free to withdraw this consent and discontinue participation without any loss of benefits. However, if you do withdraw from the study, you would be requested to grant me an opportunity to engage in informal discussion with you so that the research partnership that was established can be terminated in an orderly manner.

As the researcher, I also have the right to dismiss you from the study without regard to your consent if you fail to follow the instructions or if the information you have to divulge is emotionally sensitive and upsets you to such an extent that it hinders you from functioning physically and emotionally in a proper manner. Furthermore, if participating in the study at any time jeopardises your safety in any way, you will be dismissed. Should I conclude that the information you have shared left you feeling emotionally upset, or perturbed, I am obliged to refer you to a counsellor for debriefing or counselling (should you agree). You

---

<sup>163</sup> The independent coder is someone who is well versed and experienced in analysing information collected by means of interviews and is appointed to analyse the transcripts of the interviews independently of the researcher to ensure that the researcher will report the participants' accounts of what has been researched.

have the right to ask questions concerning the study at any time. Should you have any questions or concerns about the study, contact this mobile number 082 825 5505.

Please note that this study has been approved by the Research and Ethics Committee<sup>164</sup> of the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (Unisa). Without the approval of this committee, the study cannot be conducted. Should you have any questions and queries not sufficiently addressed by me as the researcher, you are more than welcome to contact the Chairperson of the Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at Unisa. His contact details are as follows: Prof AH (Nicky) Alpaslan, telephone number: 012 429 6739, or email [alpasah@unisa.ac.za](mailto:alpasah@unisa.ac.za).

If, after you have consulted the researcher and the Research and Ethics Committee in the Department of Social Work at Unisa, their answers have not satisfied you, you might direct your question/concerns/queries to the Chairperson, Human Ethics Committee<sup>165</sup>, College of Human Science, PO Box 392, Unisa, 0003.

Based upon all the information provided to you above, and being aware of your rights, you are asked to give your written consent should you want to participate in this research study by signing and dating the information and consent form provided herewith and initialling each section to indicate that you understand and agree to the conditions.

Thank you for your participation.

Kind regards

---

Karen Spurrier

Contact details: (Mobile: 0828255505)

Fax: 044 533 0946

Email: [karenspurrier@icon.co.za](mailto:karenspurrier@icon.co.za))

---

<sup>164</sup> This is a group of independent experts whose responsibility it is to help ensure that the rights and welfare of participants in research are protected and the study is carried out in an ethical manner.

<sup>165</sup> This is a group of independent experts whose responsibility it is to help ensure that the rights and welfare of participants in research are protected and the study is carried out in an ethical manner.

PREAMBLE TO AN INFORMATION AND INFORMED CONSENT DOCUMENT FOR  
**TOURISM & HOSPITALITY INDUSTRY EMPLOYEES/OWNERS**

Dear Tourism and Hospitality OWNER/EMPLOYEE

I Karen Spurrier, the undersigned, am a social worker in private practice in Plettenberg Bay, Western Cape and also a part-time doctorate student in the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (UNISA). In fulfilment of the requirements for the doctoral degree, I have to undertake a research project and have consequently decided to focus on the following research topic: **A MULTI-PERSPECTIVE REPORT ON THE STATUS OF THE KNOWLEDGE OF AND RESPONSE TO COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION OF CHILDREN WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CHILD PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM: A SOCIAL WORK PERSPECTIVE**

In view of the fact that you are well-informed about the topic, I hereby approach you with the request to participate in the study. For you to decide whether or not to participate in this research project, I am going to give you information that will help you to understand the study (i.e. what the aims of the study are and why there is a need for this particular study). Furthermore, you will be informed about what your involvement in this study will entail (i.e. what you will be asked/or what you will be requested to do during the study, the risks and benefits involved by participating in this research project, and your rights as a participant in this study).

This research project originated as a result of my reading up a great deal on the subject and becoming very interested in the fact that there is little information based on research available about the South African situation. The aim is to add to the local and international body of knowledge on the subject while obtaining a picture about what is happening in our country. The information gathered from this study will help to obtain a more accurate picture about what is happening in South Africa in terms of child sex tourism and may possibly help to protect children from this problem if we can understand it better.

Should you agree to participate you would be requested to participate in an interview with me personally. The interview will be conducted at your work place at a time that is

convenient to you and your employer. It is estimated that the interview(s) will last approximately 1 hour.

During the interview(s)<sup>166</sup> the following questions will be directed to you:

#### Biographical Questions

- What is your profession?
- What geographical area does your work cover?
- What type of clientele do you predominantly deal with – local or foreign – and if foreign from which countries are the majority of your travellers?

#### Topical Questions

- What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?
- What is the extent of child sex tourism in your area, in other words, do you see children trying to engage with your guests on a sexual level or do you get reports of this from guests?
- What kind of interaction or requests, if any, have you had with your guests around the availability of children for sexual purposes? Please describe as fully as possible
- What kind of children engage in sex with tourists?
- What kind of tourists do you believe have sex with children?
- What role, if any, should your sector play in the prevention of child sex tourism?
- What should the tourism sector do in South Africa to increase awareness of child sex tourism?
- Are you aware of South African or international legislation covering child sex tourism? Please specify.
- What do you believe are the contributing factors to commercial sexual exploitation of children with specific reference to child prostitution and child sex tourism?
- Are travellers/hotel guests etc. aware that sexual exploitation is illegal? If so, how are they being informed?
- What do you know about The Code of Conduct for the Protection of Children from Sexual Exploitation in Travel and Tourism known as 'The Code'?
- Who else can I speak with in this regard?

---

<sup>166</sup> Any other expectations required from participants need to be clearly spelled out, for example: filling in questionnaires, completing schedules focusing on biographical information, reading through the verbatim transcriptions compiled from the interviews conducted with them, follow-up interviews, etc.]

With your permission, the interview will be audiotaped. The recorded interviews will be transcribed word-for-word. Your responses to the interview (both the recorded and transcribed versions) will be kept strictly confidential.

The digital audio recordings will be coded to disguise any identifying information. The CDs will be stored in a locked office at 7 Jane Street in Plettenberg Bay and only I will have access to them. The transcripts (without any identifying information) will be made available to my research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), and possibly an independent coder<sup>167</sup> with the sole purpose of assisting and guiding me with this research undertaking. My research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), the translator and the independent coder will each sign an undertaking to treat the information shared by you in a confidential manner. The digital audio recordings and the transcripts of the interviews will be destroyed upon the completion of the study. Identifying information will be deleted or disguised in any subsequent publication and/or presentation of the research findings.

Please note that participation in the research is completely voluntary. You are not obliged to take part in the research. Your decision to participate, or not to participate, will not affect you in any way now or in the future and you will incur no penalty and/or loss to which you may otherwise be entitled. Should you agree to participate and sign the information and informed consent document herewith, as proof of your willingness to participate, please note that you are not signing your rights away.

If you agree to take part, you have the right to change your mind at any time during the study. You are free to withdraw this consent and discontinue participation without any loss of benefits. However, if you do withdraw from the study, you would be requested to grant me an opportunity to engage in informal discussion with you so that the research partnership that was established can be terminated in an orderly manner.

As the researcher, I also have the right to dismiss you from the study without regard to your consent if you fail to follow the instructions or if the information you have to divulge is emotionally sensitive and upsets you to such an extent that it hinders you from functioning physically and emotionally in a proper manner. Furthermore, if participating in the study at any time jeopardises your safety in any way, you will be dismissed. Should I conclude that the information you have shared left you feeling emotionally upset, or perturbed, I am

---

<sup>167</sup> The independent coder is someone who is well versed and experienced in analysing information collected by means of interviews and is appointed to analyse the transcripts of the interviews independently of the researcher to ensure that the researcher will report the participants' accounts of what has been researched.

obliged to refer you to a counsellor for debriefing or counselling (should you agree). You have the right to ask questions concerning the study at any time. Should you have any questions or concerns about the study, contact this mobile number 082 825 5505.

Please note that this study has been approved by the Research and Ethics Committee<sup>168</sup> of the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (Unisa). Without the approval of this committee, the study cannot be conducted. Should you have any questions and queries not sufficiently addressed by me as the researcher, you are more than welcome to contact the Chairperson of the Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at Unisa. His contact details are as follows: Prof AH (Nicky) Alpaslan, telephone number: 012 429 6739, or email [alpasah@unisa.ac.za](mailto:alpasah@unisa.ac.za).

If, after you have consulted the researcher and the Research and Ethics Committee in the Department of Social Work at Unisa, their answers have not satisfied you, you might direct your question/concerns/queries to the Chairperson, Human Ethics Committee<sup>169</sup>, College of Human Science, PO Box 392, Unisa, 0003.

Based upon all the information provided to you above, and being aware of your rights, you are asked to give your written consent should you want to participate in this research study by signing and dating the information and consent form provided herewith and initialling each section to indicate that you understand and agree to the conditions.

Thank you for your participation.

Kind regards

---

Karen Spurrier

Contact details: (Mobile: 0828255505)

Fax: 044 533 0946

Email: [karenspurrier@icon.co.za](mailto:karenspurrier@icon.co.za))

---

<sup>168</sup> This is a group of independent experts whose responsibility it is to help ensure that the rights and welfare of participants in research are protected and the study is carried out in an ethical manner.

<sup>169</sup> This is a group of independent experts whose responsibility it is to help ensure that the rights and welfare of participants in research are protected and the study is carried out in an ethical manner.

**PREAMBLE TO AN INFORMATION AND INFORMED CONSENT DOCUMENT FOR  
THE SAPS FCS UNIT MEMBER**

**Dear SAPS FCS UNIT MEMBER**

I Karen Spurrier, the undersigned, am a social worker in private practice in Plettenberg Bay, Western Cape and also a part-time doctorate student in the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (UNISA). In fulfilment of the requirements for the doctoral degree, I have to undertake a research project and have consequently decided to focus on the following research topic: **A MULTI-PERSPECTIVE REPORT ON THE STATUS OF THE KNOWLEDGE ON AND RESPONSE TO COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION OF CHILDREN WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CHILD PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM: A SOCIAL WORK PERSPECTIVE**

In view of the fact that you are well-informed about the topic, I hereby approach you with the request to participate in the study. For you to decide whether or not to participate in this research project, I am going to give you information that will help you to understand the study (i.e. what the aims of the study are and why there is a need for this particular study). Furthermore, you will be informed about what your involvement in this study will entail (i.e. what you will be asked/or what you will be requested to do during the study, the risks and benefits involved by participating in this research project, and your rights as a participant in this study).

This research project originated as a result of my reading up a great deal on the subject and becoming very interested in the fact that there is little information based on research available about the South African situation. The aim is to add to the local and international body of knowledge on the subject while obtaining a picture about what is happening in our country. The information gathered from this study will help to obtain a more accurate picture about what is happening in South Africa in terms of child sex tourism and may possibly help to protect children from this problem if we can understand it better.

Should you agree to participate you would be requested to participate in an interview with me personally. The interview will be conducted at your work place at a time that is

convenient to you and your employer. It is estimated that the interview(s) will last approximately 1 hour. During the interview(s) the following questions will be directed to you:

#### Biographical Questions

- In which unit of your organisation are you employed?
- What is your rank?
- Are you registered with any professional bodies and if so what are they?
- What geographical area does your work cover?
- How many years have you been in the SAPS?

#### Topical Questions

- What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?
- What is the extent of CST in the geographical area your work covers? How much do you know about?
- Please describe, as fully as you can the cases of CST that you have dealt with or know about?
- What experience have you had with working with victims of CST?
- What experience have you had with working with perpetrators of CST?
- What do you think are the contributing factors to this phenomenon of CST?
- What obstacles do you believe prevent you or those that you know of who work with victims or perpetrators, from working effectively with these groups?
- What enables you to render services to the victims and perpetrators of CST?
- What is your opinion on the social work services delivered to victims or perpetrators of CSEC?
- What South African or international legislation covering CST are you aware of?
- Is there any further comment or information that you would like to add?
- Is there anyone else you can recommend that I should speak to concerning this issue?

With your permission, the interview will be audiotaped. The recorded interviews will be transcribed word-for-word. Your responses to the interview (both the recorded and transcribed versions) will be kept strictly confidential.

The audio recordings will be coded to disguise any identifying information. The CDs will be stored in a locked office at 7 Jane Street in Plettenberg Bay and only I will have access to them. The transcripts (without any identifying information) will be made available to my

research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), and possibly an independent coder with the sole purpose of assisting and guiding me with this research undertaking. My research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), the translator and the independent coder will each sign an undertaking to treat the information shared by you in a confidential manner. The audiotapes and the transcripts of the interviews will be destroyed upon the completion of the study. Identifying information will be deleted or disguised in any subsequent publication and/or presentation of the research findings.

Please note that participation in the research is completely voluntary. You are not obliged to take part in the research. Your decision to participate, or not to participate, will not affect you in any way now or in the future and you will incur no penalty and/or loss to which you may otherwise be entitled. Should you agree to participate and sign the information and informed consent document herewith, as proof of your willingness to participate, please note that you are not signing your rights away.

If you agree to take part, you have the right to change your mind at any time during the study. You are free to withdraw this consent and discontinue participation without any loss of benefits. However, if you do withdraw from the study, you would be requested to grant me an opportunity to engage in informal discussion with you so that the research partnership that was established can be terminated in an orderly manner.

As the researcher, I also have the right to dismiss you from the study without regard to your consent if you fail to follow the instructions or if the information you have to divulge is emotionally sensitive and upsets you to such an extent that it hinders you from functioning physically and emotionally in a proper manner. Furthermore, if participating in the study at any time jeopardises your safety in any way, you will be dismissed. Should I conclude that the information you have shared left you feeling emotionally upset, or perturbed, I am obliged to refer you to a counsellor for debriefing or counselling (should you agree). You have the right to ask questions concerning the study at any time. Should you have any questions or concerns about the study, contact this mobile number 082 825 5505.

Please note that this study has been approved by the Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (Unisa). Without the approval of this committee, the study cannot be conducted. Should you have any questions and queries not sufficiently addressed by me as the researcher, you are more than welcome to contact the Chairperson of the Research and Ethics Committee of the

Department of Social Work at Unisa. His contact details are as follows: Prof AH (Nicky) Alpaslan, telephone number: 012 429 6739, or email [alpasah@unisa.ac.za](mailto:alpasah@unisa.ac.za).

If, after you have consulted the researcher and the Research and Ethics Committee in the Department of Social Work at Unisa, their answers have not satisfied you, you might direct your question/concerns/queries to the Chairperson, Human Ethics Committee , College of Human Science, PO Box 392, Unisa, 0003.

Based upon all the information provided to you above, and being aware of your rights, you are asked to give your written consent should you want to participate in this research study by signing and dating the information and consent form provided herewith and initialling each section to indicate that you understand and agree to the conditions.

Thank you for your participation.

Kind regards

---

Karen Spurrier

Contact details: (Mobile: 0828255505)

Fax: 044 533 0946

Email: [karenspurrier@icon.co.za](mailto:karenspurrier@icon.co.za))

PREAMBLE TO AN INFORMATION AND INFORMED CONSENT DOCUMENT FOR  
**NON-SOCIAL WORKERS (NGO'S)**

**Dear NGO employee/volunteer**

I Karen Spurrier, the undersigned, am a social worker in private practice in Plettenberg Bay, Western Cape and also a part-time doctorate student in the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (UNISA). In fulfilment of the requirements for the doctoral degree, I have to undertake a research project and have consequently decided to focus on the following research topic: **A MULTI-PERSPECTIVE REPORT ON THE STATUS OF THE KNOWLEDGE ON AND RESPONSE TO COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION OF CHILDREN WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CHILD PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM: A SOCIAL WORK PERSPECTIVE**

In view of the fact that you are well-informed about the topic, I hereby approach you with the request to participate in the study. For you to decide whether or not to participate in this research project, I am going to give you information that will help you to understand the study (i.e. what the aims of the study are and why there is a need for this particular study). Furthermore, you will be informed about what your involvement in this study will entail (i.e. what you will be asked/or what you will be requested to do during the study, the risks and benefits involved by participating in this research project, and your rights as a participant in this study).

This research project originated as a result of my reading up a great deal on the subject and becoming very interested in the fact that there is little information based on research available about the South African situation. The aim is to add to the local and international body of knowledge on the subject while obtaining a picture about what is happening in our country. The information gathered from this study will help to obtain a more accurate picture about what is happening in South Africa in terms of child sex tourism and may possibly help to protect children from this problem if we can understand it better.

Should you agree to participate you would be requested to participate in an interview with me personally. The interview will be conducted at your work place at a time that is

convenient to you and your employer. It is estimated that the interview(s) will last approximately 1 hour. During the interview(s) the following questions will be directed to you:

#### Biographical Questions

- In what type of organisation are you employed?
- Are you registered with any professional bodies/organisations? If so, with whom?
- What geographical area does your work cover?
- How many years have you been doing what you are doing?

#### Topical Questions

- What is your understanding of the concept 'child sex tourism'?
- What is the extent of child sex tourism in the geographical area your work covers, or how much do you know about? (Please describe as fully as possible)
- Please describe, as fully as you can the cases of child sex tourism that you have dealt with/know about?
- What factors do you think contribute to the phenomenon of child sex tourism?
- What enables you to render services to the victims and perpetrators of child sex tourism?
- What obstacles do you believe prevent you, or those whom you know of that work with victims or perpetrators, from working effectively with these groups?
- What is your opinion on the social work services delivered to victims or perpetrators of CSEC?
- Is there any further comment or information that you would like to add?
- Is there anyone else you can recommend that I should speak to concerning this issue?

With your permission, the interview will be audiotaped. The recorded interviews will be transcribed word-for-word. Your responses to the interview (both the recorded and transcribed versions) will be kept strictly confidential.

The sound bites will be coded to disguise any identifying information. The CDs will be stored in a locked office at 7 Jane Street in Plettenberg Bay and only I will have access to them. The transcripts (without any identifying information) will be made available to my research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), and possibly an independent coder with the sole purpose of assisting and guiding me with this research undertaking. My research

supervisor(s)/promoter(s), the translator and the independent coder will each sign an undertaking to treat the information shared by you in a confidential manner. The audiotapes and the transcripts of the interviews will be destroyed upon the completion of the study. Identifying information will be deleted or disguised in any subsequent publication and/or presentation of the research findings.

Please note that participation in the research is completely voluntary. You are not obliged to take part in the research. Your decision to participate, or not to participate, will not affect you in any way now or in the future and you will incur no penalty and/or loss to which you may otherwise be entitled. Should you agree to participate and sign the information and informed consent document herewith, as proof of your willingness to participate, please note that you are not signing your rights away.

If you agree to take part, you have the right to change your mind at any time during the study. You are free to withdraw this consent and discontinue participation without any loss of benefits. However, if you do withdraw from the study, you would be requested to grant me an opportunity to engage in informal discussion with you so that the research partnership that was established can be terminated in an orderly manner.

As the researcher, I also have the right to dismiss you from the study without regard to your consent if you fail to follow the instructions or if the information you have to divulge is emotionally sensitive and upsets you to such an extent that it hinders you from functioning physically and emotionally in a proper manner. Furthermore, if participating in the study at any time jeopardises your safety in any way, you will be dismissed. Should I conclude that the information you have shared left you feeling emotionally upset, or perturbed, I am obliged to refer you to a counsellor for debriefing or counselling (should you agree). You have the right to ask questions concerning the study at any time. Should you have any questions or concerns about the study, contact this mobile number 082 825 5505.

Please note that this study has been approved by the Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (Unisa). Without the approval of this committee, the study cannot be conducted. Should you have any questions and queries not sufficiently addressed by me as the researcher, you are more than welcome to contact the Chairperson of the Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at Unisa. His contact details are as follows: Prof AH (Nicky) Alpaslan, telephone number: 012 429 6739, or email [alpasah@unisa.ac.za](mailto:alpasah@unisa.ac.za).

If, after you have consulted the researcher and the Research and Ethics Committee in the Department of Social Work at Unisa, their answers have not satisfied you, you might direct your question/concerns/queries to the Chairperson, Human Ethics Committee , College of Human Science, PO Box 392, Unisa, 0003.

Based upon all the information provided to you above, and being aware of your rights, you are asked to give your written consent should you want to participate in this research study by signing and dating the information and consent form provided herewith and initialling each section to indicate that you understand and agree to the conditions.

Thank you for your participation.

Kind regards

---

Karen Spurrier

Contact details: (Mobile: 0828255505)

Fax: 044 533 0946

Email: [karenspurrier@icon.co.za](mailto:karenspurrier@icon.co.za))

**PREAMBLE TO AN INFORMATION AND INFORMED CONSENT DOCUMENT FOR  
ADULT SURVIVORS OF CHILD SEX TOURISM**

Dear Sir/Madam

I Karen Spurrier, the undersigned, am a social worker in private practice in Plettenberg Bay, Western Cape and also a part-time doctorate student in the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (UNISA). In fulfilment of the requirements for the doctoral degree, I have to undertake a research project and have consequently decided to focus on the following research topic: **A MULTI-PERSPECTIVE REPORT ON THE STATUS OF THE KNOWLEDGE ON AND RESPONSE TO COMMERCIAL SEXUAL EXPLOITATION OF CHILDREN WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON CHILD PROSTITUTION AND CHILD SEX TOURISM: A SOCIAL WORK PERSPECTIVE**

In view of the fact that you are well-informed about the topic, I hereby approach you with the request to participate in the study. For you to decide whether or not to participate in this research project, I am going to give you information that will help you to understand the study (i.e. what the aims of the study are and why there is a need for this particular study). Furthermore, you will be informed about what your involvement in this study will entail (i.e. what you will be asked/or what you will be requested to do during the study, the risks and benefits involved by participating in this research project, and your rights as a participant in this study).

This research project originated as a result of my reading up a great deal on the subject and becoming very interested in the fact that there is little information based on research available about the South African situation. The aim is to add to the local and international body of knowledge on the subject while obtaining a picture about what is happening in our country. The information gathered from this study will help to obtain a more accurate picture about what is happening in South Africa in terms of child sex tourism and may possibly help to protect children from this problem if we can understand it better.

Should you agree to participate you would be requested to participate in an interview with me personally. The interview will be conducted at your work place at a time that is convenient to you and your employer. It is estimated that the interview(s) will last

approximately 1 hour. During the interview(s)<sup>170</sup> the following questions will be directed to you:

### Biographical Questions

Tell me about yourself...

- Where do you come from?
- What age were you when you came to live on the street?
- How old are you now?
- Where do you live now?
- Where is your family?

The following probes were used to further explore the participant's story:

- Tell me the story about you being commercially sexually exploited - how did it happen that you were picked up on the street as a child?
- Where did the people who picked you up take you?
- What did they want from you? What did they want you to do?
- Did they give you something in return?
- If they gave you something, what did they give you?
- Who picked you up? Describe as much as you can about the person(s)
- Where did the people who picked you up come from?
- What was their population group? Were they black, white or coloured or Indian?
- How old were they? Describe in words
- Were they men or women?
- Did you ever speak with or ask for help from social workers at any time?
- Did you ever speak with or ask for help from the police?
- Did you receive help from anyone?
- Were there ever any drugs involved, used on your side or on theirs (the people who picked you up)?
- Was there ever more than one person at a time that picked you up?
- Were you always alone or did you go with friends?
- Did anyone ever hurt you – was violence involved?

---

<sup>170</sup> Any other expectations required from participants need to be clearly spelled out, for example: filling in questionnaires, completing schedules focusing on biographical information, reading through the verbatim transcriptions compiled from the interviews conducted with them, follow-up interviews, etc.]

With your permission, the interview will be audiotaped. The recorded interviews will be transcribed word-for-word. Your responses to the interview (both the recorded and transcribed versions) will be kept strictly confidential.

The audio recordings will be coded to disguise any identifying information. The CDs will be stored in a locked office at 7 Jane Street in Plettenberg Bay and only I will have access to them. The transcripts (without any identifying information) will be made available to my research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), and possibly an independent coder<sup>171</sup> with the sole purpose of assisting and guiding me with this research undertaking. My research supervisor(s)/promoter(s), the translator and the independent coder will each sign an undertaking to treat the information shared by you in a confidential manner. The audiotapes and the transcripts of the interviews will be destroyed upon the completion of the study. Identifying information will be deleted or disguised in any subsequent publication and/or presentation of the research findings.

Please note that participation in the research is completely voluntary. You are not obliged to take part in the research. Your decision to participate, or not to participate, will not affect you in any way now or in the future and you will incur no penalty and/or loss to which you may otherwise be entitled. Should you agree to participate and sign the information and informed consent document herewith, as proof of your willingness to participate, please note that you are not signing your rights away.

If you agree to take part, you have the right to change your mind at any time during the study. You are free to withdraw this consent and discontinue participation without any loss of benefits. However, if you do withdraw from the study, you would be requested to grant me an opportunity to engage in informal discussion with you so that the research partnership that was established can be terminated in an orderly manner.

As the researcher, I also have the right to dismiss you from the study without regard to your consent if you fail to follow the instructions or if the information you have to divulge is emotionally sensitive and upsets you to such an extent that it hinders you from functioning physically and emotionally in a proper manner. Furthermore, if participating in the study at any time jeopardises your safety in any way, you will be dismissed. Should I conclude that the information you have shared left you feeling emotionally upset, or perturbed, I am

---

<sup>171</sup> The independent coder is someone who is well versed and experienced in analysing information collected by means of interviews and is appointed to analyse the transcripts of the interviews independently of the researcher to ensure that the researcher will report the participants' accounts of what has been researched.

obliged to refer you to a counsellor for debriefing or counselling (should you agree). You have the right to ask questions concerning the study at any time. Should you have any questions or concerns about the study, contact this mobile number 082 825 5505.

Please note that this study has been approved by the Research and Ethics Committee<sup>172</sup> of the Department of Social Work at the University of South Africa (Unisa). Without the approval of this committee, the study cannot be conducted. Should you have any questions and queries not sufficiently addressed by me as the researcher, you are more than welcome to contact the Chairperson of the Research and Ethics Committee of the Department of Social Work at Unisa. His contact details are as follows: Prof AH (Nicky) Alpaslan, telephone number: 012 429 6739, or email [alpasah@unisa.ac.za](mailto:alpasah@unisa.ac.za).

If, after you have consulted the researcher and the Research and Ethics Committee in the Department of Social Work at Unisa, their answers have not satisfied you, you might direct your question/concerns/queries to the Chairperson, Human Ethics Committee<sup>173</sup>, College of Human Science, PO Box 392, Unisa, 0003.

Based upon all the information provided to you above, and being aware of your rights, you are asked to give your written consent should you want to participate in this research study by signing and dating the information and consent form provided herewith and initialling each section to indicate that you understand and agree to the conditions.

Thank you for your participation.

Kind regards

---

Karen Spurrier

Contact details: (Mobile: 0828255505)

Fax: 044 533 0946

Email: [karenspurrier@icon.co.za](mailto:karenspurrier@icon.co.za))

---

<sup>172</sup> This is a group of independent experts whose responsibility it is to help ensure that the rights and welfare of participants in research are protected and the study is carried out in an ethical manner.

<sup>173</sup> This is a group of independent experts whose responsibility it is to help ensure that the rights and welfare of participants in research are protected and the study is carried out in an ethical manner.

**INFORMATION AND INFORMED CONSENT DOCUMENT<sup>174</sup>**

**TITLE OF THE RESEARCH PROJECT:** A multi-perspective report on the status of the knowledge on and response to commercial sexual exploitation of children with a specific focus on child prostitution and child sex tourism: A social work perspective

**REFERENCE NUMBER:** 0558-624-0

**PRINCIPAL INVESTIGATOR/RESEARCHER:** Karen Spurrier

**ADDRESS:** P O Box 2373, Plettenberg Bay, 6600

**CONTACT TELEPHONE NUMBER:** (Mobile) 082 825 5505

<p><b>DECLARATION BY OR ON BEHALF OF THE PARTICIPANT:</b></p> <p>I, the undersigned, _____ (name), (ID No: _____), the participant or in my capacity as _____ of the participant (ID No _____) of _____ (address)</p> <p><b>A. HEREBY CONFIRM AS FOLLOWS:</b></p> <p>1. I/the participant was invited to participate in the above research project which is being undertaken by Karen Spurrier of the Department of Social Work in the School of Social Science and Humanities at the University of South Africa, Pretoria, South Africa.</p>	<p><u>Initial</u></p>
<p>2. <b>The following aspects have been explained to me/the participant:</b></p> <p><b><u>Aim:</u></b> The investigator/researcher is studying commercial child sexual exploitation with a particular focus on child sex tourism, which is defined as the commercial sexual exploitation of children by men or women who travel from one place to another, usually, but not always from a richer country to one that is less developed, and there engage in sexual acts with children, defined as anyone under 18. This can happen in an organised or in an opportunistic way and can also be perpetrated by local people from different regions of the same country. The geographical area of this study is the Western Cape regions of Cape Town and the Garden Route and the researcher is trying to establish the nature of this phenomenon in the demarcated area of study.</p> <p>The information will be used to write a report and dissemination of the results</p>	<p><u>Initial</u></p>

<sup>174</sup> A copy of the completed information and informed consent document must be handed to the participant or their representative.

<p>will be as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A copy of the research results/report will be forwarded to the Minister of Tourism Marthinus van Schalkwyk at the South African Department of Tourism.</li> <li>2. A copy of the research results will be sent to ECPAT, the body responsible for the global monitoring of sexual exploitation of children.</li> <li>3. A report will be sent to Joan van Niekerk at Childline South Africa.</li> <li>4. A report will be sent to Fairtrade in Tourism South Africa (FTTSA).</li> <li>5. A report will be sent to The code International, New York City.</li> <li>6. An article will be written for local news/general interest magazines such as The Star, You magazine.</li> <li>7. A copy will be sent to UNICEF Innocenti Research Centre, Florence, Italy.</li> </ol>	
<p>2.1</p> <p><u>I understand that:</u> This study is important for understanding this phenomenon and for the protection of the children of South Africa and other countries and that my participation is an important part of ultimately bringing this problem to the attention of the public.</p>	<u>Initial</u>
<p>2.2</p> <p><u>Risks:</u> I understand that if the researcher finds out about children or adults that are currently in danger or are being abused, she is obliged as a social worker to report this to the police or to social services.</p>	<u>Initial</u>
<p>2.3</p> <p><u>Possible benefits:</u> As a result of my participation in this study. Children who are in danger can be rescued and a problem that is hidden could be brought to light.</p>	<u>Initial</u>
<p>2.4</p> <p><u>Confidentiality:</u> My identity will not be revealed in any discussion, description or scientific publications by the investigators/researchers and my identity will remain confidential at all times. My name will be removed from the study for reporting purposes and wherever the documents are stored – they will not be stored with my name in evidence in order to ensure confidentiality.</p>	<u>Initial</u>
<p>2.5</p> <p><u>Access to findings:</u> The results of the study will be available to me as a member of the public and as a participant in the research.</p>	<u>Initial</u>
<p>2.6</p> <p><u>Voluntary participation/refusal/discontinuation:</u> My participation is voluntary. My decision whether or not to participate will in no way affect me now or in the future.</p>	<u>Initial</u>

<p>3. The information above was explained to me/the participant by Karen Spurrier of Plettenberg Bay in Afrikaans/English and I am in command of this language/it was translated to me satisfactorily by _____ (name of the translator). I was given the opportunity to ask questions and all these questions were answered satisfactorily.</p>	<p><u>Initial</u></p>
<p>4. No pressure was exerted on me to consent to participate and I understand that I may withdraw at any stage from the study without any penalty.</p>	<p><u>Initial</u></p>
<p>5. Participation in this study will not result in any cost to me.</p>	<p><u>Initial</u></p>
<p><b>B. I HEREBY CONSENT VOLUNTARILY TO PARTICIPATE IN THE ABOVE PROJECT.</b></p> <p>Signed/confirmed at _____ on _____ 20__</p> <p>_____ Signature or right thumbprint of participant</p> <p>_____ Signature of witness</p>	

**Knysna Visitor Information : Knysna Tourism**



**Not all kinds of tourism are good**

Child sex tourism is a horrifyingly real phenomenon taking place all over the world – including the Garden Route. While it is an uncomfortable subject for some, Karen Spurrier from Plettenberg Bay is undertaking a research project in fulfilment of her Unisa doctoral degree with the topic *Child sex tourism in Cape Town and on the Garden Route in South Africa: a solution-based response from a social work perspective*.

Child sex tourism is defined as the commercial sexual exploitation of children by men or women who travel from one place to another, usually, but not always, from a richer country to one that is less developed, and there engage in sexual acts with children, defined as anyone under 18. The definition also includes people who travel from one part of a country to another – e.g. Johannesburg to the Garden Route. This can happen in an organised or in an opportunistic way and can also be perpetrated by local people from different regions of the same country, either businessmen or leisure travellers. The geographical area of this study is the Western Cape regions of Cape Town and the Garden Route and Karen is trying to establish the nature of this phenomenon in the demarcated area of study.

Research of this nature requires Karen to speak with people within the tourism industry (hoteliers or any of their staff, housekeeping, taxi drivers, guest house owners etc) and she has asked that anyone who is willing to speak with her, please contact her at [karenspurrier@icon.co.za](mailto:karenspurrier@icon.co.za) or on 082 825 5505

Any and all conversations will be held in a sensitive manner.

**Affiliate Websites**

**Knysna Living Local**

Be welcomed into colorful, vibrant and friendly communities and experience **true** Knysna.

[click here](#)



**Knysna Tourism Membership**

Business, legal and practical resources for our members and online membership applications.

[click here](#)



**Tripadvisor**



Knysna



## Twitter

follow us on Twitter

### Visitor Information

info@knysna-info.co.za

Tel: 044 382 5510

begin\_of\_the\_skype\_highlightin

g 044 382

5510 FREE end\_of\_the\_skype  
\_highlighting

Fax: 044 382 1646

### Accommodation Enquiries

bookings@knysna-info.co.za

Tel: 044 382 6960

begin\_of\_the\_skype\_highlightin

g 044 382

6960 FREE end\_of\_the\_skype  
\_highlighting

Fax: 044 382 1609

### Website

**Queries or**

**Website**

**Advertising**

webmaster@k

nysna-

info.co.za

margie gibb | web design

[admin](#)



**PROOF OF ETHICAL CLEARANCE OBTAINED FROM THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE  
SERVICE TO CONDUCT THE RESEARCH**

**SEE NEXT PAGES**

## MACROSYSTEM

Broad ideology, laws, traditions, values and customs of one's culture, subculture or social class

## EXOSYSTEM

Social settings that do contain the child and in which decisions that affect the microsystems are made

## MESOSYSTEM

Connections between the microsystems

## MICROSYSTEM

Activities and relations between the child and their immediate environment



Police services  
eg. SAPS FCS  
Units



Hotels, B&B's  
& guest houses



Doctor's  
office



Friends &  
neighbours



Extended  
family



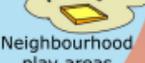
Immediate  
family



Mass media



Church, synagogue  
(& other religious  
organisations)



Neighbourhood  
play areas



Workplace



Legal  
services



Day-care centres  
& schools



School board

Social workers, community  
health and welfare  
eg. Child Welfare

CHILD WELFARE



The Children's Act No. 38 of 2005

The Child Justice Act No. 75 of 2008

The Children's Amendment Act No. 41 of 2007





## AMAPOLISA OMZANTSI AFRICA

**INFORMATION NOTE**

REF : 25/7/2/1(201300183)  
 DATE: : 2013-08-07  
 TO : The Provincial Commissioner  
 SA Police Service  
 WESTERN CAPE  
 FROM : The Provincial Head  
 Organisational Development & Strategic Management  
 SA Police Service  
 WESTERN CAPE

Compiled by: SAC Hoko

**RESEARCH PROPOSAL: CHILD SEX TOURISM IN CAPE TOWN AND ON THE GARDEN ROUTE IN SOUTH AFRICA A SOLUTION BASED RESPONSE FROM SOCIAL PERSPECTIVE : RESEARCHER: MS K SPURRIER**

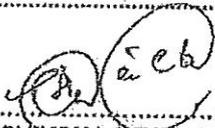
1. A request was received from Ms K Spurrier, a social worker in Plettenberg Bay, Western Cape and a part time student at UNISA. The focus of the research is to obtain a more accurate picture about what is happening in South Africa in terms of child sex tourism and may possibly help to protect children from this problem if we can understand it better. The applicant's proposal has been perused and evaluated and recommended by Divisional Commissioner: Detective Service, Pretoria.
2. The aim of the research is
  - to assist in obtaining more accurate picture about child sex tourism and by means of recommendation assist with a crime priority and strategy to address the issue.
3. Ms K Spurrier has indicated that interviews will be conducted with the Unit Commanders of the FCS units in the Western Cape Province.
4. **RECOMMENDATION**
  - 4.1 The Head of Strategic Management recommended that the research may be conducted at the required units in the Western Cape.
  - 4.2 The Divisional Commissioner: Detective Service request nominations to be forwarded to [divcomm.det@saps.gov.za](mailto:divcomm.det@saps.gov.za) on or before 2013/08/09. See attached Unit Commanders list.
5. This office has perused the application, an undertaking should be obtained from the research promoter and the relevant members that;
  - the applicant will respect the privacy of members of the service and will not divulge any information received from them;
  - all information will at all times be treated as strictly confidential;
  - the conducting of interviews are confined to the officials at the identified units/stations.

RESEARCH PROPOSAL: CHILD SEX TOURISM IN CAPE TOWN AND ON THE GARDEN ROUTE IN SOUTH AFRICA A SOLUTION BASED RESPONSE FROM SOCIAL PERSPECTIVE RESEARCHER: IAS K SPURRIER

- the applicant will complete an indemnity form prior to her commencement of her research, in terms of which the SA Police Service is indemnified against any injury, personal damage or any loss suffered during the research;
- the applicant will complete an undertaking form prior to commencement of her research, pertaining to disclosure of information in terms of which she is agreeable to the contents of section 70 of the SAPS Act, Act 68 of 1995;
- the applicant may not publish a statement/affidavit received, nor may she publish the content of the statement;
- the applicant may not disclose information about any case or personal details of any person mentioned in such a statement/affidavit in any publication or to the media (printed or otherwise)
- the applicant will conduct her research without any disruption of duties of the officers of the Service;
- prior arrangements must be made timeously with the respective officers who are to be interviewed to ensure that service delivery is not hampered;
- that the applicant may not take photographs of any office or state building as it may compromise security of the police station, and is prohibited by law;
- the applicant will only make tape recordings of the interviews with the permission of the officers being interviewed;
- the applicant will use her own transport for the purpose of the research;
- the applicant should not be allowed to travel or patrol with police officials as it may have legal implications
- the applicant will provide her own resources for the purpose of conducting her research;
- the applicant will only conduct an interview with the officers and will not collect any documents or information in another format other than that which comes from the interviews;
- the applicant will conduct the research alone but will supply the full identification and purpose of any person who might be accompanying him on the day of the visit to the station/unit;
- at the completion of the research, the applicant will donate a copy of the research to the Service;

COMMENTS

Application is recommended



PROVINCIAL HEAD: ORGANISATIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND STRATEGIC MANAGEMENT  
WESTERN CAPE  
HD HEILBRON

Date: 23/3/08

RESEARCH PROPOSAL: CHILD SEX TOURISM IN CAPE TOWN AND ON THE GARDEN ROUTE IN SOUTH AFRICA A SOLUTION BASED RESPONSE FROM SOCIAL PERSPECTIVE RESEARCHER: MS K SPURRIER

COMMENTS

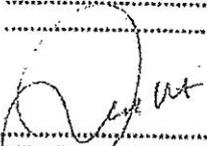
*Application is supported subject to set conditions in paragraph 5 above.*

  
MAJOR GENERAL  
PROVINCIAL HEAD: LEGAL SERVICES  
EN DLADLA

*2013-08-12*  
Date.....

COMMENT

*Recommended.*

  
MAJOR GENERAL  
DEPUTY PROVINCIAL COMMISSIONER; OPERATIONS OFFICER: WESTERN CAPE  
SJ JEPHTA

*2013/08/11/5*  
Date.....

APPROVED / NOT APPROVED

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

  
LIEUTENANT GENERAL  
PROVINCIAL COMMISSIONER: WESTERN CAPE  
AH LAMOER

*2013 08 20*  
Date.....